

**NEW**



Food and the brain



Respiration and oxygenation

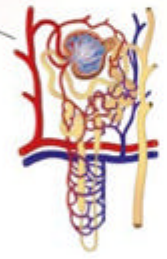


Guides to the essential organs



How do our muscles work?

Kidney function explained



A look inside the eye

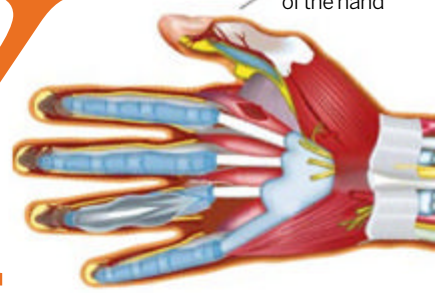
# HOW IT WORKS BOOK OF THE

OVER 300 INCREDIBLE IMAGES

# HUMAN BODY

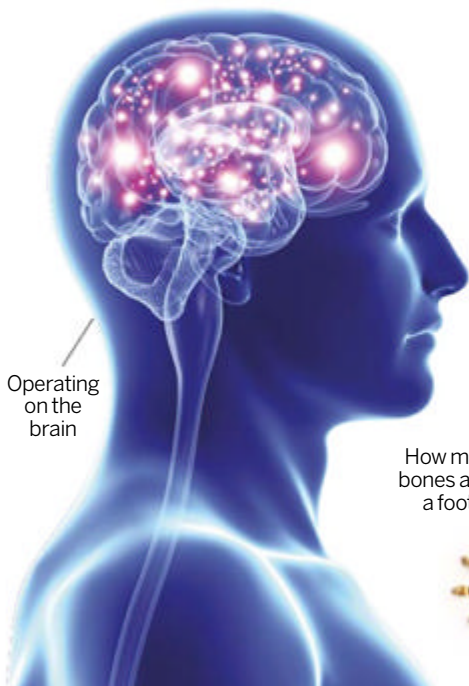


Fracture healing process

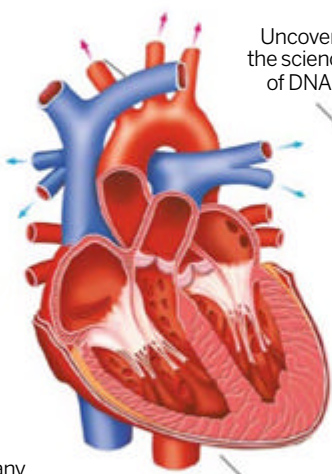


The evolution of the hand

EVERYTHING YOU NEED TO KNOW ABOUT THE HUMAN BODY



Operating on the brain

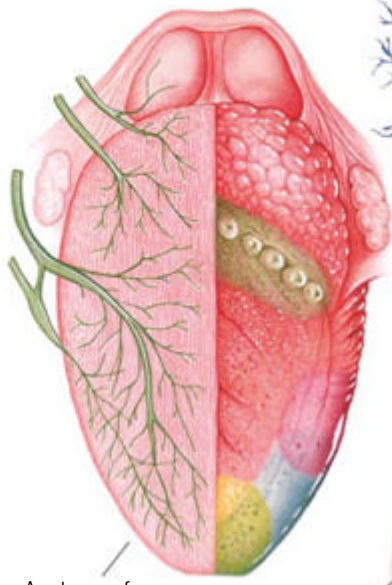


Uncover the science of DNA



Inside a human heart

How many bones are in a foot?



Anatomy of the tongue



Explore the sensory system

Understanding hormones



PACKED WITH AMAZING FACTS AND STUNNING ILLUSTRATIONS



# Welcome to

**HOW IT  
WORKS**  
BOOK OF  
THE  
**HUMAN  
BODY**

The human body is truly an amazing thing. Capable of awe-inspiring feats of speed, agility and strength, while being mind-blowing in complexity, your body is unmatched by that of any other species on Earth. In this updated edition of *How It Works Book of the Human Body*, we celebrate the human body's capabilities and beauty, as well as analyse how it can be impaired or hampered. From how you hear, to how your digestion works, through how your bones repair fractures and on to how we express emotions and experience touch, we explore the human body like never before. Packed full of high-quality anatomical illustrations, detailed photography and easy-to-understand authoritative explanations, this book is filled with incredible facts that will make you see yourself in a whole new light.





HOW IT  
WORKS  
BOOK OF  
THE  
HUMAN  
BODY

Imagine Publishing Ltd  
Richmond House  
33 Richmond Hill  
Bournemouth  
Dorset BH2 6EZ  
☎ +44 (0) 1202 586200  
Website: [www.imagine-publishing.co.uk](http://www.imagine-publishing.co.uk)

**Publishing Director**  
Aaron Asadi

**Head of Design**  
Ross Andrews

**Production Editor**  
Hannah Westlake

**Senior Art Editor**  
Greg Whitaker

**Designer**  
Harriet Knight

**Photographer**  
James Sheppard

**Printed by**  
William Gibbons, 26 Planetary Road, Willenhall, West Midlands, WV13 3XT

**Distributed in the UK, Eire & the Rest of the World by**  
Marketforce, Blue Fin Building, 110 Southwark Street, London, SE1 0SU  
Tel 0203 148 3300  
[www.marketforce.co.uk](http://www.marketforce.co.uk)

**Distributed in Australia by:**  
Network Services (a division of Bauer Media Group), Level 21 Civic Tower, 66-68 Goulburn Street,  
Sydney, New South Wales 2000, Australia  
Tel +61 2 8667 5288

**Disclaimer**  
The publisher cannot accept responsibility for any unsolicited material lost or damaged in the post. All text and layout is the copyright of Imagine Publishing Ltd. Nothing in this bookazine may be reproduced in whole or part without the written permission of the publisher. All copyrights are recognised and used specifically for the purpose of criticism and review. Although the bookazine has endeavoured to ensure all information is correct at time of print, prices and availability may change. This bookazine is fully independent and not affiliated in any way with the companies mentioned herein.

How It Works Book of the Human Body Third Revised Edition © 2015 Imagine Publishing Ltd

Part of the  
**HOW IT  
WORKS**  
bookazine series

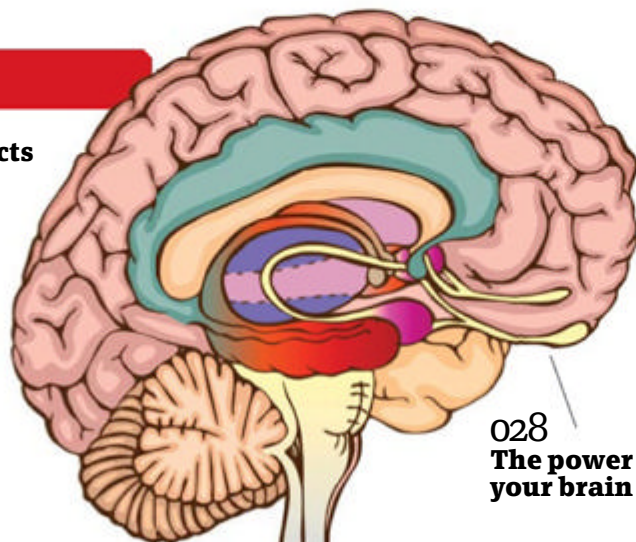


WorldMags.net

# CONTENTS

## Human anatomy

- 010 50 amazing body facts
- 018 Human cells
- 020 Illuminating cells
- 021 Inside a nucleus
- 022 Stem cells
- 024 How do we smell?
- 025 Taste / Taste buds
- 026 The tonsils
- 027 Vocal cords
- 030 Brain power
- 032 Vision and eyesight
- 034 How ears work
- 036 All about teeth
- 038 Anatomy of the neck
- 040 The human skeleton
- 042 How muscles work
- 044 Skin colour / Skin grafts
- 045 Under the skin
- 046 Rheumatoid arthritis
- 047 Bone marrow
- 048 The human spine
- 050 Heart attacks
- 051 Heart bypasses
- 052 Blood transfusions
- 053 Strokes / Blood clotting
- 054 Human kidneys
- 056 Kidney transplants
- 058 Vestigial organs
- 059 How the spleen works
- 060 Human digestion
- 062 How the liver works
- 064 The small intestine



© Patrick Lynch

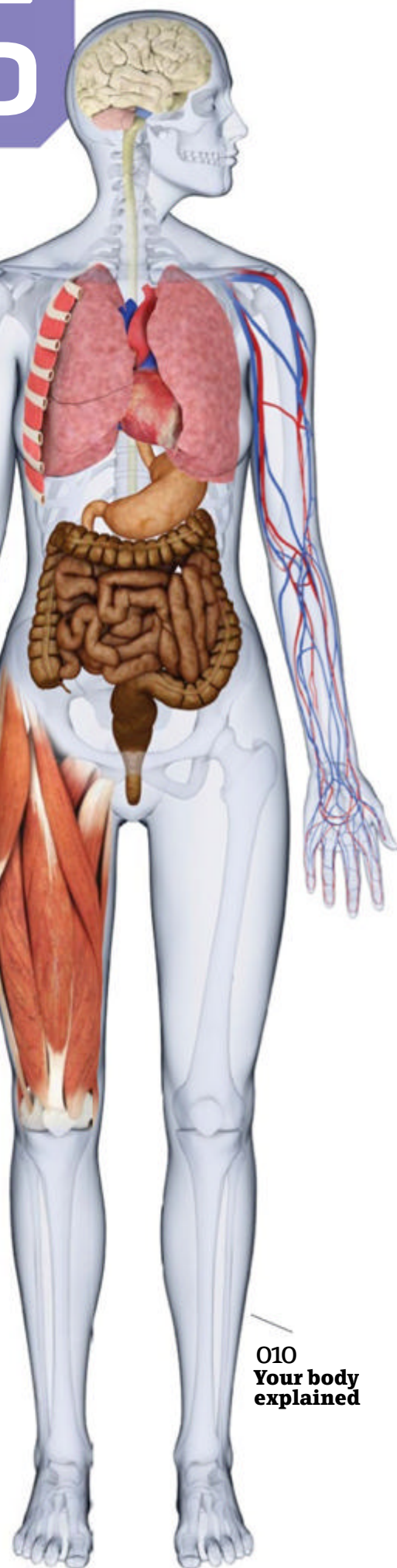
028  
The power of  
your brain

022  
What are  
stem cells?

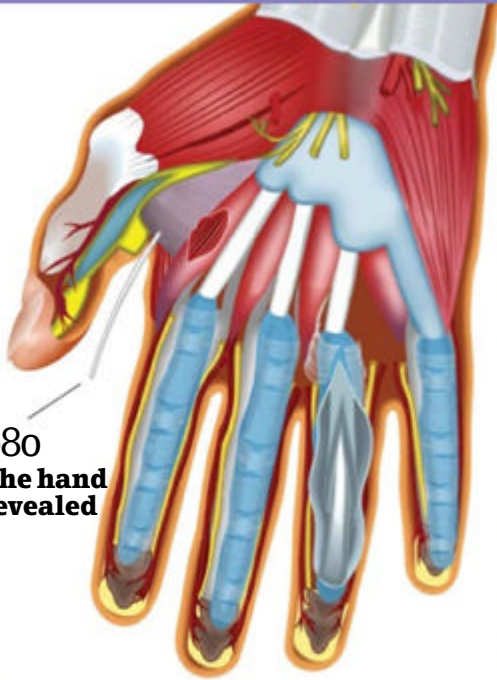


- 066 The human ribcage
- 068 How the pancreas works
- 070 How your bladder works
- 072 Human pregnancy
- 074 Embryo development
- 076 Inside the human stomach
- 078 How does angioplasty work?
- 080 The human hand
- 082 Nails / Knee-jerk reactions
- 083 Inside the knee
- 084 How your feet work
- 086 Achilles' tendon / Smelly feet
- 087 Blisters / Cramp

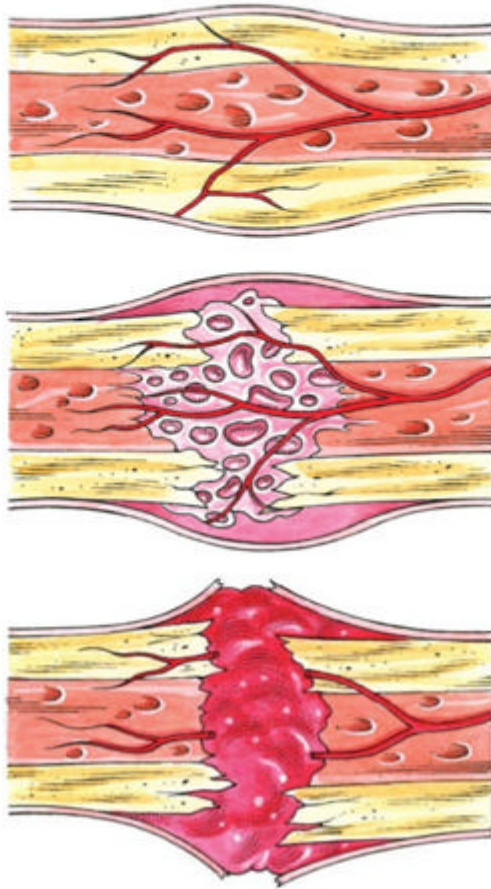
010  
Your body  
explained



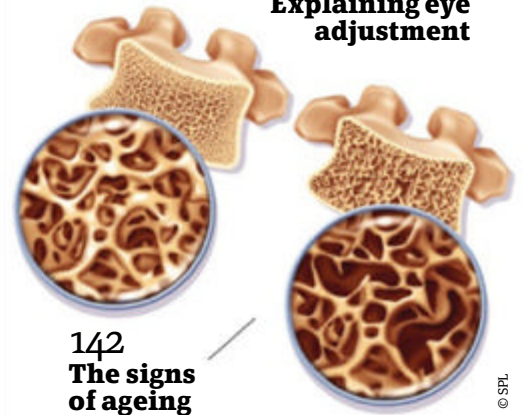
080  
The hand revealed



110  
Healing bone fractures



165  
Explaining eye adjustment



142  
The signs of ageing

## The body at work

- 090 Food and the body
- 098 The blood-brain barrier
- 099 Pituitary gland up close
- 100 Brain electricity / Synapses
- 101 Adrenaline
- 102 Human respiration
- 104 Dehydration / Sweating
- 105 Circadian rhythm
- 106 The immune system
- 110 Bone fracture healing
- 111 Making protein
- 112 The cell cycle
- 114 White blood cells
- 116 The science of genetics
- 121 Burns
- 122 Blood vessels
- 124 How your blood works
- 128 Hormones
- 130 The urinary system
- 132 Tracheotomy surgery
- 133 Hayfever
- 134 Exploring the sensory system
- 138 Chickenpox
- 139 Why we cry

## Curious questions

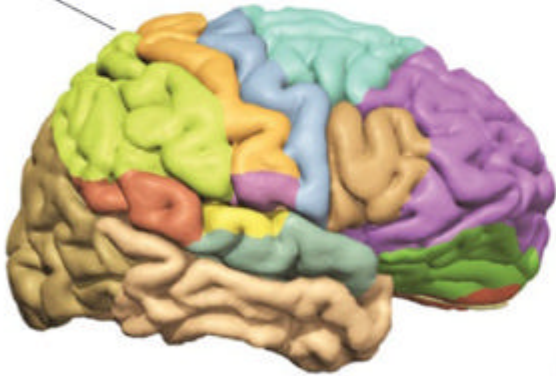
- 142 Ageing
- 146 Left or right brained?
- 148 Brain freeze
- 149 Runny nose / Comas
- 150 Ears / Freckles / Sore throat
- 151 Memory / Toothpaste / Epidurals
- 152 Blush / Caffeine / Fainting
- 153 Eyebrows / Earwax / Self
- 154 72-hour deodorant / Modern fillings
- 155 What powers cells?
- 156 Can we see thoughts?
- 158 How anaesthesia works
- 159 Stomach ulcers / Mouth ulcers
- 160 Hair growth / Blond hair appearance

- 161 Correcting heart rhythms / Salt / Adam's apple
- 162 Seasickness / Rumbling stomachs
- 163 What are moles?
- 164 Brain control / Laughing
- 165 Dandruff / Eye adjustment / Distance the eye can see
- 166 Allergies / Eczema
- 167 Bruises / Water allergy / Cholesterol
- 168 Alveoli
- 169 Migraines / Eyedrops
- 170 What are twins?
- 172 Paper cuts / Pins and needles / Funny bones
- 173 Aching muscles / Fat hormone
- 174 Raw meat / Inoculations / Upper arm and leg
- 175 Feet size / Gout



# HUMAN ANATOMY

028  
How we think

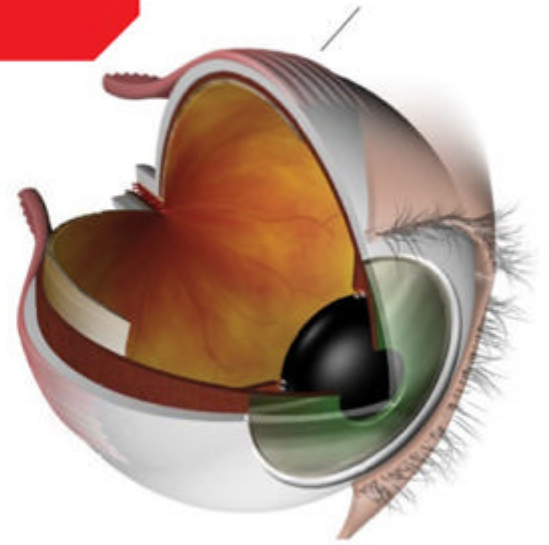


© SPL

010  
50 fantastic facts about the body



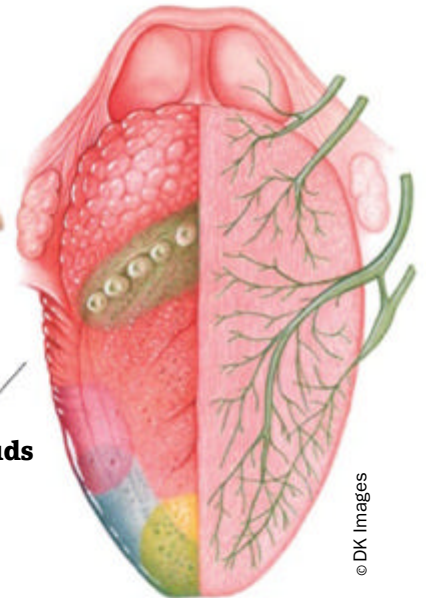
032  
Inside the eye



080  
The human hand



025  
Taste buds



© DK Images

010 **50 amazing body facts**  
From head to toe

018 **Human cells**  
How are they structured?

020 **Illuminating cells**  
Making cells glow

021 **Inside a nucleus**  
Dissecting a cell's control centre

022 **Stem cells**  
Building block bring new life

024 **How do we smell?**  
A look at your nose

025 **Taste / Taste buds**  
The science of taste explained

026 **The tonsils**  
What are these fleshy lumps?

027 **Vocal cords**  
See how they help us talk

028 **Brain power**  
The human brain explored

032 **The science of vision**  
Inside the eye

034 **How ears work**  
Sound and balance explained

036 **All about teeth**  
Dental anatomy and more

038 **Anatomy of the neck**  
Impressive anatomical design

040 **The human skeleton**  
A bounty of boney facts

042 **How muscles work**  
Muscle power revealed

044 **Skin colour / Skin grafts**  
Skin facts explained

045 **Under the skin**  
Anatomy of our largest organ

046 **Rheumatoid arthritis**  
How is inflammation caused?

047 **Bone marrow**  
Why is this jelly vital to us?

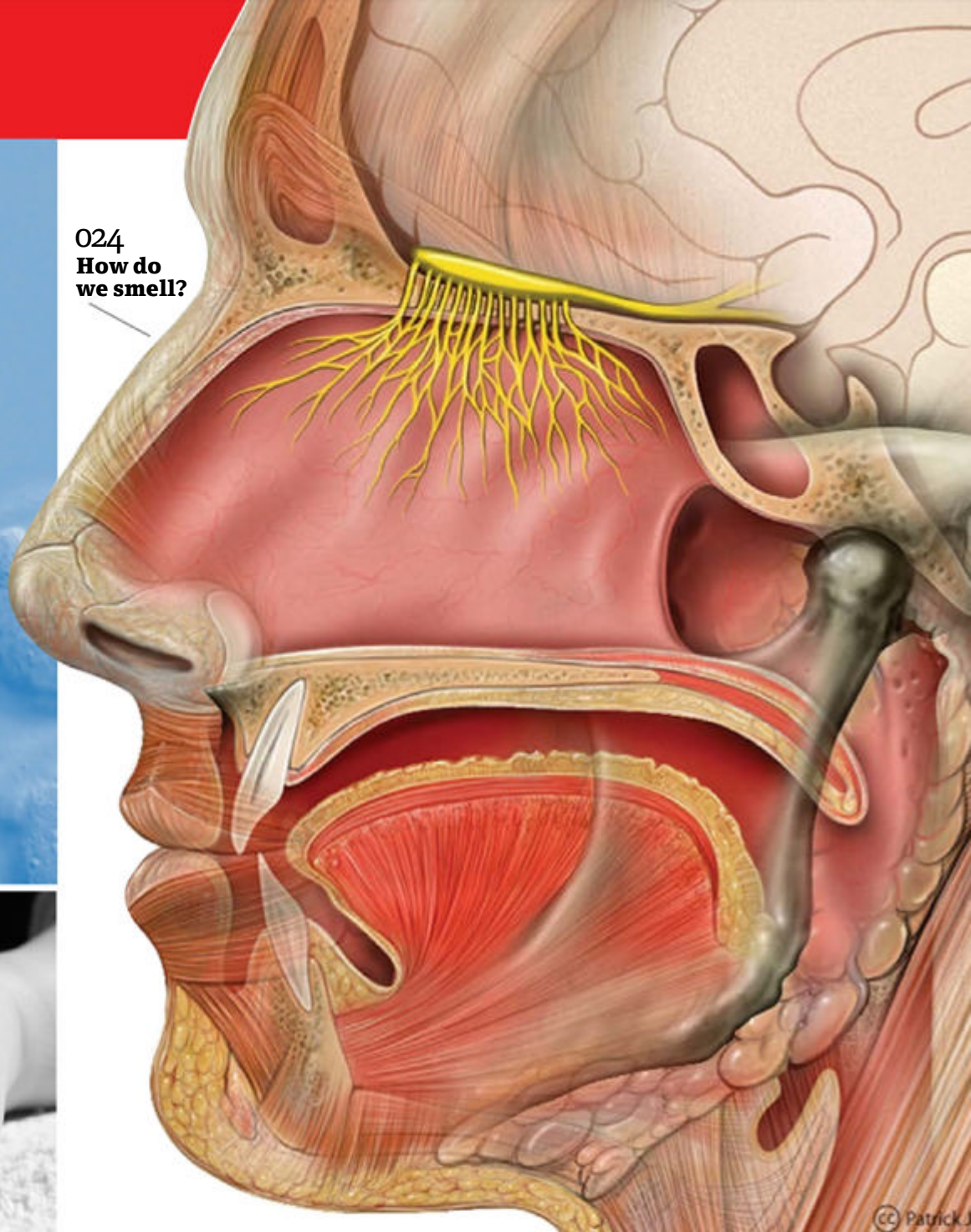
048 **The human spine**  
33 vertebrae explained

022  
Stem cells



084  
How your feet work

024  
How do we smell?



**050 Heart attacks**  
Why do they happen?

**051 Heart bypasses**  
How are blockages bypassed?

**052 Blood transfusions**  
This vital procedure explained

**053 Strokes / Blood clotting**  
Why do these occur?

**054 Human kidneys**  
How do your kidneys function?

**056 Kidney transplants**  
The body's natural filters

**058 Vestigial organs**  
Are they really useless?

**059 How the spleen works**  
Learn how it staves off infections

**060 Human digestion**  
How does food get processed?

**062 How the liver works**  
The ultimate multitasker

**064 The small intestine**  
How does this organ work?

**066 The human ribcage**  
Offering essential protection

**068 How the pancreas works**  
The body's digestive workhorse

**070 How your bladder works**  
Waste removal facts

**072 Human pregnancy**  
Nine months of growth explained

**074 Embryo development**  
The core processes revealed

**076 Inside the human stomach**  
How does this organ digest food?

**078 How does angioplasty work?**  
Inside the medical procedure

**080 The human hand**  
Our most versatile body part

**082 Nails / Knee-jerk reactions**  
A look at fingernails and more

**083 Inside the knee**  
See how it allows us to walk

**084 How your feet work**  
Feet facts and stats

**086 Achilles' tendon / Smelly feet**  
Are they our weak spot?

**087 Blisters / Cramp**  
Why do blisters form?



HOW IT  
WORKS

# HUMAN ANATOMY

Top 50 body facts

# 50 Amazing facts about the human body

There are lots of medical questions everybody wants to ask but we just never get the chance... until now!



The human body is the most complex organism we know and if humans tried to build one artificially, we'd fail abysmally. There's more we don't know about the body than we do know. This includes many of the quirks and seemingly useless traits that our species carry. However, not all of these traits are as bizarre as they may seem, and many have an evolutionary tale behind them.

Asking these questions is only natural but most of us are too embarrassed or never get the opportunity – so here's a chance to clear up all those niggling queries. We'll take a head-to-toe tour of the quirks of human biology, looking at everything from tongue rolling and why we are ticklish through to pulled muscles and why we dream.



# 1 How do we think?

What are thoughts? This question will keep scientists, doctors and philosophers busy for decades to come. It all depends how you want to define the term 'thoughts'. Scientists may talk about synapse formation, pattern recognition and cerebral activation in response to a stimulus (such as seeing an apple and recognising it as such). Philosophers, and also many scientists, will argue that a network of neurons cannot possibly explain the many thousands of thoughts and emotions that we must deal with. A sports doctor might state that when you choose to run, you activate a series of well-trodden pathways that lead from your brain to your muscles in less than a second. There are some specifics we do know though – such as which areas of your brain are responsible for various types of thoughts and decisions.

## Frontal lobe

The frontal lobe is where your personality is, and where your thoughts and emotions form. Removing this or damaging it can alter your persona.

## Pre-motor cortex

The pre-motor cortex is where some of your movements are co-ordinated.

## Primary motor cortex

The primary motor cortex and the primary somatosensory cortex are the areas which receive sensory innervations and then co-ordinate your whole range of movements.

## Parietal lobe

The parietal lobe is responsible for your complex sensory system.

## Broca's area

Broca's area is where you form complex words and speech patterns.

## Primary auditory complex

The primary auditory complex is right next to the ear and is where you interpret sound waves into meaningful information.

## Temporal lobe

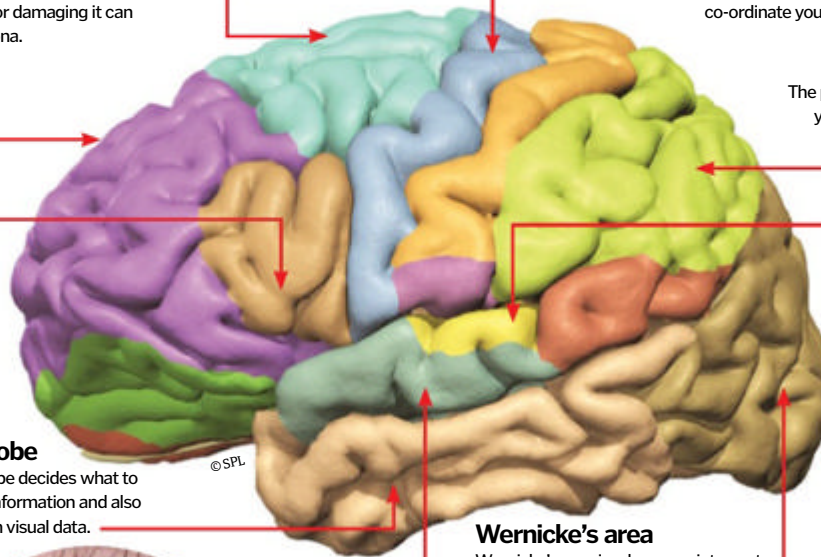
The temporal lobe decides what to do with sound information and also combines it with visual data.

## Wernicke's area

Wernicke's area is where you interpret the language you hear, and then you will form a response via Broca's area.

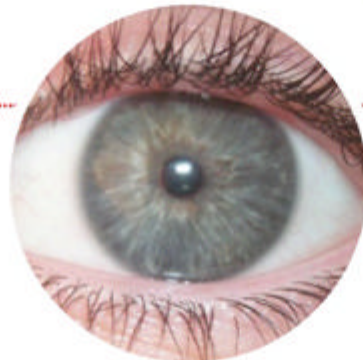
## Occipital lobe

The occipital lobe is all the way at the back, but it interprets the light signals in your eyes into shapes and patterns.



# 2 In the mornings, do we wake up or open our eyes first?

Sleep is a gift from nature, which is more complex than you think. There are five stages of sleep which represent the increasing depths of sleep – when you're suddenly wide awake and your eyes spring open, it's often a natural awakening and you're coming out of rapid eye movement (REM) sleep; you may well remember your dreams. If you're coming out of a different phase, eg when your alarm clock goes off, it will take longer and you might not want to open your eyes straight away!



# 3 Do eyeballs grow like the rest of the body?

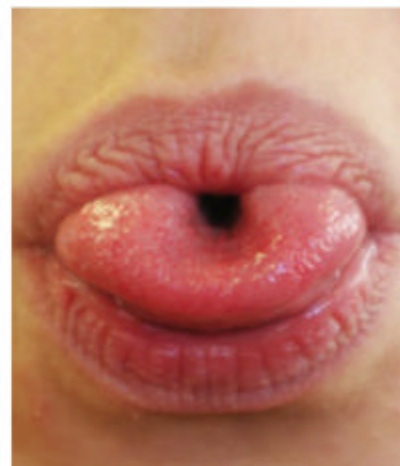
Only a small amount – hence why babies appear so beautiful, as their eyes are slightly out of proportion and so appear bigger.

# 4 Why do we fiddle subconsciously? I'm constantly playing with my hair

This is a behavioural response – some people play with their hair when they're nervous or bored. For the vast majority of people such traits are perfectly normal; if they begin to interfere with your life, behavioural psychologists can help – but it's extremely rare that you'll end up there.

# 5 Why can some people roll their tongues but others can't?

Although we're often taught in school that tongue rolling is due to genes, the truth is likely to be more complex. There is likely to be an overlap of genetic factors and environmental influence. Studies on families and twins have shown that it cannot be a case of simple genetic inheritance. Ask around – the fact that some people can learn to do it suggests that in at least some people it's environmental (ie a learned behaviour) rather than genetic (inborn).



# 6 What is a pulse?

When you feel your own pulse, you're feeling the direct transmission of your heartbeat down an artery. You can feel a pulse where you can compress an artery against a bone, eg the radial artery at the wrist. The carotid artery can be felt against the vertebral body but beware – a) press too hard and you can faint, b) press both at the same time and you'll cut off the blood to your brain and, as a protective mechanism, you'll definitely faint!



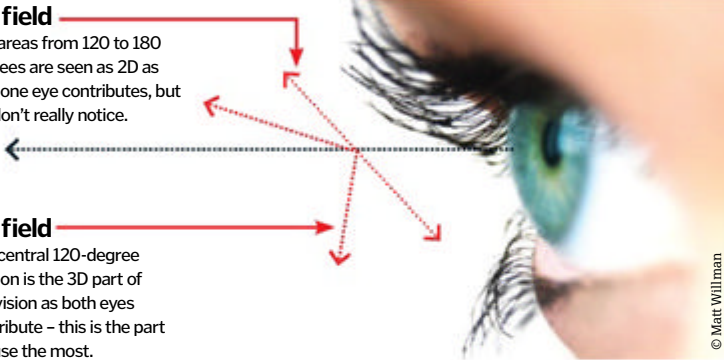
HOW IT WORKS

# HUMAN ANATOMY

## Top 50 body facts

### 2D field

The areas from 120 to 180 degrees are seen as 2D as only one eye contributes, but we don't really notice.



### 3D field

The central 120-degree portion is the 3D part of our vision as both eyes contribute - this is the part we use the most.

## 7 What's my field of vision in degrees?

The human field of vision is just about 180 degrees. The central portion of this (approximately 120 degrees) is binocular or stereoscopic - ie both eyes contribute, allowing depth perception so that we can see in 3D. The peripheral edges are monocular, meaning that there is no overlap from the other eye so we see in 2D.

## 8 What is the point of tonsils?

The tonsils are collections of lymphatic tissues which are thought to help fight off pathogens from the upper respiratory tract. However, they themselves can sometimes become infected - leading to tonsillitis. The ones you can see at the back of your throat are just part of the ring of tonsils. You won't miss them if they're taken out for recurrent infections as the rest of your immune system will compensate.



## 11 How fast does blood travel round the human body?

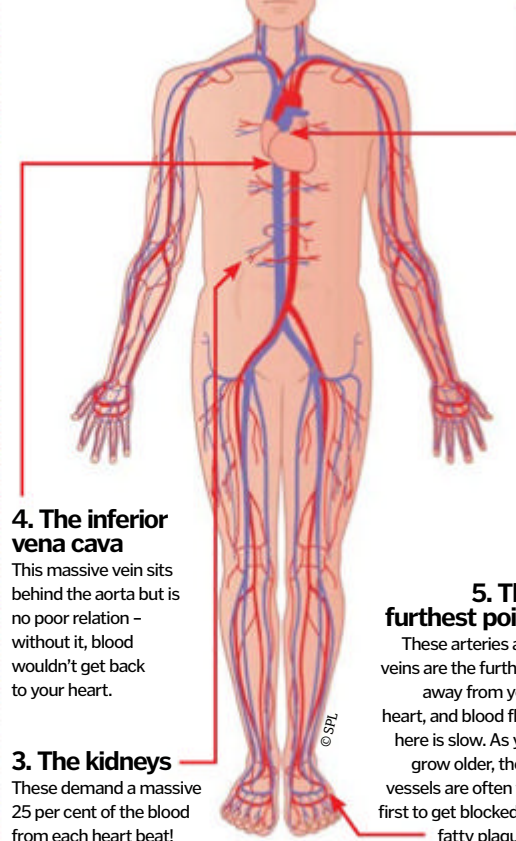
Your total 'circulating volume' is about five litres. Each red blood cell within this has to go from your heart, down the motorway-like arteries, through the back-road capillary system, and then back through the rush-hour veins to get back to your heart. The process typically takes about a minute. When you're in a rush and your heart rate shoots up, the time reduces as the blood diverts from the less-important structures (eg large bowel) to the more essential (eg muscles).

### 1. The most important organ

The brain has its own special blood supply arranged in a circle.

### 2. Under pressure

Blood is moving fastest and under the highest pressure as it leaves the heart and enters the elastic aorta.



### 4. The inferior vena cava

This massive vein sits behind the aorta but is in no poor relation - without it, blood wouldn't get back to your heart.

### 3. The kidneys

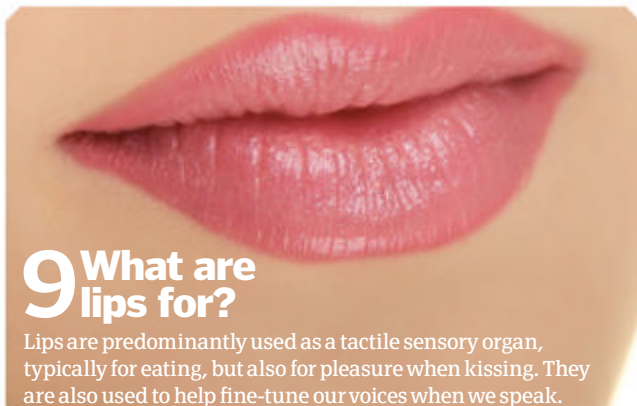
These demand a massive 25 per cent of the blood from each heart beat!

### 5. The furthest point

These arteries and veins are the furthest away from your heart, and blood flow here is slow. As you grow older, these vessels are often the first to get blocked by fatty plaques.

## 12 Why do we burp?

A burp is a natural release of gas from the stomach. This gas has either been swallowed or is the result of something you've ingested - such as a fizzy drink. The sound comes from the vibration of the oesophageal sphincter at the oesophago-gastric junction, which is the narrowest part of the gastrointestinal tract.



## 9 What are lips for?

Lips are predominantly used as a tactile sensory organ, typically for eating, but also for pleasure when kissing. They are also used to help fine-tune our voices when we speak.

## 10 Why does it feel so weird when you hit your funny bone?

You're actually hitting the ulnar nerve as it wraps around the bony prominence of the 'humerus' bone, leading to a 'funny' sensation. Although not so funny as the brain interprets this sudden trauma as pain to your forearm and fingers!



## 13 How many inches of hair does the average person grow from their head each year?

It's different for everybody - your age, nutrition, health status, genes and gender all play a role. In terms of length, anywhere between 0.5-1 inch (1.2-2.5cm) a month might be considered average, but don't be surprised if you're outside this range.

**Emotions**

**1** While great apes such as gorillas, chimps and orang-utans use facial expressions to show their feelings, human beings are the only animals known to cry as a result of their emotions.

**Sneeze fast!**

**2** A sneeze is typically expelled at around 161km/h (100mph). Sneezing helps protect the body by keeping the nose free of bacteria and viruses. There's a video on our website.

**Red blood cells**

**3** Red blood cells – also known as erythrocytes – live on average for 120 days. There are approximately 25 trillion red blood cells in your body at any given moment.

**Hard worker**

**4** The heart beats on average 100,000 times per day. Of course this will greatly vary depending on your level of activity and your environmental conditions.

**Liquid**

**5** Humans are made up of 70 per cent water, which is essential for body growth and repair. The NHS suggests drinking 1.2 litres of water a day to avoid growing dehydrated.

**DID YOU KNOW?** *The average person breaks wind between 8-16 times per day*

**14 Why are everyone's fingerprints different?**

Your fingerprints are fine ridges of skin in the tips of your fingers and toes. They are useful for improving the detection of small vibrations and to add friction for better grip. No two fingerprints are the same – either on your hands or between two people – and that's down to your unique set of genes.

**15 Why do we only remember some dreams?**

Dreams have fascinated humans for thousands of years. Some people think they are harmless while others think they are vital to our emotional wellbeing. Most people have four to eight dreams per night which are influenced by stress, anxiety and desires, but they remember very few of them. There is research to prove that if you awake from the rapid eye movement (REM) part of your sleep cycle, you're likely to remember your dreams more clearly.



**16 Why, as we get older, does hair growth become so erratic?**

Hair follicles in different parts of your body are programmed by your genes to do different things, eg the follicles on your arm produce hair much slower than those on your head. Men can go bald due to a combination of genes and hormonal changes, which may not happen in other areas (eg nasal hair). It's different for everybody!



**19 What gives me my personality?**

Researchers have spent their whole lives trying to answer this one. Your personality forms in the front lobes of your brain, and there are clear personality types. Most of it is your environment – that is, your upbringing, education, surroundings. However some of it is genetic, although it's unclear how much. The strongest research in this comes from studying twins – what influences one set of twins to grow up and be best friends, yet in another pair, one might become a professor and the other a murderer.



**17 Why do we all have different coloured hair?**

Most of it is down to the genes that result from when your parents come together to make you. Some hair colours win out (typically the dark ones) whereas some (eg blonde) are less strong in the genetic race.

**18 Is it possible to keep your eyes open when you sneeze?**

Your eyes remain shut as a defence mechanism to prevent the spray and nasal bacteria entering and infecting your eyes. The urban myth that your eyes will pop out if you keep them open is unlikely to happen – but keeping them shut will provide some protection against nasty bugs and viruses.



**20 WHY DO MEN HAVE NIPPLES?**

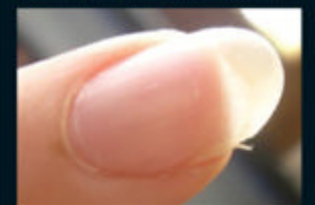
Men and women are built from the same template, and these are just a remnant of a man's early development.

**21 WHAT'S THE POINT OF EYEBROWS?**

Biologically, eyebrows can help to keep sweat and rainwater from falling into your eyes. More importantly in humans, they are key aids to non-verbal communication.

**22 WHAT IS A BELLY BUTTON?**

The umbilicus is where a baby's blood flows through to get to the placenta to exchange oxygen and nutrients with the mother's blood. Once out, the umbilical cord is clamped several centimetres away from the baby and left to fall off. No one quite knows why you'll get an 'innie' or an 'outie' – it's probably all just luck.



**23 WHY DO FINGERNAILS GROW FASTER THAN TOENAILS?**

The longer the bone at the end of a digit, the faster the growth rate of the nail. However there are many other influences too – nutrition, sun exposure, activity, blood supply – and that's just to name a few.

**24 WHY DOES MY ARM TINGLE AND FEEL HEAVY IF I FALL ASLEEP ON IT?**

This happens because you're compressing a nerve as you're lying on your arm. There are several nerves supplying the skin of your arm and three supplying your hand (the radial, median and ulnar nerves), so depending on which part of your arm you lie on, you might tingle in your forearm, hand or fingers.



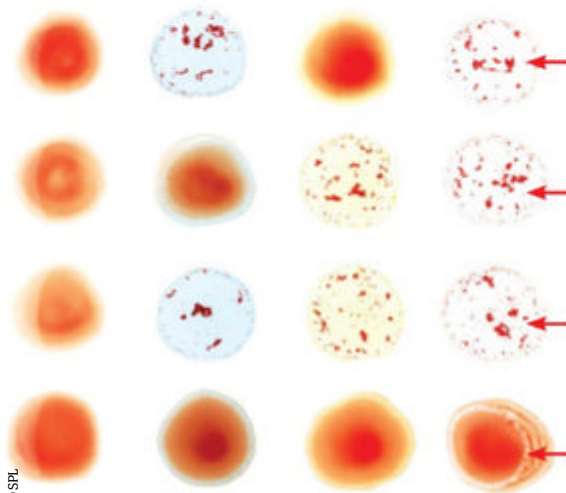
HOW IT WORKS

# HUMAN ANATOMY

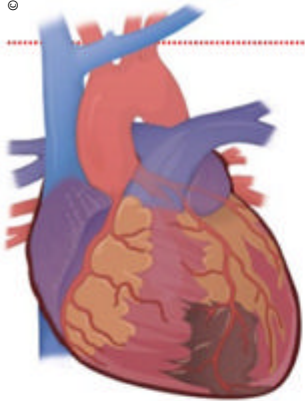
Top 50 body facts

## 25 What makes some blood groups incompatible while others are universal?

Your blood type is determined by protein markers known as antigens on the surface of your red blood cells. You can have A antigens, B antigens, or none – in which case you're blood type O. However, if you don't have the antigen, your antibodies will attack foreign blood. If you're type A and you're given B, your antibodies attack the B antigens. However, if you're blood type AB, you can safely receive any type. Those who are blood group O have no antigens so can give blood to anyone, but they have antibodies to A and B so can only receive O back!



- A**  
You have A antigens and B antibodies. You can receive blood groups A and O, but can't receive B. You can donate to A and AB.
- B**  
You have B antigens and A antibodies. You can receive blood groups B and O, but can't receive A. You can donate to B and AB.
- AB**  
You have A and B antigens and no antibodies. You can receive blood groups A, B, AB and O (universal recipient), and can donate to AB.
- O**  
You have no antigens but have A and B antibodies. You can receive blood group O, but can't receive A, B or AB and can donate to all: A, B, AB and O.



## 27 Which organ uses up the most oxygen?

The heart is the most efficient – it extracts 80 per cent of the oxygen from blood. But the liver gets the most blood – 40 per cent of the cardiac output compared to the kidneys, which get 25 per cent, and heart, which only receives 5 per cent.

## 28 What is the appendix? I've heard it has no use but can kill you...

The appendix is useful in cows for digesting grass and koala bears for digesting eucalyptus – koalas can have a 4m (13ft)-long appendix! In humans, however, the appendix has no useful function and is a remnant of our development. It typically measures 5-10cm (1.9-3.9in), but if it gets blocked it can get inflamed. If it isn't quickly removed, the appendix can burst and lead to widespread infection which can be lethal.



## 29 Why does people's skin turn yellow if they contract liver disease?

This yellow discoloration of the skin or the whites of the eyes is called jaundice. It's due to a buildup of bilirubin in your body, when normally this is excreted in the urine (hence why urine has a yellow tint). Diseases such as hepatitis and gallstones can lead to a buildup of bilirubin due to altered physiological processes, although there are many other causes.

## 30 What is the gag reflex?

**1. Foreign bodies**  
This is a protective mechanism to prevent food or foreign bodies entering the back of the throat at times other than swallowing.

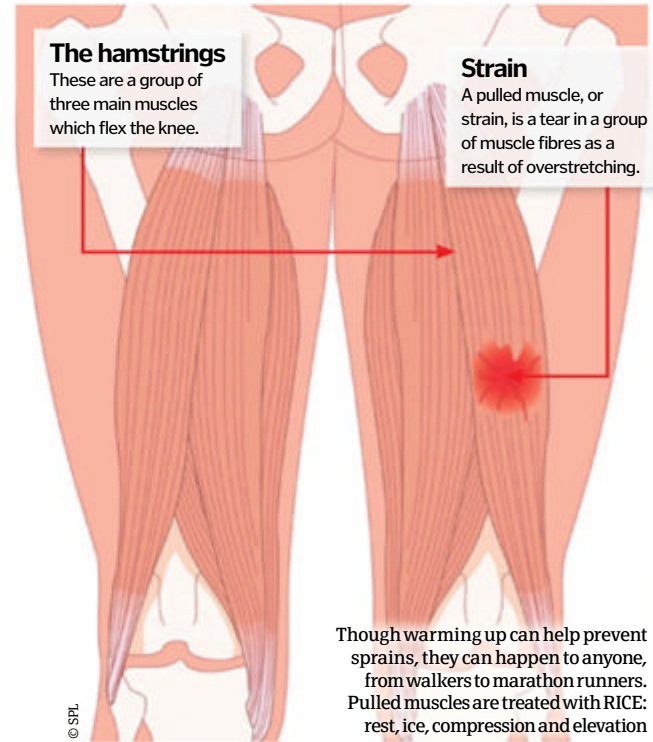
**2. Soft palate**  
The soft palate (the fleshy part of the mouth roof) is stimulated, sending signals down the glossopharyngeal nerve.



**3. Vagus nerve**  
The vagus nerve is stimulated, leading to forceful contraction of the stomach and diaphragm to expel the object forwards.

**4. The gag**  
This forceful expulsion leads to 'gagging', which can develop into retching and vomiting.

## 26 What is a pulled muscle?



**The hamstrings**  
These are a group of three main muscles which flex the knee.

**Strain**  
A pulled muscle, or strain, is a tear in a group of muscle fibres as a result of overstretching.

Though warming up can help prevent sprains, they can happen to anyone, from walkers to marathon runners. Pulled muscles are treated with RICE: rest, ice, compression and elevation



**FAST**

**1. Human vs cheetah**  
While the world record holder Usain Bolt can run it in 9.58 seconds, a cheetah can run 100m (328ft) in just over six seconds.



**TALL**

**2. Human vs giraffe**  
The average man in England is 1.7m (5.5ft) tall. The tallest man ever was 2.7m (8.8ft). A giraffe can grow up to 6m (19.7ft).



**HIGH**

**3. Human vs flea**  
The men's outdoor high jump world record is 2.45m (less than twice the height of a man). A flea can jump up to 100 times its height.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Your brain interprets pain from the rest of the body, but doesn't have any pain receptors itself



## 31 Why are we ticklish?

Light touches, by feathers, spiders, insects or other humans, can stimulate fine nerve-endings in the skin which send impulses to the somatosensory cortex in the brain. Certain areas are more ticklish – such as the feet – which may indicate that it is a defence mechanism against unexpected predators. It is the unexpected nature of this stimulus that means you can be tickled. Although you can give yourself goosebumps through light tickling, you can't make yourself laugh.



## 32 Why don't eyelashes keep growing?

Your eyelashes are formed from hair follicles, just like those on your head, arms and body. Each follicle is genetically programmed to function differently. Your eyelashes are programmed to grow to a certain length and even re-grow if they fall out, but they won't grow beyond a certain length, which is handy for seeing!



© shlomig

## 33 What makes us left-handed?

One side of the brain is typically dominant over the other. Since each hemisphere of the brain controls the opposite side (ie the left controls the right side of your body), right-handed people have stronger left brain hemispheres. Occasionally you'll find an ambidextrous person, where hemispheres are co-dominant, and these people are equally capable with both right and left hands!



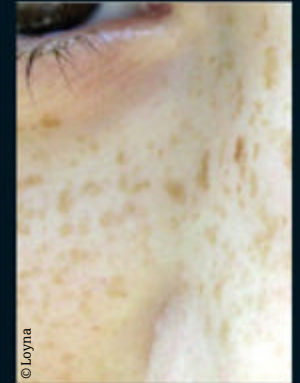
© JimmySolis

## 34 Could we survive on vitamins alone?

No, you need a diet balanced in carbohydrate, protein, fat, vitamins and minerals to survive. You can't cut one of these and expect to stay healthy. However, it's the proportions of these which keep us healthy and fit. You can get these from the five major food groups. Food charts can help with this balancing act.

## 35 Why do we get a high temperature when we're ill?

The immune response leads to inflammation and the release of inflammatory factors into your blood stream. These lead to an increased heart rate and blood flow, which increases your core body temperature – as if your body is doing exercise. This can lead to increased heat production and thus dehydration; for this reason, it's important to drink plenty of clear fluids when you're feeling unwell.



© Loyna

## 36 WHY DO SOME PEOPLE HAVE FRECKLES?

Freckles are concentrations of the dark skin pigment melanin in the skin. They typically occur on the face and shoulders, and are more common in light-skinned people. They are also a well-recognised genetic trait and become more dominant during sun-exposure.



© Klaus D. Peter, Wühh, Germany

## 37 WHAT IS A WART?

Warts are small, rough, round growths of the skin caused by the human papilloma virus. There are many different types which can occur in different parts of the body, and they can be contagious. They commonly occur on the hands, but can also come up anywhere from the genitals to the feet!

## 38 WHY DO I TWITCH IN MY SLEEP?

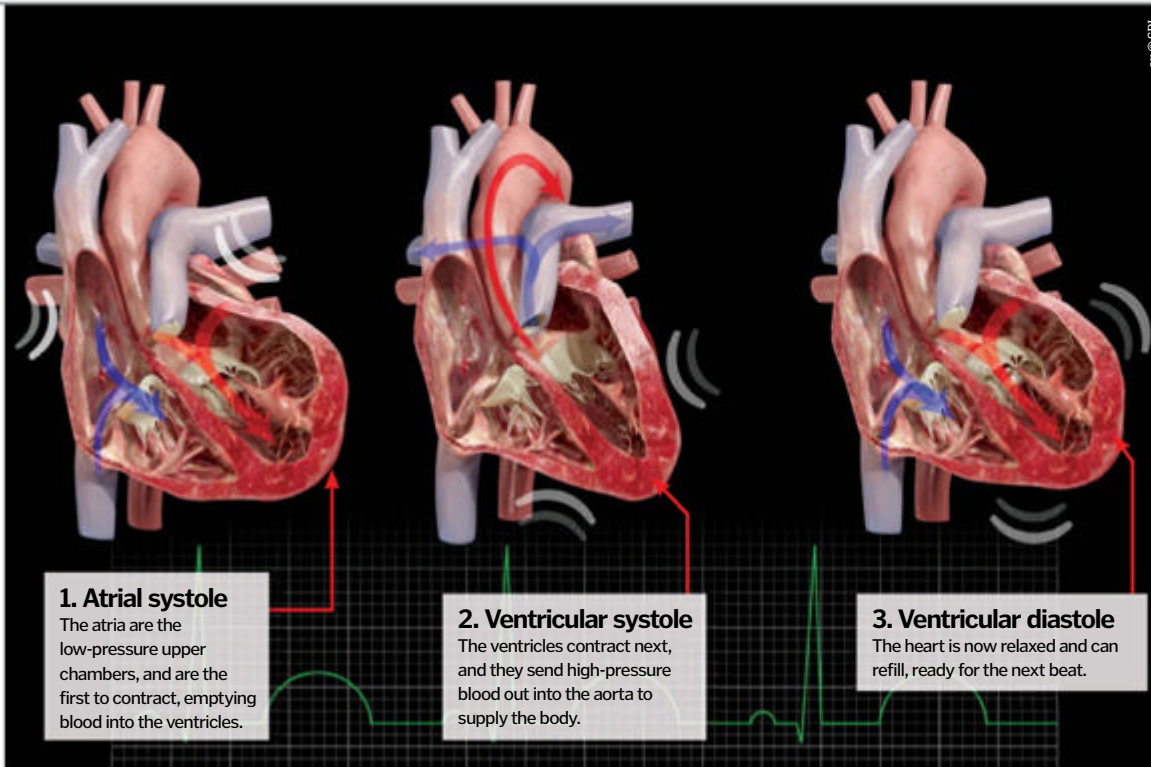
This is common and known in the medical world as a myoclonic twitch. Although some researchers say these twitches are associated with stress or caffeine use, they are likely to be a natural part of the sleep process. If it happens to you, it's perfectly normal.



HOW IT WORKS

# HUMAN ANATOMY

## Top 50 body facts



3x © SPL

### 1. Atrial systole

The atria are the low-pressure upper chambers, and are the first to contract, emptying blood into the ventricles.

### 2. Ventricular systole

The ventricles contract next, and they send high-pressure blood out into the aorta to supply the body.

### 3. Ventricular diastole

The heart is now relaxed and can refill, ready for the next beat.

## 39 What triggers the heart and keeps it beating?

The heart keeps itself beating. The sinoatrial node (SAN) is in the wall of the right atrium of the heart, and is where the heartbeat starts. These beats occur due to changes in electrical currents as calcium, sodium and potassium move across membranes. The heart can beat at a rate of 60 beats per minute constantly if left alone. However – we often need it to go faster. The sympathetic nervous system sends rapid signals from the brain to stimulate the heart to beat faster when we need it to – in ‘fight or flight’ scenarios. If the SAN fails, a pacemaker can send artificial electrical signals to keep the heart going.

### Definitions

Systole = contraction;

Diastole = relaxation

## 40 Why do bruises go purple or yellow?

A bruise forms when capillaries under the skin leak and allow blood to settle in the surrounding tissues. The haemoglobin in red blood cells is broken down, and these by-products give a dark yellow, brown or purple discolouration depending on the volume of blood and colour of the overlying skin. Despite popular belief, you cannot age a bruise – different people’s bruises change colour at different rates.

### 1. Damage to the blood vessels

After trauma such as a fall, the small capillaries are torn and burst.

### 2. Blood leaks into the skin

Blood settles into the tissues surrounding the vessel. The pressure from the bruise then helps stem the bleeding.

### 3. Discolouration

Haemoglobin is then broken down into its smaller components, which are what give the dark discolouration of a bruise.

## 41 Why does cutting onions make us cry?



© Laili Mastiera

Onions make your eyes water due to their expulsion of an irritant gas once cut. This occurs as when an onion is cut with a knife, many of its internal cells are broken down, allowing enzymes to break down amino acid sulphoxides and generate sulphenic acids. These sulphenic acids are then rearranged by another enzyme and, as a direct consequence, syn-propanethial-S-oxide gas is produced, which is volatile. This volatile gas then diffuses in the air surrounding the onion, eventually reaching the eyes of the cutter, where it proceeds to activate sensory neurons and create a stinging sensation. As such, the eyes then follow protocol and generate tears from their tear glands in order to dilute and remove the irritant. Interestingly, the volatile gas generated by cutting onions can be largely mitigated by submerging the onion in water prior to or midway through cutting, with the liquid absorbing much of the irritant.



## 44 Why do more men go bald than women?

‘Simple’ male pattern baldness is due to a combination of genetic factors and hormones. The most implicated hormone is testosterone, which men have high levels of but women have low levels of, so they win (or lose?) in this particular hormone contest!

## 42 What is the little triangle shape on the side of the ear?

This is the tragus. It serves no major function that we know of, but it may help to reflect sounds into the ear to improve hearing.

## 43 When we’re tired, why do we get bags under our eyes?

Blood doesn’t circulate around your body as efficiently when you’re asleep so excess water can pool under the eyes, making them puffy. Fatigue, nutrition, age and genes also cause bags.



© David Benbennick



**The heart is amazing**

It stimulates its own heartbeat, beats around 100,000 times a day and pumps about 2,000 gallons of blood per day. It's also the most efficient of organs and extracts the highest ratio of oxygen per unit of blood that it receives. The heart has its own blood supply too that supplies its muscular wall.

**DID YOU KNOW?** The hyoid is the only bone that isn't connected to another bone – it sits at the top of your neck



**45 Why do we blink?**

Blinking helps keep your eyes clean and moist. Blinking spreads secretions from the tear glands (lacrimal fluids) over the surface of the eyeball, keeping it moist and also sweeping away small particles such as dust.

**47 Why do we get itchy?**

Itching is caused by the release of a transmitter called histamine from mast cells which circulate in your body. These cells are often released in response to a stimulus, such as a bee sting or an allergic reaction. They lead to inflammation and swelling, and send impulses to the brain via nerves which causes the desire to itch.



**48 Why do some hereditary conditions skip a generation?**

Genes work in pairs. Some genes are 'recessive' and if paired with a 'dominant' half, they won't shine through. However, if two recessive genes combine (one from your mother and one from your father), the recessive trait will show through.

**49 Why do amputees sometimes still feel pain in their amputated limbs?**

This is 'phantom limb pain' and can range from a mild annoyance to a debilitating pain. The brain can sometimes struggle to adjust to the loss of a limb, and it can still 'interpret' the limb as being there. Since the nerves have been cut, it interprets these new signals as pain. There isn't a surgical cure as yet, though time and special medications can help lessen the pain.

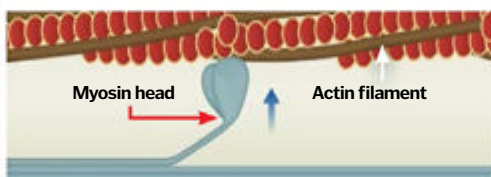


**46 How come most people have one foot larger than the other?**

Most people's feet are different sizes – in fact the two halves of most people's bodies are different! We all start from one cell, but as the cells multiply, genes give them varying characteristics.

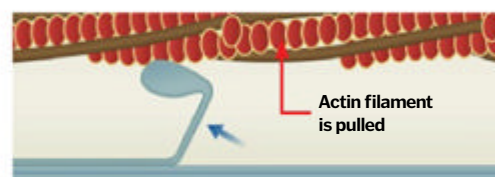
**50 Which muscle produces the most powerful contraction relative to its size?**

The gluteus maximus is the largest muscle and forms the bulk of your buttock. The heart (cardiac muscle) is the hardest-working muscle, as it is constantly beating and clearly can never take a break! However the strongest muscle based on weight is the masseter. This is the muscle that clenches the jaw shut – put a finger over the lowest, outer part of your jaw and clench your teeth and you'll feel it.



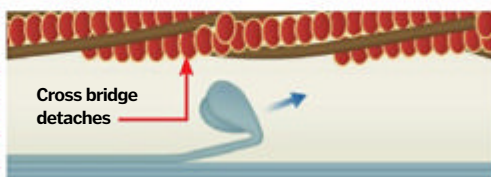
**1. Taking the first step**

Muscle contraction starts with an impulse received from the nerves supplying the muscle – an action potential. This action potential causes calcium ions to flood across the protein muscle fibres. The muscle fibres are formed from two key proteins: actin and myosin.



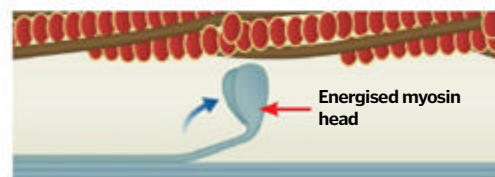
**2. Preparation**

The calcium binds to troponin which is a receptor on the actin protein. This binding changes the shape of tropomyosin, another protein which is bound to actin. These shape changes lead to the opening of a series of binding sites on the actin protein.



**3. Binding**

Now the binding sites are free on actin, the myosin heads forge strong bonds in these points. This leads to the contraction of the newly formed protein complex; when all of the proteins contract, the muscle bulk contracts.



**4. Unbinding**

When the energy runs out, the proteins lose their strong bonds and disengage, and from there they return to their original resting state.



# Cell structure explained

There are around 75 trillion cells in the human body, but what are they and how do they work?



Cells are life and cells are alive. You are here because every cell inside your body has a specific function and a very specialised job to do. There are many different types of cell, each one working to keep the body's various systems operating. A single cell is the smallest unit of living material in the body capable of life. When grouped together in layers or clusters, however, cells with similar jobs to do form tissue, such as skin or muscle. To keep these cells working, there are thousands of chemical reactions going on all the time.

All animal cells contain a nucleus, which acts like a control hub telling the cell what to do and contains the cell's genetic information (DNA). Most of the material within a cell is a watery, jelly-like substance called cytoplasm (cyto means cell), which circulates around the cell and is held in by a thin external membrane, which consists of two layers. Within the cytoplasm is a variety of structures called organelles, which all have different tasks, such as manufacturing proteins – the cell's key chemicals. One vital example of an organelle is a ribosome; these numerous structures can be found either floating around in the cytoplasm or attached to internal membranes. Ribosomes are crucial in the production of proteins from amino acids.

In turn, proteins are essential to building your cells and carrying out the biochemical reactions the body needs in order to grow and develop and also to repair itself and heal.

## Mitochondria

These organelles supply cells with the energy necessary for them to carry out their functions. The amount of energy used by a cell is measured in molecules of adenosine triphosphate (ATP). Mitochondria use the products of glucose metabolism as fuel to produce the ATP.

## Ribosomes

These tiny structures make proteins and can be found either floating in the cytoplasm or attached like studs to the endoplasmic reticulum, which is a conveyor belt-like membrane that transports proteins around the cell.

## Endoplasmic reticulum

The groups of folded membranes (canals) connecting the nucleus to the cytoplasm are called the endoplasmic reticulum (ER). If studded with ribosomes the ER is referred to as 'rough' ER; if not it is known as 'smooth' ER. Both help transport materials around the cell but also have differing functions.

## Smooth endoplasmic reticulum

## Rough endoplasmic reticulum (studded with ribosomes)

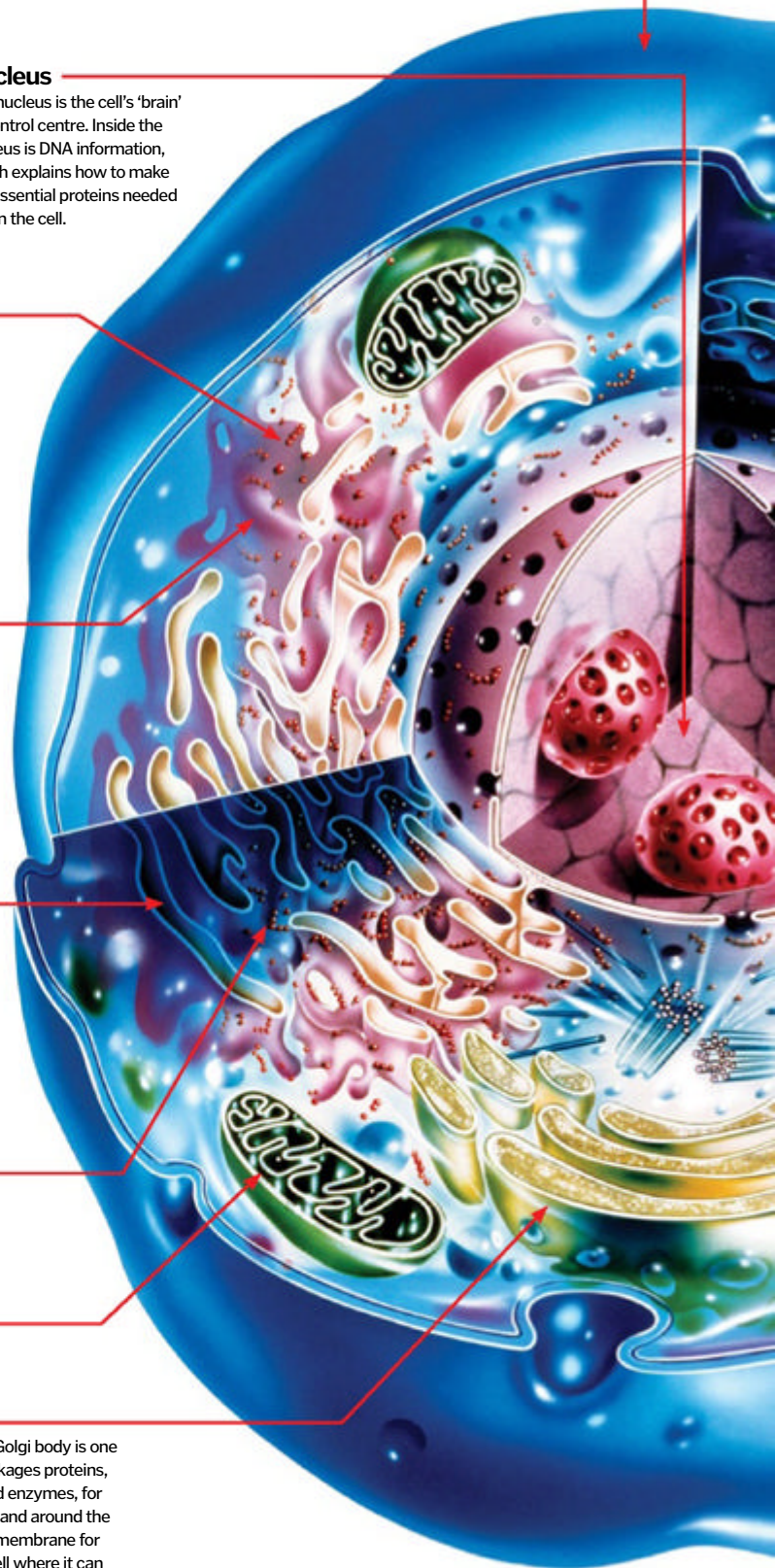
## Golgi body

Another organelle, the Golgi body is one that processes and packages proteins, including hormones and enzymes, for transportation either in and around the cell or out towards the membrane for secretion outside the cell where it can enter the bloodstream.

**Cell membrane**  
Surrounding and supporting each cell is a plasma membrane that controls everything that enters and exits.

## Nucleus

The nucleus is the cell's 'brain' or control centre. Inside the nucleus is DNA information, which explains how to make the essential proteins needed to run the cell.



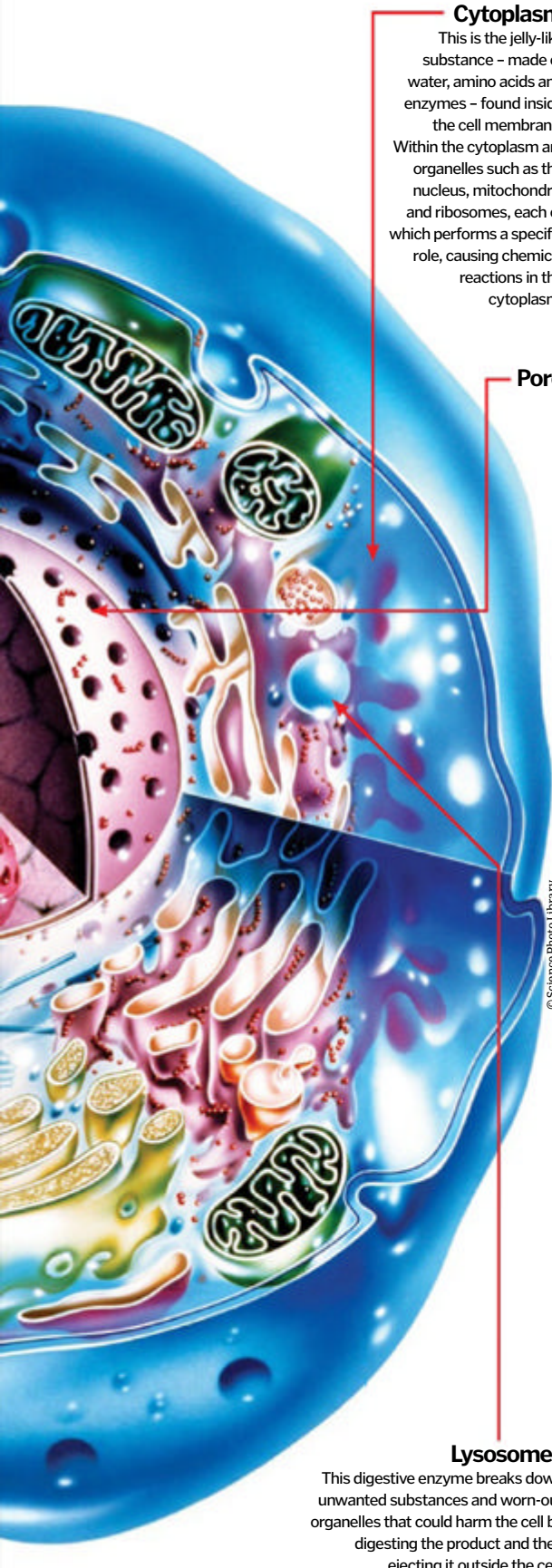


**Super cells**

Stem cells are self-renewing cells with the potential to become any other type of cell in the body. Unlike regular cells, they do not have a specialisation, such as nerve cells. Experts have discovered that adult stem cells can be manipulated into other types with the potential to grow replacement organs.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Bacteria are the simplest living cells and the most widespread life form on Earth

**Cell anatomy**



**Cytoplasm**  
This is the jelly-like substance - made of water, amino acids and enzymes - found inside the cell membrane. Within the cytoplasm are organelles such as the nucleus, mitochondria and ribosomes, each of which performs a specific role, causing chemical reactions in the cytoplasm.

**Pore**

© Science Photo Library

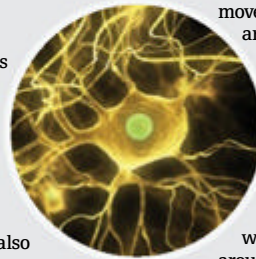
**Lysosomes**  
This digestive enzyme breaks down unwanted substances and worn-out organelles that could harm the cell by digesting the product and then ejecting it outside the cell.

**Types of human cell**

So far around 200 different varieties of cell have been identified, and they all have a very specific function to perform. Discover the main types and what they do...

**NERVE CELLS**

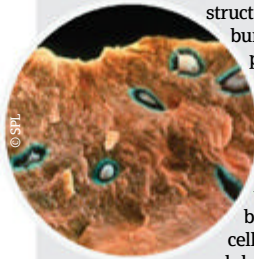
The cells that make up the nervous system and the brain are nerve cells or neurons. Electrical messages pass between nerve cells along long filaments called axons. To cross the gaps between nerve cells (the synapse) that electrical signal is converted into a chemical signal. These cells enable us to feel sensations, such as pain, and they also enable us to move.



We can control skeletal muscles because they are voluntary. Cardiac muscles, meanwhile, are involuntary, which is fortunate because they are used to keep your heart beating. Found in the walls of the heart, these muscles create their own stimuli to contract without input from the brain. Smooth muscles, which are pretty slow and also involuntary, make up the linings of hollow structures such as blood vessels and your digestive tract. Their wave-like contraction aids the transport of blood around the body and the digestion of food.

**BONE CELLS**

The cells that make up bone matrix - the hard structure that makes bones strong - consist of three main types. Your bone mass is constantly changing and reforming and each of the three bone cells plays its part in this process. First the osteoblasts, which come from bone marrow, build up bone mass and structure. These cells then become buried in the matrix at which point they become known as osteocytes. Osteocytes make up around 90 per cent of the cells in your skeleton and are responsible for maintaining the bone material. Finally, while the osteoblasts add to bone mass, osteoclasts are the cells capable of dissolving bone and changing its mass.



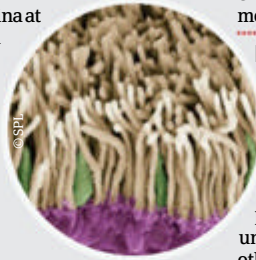
**FAT CELLS**

These cells - also known as adipocytes or lipocytes - make up your adipose tissue, or body fat, which can cushion, insulate and protect the body. This tissue is found beneath your skin and also surrounding your other organs. The size of a fat cell can increase or decrease depending on the amount of energy it stores. If we gain weight the cells fill with more watery fat, and eventually the number of fat cells will begin to increase. There are two types of adipose tissue: white and brown. The white adipose tissue stores energy and insulates the body by maintaining body heat. The brown adipose tissue, on the other hand, can actually create heat and isn't burned for energy - this is why animals are able to hibernate for months on end without food.



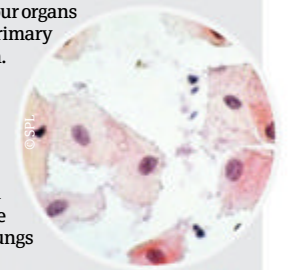
**PHOTORECEPTOR CELLS**

The cones and rods on the retina at the back of the eye are known as photoreceptor cells. These contain light-sensitive pigments that convert the image that enters the eye into nerve signals, which the brain interprets as pictures. The rods enable you to perceive light, dark and movement, while the cones bring colour to your world.



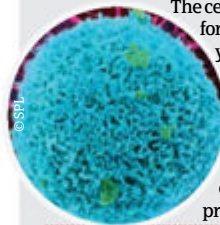
**EPITHELIAL CELLS**

Epithelial cells make up the epithelial tissue that lines and protects your organs and constitute the primary material of your skin. These tissues form a barrier between the precious organs and unwanted pathogens or other fluids. As well as covering your skin, you'll find epithelial cells inside your nose, around your lungs and in your mouth.



**LIVER CELLS**

The cells in your liver are responsible for regulating the composition of your blood. These cells filter out toxins as well as controlling fat, sugar and amino acid levels. Around 80 per cent of the liver's mass consists of hepatocytes, which are the liver's specialised cells that are involved with the production of proteins and bile.



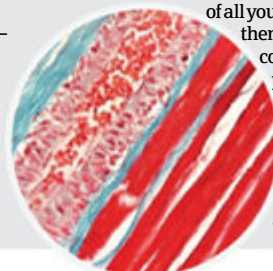
**RED BLOOD CELLS**

Unlike all the other cells in your body, your red blood cells (also known as erythrocytes) do not contain a nucleus. You are topped up with around 25 trillion red blood cells - that's a third of all your cells, making them the most common cell in your body. Formed in the bone marrow, these cells are important because they carry oxygen to all the tissues in your body. Oxygen is carried in haemoglobin, a pigmented protein that gives blood cells their red colour.



**MUSCLE CELLS**

There are three types of muscle cell - skeletal, cardiac and smooth - and each differs depending on the function it performs and its location in the body. Skeletal muscles contain long fibres that attach to bone. When triggered by a nerve signal, the muscle contracts and pulls the bone with it, making you





HOW IT WORKS

# HUMAN ANATOMY

Making cells glow



Green fluorescent protein and quantum dots are helping us understand cells' inner workings

## Illuminating cells

Find out how GFP and quantum dots are shedding light on medical research...



For millions of years, the *Aequorea victoria* jellyfish held the secret to green fluorescent protein (GFP) – a protein that absorbs the energy from the blue and ultraviolet (UV) range and re-emits it as a green light. Biologists got their hands on the glowing jellyfish in the Sixties, extracting the protein and then uncovering the gene that codes for it.

By inserting this sequence into living organisms, scientists equip them with the instructions that are required to manufacture GFP, highlighting how genes are expressed in everything from bacteria to human cells. Specific proteins and cell types can be tagged with GFP, allowing researchers to

track their movement and interaction. Tagging the HIV virus with GFP, for instance, shows how the infection spreads.

A similar effect can be achieved with quantum dots – nanoscale semi-conductor crystals which also fluoresce under UV light. The dots can be made in many different colours and bound to proteins, allowing scientists to observe complex biological interactions.

Recently, surgeons wearing special goggles identified and removed cancerous cells highlighted with quantum dots. These goggles could also be used to develop diagnostic tests and therapies for other conditions.

### Bioluminescence in nature

Hundreds of living organisms produce light, although most do not fluoresce, instead getting their glow from chemical reactions. Most of these are marine creatures and bacteria, although terrestrial invertebrates (eg fireflies, inset) and fungi can also glow. Bioluminescence serves a variety of functions. In many marine animals, it provides camouflage by allowing its bearer to blend in with the surrounding light when viewed from below. In other species it is used as a form of communication or, like the anglerfish, to draw in prey. Researchers aren't certain what the *Aequorea victoria* jellyfish uses its eerie GFP glow for, but some believe it may be to evade predators.

# Inside a nucleus

## Dissecting the control centre of a cell



Surrounded by cytoplasm, the nucleus contains a cell's DNA and controls all of its functions and processes such as movement and reproduction.

There are two main types of cell: eukaryotic and prokaryotic. Eukaryotic cells contain a nucleus while prokaryotic do not. Some eukaryotic cells have more than one nucleus – called multinucleate cells – occurring when fusion or division creates two or more nuclei.

At the heart of a nucleus you'll find the nucleolus; this particular area is essential in the formation of ribosomes. Ribosomes are

responsible for making proteins out of amino acids which take care of growth and repair.

Being so important, the nucleus is the most-protected part of the cell. In animal cells it is always located near its centre and away from the membrane to ensure it has the maximum cushioning. As well as the jelly-like cytoplasm around it, the nucleus itself is filled with nucleoplasm, a viscous liquid which maintains its structural integrity.

Conversely, in plant cells, the nucleus is more sporadically placed. This is due to the larger vacuole in a plant cell and the added protection that is granted by a cell wall.

## Central command

Take a peek at what's happening inside the 'brain' of a eukaryotic cell

### 1 Nuclear pore

These channels control the movement of molecules between the nucleus and cytoplasm.

### 2 Nuclear envelope

Acts as a wall to protect the DNA within the nucleus and regulates cytoplasm access.

### 3 Nucleolus

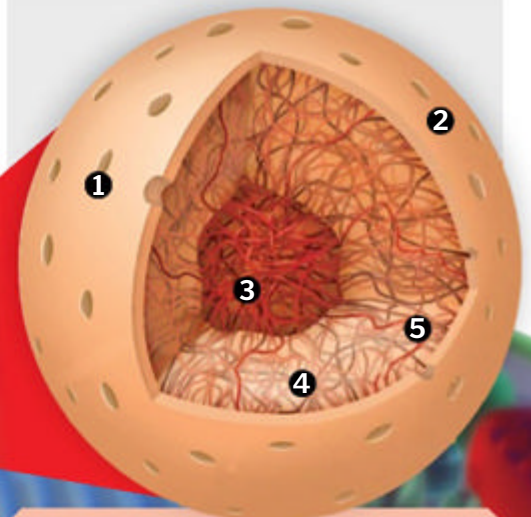
Made up of protein and RNA, this is the heart of the nucleus which manufactures ribosomes.

### 4 Nucleoplasm

This semi-liquid, semi-jelly material surrounds the nucleolus and keeps the organelle's structure.

### 5 Chromatin

Produces chromosomes and aids cell division by condensing DNA molecules.



## Nucleus in context

Explore the larger body that a nucleus rules over and meet its 'cellmates'

**Nucleus**

### Ribosomes

Made up of two separate entities, ribosomes make proteins to be used both inside and outside the cell.

### Golgi apparatus

Named after the Italian biologist Camillo Golgi, they create lysosomes and also organise the proteins for secretion.

### Lysosome

Small and spherical, this organelle contains digestive enzymes that attack invading bacteria.

### Mitochondrion

Double membraned, this produces energy for the cell by breaking down nutrients via cellular respiration.

## How do cells survive without a nucleus?

Prokaryotic cells are much more basic than their eukaryotic counterparts. Up to 100 times smaller and mainly comprising species of bacteria, prokaryotic cells have fewer functions than other cells, so they do not require a nucleus to act as the control centre for the organism.

Instead, these cells have their DNA moving around the cell rather than being housed in a nucleus. They have no chloroplasts, no membrane-bound organelles and they don't undertake cell division in the form of mitosis or meiosis like eukaryotic cells do.

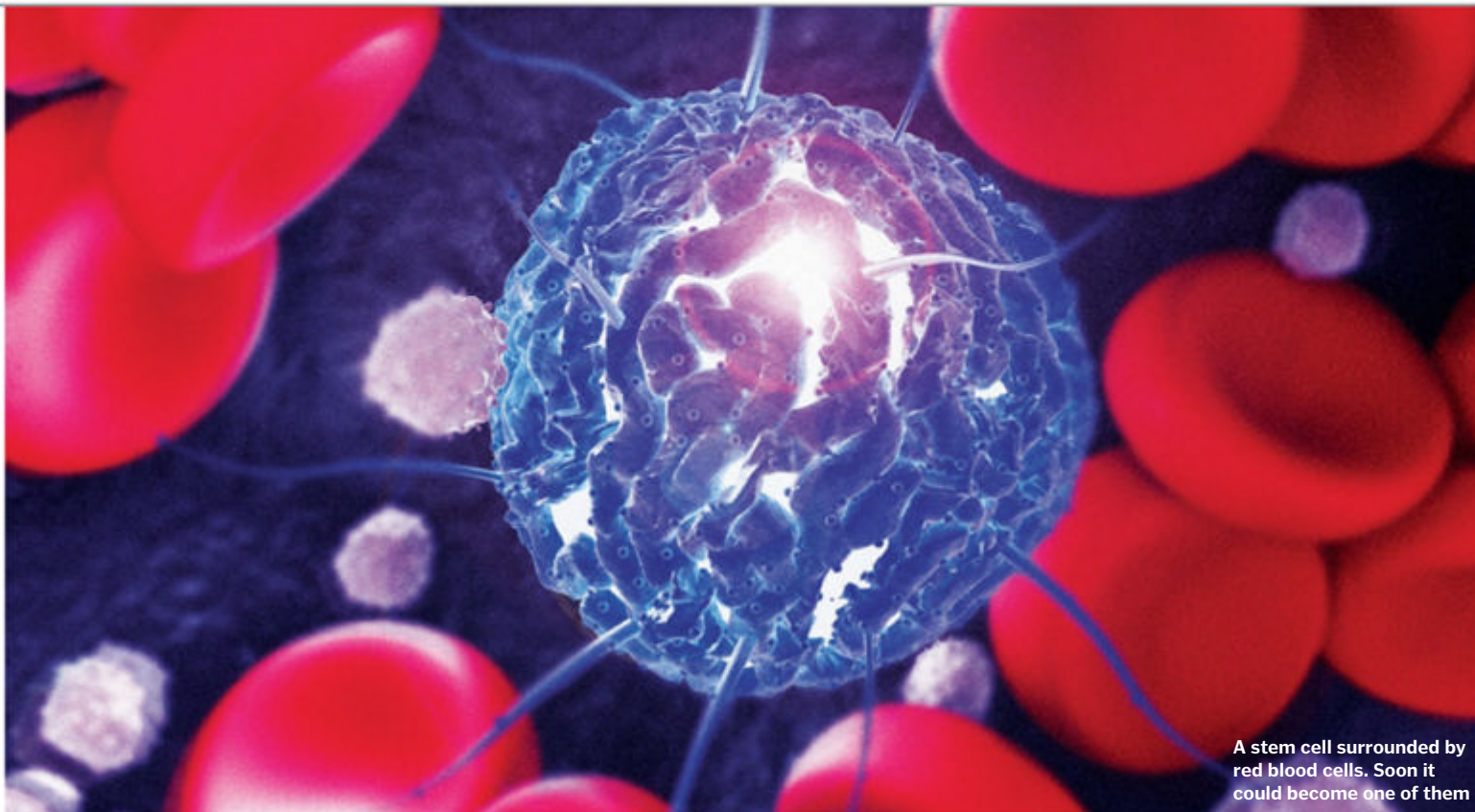
Prokaryotic cells divide asexually with DNA molecules replicating themselves in a process known as binary fission.



HOW IT WORKS

# HUMAN ANATOMY

## Stem cells explained



A stem cell surrounded by red blood cells. Soon it could become one of them

# What are stem cells?

### Understand how these building blocks bring new life



Stem cells are incredibly special because they have the potential to become any kind of cell in the body, from red blood cells to brain cells. They are essential to life and growth, as they repair tissues and replace dead cells. Skin, for example, is constantly replenished by skin stem cells.

Stem cells begin their life cycle as generic, featureless cells that don't contain tissue-specific structures, such as the ability to carry oxygen. Stem cells become specialised through a process called differentiation. This is triggered by signals inside and outside the cell. Internal signals come from strands of DNA that carry information for all cellular structures, while external signals include chemicals from nearby cells. Stem cells can replicate many times – known as

proliferation – while others such as nerve cells don't divide at all.

There are two stem cell types, as Professor Paul Fairchild, co-director of the Oxford Stem Cell Institute at Oxford Martin School explains: "Adult stem cells are multipotent, which means they are able to produce numerous cells that are loosely related, such as stem cells in the bone marrow can generate cells that make up the blood," he says. "In contrast, pluripotent stem cells, found within developing embryos, are able to make any one of the estimated 210 cell types that make up the human body."

This fascinating ability to transform and divide has made stem cells a rich source for medical research. Once their true potential has been harnessed, they could be used to treat a huge range of diseases and disabilities.

## Cloning cells



Scientists can reprogram cells to forget their current role and become pluripotent cells again – indistinguishable from early embryonic stem cells. These are called induced pluripotent stem cells (IPSCs) and can be used in areas of the body where they are needed, taking on the characteristics of nearby cells.

IPSCs are more reliable than stem cells grown from a donated embryo because the body is more likely to accept stem cells generated by itself. IPSCs can treat degenerative conditions such as Parkinson's disease and baldness, which are caused by cells dying without being replaced. The IPSCs fill those gaps, restoring the body's systems.

Professor Fairchild says IPSCs could help find a cure for certain disorders: "By deriving these cells from individuals with rare conditions, we are able to model the condition in the laboratory and investigate the effects of new drugs on that disease."



## What happens if you halve a flatworm?

**A** It dies **B** It becomes two flatworms **C** One half lives while the other dies



**Answer:**

Flatworms have the ability to regenerate organs, which is an invaluable skill for survival. Therefore, if you cut one in half, its pluripotent stem cells activate and create two flatworms. We'd rather you didn't try this, though!

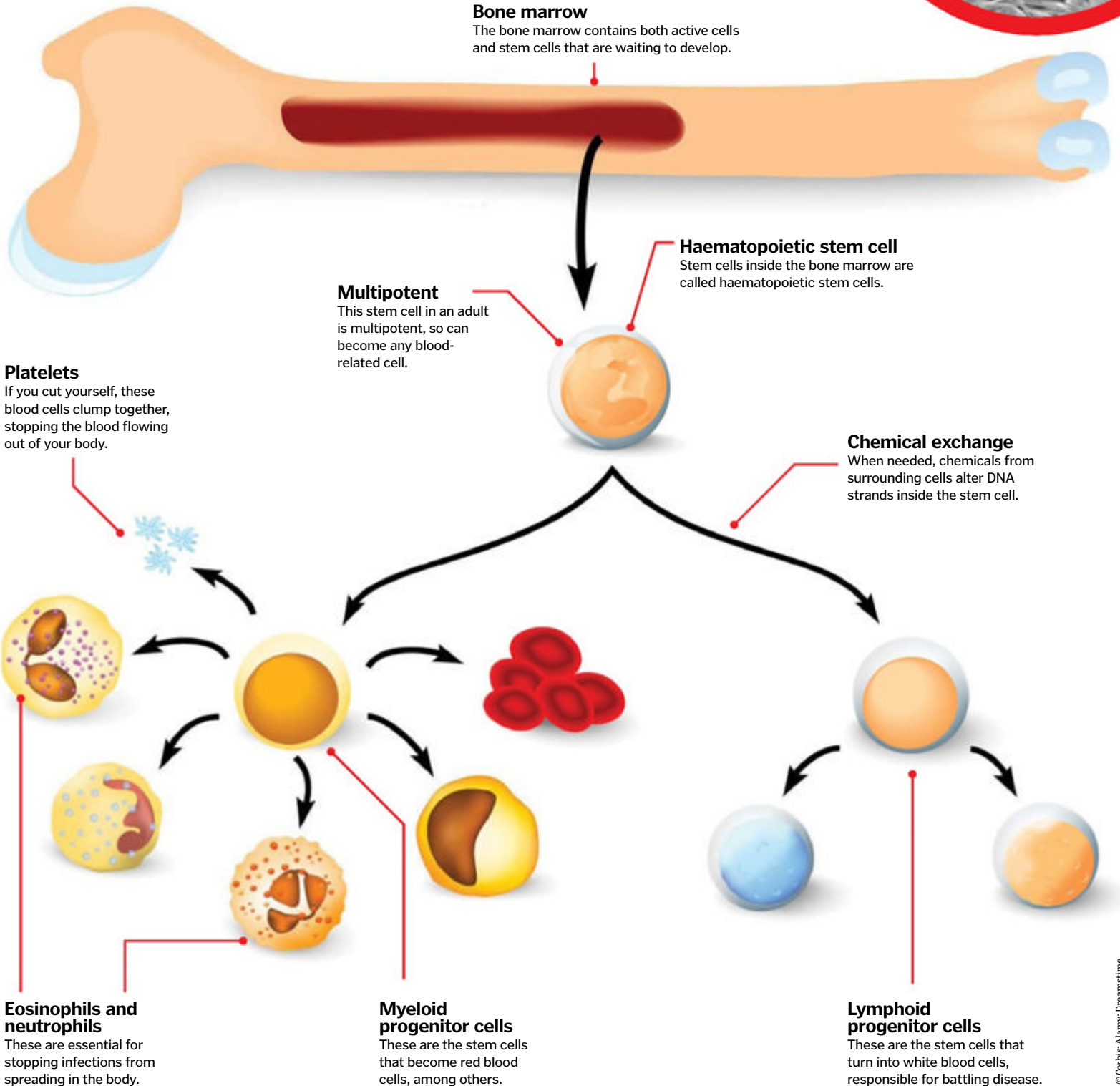
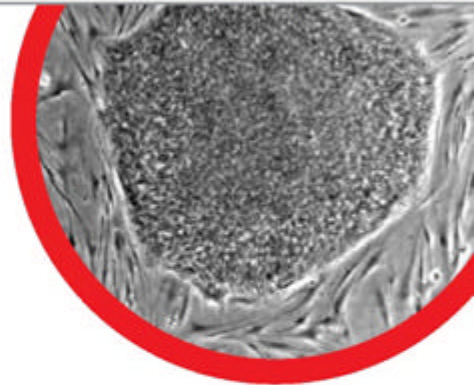
**DID YOU KNOW?** Stem cells have been used to restore the sight of patients suffering from certain forms of blindness

# How to grow a stem cell

Fertilised human embryos that have been donated for research have plenty of stem cells inside them as the cells are yet to fully form. Scientists extract the cells

and put them into a culture dish. This is filled with a culture medium, which is a mixture of nutrients that encourages the cells to divide and grow. As the cells

divide they are placed into multiple dishes, each trying to complete an embryonic stem cell line. If a line is completed, it can then be used for further research and development.





HOW IT WORKS

# HUMAN ANATOMY

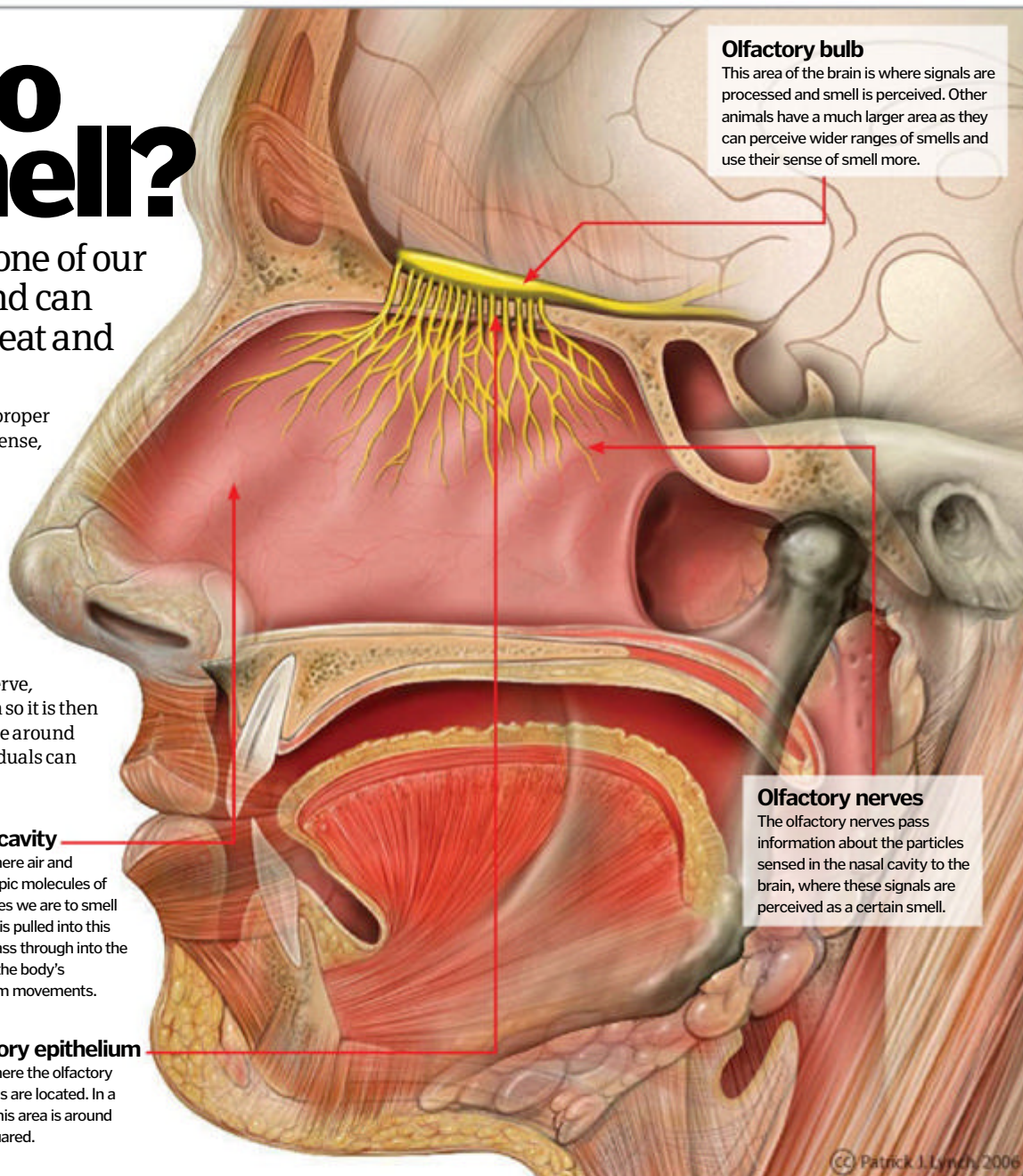
Human smell

## How do we smell?

The ability to smell is one of our most crucial senses and can influence the food we eat and the people we date...



Smell, or olfaction to use the proper terminology, is a very direct sense, in that we actually breathe in microscopic bits of the substance that we smell. These hit the olfactory epithelium, a mucus membrane in the nasal cavity, which contains millions of olfactory receptor neuron cells. Each of these sensory cells is covered in small hair-like structures, called cilia, which react to the odour and send signals to the olfactory nerve, which relays this information to the brain so it is then perceived as smell. Humans can recognise around 10,000 different odours and no two individuals can sense anything exactly the same.



**Olfactory bulb**  
This area of the brain is where signals are processed and smell is perceived. Other animals have a much larger area as they can perceive wider ranges of smells and use their sense of smell more.

**Olfactory nerves**  
The olfactory nerves pass information about the particles sensed in the nasal cavity to the brain, where these signals are perceived as a certain smell.

**Nasal cavity**  
This is where air and microscopic molecules of substances we are to smell enter. Air is pulled into this area to pass through into the lungs by the body's diaphragm movements.

**Olfactory epithelium**  
This is where the olfactory nerve cells are located. In a human, this area is around 10cm squared.

### 5 TOP FACTS SMELL

**1 Women smell better**  
Consistently, women out-perform men in smelling ability tests, and research has shown that women can recognise the smell of their baby only days after birth.

**2 Smell affects taste**  
The human nose is actually the main organ involved in perceiving taste. Taste buds can only distinguish sweet, sour, bitter and salt, everything else perceived comes from smell!

**3 Blind people can't smell better**  
It's a common myth that blind people can smell better than sighted. However, this has never been proven and most studies refute the fact.

**4 Smelling ability doesn't improve after childhood**  
At about eight, sense of smell reaches its full potential. Smelling ability reduces as you age.

**5 Sense of smell improves throughout the day**  
When you first wake up, your sense of smell is far less acute than in the evening.

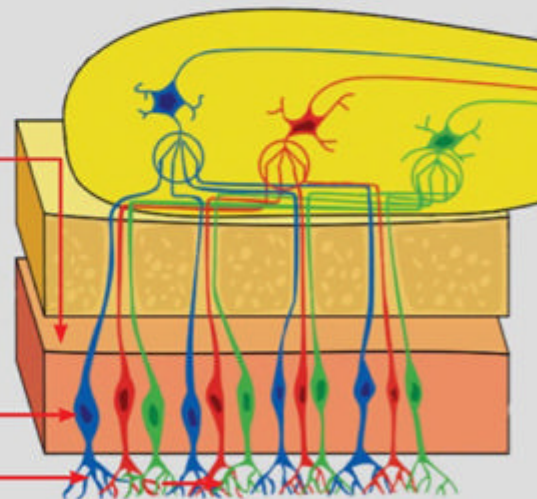
## Cells that smell

The patch of sensory cells located in the nasal cavity are made up of several different parts

**Mucosa**  
Mucosa lines the epithelium inside the nasal cavity and catches the odour particles to be sensed by the receptor neuron cells.

**Olfactory receptor neuron cells**  
These are odour-sensitive cells that are stimulated by the cilia. They then send messages through to the brain.

**Olfactory cilia**  
These sense the particles in air. There are 8-20 of these on each olfactory nerve cell which line the epithelium.



© Chubbcano, 2007

### Around 25% of people are 'supertasters'

**1** Things taste different to some because they are supertasters and experience taste significantly more intensely than 'normal' people.

### Other factors contribute to flavour

**2** It's not all about just taste buds. Factors such as temperature, smell and even hearing can contribute to a thing's flavour alongside taste.

### Taste buds are not only on the tongue

**3** As well as having around 8,000 taste buds on the human tongue, humans also have them on the roof of their mouth and oesophagus.

### You can lose your sense of taste

**4** If you happen to suffer a serious head injury, neurological disorder or even dental problems, then these can severely affect your ability to taste things properly.

### Butterflies taste with their feet

**5** Not all species taste things in the same way as humans. Butterflies' taste sensors, for example, are actually located in their feet!

**DID YOU KNOW?** The tongue contains about 8,000 taste buds



# How do taste buds work?

Discover how we distinguish between flavours

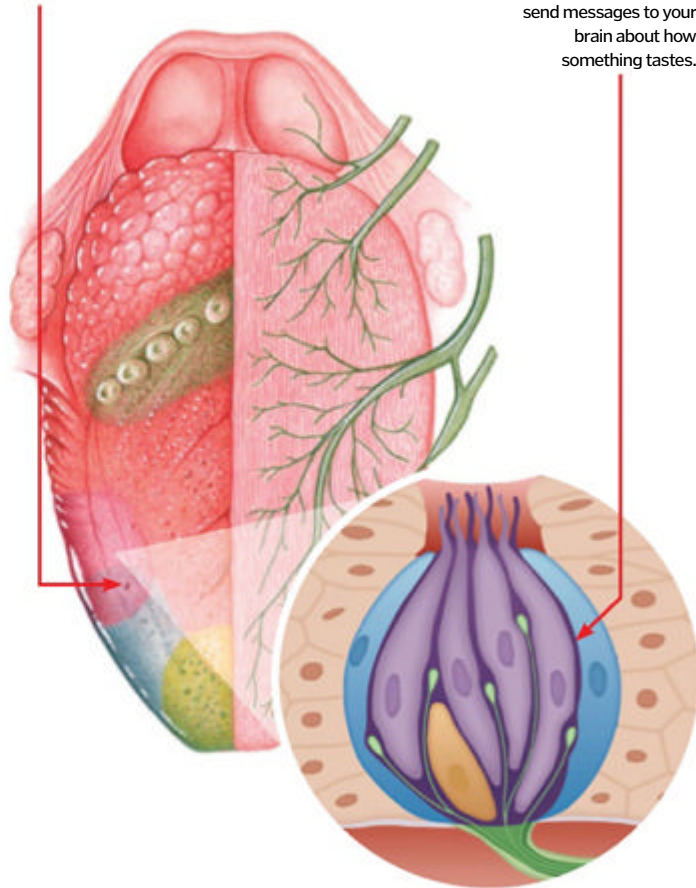


Taste buds are sensory organs that are found in the little bumps (or papillae) on the tongue. The tongue contains about 8,000 taste buds and they're replaced approximately every two weeks. Sensitive microscopic hairs on the taste buds (microvilli) pick up dissolved chemicals from food and send electrical signals to the brain that distinguishes between five different tastes: sweet, bitter, savoury (umami), salty and sour. Varying sensitivity to these tastes occurs across the whole of the tongue. But taste buds alone cannot tell us the exact flavour of food. Other factors such as smell, spiciness, temperature and texture also contribute to the eventual taste. So if you hold your nose while you eat then your brain won't get the full taste story!

*"Factors such as smell, spiciness and texture also contribute to taste"*

Taste qualities are found in all areas of the tongue, although some regions are more sensitive than others.

Your taste buds have very tiny, sensitive hairs called microvilli which send messages to your brain about how something tastes.



# The five basic human tastes

Building an in-depth map of the tongue



There is general agreement that humans have five basic tastes, although the fifth taste 'primary' has only been recently officially recognised. Sweetness, bitterness, sourness and saltiness were joined by savouriness in 2002. Several other sensations that the tongue can recognise have been identified but are not classified as tastes.

Sweetness is associated primarily with simple carbohydrates – of which sugar is one of the most common. The way sweetness is detected is complex and only recently has the current model of multiple binding sites between the receptors and sweet substance itself been proposed and accepted. A sweet taste infers that the substance is high in energy and studies have shown that newborns in particular, who need a high calorie intake to grow, demonstrate a preference for sugar concentrations sweeter than lactose, which is found in breast milk.

Bitterness can be detected in very low levels and is generally perceived to be an unpleasant or sharp taste. Many toxic substances in nature are known to be bitter and there is an argument proposed by evolutionary scientists that bitterness sensitivity is an evolutionary defence mechanism. Humans, however, have now developed various techniques to make previous inedible bitter substances edible through reducing their toxicity, often through cooking.

The taste of saltiness is produced by the presence of sodium ions, or other closely related alkali metal ions. Potassium and lithium produce a similar taste as they are most closely related to sodium.

Sourness detects acidity. The way we measure the degree of sourness is through rating sour substances against dilute hydrochloric. The mechanism involved in detecting sourness is similar to saltiness in that taste is caused by a concentration of ions – in this case hydrogen ions. Savouriness is the newest of the recognised basic tastes and the taste is produced by fermented or aged foods. Glutamate is a common compound that can cause this taste and consequently savouriness is considered fundamental to Eastern cuisine.



# What are tonsils for?

What purpose do these fleshy lumps in the back of our throats serve?

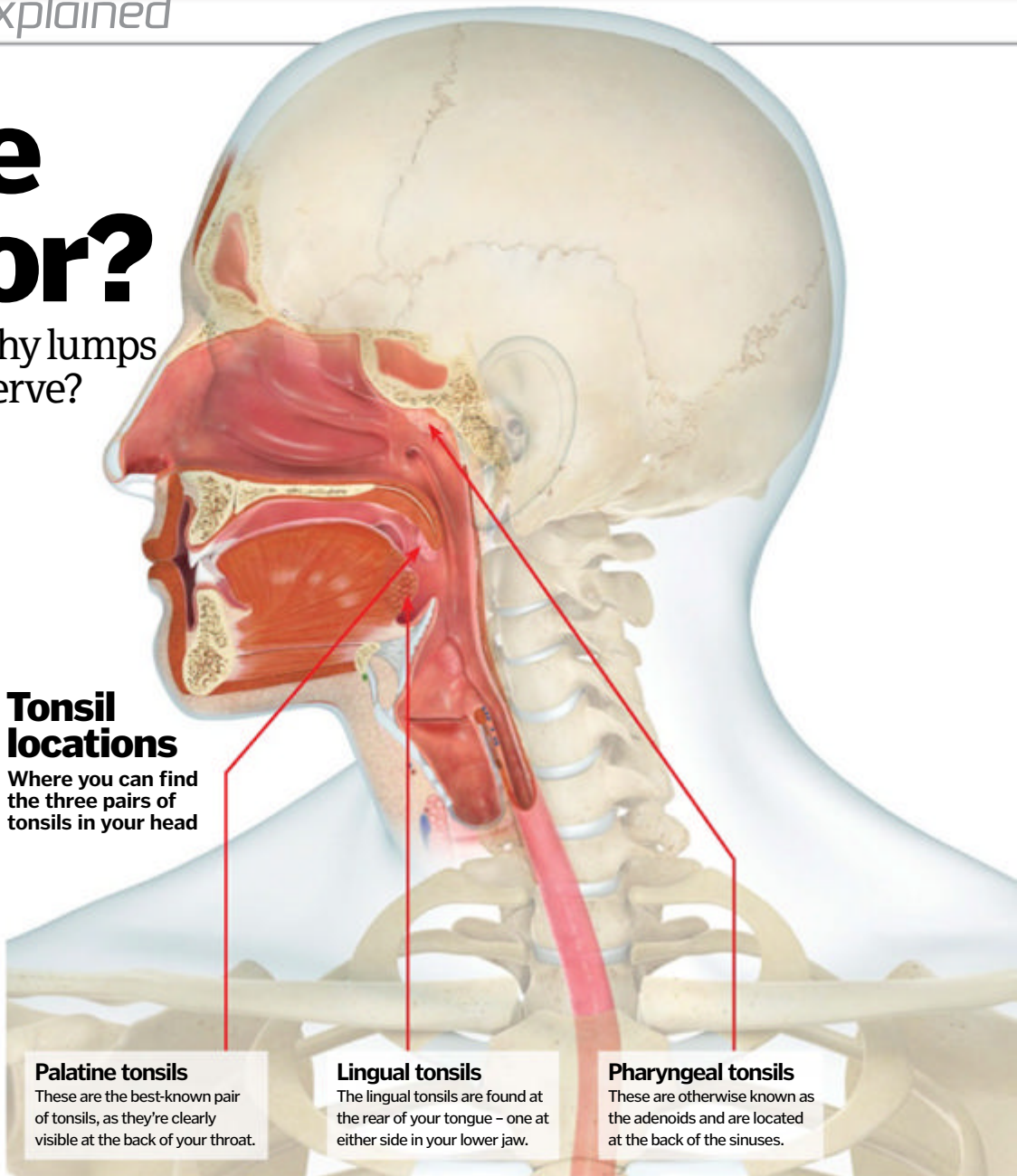


Tonsils are the small masses of flesh found in pairs at the back of the throats of many mammals. In humans the word is actually used to describe three sets of this spongy lymphatic tissue: the lingual tonsils, the pharyngeal tonsils and the more commonly recognised palatine tonsils.

The palatine tonsils are the oval bits that hang down from either side at the back of your throat – you can see them if you open your mouth wide in the mirror. Although the full purpose of the palatine tonsils isn't yet understood, because they produce antibodies and because of their prominent position in the throat, they're thought to be the first line of defence against potential infection in both the respiratory and digestive tracts.

The pharyngeal tonsils are also known as the adenoids. These are found tucked away in the nasal pharynx and serve a similar purpose to the palatine tonsils but shrink in adulthood.

The lingual tonsils are found at the back of the tongue towards the root and, if you poke your tongue right out, you should spot them. These are drained very efficiently by mucous glands so they very rarely get infected.



## Tonsil locations

Where you can find the three pairs of tonsils in your head

### Palatine tonsils

These are the best-known pair of tonsils, as they're clearly visible at the back of your throat.

### Lingual tonsils

The lingual tonsils are found at the rear of your tongue – one at either side in your lower jaw.

### Pharyngeal tonsils

These are otherwise known as the adenoids and are located at the back of the sinuses.



Lots of bed rest, fluids and pain relief like paracetamol are all recommended for treating tonsillitis

## Tonsillitis in focus

Tonsillitis is usually caused by certain bacteria (eg group A beta-haemolytic streptococci) and sometimes viral infections that result in a sore and swollen throat, a fever, white spots at the back of the throat and difficulty swallowing. Usually rest and a course of antibiotics will see it off, but occasionally the infection is very severe and can potentially cause serious problems, or reoccurs very frequently. In these cases a tonsillectomy may be considered – a surgical procedure where the tonsils are removed.

The adenoids are less commonly infected but, when they are, they become inflamed and swell to obstruct breathing through the nose and interfere with drainage from the sinuses, which can lead to further infections. In younger people, constant breathing through the mouth can stress the facial bones and cause deformities as they grow, which is why children will sometimes have their adenoid glands removed.



# How do humans speak?

The vocal cords and larynx in particular have evolved over time to enable humans to produce a dramatic range of sounds in order to communicate – but how do they work?



Vocal cords, also known as vocal folds, are situated in the larynx, which is placed at the top of the trachea.

They are layers of mucous membranes that stretch across the larynx and control how air is expelled from the lungs in order to make certain sounds. The primary usage of vocal cords within humans is to communicate and it is hypothesised that human vocal cords actually developed to the extent we see now to facilitate advanced levels of communication in response to the formation of social groupings during phases of primate, and specifically human, evolution.

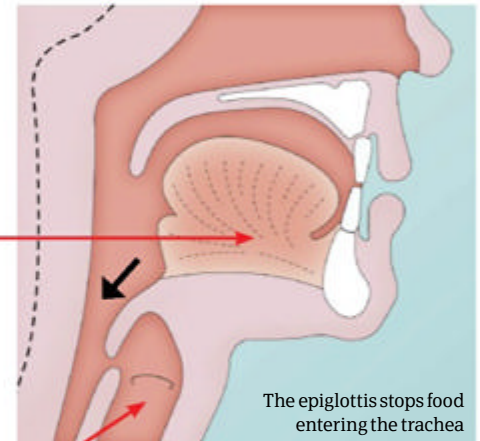
As air is expelled from the lungs, the vocal folds vibrate and collide to produce a range of sounds. The type of sound emitted is effected by exactly how the folds collide, move and stretch as air passes over them. An individual 'fundamental frequency' (their standard pitch) is determined by the length, size and tension of their vocal cords. Movement of the vocal folds is controlled by the vagus nerve, and sound is then further fine-tuned to form words and sounds that we can recognise by the larynx, tongue and lips. Fundamental frequency in males averages at 125Hz, and at 210Hz in females. Children have a higher average pitch at around 300Hz.

## Differences between male and female vocal cords

Male voices are often much lower than female voices. This is primarily due to the different size of vocal folds present in each sex, with males having larger folds that create a lower pitched sound, and females having smaller folds that create a higher pitch sound. The average size for male vocal cords are between 17 and 25mm, and females are normally between 12.5 and 17.5mm. From the range in size, however, males can be seen to have quite high pitch voices, and females can have quite low pitch voices.

The other major biological difference that effects pitch is that males generally have a larger vocal tract, which can further lower the tone of their voice independent of vocal cord size. The pitch and tone of male

voices has been studied in relation to sexual success, and individuals with lower voices have been seen to be more successful in reproduction. The reason proposed for this is that a lower tone voice may indicate a higher level of testosterone present in a male.



### Tongue

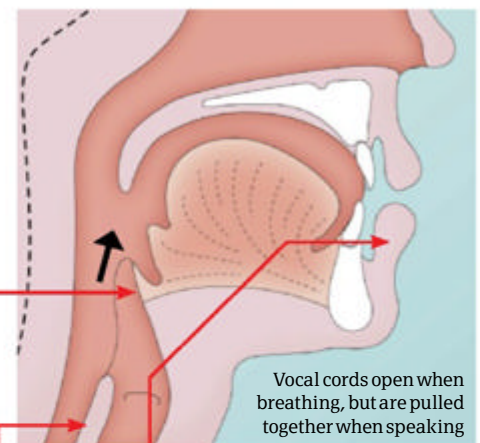
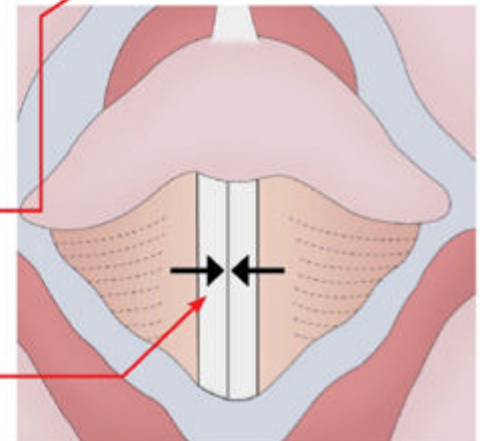
This muscle, situated in the mouth, can affect and change sound as it travels up from the vocal cords and out through the mouth.

### Trachea

The vocal cords are situated at the top of the trachea, which is where air from the lungs travels up through the chest.

### Vocal cords

These layers of mucous membranes stretch across the larynx and they open, close and vibrate to produce different sounds.



### Epiglottis

This is a flap of skin that shuts off the trachea when an individual is swallowing food. It stops food and liquids 'going down the wrong way'.

### Oesophagus

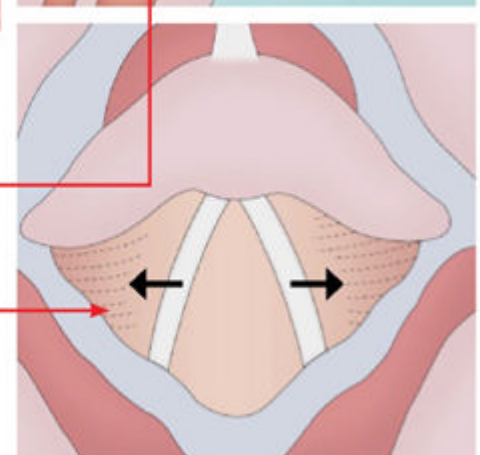
This tube, situated behind the trachea, is where food and liquid travels down to the stomach.

### Lips

Lips are essential for the production of specific sounds, like 'b' or 'p'.

### Larynx

Known as the voice box, this protects the trachea and is heavily involved in controlling pitch and volume. The vocal cords are situated within the larynx.





HOW IT WORKS

# HUMAN ANATOMY

The most fascinating organ of all

# Your brain

## The human brain is the most mysterious – and complex – entity in the known universe



It's a computer, a thinking machine, a pink organ, and a vast collection of neurons – but how does it work? The human brain is amazingly complex – in fact, more complex than anything in the known universe. The brain effortlessly consumes power, stores memories, processes thoughts, and reacts to danger.

In some ways, the human brain is like a car engine. The fuel – which could be the sandwich you had for lunch or a sugar doughnut for breakfast – causes neurons to fire in a logical sequence and to bond with other neurons. This combination of neurons occurs incredibly fast, but the chain reaction might help you compose a symphony or recall entire passages of a book, help you pedal a bike or write an email to a friend.

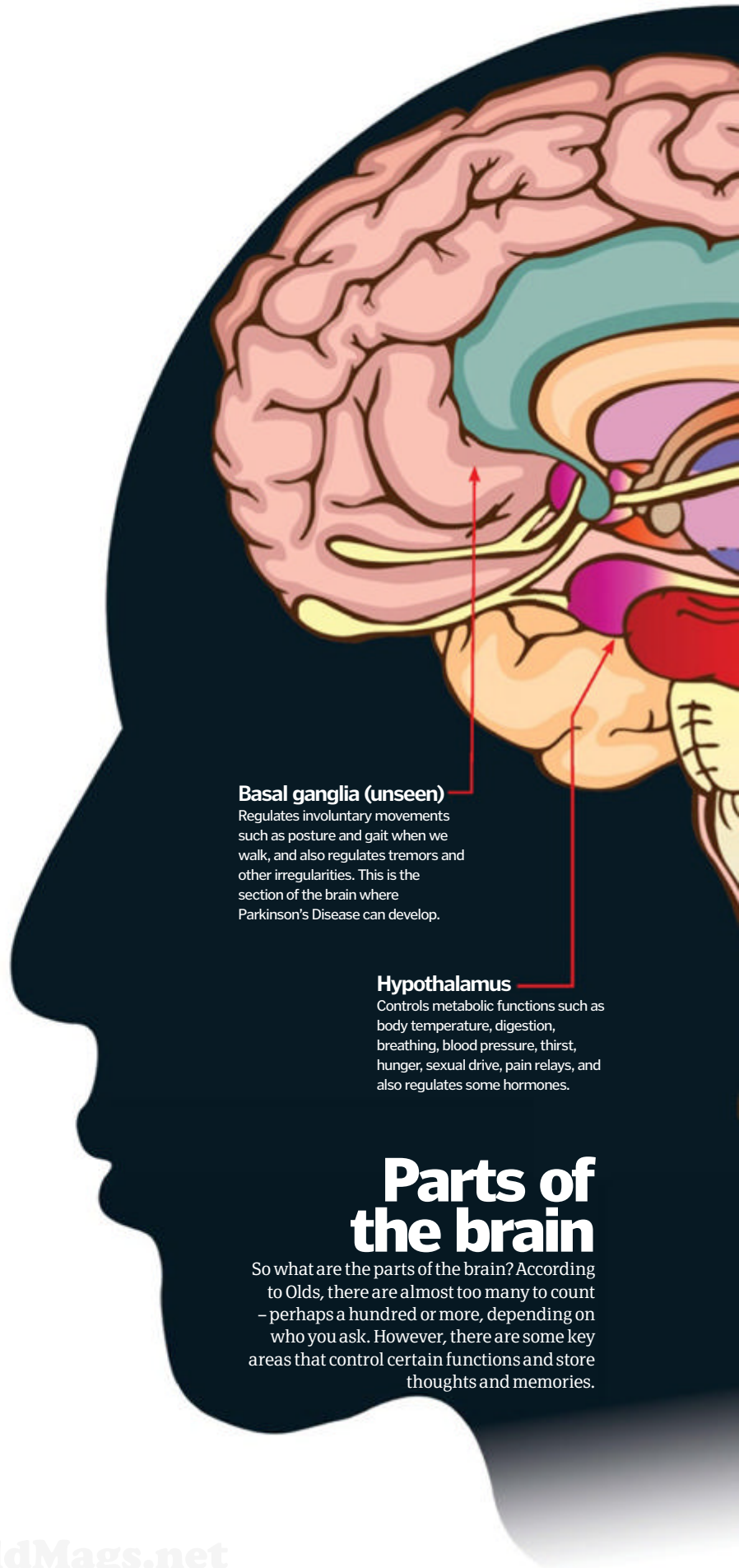
Scientists are just beginning to understand how these brain neurons work – they have not figured out how they trigger a reaction when you touch a hot stove, for example, or why you can re-generate brain cells when you work out at the gym.

The connections inside a brain are very similar to the internet – the connections are constantly exchanging information. Yet, even the internet is rather simplistic when compared to neurons. There are ten to 100 neurons, and each one makes thousands of connections. This is how the brain processes information, or determines how to move an arm and grip a surface. These calculations, perceptions, memories, and reactions occur almost instantaneously, and not just a few times per minute, but millions. According to Jim Olds, research director with George Mason University, if the internet were as complex as our solar system, then the brain would be as complex as our galaxy. In other words, we have a lot to learn. Science has not given up trying, and has made recent discoveries about how we adapt, learn new information, and can actually increase brain capability.

In the most basic sense, our brain is the centre of all input and outputs in the human body. Dr Paula Tallal, a co-director of neuroscience at Rutgers University, says the brain is constantly processing sensory information – even from infancy. "It's easiest to think of the brain in terms of inputs and outputs," says Tallal. "Inputs are sensory information, outputs are how our brain organises that information and controls our motor systems."

Tallal says one of the primary functions of the brain is in learning to predict what comes next. In her research for Scientific Learning, she has found that young children enjoy having the same book read to them again and again because that is how the brain registers acoustic cues that form into phonemes (sounds) to become spoken words.

"We learn to put things together so that they become smooth sequences," she says. These smooth sequences are observable in the brain, interpreting



### Basal ganglia (unseen)

Regulates involuntary movements such as posture and gait when we walk, and also regulates tremors and other irregularities. This is the section of the brain where Parkinson's Disease can develop.

### Hypothalamus

Controls metabolic functions such as body temperature, digestion, breathing, blood pressure, thirst, hunger, sexual drive, pain relays, and also regulates some hormones.

## Parts of the brain

So what are the parts of the brain? According to Olds, there are almost too many to count – perhaps a hundred or more, depending on who you ask. However, there are some key areas that control certain functions and store thoughts and memories.

**LARGEST**



**Sperm whale**  
The sperm whale has evolved the largest brain ever to exist on our planet, weighing as much as nine kilograms or 20 pounds.

**SMALLEST**



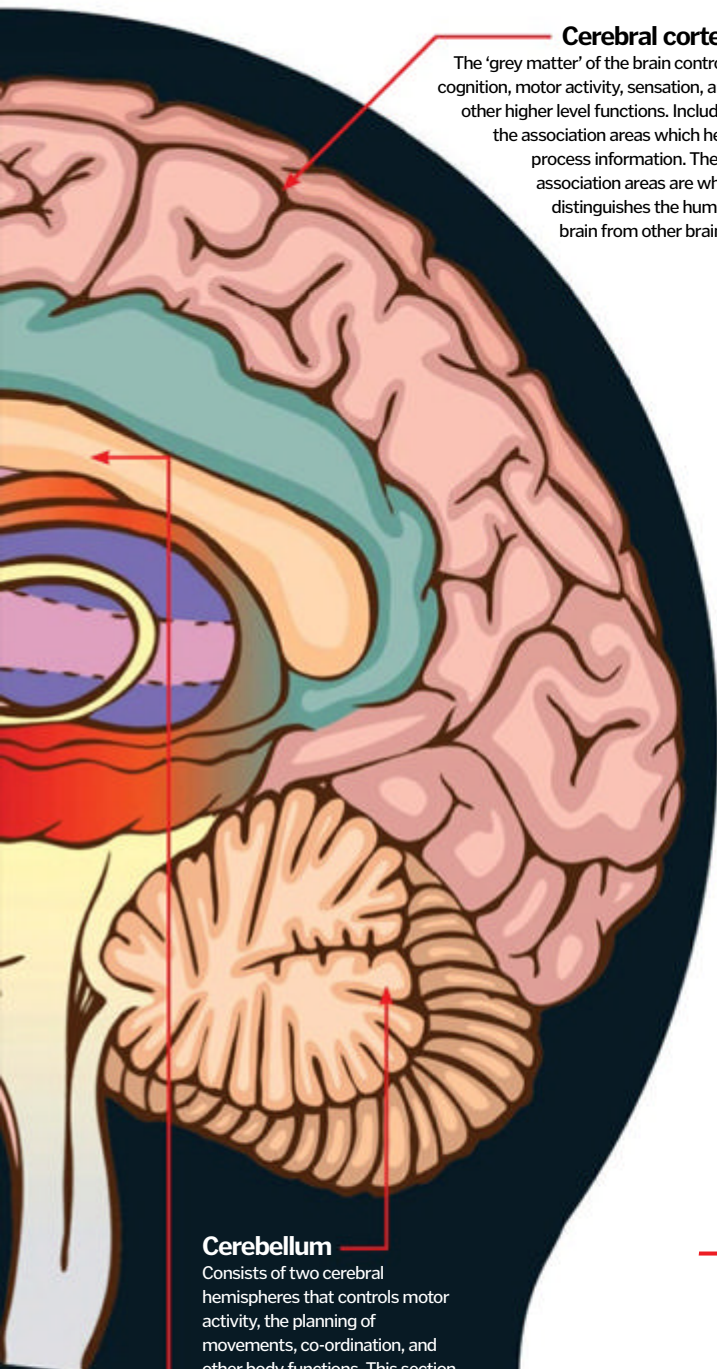
**Mouse lemur**  
The smallest primate brain is owned by the pygmy mouse lemur of Madagascar and weighs in at just 0.004 pounds (2g).

**LARGEST ON LAND**



**Elephant**  
At 10.5 pounds (4.78kg) it's certainly a big one. The brain of the elephant makes up less than 0.1 per cent of its body weight.

**DID YOU KNOW?** The average human brain is 140mm wide x 167mm long x 93mm high



**Cerebral cortex**

The 'grey matter' of the brain controls cognition, motor activity, sensation, and other higher level functions. Includes the association areas which help process information. These association areas are what distinguishes the human brain from other brains.

**Cerebellum**

Consists of two cerebral hemispheres that controls motor activity, the planning of movements, co-ordination, and other body functions. This section of the brain weighs about 200 grams (compared to 1,300 grams for the main cortex).

**Limbic system**

The part of the brain that controls intuitive thinking, emotional response, sense of smell and taste.

# Functions of the cerebral cortex

The cerebral cortex is the wrinkling part of our brain that shows up when you see pictures of the brain

**Frontal lobe**

Primarily controls senses such as taste, hearing, and smell. Association areas might help us determine language and the tone of someone's voice.

**Problem solving**

Complex movements

**Prefrontal cortex**

Executive functions such as complex planning, memorising, social and verbal skills, and anything that requires advanced thinking and interactions. In adults, helps us determine whether an action makes sense or is dangerous.

Complex movements

Skeletal movement

**Parietal lobe**

Where the brain senses touch and anything that interacts with the surface of the skin, makes us aware of the feelings of our body and where we are in space.

Touch and skin sensations

Language

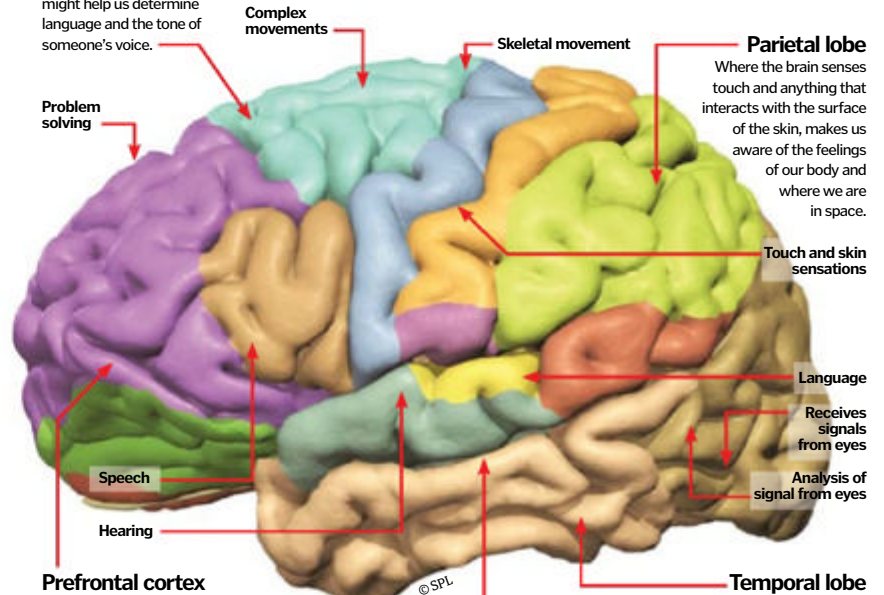
Receives signals from eyes

Analysis of signal from eyes

**Temporal lobe**

What distinguishes the human brain – the ability to process and interpret what other parts of the brain are hearing, sensing, or tasting and determine a response.

Analysis of sounds



*"In a sense, the main function of the brain is in ordering information – interpreting the outside world and making sense of it"*

the outside world and making sense of it. The brain is actually a series of interconnected 'superhighways' or pathways that move 'data' from one part of the body to another.

Tallal says another way to think about the brain is by lower and upper areas. The spinal cord moves information up to the brain stem, then up into the cerebral cortex which controls thoughts and memories. Interestingly, the brain really does work like a powerful computer in determining not only movements but registering memories that can be quickly recalled.

According to Dr Robert Melillo, a neurologist and the founder of the Brain Balance Centers ([www.brainbalancecenters.com](http://www.brainbalancecenters.com)), the brain actually predetermines actions and calculates the results about a half-second before performing

them (or even faster in some cases). This means that when you reach out to open a door, your brain has already predetermined how to move your elbow and clasp your hand around the door handle – maybe even simulated this movement more than once, before you even actually perform the action.

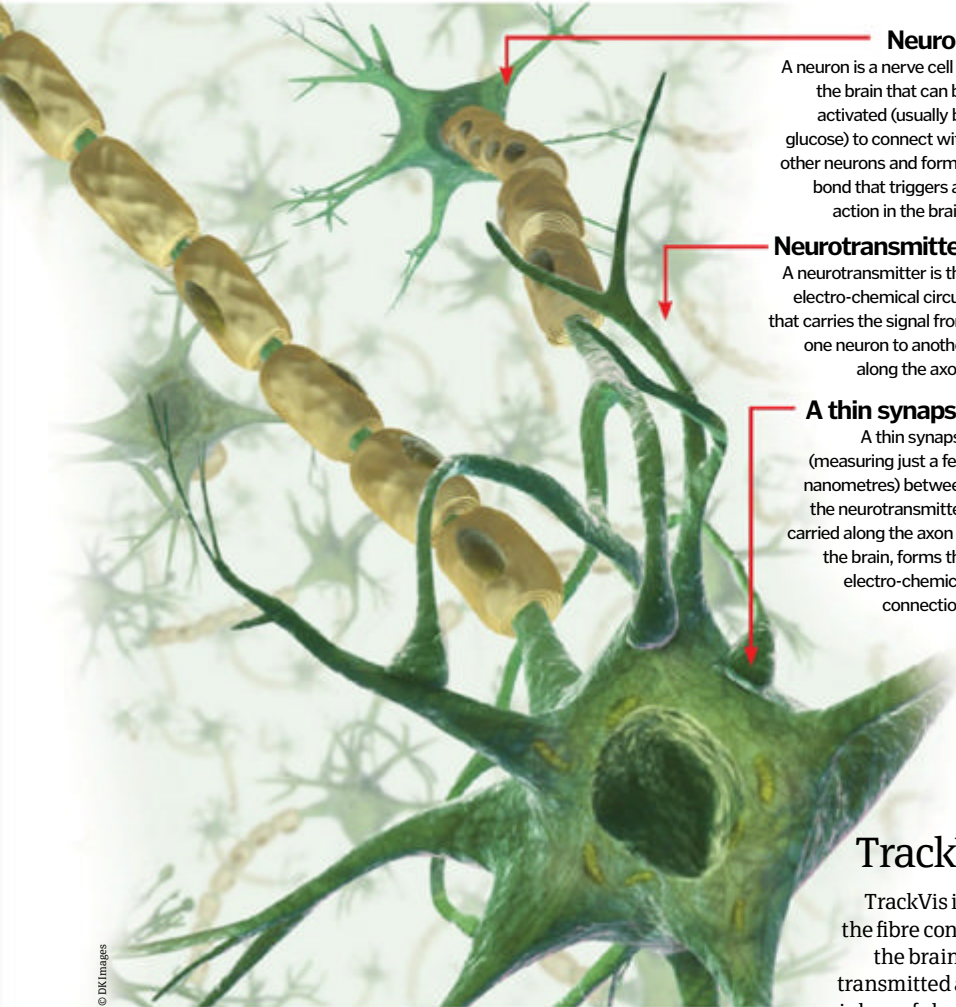
Another interesting aspect to the brain is that there are some voluntary movements and some involuntary. Some sections of the brain might control a voluntary movement – such as patting your knee to a beat. Another section controls involuntary movements, such as the gait of your walk – which is passed down from your parents. Reflexes, long-term memories, the pain reflex – these are all aspects that are controlled by sections in the brain.



HOW IT WORKS

# HUMAN ANATOMY

## Neurons, nerves and the spinal cord



© DK Images

### Neuron

A neuron is a nerve cell in the brain that can be activated (usually by glucose) to connect with other neurons and form a bond that triggers an action in the brain.

### Neurotransmitter

A neurotransmitter is the electro-chemical circuit that carries the signal from one neuron to another along the axon.

### A thin synapse

A thin synapse (measuring just a few nanometres) between the neurotransmitter, carried along the axon in the brain, forms the electro-chemical connection.

# Neurons explained

## Neurons fire like electrical circuits

Neurons are a kind of cell in the brain (humans have many cells in the body, including fat cells, kidney cells, and gland cells). A neuron is essentially like a hub that works with nearby neurons to generate an electrical and chemical charge. Dr Likosky of the Swedish Medical Institute says another way of thinking about neurons is that they are like a basketball and the connections (called axons) are like electrical wires that connect to other neurons. This creates a kind of circuit in the human body. Tallal explained that input from the five senses in the body cause neurons to fire.

"The more often a collection of neurons are stimulated together in time, the more likely they are to bind together and the easier and easier it becomes for that pattern of neurons to fire in synchrony as well as sequentially," says Tallal.

# Brain maps

## TrackVis generates unique maps of the brain

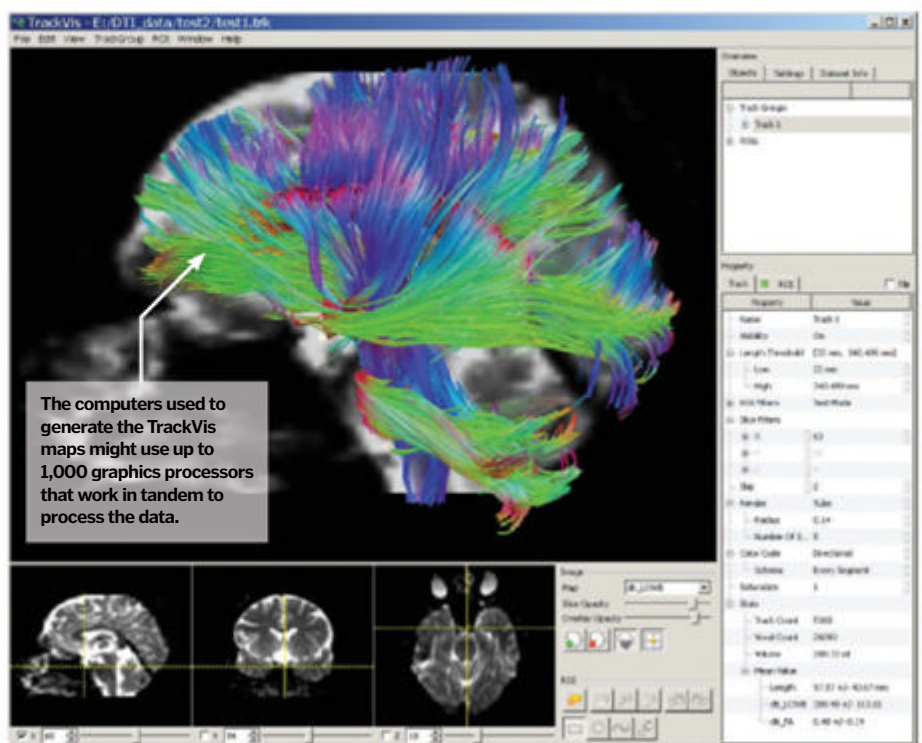
TrackVis is a free program used by neurologists to see a map of the brain that shows the fibre connections. On every brain, these neural pathways help connect one part of the brain to another so that a feeling you experience in one part of the brain can be transmitted and processed by another part of the brain (one that may decide the touch is harmful or pleasant). TrackVis uses fMRI readings on actual patients to generate the colourful and eye-catching images. To construct the maps, the program can take several hours to determine exactly how the fibres are positioning in the brain.

*"The brain - a fragile organ that weighs about 1,500 grams"*

# What is my brain like?

If you could hold it in your hand...

In pictures, the human brain often looks pink and spongy. According to Dr William Likosky, a neurologist at the Swedish Medical Institute ([www.swedish.org](http://www.swedish.org)), the brain is actually quite different from what most people think. Likosky described the brain as being not unlike feta cheese in appearance - a fragile organ that weighs about 1,500 grams and sags almost like a bag filled with water. In the skull, the brain is highly protected and has hard tissue, but most of the fatty tissue in the brain - which helps pass chemicals and other substances through membranes - is considerably more delicate.



The computers used to generate the TrackVis maps might use up to 1,000 graphics processors that work in tandem to process the data.

**100,000 miles of blood vessels**

**1** There are a staggering 100,000 miles of blood vessels in the brain, that is enough to wrap around Earth four times.

**Headache not in the brain?**

**2** A headache actually occurs in blood vessels around the brain, not around the brain itself. The brain cannot feel any pain whatsoever.

**The brain consists of 60% fat**

**3** Your brain is 60 per cent fat - which helps carry water and protein through membranes to brain cells, keeping everything ticking over.

**Your brain uses 20% of power**

**4** The brain is quite greedy; it uses about 20 per cent of the power in your body that is generated from food consumption and processing.

**The brain has trillions of connections**

**5** The brain has trillions of connections - much more than the internet, and more than can currently be counted.

**DID YOU KNOW?** The adult human brain weighs about 1.4kg (or three pounds)

# How do nerves work?

Nerves carry signals throughout the body - a chemical superhighway

Nerves are the transmission cables that carry brain waves in the human body, says Sol Diamond, an assistant professor at the Thayer School of Engineering at Dartmouth. According to Diamond, nerves communicate these signals from one point to another, whether from your toenail up to your brain or from the side of your head.

**Nerve transmissions**

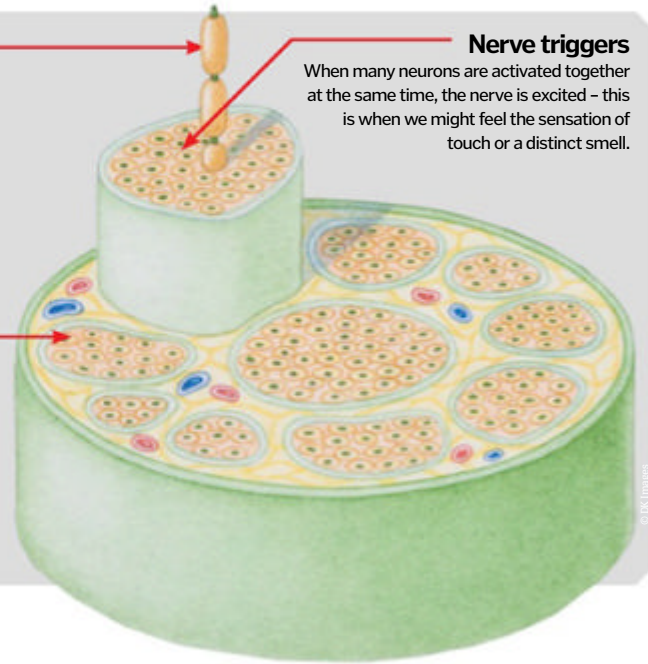
Some nerve transmissions travel great distances through the human body, others travel short distances - both use a de-polarisation to create the circuit. De-polarisation is like a wound-up spring that releases stored energy once it is triggered.

**Myelinated and un-myelinated**

Some nerves are myelinated (or insulated) with fatty tissue that appears white and forms a slower connection over a longer distance. Others are un-myelinated and are un-insulated. These nerves travel shorter distances.

**Nerve triggers**

When many neurons are activated together at the same time, the nerve is excited - this is when we might feel the sensation of touch or a distinct smell.



# What does the spinal cord do?

The spinal cord actually is part of the brain and plays a major role

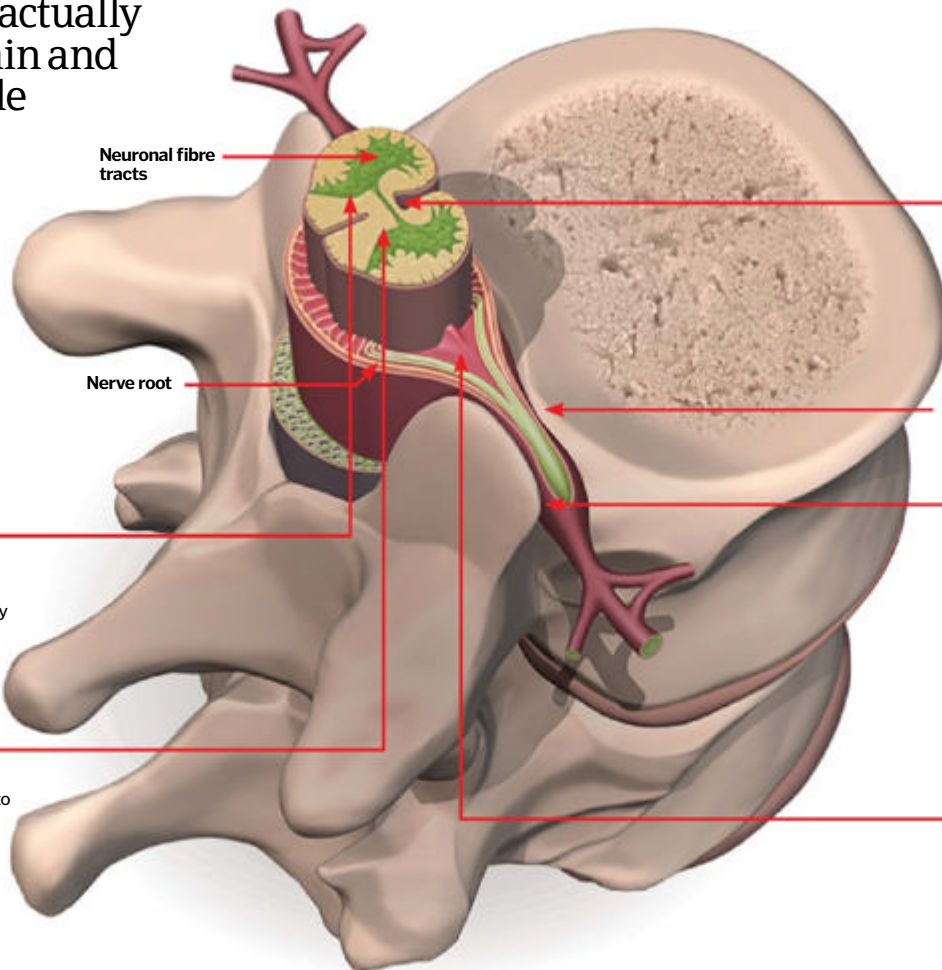
Scientists have known for the past 100 years or so that the spinal cord is actually part of the brain. According to Melillo, while the brain has grey matter on the outside (protected by the skull) and protected white matter on the inside, the spinal cord is the reverse: the grey matter is inside the spinal cord and the white matter is outside.

**Grey matter cells**

Grey matter cells in the spinal cord cannot regenerate, which is why people with a serious spinal cord injury cannot recover over a period of time. White matter cells can re-generate.

**White matter cells**

White matter cells in the spinal cord carry the electro-chemical pulses up to the brain. For example, when you are kicked in the shin, you feel the pain in the shin and your brain then tells you to move your hand to cover that area.



**Spinal cord core**

In the core of the spinal cord, grey matter - like the kind in the outer layer of the brain - is for processing nerve cells such as touch, pain and movement.

**Neurogenesis**

According to Tallal, by repeating brain activities such as memorisation and pattern recognition, you can grow new brain cells in the spinal cord and brain.

**Neuroplasticity**

In the spinal cord and in the brain, cells can rejuvenate over time when you exercise and become strengthened. This process is called neuroplasticity.



HOW IT WORKS

# HUMAN ANATOMY

Inside the human eye

# Science of vision

## Uncovering one of the most complex constructs in the natural world



The structure of the human eye is so complex that it's hard to believe that it's not the product of intelligent design, but by looking at the eyes of other animals, scientists have shown that it evolved very gradually from a simple light-dark sensor over the course of around 100 million years. It functions in a very similar way to a camera, with an opening through which the light enters, a lens for focusing and a light-sensitive membrane at the back.

The amount of light that enters the eye is controlled by the circular and radial muscles in the iris, which contract and relax to alter the size

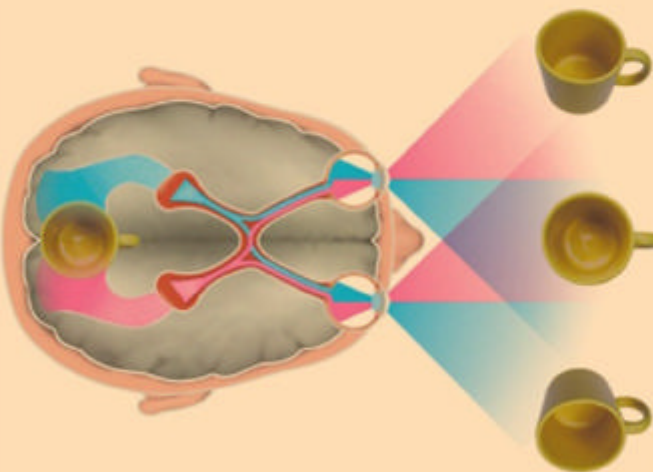
of the pupil. The light first passes through a tough protective sheet called the cornea, and then moves into the lens. This adjustable structure bends the light, focusing it down to a point on the retina, at the back of the eye.

The retina is covered in millions of light-sensitive receptors known as rods and cones. Each receptor contains pigment molecules, which change shape when they are hit by light, triggering an electrical message that travels to the brain via the optic nerve.

## Seeing in three dimensions

Each eye sees a slightly different image, allowing the brain to perceive depth

Our eyes are only able to produce two-dimensional images, but with some clever processing, the brain is able to build these flat pictures into a three-dimensional view. Our eyes are positioned about five centimetres (two inches) apart, so each sees the world from a slightly different angle. The brain compares the two pictures, using the differences to create the illusion of depth.



### Individual image

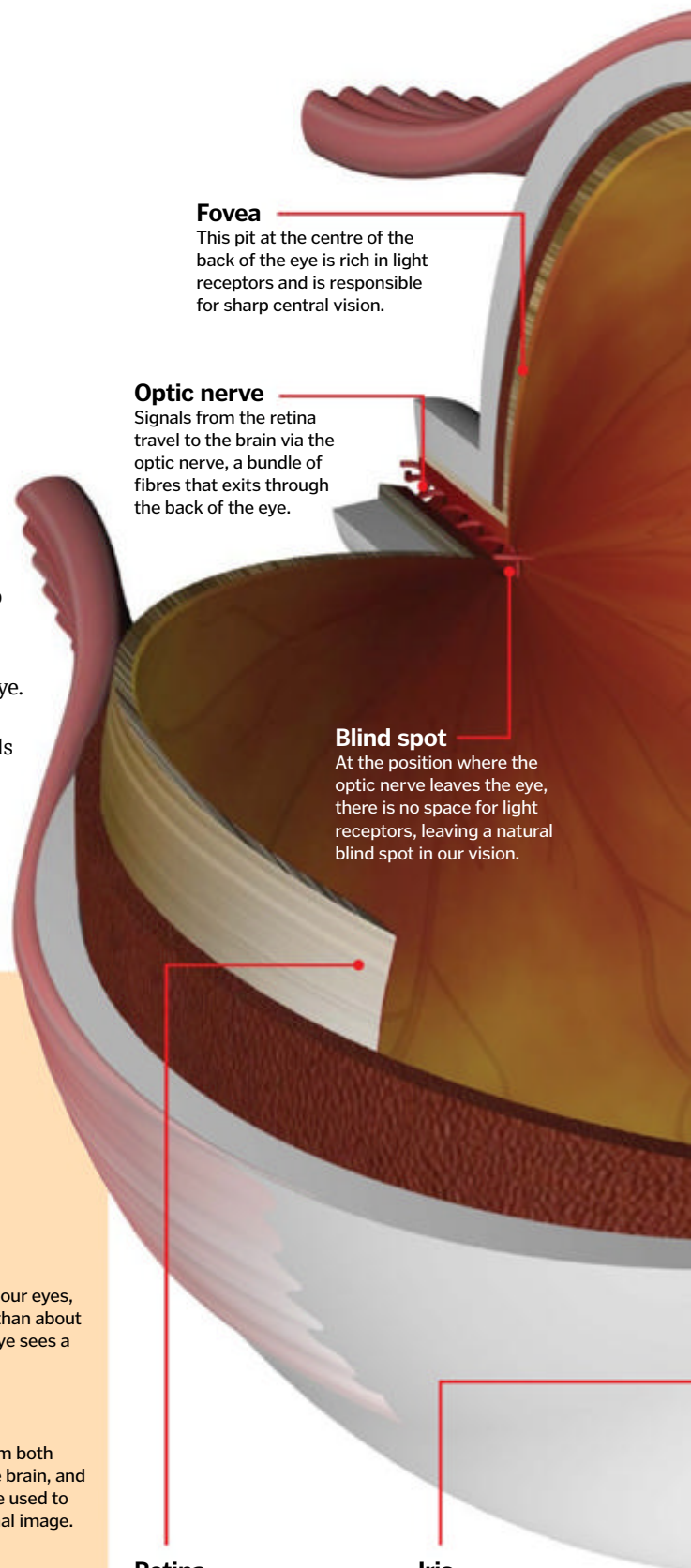
Due to the positioning of our eyes, when objects are closer than about 5.5m (18ft) away, each eye sees a slightly different angle.

### Combined image

The incoming signals from both eyes are compared in the brain, and the subtle differences are used to create a three-dimensional image.

### Try it for yourself

By holding your hand in front of your face and closing one eye at a time, it is easy to see the different 2D views perceived by each eye.



### Fovea

This pit at the centre of the back of the eye is rich in light receptors and is responsible for sharp central vision.

### Optic nerve

Signals from the retina travel to the brain via the optic nerve, a bundle of fibres that exits through the back of the eye.

### Blind spot

At the position where the optic nerve leaves the eye, there is no space for light receptors, leaving a natural blind spot in our vision.

### Retina

The retina is covered in receptors that detect light. It is highly pigmented, preventing the light from scattering and ensuring a crisp image.

### Iris

This circular muscle controls the size of the pupil, allowing it to be closed down in bright light, or opened wide in the dark.

**1. BIG**



**Tarsier**

The eyes of these tiny primates are as big as their brains, so as a result, they have developed extremely good night vision.

**2. BIGGER**



**Ostrich**

Ostriches are the largest living birds and also have the largest eyes of any living land animal, measuring an incredible 5cm (2in) in diameter.

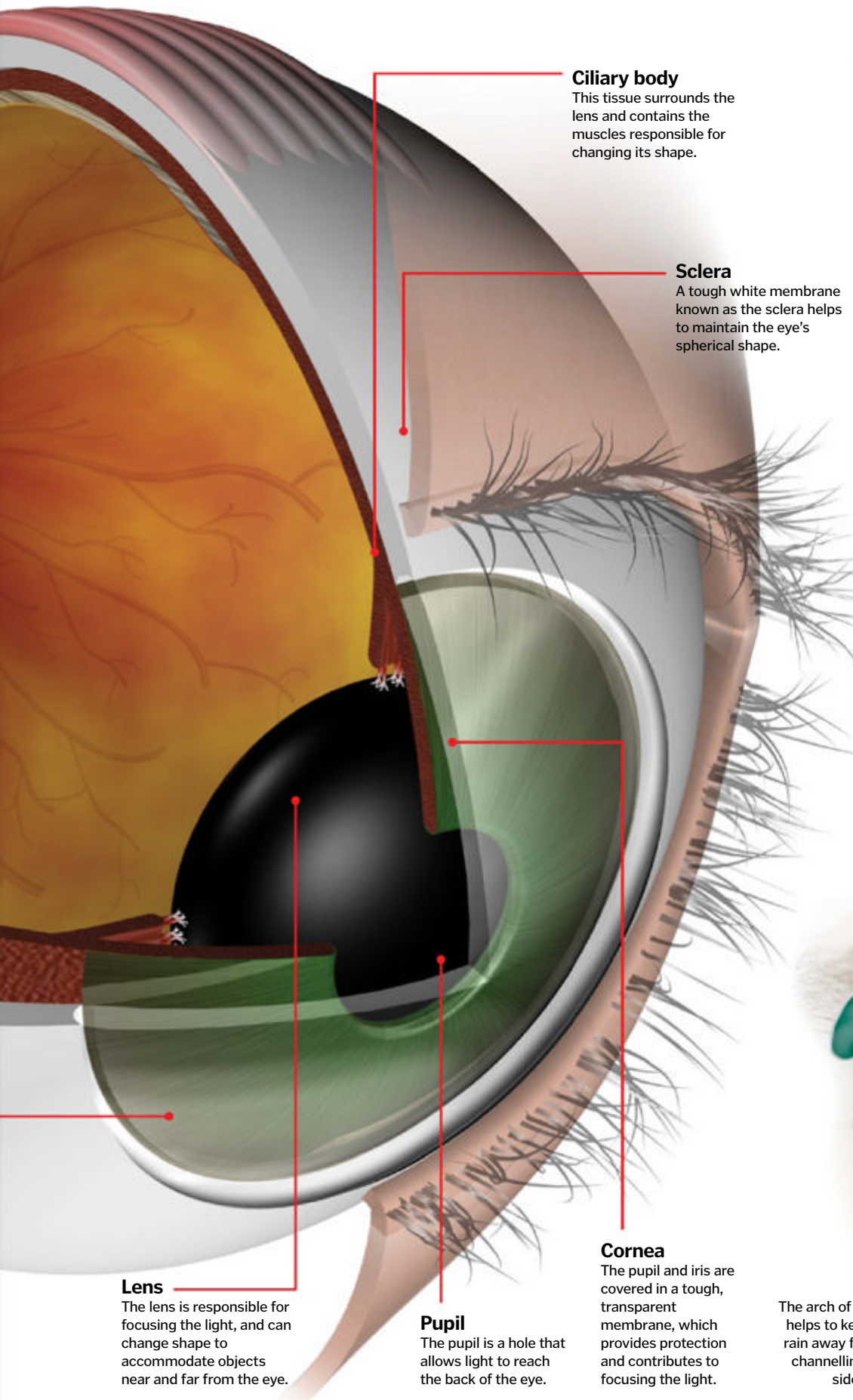
**3. BIGGEST**



**Colossal squid**

Little is known about these mysterious creatures, but they have eyes the size of footballs – the largest known in the animal kingdom.

**DID YOU KNOW?** 285 million people in the world are estimated to be visually impaired and 39 million of them are blind



**Ciliary body**

This tissue surrounds the lens and contains the muscles responsible for changing its shape.

**Sclera**

A tough white membrane known as the sclera helps to maintain the eye's spherical shape.

**Cornea**

The pupil and iris are covered in a tough, transparent membrane, which provides protection and contributes to focusing the light.

**Pupil**

The pupil is a hole that allows light to reach the back of the eye.

**Lens**

The lens is responsible for focusing the light, and can change shape to accommodate objects near and far from the eye.

**Vision problems**

The most common problems with our eyesight

**Farsightedness (hyperopia)**

If the eye is too short, the cornea is too flat, or if the lens sits too far back, incoming light is focused behind the retina, making nearby objects appear blurry, particularly in the dark.



**Nearsightedness (myopia)**

If the eye is too long, or the cornea and lens are too curved, the light is focused before it hits the back of the eye, and then starts to defocus again as it reaches the retina, making distant objects difficult to see.

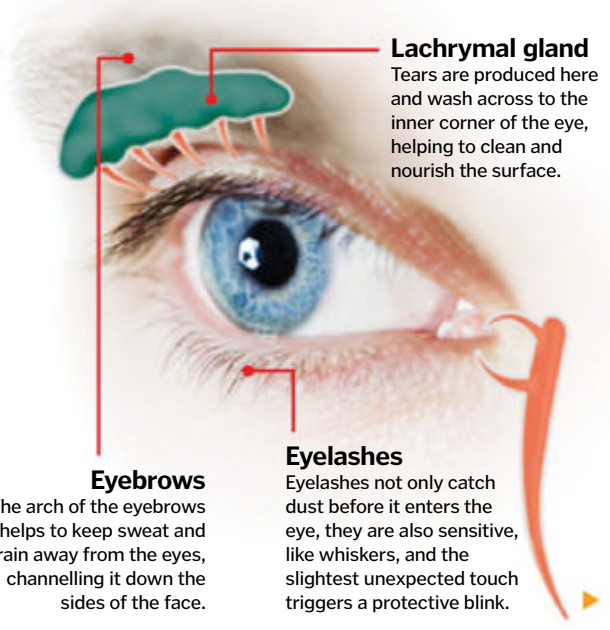


**Colour-blindness**

This rare condition is often linked to a gene on the X-chromosome and occurs more commonly in men than in women. A defect in the cone cells of the eye reduces the number of colours that can be detected.

**Protection**

The eyes are shielded by several layers of protection. They are almost completely encased in bone at the back and insulated from shock by layers of muscle and connective tissue. The front is kept moist with tears and constantly wiped by the eyelids, while the hairs of the eyebrows and eyelashes catch any debris that might fall in.



**Lachrymal gland**

Tears are produced here and wash across to the inner corner of the eye, helping to clean and nourish the surface.

**Eyebrows**

The arch of the eyebrows helps to keep sweat and rain away from the eyes, channelling it down the sides of the face.

**Eyelashes**

Eyelashes not only catch dust before it enters the eye, they are also sensitive, like whiskers, and the slightest unexpected touch triggers a protective blink.



# How ears work

The human ear performs a range of functions, sending messages to the brain when a sound is made while also providing your body with a sense of balance



The thing to remember when learning about the human ear is that sound is all about movement. When someone speaks or bangs a drum or makes any kind of movement, the air around them is disturbed, creating a sound wave of alternating high and low frequency. These waves are detected by the ear and interpreted by the brain as words, tunes or sounds.

Consisting of air-filled cavities, labyrinthine fluid-filled channels and highly sensitive cells, the ear has external, middle and internal parts. The outer ear consists of a skin-covered flexible cartilage flap called the 'auricle', or 'pinna'. This feature is shaped to gather sound waves and amplify them before they enter the ear for processing and transmission to the brain. The first thing a sound wave entering the ear encounters is the sheet of tightly pulled tissue separating the outer and middle ear. This tissue is the eardrum, or tympanic membrane, and it vibrates as sound waves hit it.

Beyond the eardrum, in the air-filled cavity of the middle ear, are three tiny bones called the 'ossicles'. These are the smallest bones in your entire body. Sound vibrations hitting the eardrum pass to the first ossicle, the malleus (hammer). Next the waves proceed along the incus (anvil) and then on to the (stapes) stirrup. The stirrup presses against a thin layer of tissue called the 'oval window', and this membrane enables sound waves to enter the fluid-filled inner ear.

The inner ear is home to the cochlea, which consists of watery ducts that channel the vibrations, as ripples, along the cochlea's spiraling tubes. Running through the middle of the cochlea is the organ of Corti, which is lined with minute sensory hair cells that pick up on the vibrations and generate nerve impulses that are sent to the brain as electrical signals. The brain can interpret these signals as sounds.

## Structure of the ear

### Auricle (pinna)

This is the visible part of the outer ear that collects sound wave vibrations and directs them into the ear.

### Malleus (hammer)

One of the three ossicles, this hammer-shaped bone connects to the eardrum and moves with every vibration bouncing off the drum.

### External acoustic meatus (outer ear canal)

This is the wax-lined tube that channels sound vibrations from the outer pinna through the skull to the eardrum.

### Tympanic membrane (eardrum)

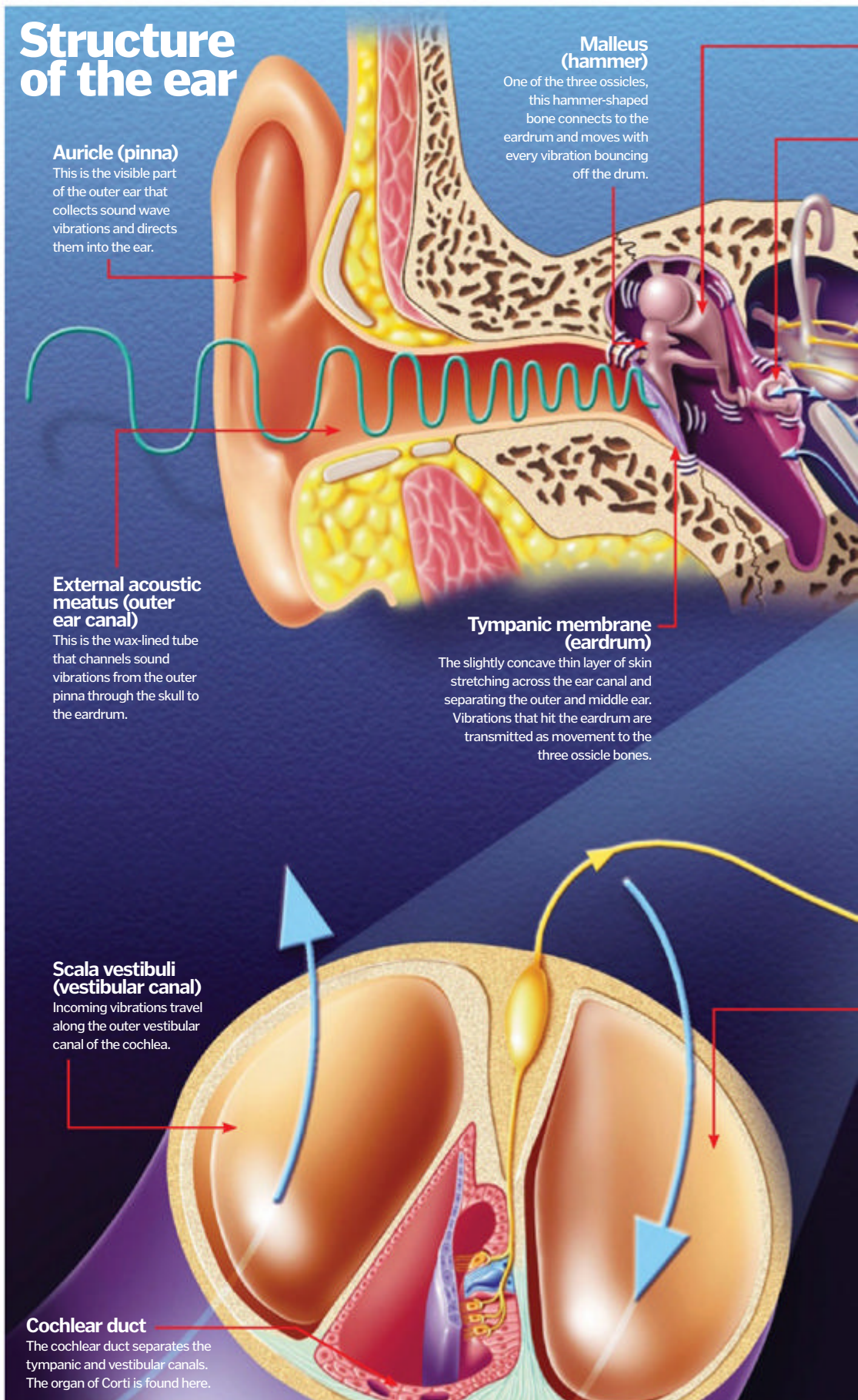
The slightly concave thin layer of skin stretching across the ear canal and separating the outer and middle ear. Vibrations that hit the eardrum are transmitted as movement to the three ossicle bones.

### Scala vestibuli (vestibular canal)

Incoming vibrations travel along the outer vestibular canal of the cochlea.

### Cochlear duct

The cochlear duct separates the tympanic and vestibular canals. The organ of Corti is found here.



# 5 TOP FACTS

## HUMAN EARS

### Hearing range

**1** Human ears can hear sounds with frequencies between 20Hz and 20,000Hz. The ability to hear frequencies above and below this is linked to the size of the cells and sensitivity.

### Underwater hearing

**2** Humans can hear much higher-pitched sounds (200,000Hz) when under water, because we can 'hear' with our bones, bypassing the outer ear and ossicles.

### Hearing loss

**3** The most common causes of hearing loss are ageing and noise. As we age, our ability to hear sounds with higher frequencies deteriorates - this is known as 'presbycusis'.

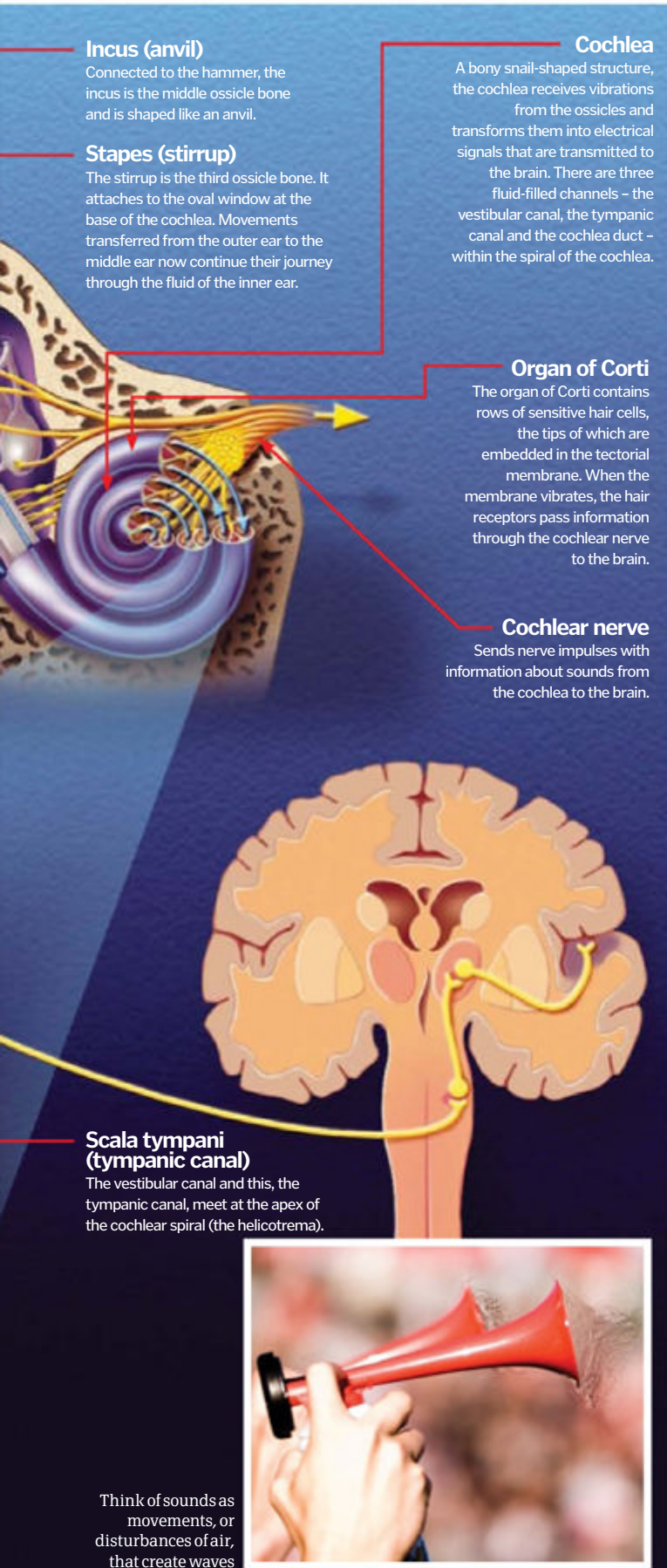
### Wax essential

**4** Wax cleans and lubricates the outer auditory canal, transporting dirt and dead skin away from the ear. If excessive wax is a problem, consult your doctor.

### Making me dizzy

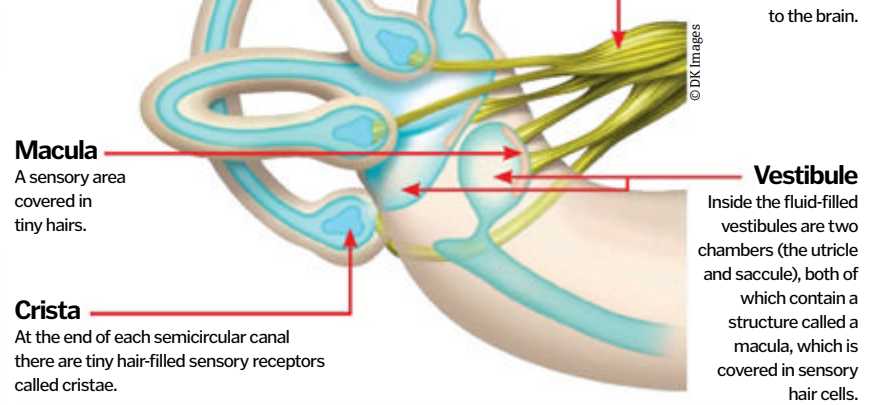
**5** Inflammation of the inner ear due to viral/bacterial conditions such as labyrinthitis can cause dizziness and nausea. When balance is affected, sufferers may not be able to walk or stand.

**DID YOU KNOW?** The eardrum needs to move less than the diameter of a hydrogen atom in order for us to perceive sound



# The vestibular system

Inside the inner ear are the vestibule and semicircular canals, which feature sensory cells. From the semicircular canals and maculae, information about which way the head is moving is passed to receptors, which send electrical signals to the brain as nerve impulses.



## A sense of balance

The vestibular system functions to give you a sense of which way your head is pointing in relation to gravity. It enables you to discern whether your head is upright or not, as well as helping you to maintain eye contact with stationary objects while your head is turning.

Also located within the inner ear, but less to do with sound and more concerned with the movement of your head, are the semicircular canals. Again filled with fluid, these looping ducts act like internal accelerometers that can

detect acceleration (ie, movement of your head) in three different directions due to the positioning of the loops along different planes. Like the organ of Corti, the semicircular canals employ tiny hair cells to sense movement. The canals are connected to the auditory nerve at the back of the brain.

Your sense of balance is so complex that the area of your brain that's dedicated to this one role involves the same number of cells as the rest of your brain cells put together.





The biological structures that are so versatile they enable us to eat a well varied diet

# All about teeth



## The trouble with teeth

Tooth decay, also often known as dental caries, affects the enamel and dentine of a tooth, breaking down tissue and creating fissures in the enamel. Two types of bacteria – namely *Streptococcus mutans* and *Lactobacillus* – are responsible for tooth decay.

Tooth decay occurs after repeated contact with acid-producing bacteria. Environmental factors also have a strong effect on dental health. Sucrose, fructose and glucose create large problems within the mouth, and diet can be an important factor in maintaining good oral health.

The mouth contains an enormous variety of bacteria, which collect around the teeth and gums. This is visible in the form of a sticky white substance called plaque. Plaque is known as a biofilm. After eating, the bacteria in the mouth metabolises sugar, which subsequently attacks the areas around the teeth.



The primary function of teeth is to crunch and chew food. For this reason, teeth are made of strong substances – namely calcium, phosphorus and various mineral salts. The main structure of the tooth is dentine, this itself is enclosed in a shiny substance called enamel. This strong white coating is the hardest material found in the human body.

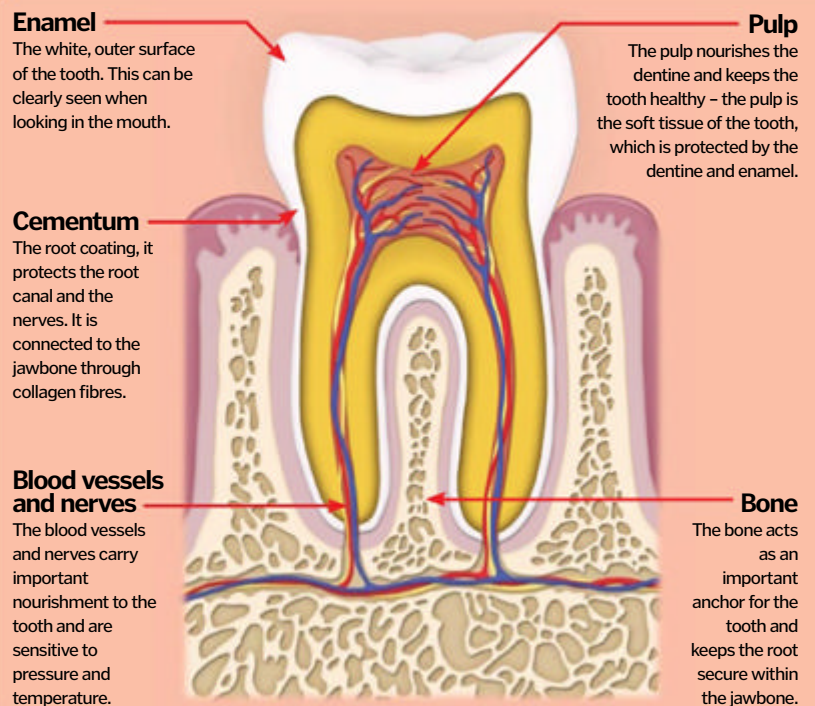
Humans have different types of teeth that function in various ways. Incisors tear at food, such as the residue found on bones, while bicuspid have long sharp structures that are also used for ripping. Bicuspid tear and crush while molars, which have a flatter surface, grind the food before swallowing. This aids digestion. Because humans have a varied array of teeth (called collective dentition) we are able to eat a complex diet of both meat and vegetables. Other species, such as grazing animals, have specific types of teeth. Cows, for example, have large flat teeth, which restricts them to a simple diet.

Teeth have many functions, in some cases they aid hunting but they also have strong psychological connotations. Both animals and humans bare their teeth when faced with an aggressive situation. Teeth are the most enduring features of the human body. Mammals are described as 'diphyodont', which means they develop two sets of teeth. In humans

the teeth first appear at six months old and are replaced by secondary teeth after six or seven years. Some animals develop only one set of teeth, while sharks, for instance, grow a new set of teeth every two weeks.

With humans, tooth loss can occur through accident, gum disease or old age.

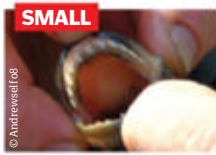
From ancient times healers have sought to treat and replace the teeth with false ones. Examples of this practice can be seen from ancient Egyptian times and today, we see revolutionary new techniques in the form of dental implants, which are secured deep within the bone of the jaw.





**BIG**

**1. Hippopotamus**  
A hippopotamus has an enormous mouth that can measure up to 1.2 metres wide. They are equipped with a pair of huge and very dangerous incisors.



**SMALL**

**2. Piranha**  
Piranha teeth are very small but can be extremely sharp and are often used by the local populations of South America to create a variety of tools and weapons.



**SHARP**

**3. Hamster**  
A member of the rodent family, the hamster has teeth that grow continuously. They therefore need to grind their teeth on a hard substance to prevent overgrowth.

**DID YOU KNOW?** The ancient Egyptians had severe problems with their teeth. They invented the world's first dental bridge

# Inside your mouth

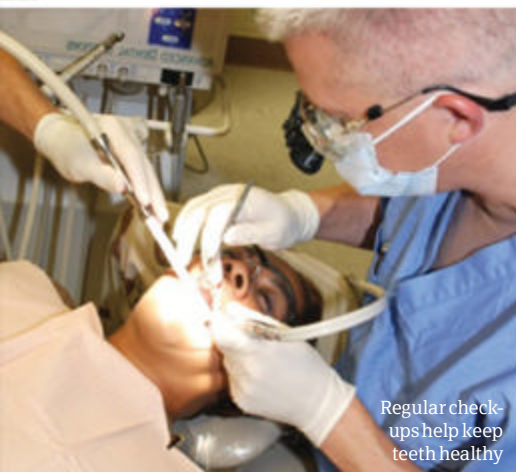
The upper and lower areas of the mouth are known as the maxilla and the mandible. The upper area of the mouth is attached to the skull bone and is often called the upper arch of the mouth, while the mandible is the v-shaped bone that carries the lower set of teeth.

### Canine teeth

Long, pointed teeth that are used for holding and tearing at the food within the mouth.

### Wisdom teeth

Usually appear between the ages of 17 and 25, and often erupt in a group of four.



Regular check-ups help keep teeth healthy

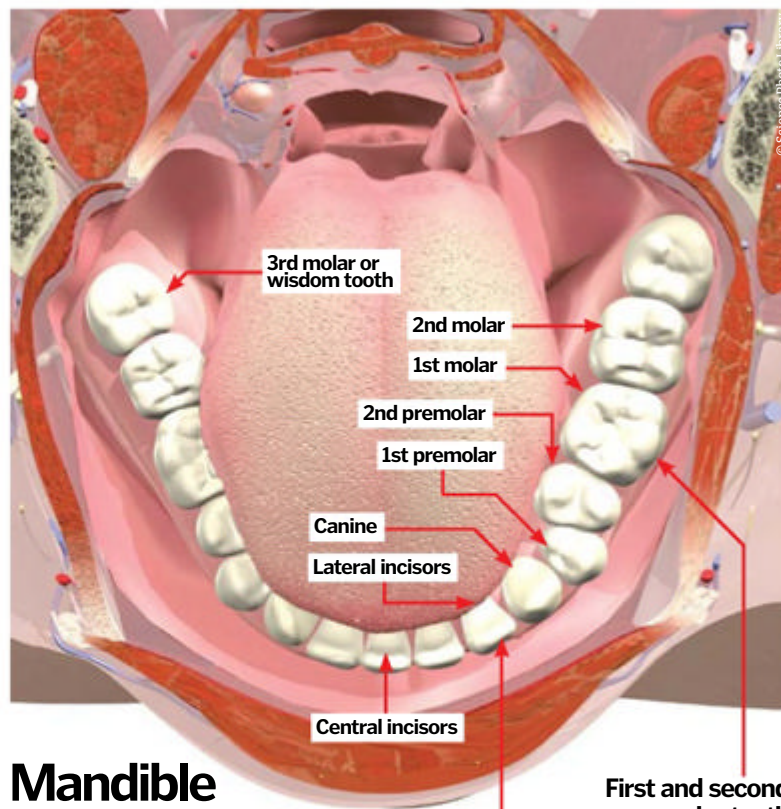
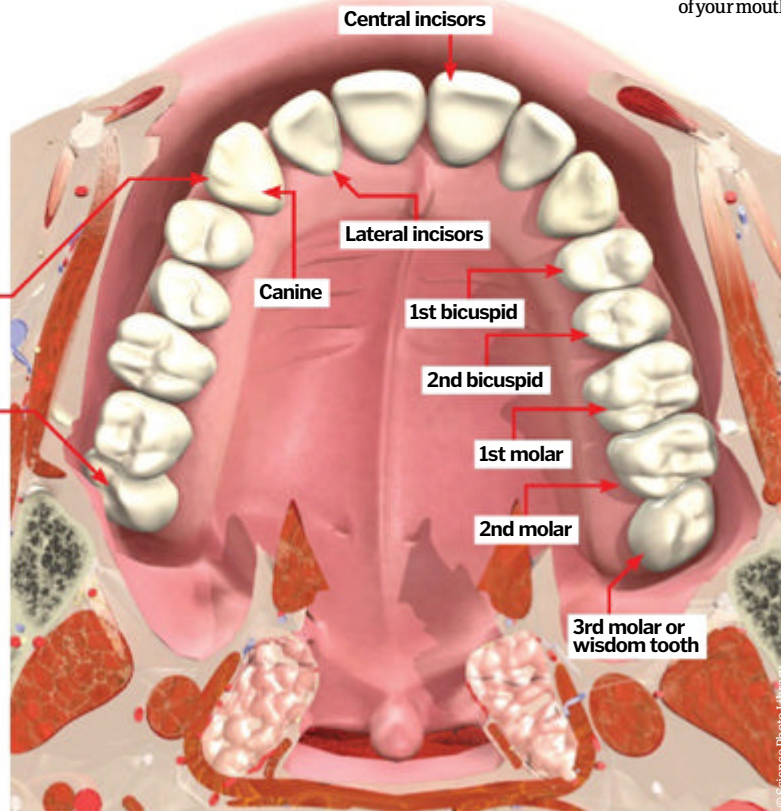
# Tooth anatomy

The tooth is a complex structure. The enamel at the surface of the tooth is highly visible while the dentine is a hard but porous tissue found under the enamel. The gums provide a secure hold for the tooth, while the root is anchored right into the jawbone. In the centre of the tooth there is a substance called 'pulp' which contains nerves and blood vessels, the pulp nourishes the dentine and keeps the tooth healthy.

Tooth formation begins before birth. Normally there are 20 primary teeth (human baby teeth) and later, 28 to 32 permanent teeth, which includes the wisdom teeth. Of the primary teeth, ten are found in the maxilla (the upper jaw) and ten in the mandible (lower jaw), while the mature adult has 16 permanent teeth in the maxilla and 16 in the mandible.

## Maxilla

A layout of the upper area of your mouth



## Mandible

A look inside your lower jawbone

### Lateral and central incisors

Incisor comes from the Latin word 'to cut', they are used to grip and bite.

### First and second premolar teeth

The premolar or bicuspid are located between the canine and molar teeth. They are used for chewing.



# Eruption of teeth

The approximate ages at which the permanent teeth begin to erupt

### Age 6

First molar

### Age 7

Central incisor

### Age 9

First premolar

### Age 10

Second premolar

### Age 11

Canine

### Age 12

Second molar

### Age 17 to 21 or not at all

Third molar (wisdom teeth)



# Anatomy of the neck

Explore one of the most complex and functional areas of the human body



The human neck is a perfect blend of form and function. It has several specific tasks (eg making it possible to turn our heads to see), while

serving as a conduit for other vital activities (eg connecting the mouth to the lungs).

The anatomical design of the neck would impress modern engineers. The flexibility of the cervical spine allows your head to rotate, flex and tilt many thousands of times a day.

The muscles and bones provide the strength and flexibility required, however the really impressive design comes with the trachea, oesophagus, spinal cord, myriad nerves and the vital blood vessels. These structures must all find space and function perfectly at the same time. They must also be able to maintain their shape while the neck moves.

These structures are all highly adapted to achieve their aims. The trachea is protected by a ring of strong cartilage so it doesn't collapse, while allowing enough flexibility to move when stretched. Above this, the larynx lets air move over the vocal cords so we can speak. Farther back, the oesophagus is a muscular tube which food and drink pass through en route to the stomach. Within the supporting bones of the neck sits the spinal cord, which transmits the vital nerves allowing us to move and feel. The carotid arteries and jugular veins, meanwhile, constantly carry blood to and from the brain.

## How does the head connect to the neck?

They are connected at the bottom of the skull and at the top of the spinal column. The first vertebra is called the atlas and the second is called the axis. Together these form a special pivot joint that grants far more movement than other vertebrae. The axis contains a bony projection upwards, upon which the atlas rotates, allowing the head to turn. The skull sits on top of slightly flattened areas of the atlas, providing a safe platform for it to stabilise on, and allowing for nodding motions. These bony connections are reinforced with strong muscles, adding further stability. Don't forget that this amazing anatomical design still allows the vital spinal cord to pass out of the brain. The cord sits in the middle of the bony vertebrae, where it is protected from bumps and knocks. It sends out nerves at every level (starting right from the top) granting control over most of the body.

## Get it in the neck

We show the major features that are packed into this junction between the head and torso

### Sympathetic trunk

These special nerves run alongside the spinal cord, and control sweating, heart rate and breathing, among other vital functions.

### Cartilage

This tough tissue protects the delicate airways behind, including the larynx.

### Oesophagus

This pipe connects the mouth to the stomach, and is collapsed until you swallow something, when its muscular walls stretch.

### Larynx

This serves two main functions: to connect the mouth to the trachea, and to generate your voice.

### Carotid artery

These arteries transmit oxygenated blood from the heart to the brain. There are two of them (right and left), in case one becomes blocked.

### Phrenic nerve

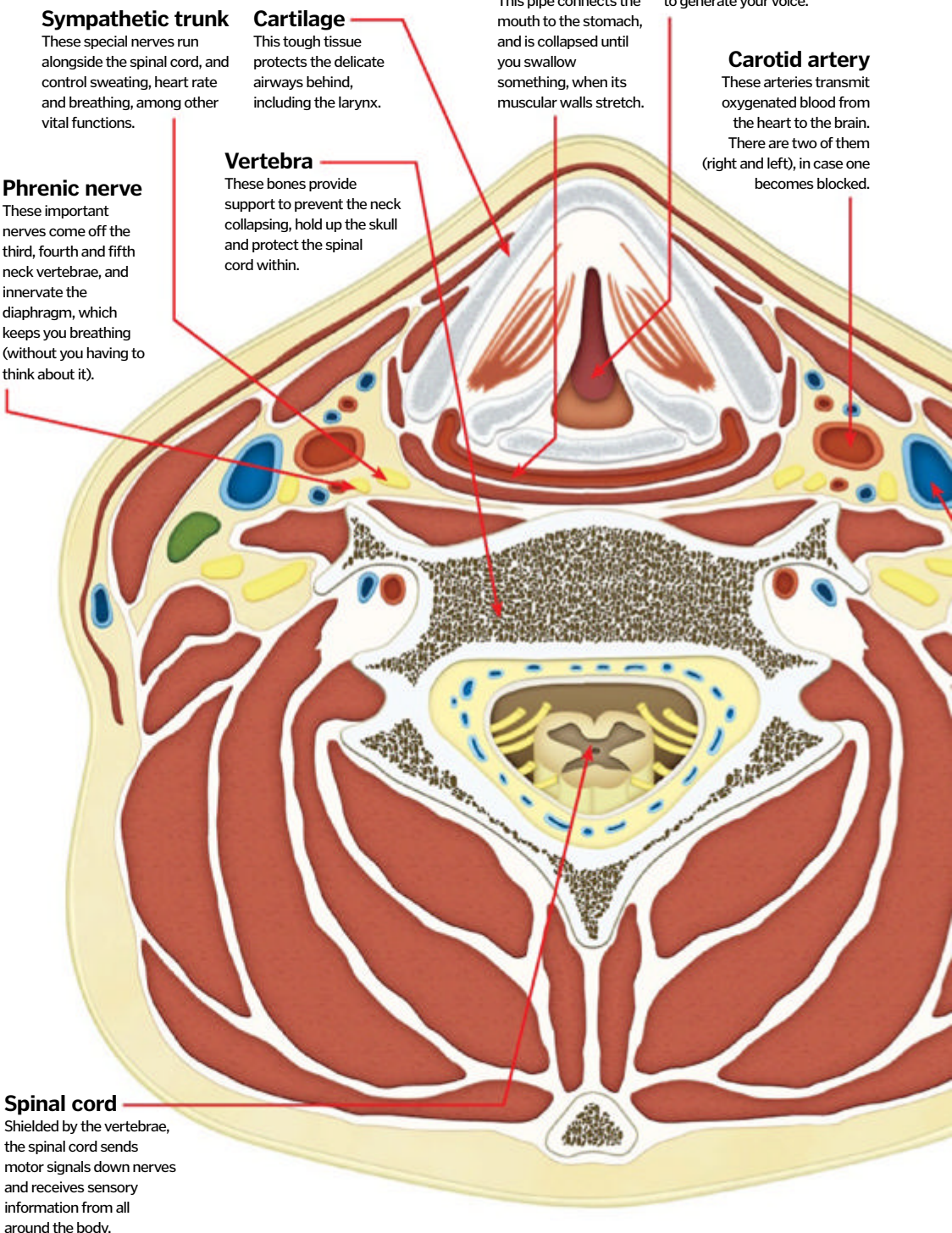
These important nerves come off the third, fourth and fifth neck vertebrae, and innervate the diaphragm, which keeps you breathing (without you having to think about it).

### Vertebra

These bones provide support to prevent the neck collapsing, hold up the skull and protect the spinal cord within.

### Spinal cord

Shielded by the vertebrae, the spinal cord sends motor signals down nerves and receives sensory information from all around the body.



### 1. LONG



### Human

The longest human neck ever recorded was 40 centimetres (15.8 inches) long. The average neck is closer to 10-12 centimetres (3.9-4.7 inches) in length.

### 2. LONGER



### Sauropod

These dinosaurs probably had the longest necks of all, with up to 19 vertebrae. Extinction means they don't win the prize as the longest any more though.

### 3. LONGEST



### Giraffe

The giraffe has the longest neck of any land animal today. However, amazingly, it has the same number of neck vertebrae as we do - seven.

**DID YOU KNOW?** The hyoid bone at the front of the neck is the only one in the body not connected to another bone

## Just say no...

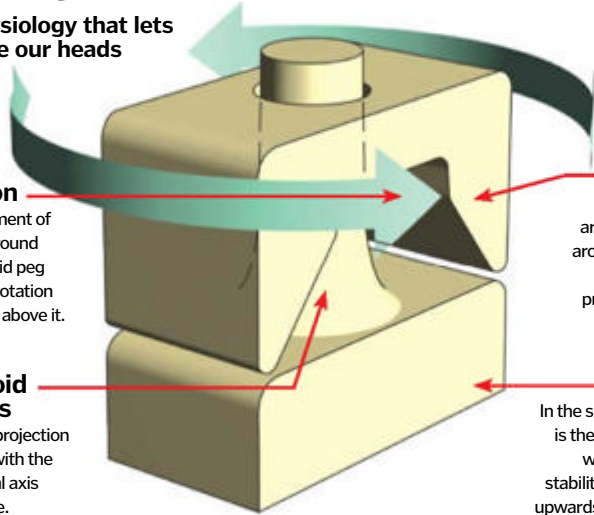
The physiology that lets us shake our heads

### Rotation

The movement of the atlas around the odontoid peg allows for rotation of the skull above it.

### Odontoid process

This bony projection is parallel with the longitudinal axis of the spine.



### Atlas

This section articulates (moves) around the odontoid process which projects through it.

### Axis

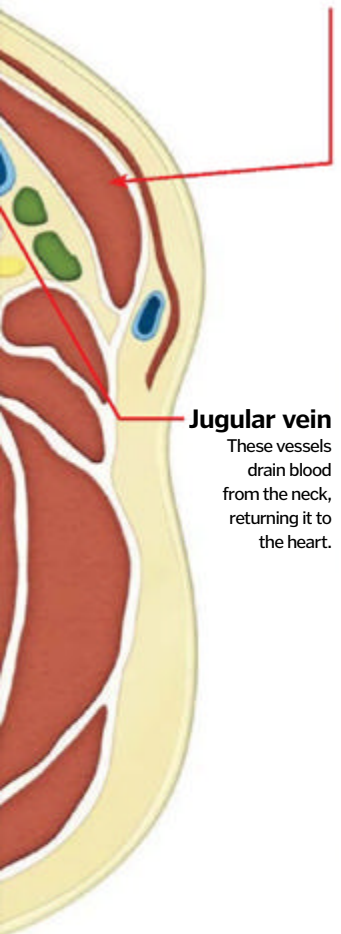
In the spinal column, this is the second vertebra, which provides the stability for the required upwards bony projection.

## The neck in context

The human neck relies on a wide array of bones and muscles for support, as we see here

### Sternocleidomastoid

Turn your head left and feel the right of your neck - this is the muscle doing the turning.



### Jugular vein

These vessels drain blood from the neck, returning it to the heart.

### Atlas

The first neck (cervical) vertebra is what permits the nodding motion of the head.

### Axis

The second cervical vertebra allows rotation of the head. So when you're shaking your head to say no, you have got this bone to thank.

### Cervical plexus

These nerves provide sensation to the skin and also control the fine movements of the neck.

### Spinal cord

Vertebrae create a cage of bones to protect the critical spinal cord within.

### Seventh cervical vertebra

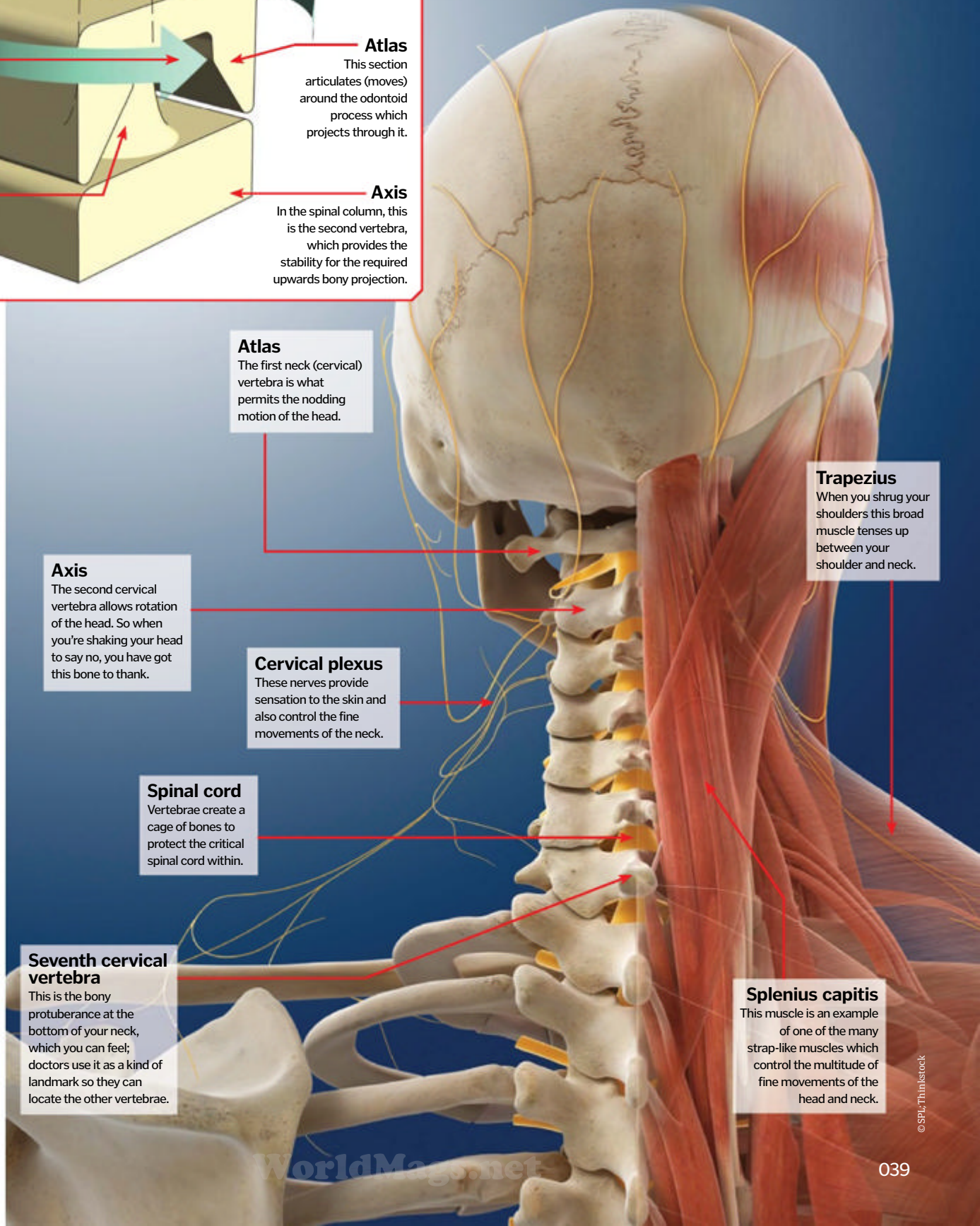
This is the bony protuberance at the bottom of your neck, which you can feel; doctors use it as a kind of landmark so they can locate the other vertebrae.

### Trapezius

When you shrug your shoulders this broad muscle tenses up between your shoulder and neck.

### Splenius capitis

This muscle is an example of one of the many strap-like muscles which control the multitude of fine movements of the head and neck.





HOW IT WORKS

# HUMAN ANATOMY

The human skeleton

# How the human skeleton works

Without a skeleton, we would not be able to live. It is what gives us our shape and structure and its presence allows us to operate on a daily basis. It also is a fascinating evolutionary link to all other living and extinct vertebrates



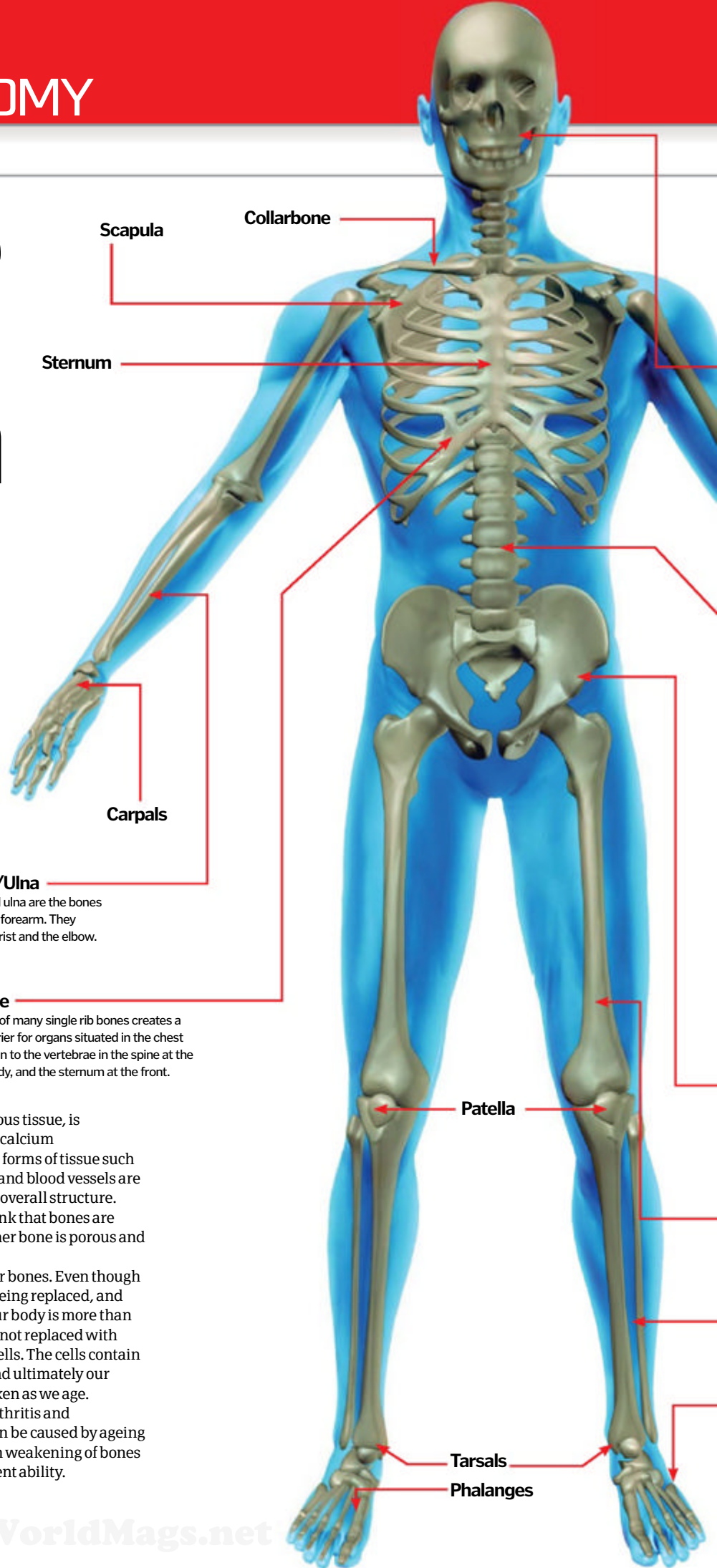
The human skeleton is crucial for us to live. It keeps our shape and muscle attached to the skeleton allows us the ability to move around, while also protecting crucial organs that we need to survive. Bones also produce blood cells within bone marrow and store minerals we need released on a daily basis.

As a fully grown adult you will have around 206 bones, but you are born with over 270, which continue to grow, strengthen and fuse after birth until around 18 in females and 20 in males. Human skeletons actually do vary between sexes in structure also. One of the most obvious areas is the pelvis as a female must be able to give birth, and therefore hips are comparatively shallower and wider. The cranium also becomes more robust in males due to heavy muscle attachment and a male's chin is often more prominent. Female skeletons are generally more delicate overall. However, although there are several methods, sexing can be difficult because of the level of variation we see within the species.

Bones are made up of various different elements. In utero, the skeleton takes shape as cartilage, which then starts to calcify and develop during gestation and following birth. The primary element that

makes up bone, osseous tissue, is actually mineralised calcium phosphate, but other forms of tissue such as marrow, cartilage and blood vessels are also contained in the overall structure. Many individuals think that bones are solid, but actually inner bone is porous and full of little holes.

As we age, so do our bones. Even though cells are constantly being replaced, and therefore no cell in our body is more than 20 years old, they are not replaced with perfect, brand-new cells. The cells contain errors in their DNA and ultimately our bones therefore weaken as we age. Conditions such as arthritis and osteoporosis can often be caused by ageing and cause issues with weakening of bones and reduced movement ability.



#### 4. Radius/Ulna

The radius and ulna are the bones situated in the forearm. They connect the wrist and the elbow.

#### 5. Rib cage

This structure of many single rib bones creates a protective barrier for organs situated in the chest cavity. They join to the vertebrae in the spine at the back of the body, and the sternum at the front.

### EXOSKELETONS



### 1. Snails

Exoskeletons are often seen in animals. These are bulky, tough outer layers that protect the individual, instead of the endoskeletons we have.

### STRANGE SKELETONS



### 2. Snake

The skeleton of a snake is one of the strangest. Because of how it moves, it has more joints in the body, primarily vertebrae, and has no limbs.

### NUMBERS OF VERTEBRAE



### 3. Giraffe

Considering the size of a giraffe's neck, you'd expect it to have more cervical vertebrae than a human, but it only has seven – the same as us!

**DID YOU KNOW?** Around five per cent of all animals have backbones and are therefore classified as vertebrates

## Inside our skeleton

How the human skeleton works and keeps us upright

### 1. Cranium

The cranium, also known as the skull, is where the brain and the majority of the sensory organs are located.

### 2. Metacarpals

The long bones in the hands are called metacarpals, and are the equivalent of metatarsals in the foot. Phalanges located close to the metacarpals make up the fingers.

### 3. Vertebrae

There are three main kinds of vertebrae (excluding the sacrum and coccyx) – cervical, thoracic and lumbar. These vary in strength and structure as they carry different pressure within the spine.

### 6. Pelvis

This is the transitional joint between the trunk of the body and the legs. It is one of the key areas in which we can see the skeletal differences between the sexes.

### 7. Femur

This is the largest and longest single bone in the body. It connects to the pelvis with a ball and socket joint.

### 8. Fibula/Tibia

These two bones form the lower leg bone and connect to the knee joint and the foot.

### 9. Metatarsals

These are the five long bones in the foot that aid balance and movement. Phalanges located close to the metatarsals are the bones which are present in toes.

# Breaking bones

Whether it's a complete break or just a fracture, both can take time to heal properly

If you simply fracture the bone, you may just need to keep it straight and keep pressure off it until it heals. However, if you break it into more than one piece, you may need metal pins inserted into the bone to realign it or plates to cover the break in order for it to heal properly. The bone heals by producing new cells and tiny blood vessels where the fracture or break has occurred and these then rejoin up. For most breaks or fractures, a cast external to the body will be put on around the bone to take pressure off the bone to ensure that no more damage is done and the break can heal.

*"The skull is actually seven separate plates when we are born, which fuse together"*

## Skull development

When we are born, many of our bones are still somewhat soft and are not yet fused – this process occurs later during our childhood

The primary reasons for the cranium in particular not to be fully fused at birth is to allow the skull to flex as the baby is born and also to allow the extreme rate of growth that occurs in the first few years of childhood following birth. The skull is actually in seven separate plates when we are born and over the first two years these pieces fuse together slowly and ossify. The plates start suturing together early on, but the anterior fontanel – commonly known as the soft spot – will take around 18 months to fully heal. Some other bones, such as the five bones located in the sacrum, don't fully fuse until late teens or early twenties, but the cranium becomes fully fused by around age two.



3skulls © DK Images

Baby skull

Six year old skull

Adult skull

## How our joints work

The types of joints in our body explained

### 1. Ball and socket joints

Both the hip and the shoulder joints are ball and socket joints. The femur and humerus have ball shaped endings, which turn in a cavity to allow movement.

### 2. Vertebrae

Vertebrae fit together to support the body and allow bending movements. They are joined by cartilage and are classified as semi-mobile joints.

### 3. Skull sutures

Although not generally thought of as a 'joint', all the cranial sutures present from where bones have fused in childhood are in fact immovable joints.

### 4. Hinged joints

Both elbows and knees are hinged joints. These joints only allow limited movement in one direction. The bones fit together and are moved by muscles.

### 5. Gliding joints

Some movement can be allowed when flat bones 'glide' across each other. The wrist bones – the carpals – operate like this, moved by ligaments.

### 6. Saddle joints

The only place we see this joint in humans is the thumb. Movement is limited in rotation, but the thumb can move back, forward and to the sides.



HOW IT WORKS

# HUMAN ANATOMY

Muscles explained

# How do muscles work?

Muscles are essential for us to operate on a daily basis, but how are they structured and how do they keep us moving

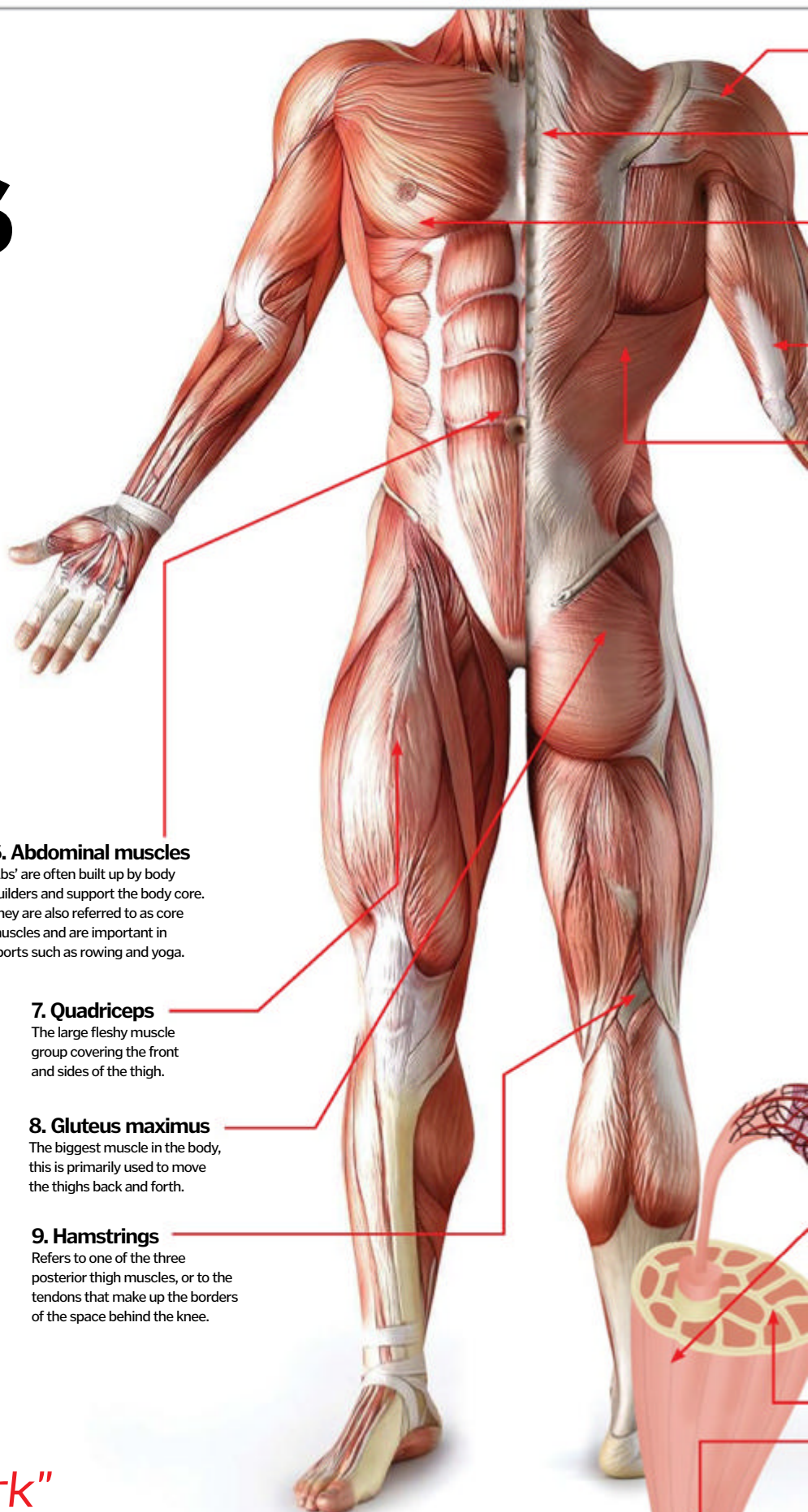


A muscle is a group of tissue fibres that contract and release to control movements within the body. We have three different types of muscles in our bodies – smooth muscle, cardiac muscle and skeletal muscle. Skeletal muscle, also known as striated muscle, is what we would commonly perceive as muscle, this being external muscles that are attached to the skeleton, such as biceps and deltoids. These muscles are connected to the skeleton with tendons. Cardiac muscle concerns the heart, which is crucial as it pumps blood around the body, supplying oxygen and ultimately energy to muscles, which allows them to operate. Smooth muscle, which is normally sheet muscle, is primarily involved in muscle contractions such as bladder control and oesophagus movements. These are often referred to as involuntary as we have little or no control over these muscles' actions.

Muscles control most functions within our bodies; release of waste products, breathing, seeing, eating and movement to name but a few. Actual muscle structure is quite complex, and each muscle is made up of numerous fibres which work together to give the muscle strength. Muscles increase in effectiveness and strength through exercise and growth and the main way this occurs is through small damage caused by each repetition of a muscle movement, which the body then repairs and improves.

More than 640 muscles are actually present across your entire body to enable your limbs to work, control bodily functions and shape the body as a whole.

*“More than 300 individual muscles are present across your body to enable your limbs to work”*



## 6. Abdominal muscles

'Abs' are often built up by body builders and support the body core. They are also referred to as core muscles and are important in sports such as rowing and yoga.

## 7. Quadriceps

The large fleshy muscle group covering the front and sides of the thigh.

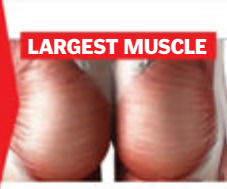
## 8. Gluteus maximus

The biggest muscle in the body, this is primarily used to move the thighs back and forth.

## 9. Hamstrings

Refers to one of the three posterior thigh muscles, or to the tendons that make up the borders of the space behind the knee.

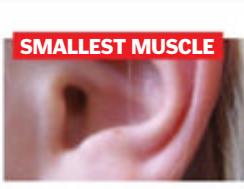
## LARGEST MUSCLE



### 1. Gluteus maximus

The gluteus maximus, the buttock, is the largest muscle. It is a superficial muscle that helps control thigh movement.

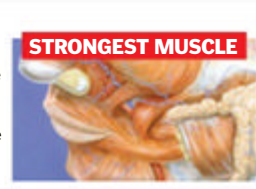
## SMALLEST MUSCLE



### 2. Stapedius

The smallest muscle in the body is the stapedius, which is situated in the middle ear and helps move the tiny bones which aid our hearing.

## STRONGEST MUSCLE



### 3. Masseter muscle

This is very much dependant on how you define strength. The masseter (jaw) muscle can exert the highest direct force on an object.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Skeletal muscles account for around 40 per cent of your total body mass

#### 1. Deltoids

These muscles stretch across the shoulders and aid lifting.

#### 2. Trapezius

Large, superficial muscle at the back of the neck and the upper part of the thorax, or chest.

#### 3. Pectoralis major

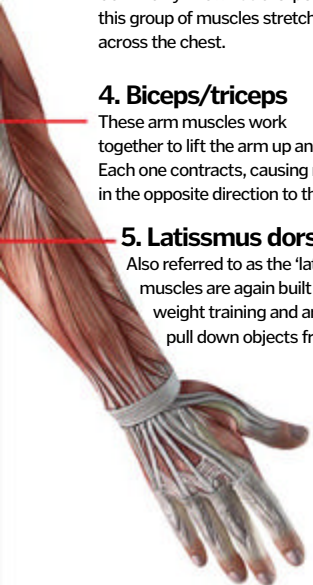
Commonly known as the 'pecs', this group of muscles stretch across the chest.

#### 4. Biceps/triceps

These arm muscles work together to lift the arm up and down. Each one contracts, causing movement in the opposite direction to the other.

#### 5. Latissimus dorsi

Also referred to as the 'lats', these muscles are again built up during weight training and are used to pull down objects from above.



## What affects our muscle strength?

How strong we are is a combination of nature and nurture

Muscle strength refers to the amount of force that a muscle can produce, while operating at maximum capacity, in one contraction. Size and structure of the muscle is important for muscle strength, with strength being measured in several ways. Consequently, it is hard to definitively state which muscle is actually strongest.

We have two types of muscle fibre – one that supports long, constant usage exerting low levels of pressure, and one that supports brief, high levels of force. The latter is used during anaerobic activity and these fibres respond better to muscle building.

Genetics can affect muscle strength, as can usage, diet and exercise regimes. Contractions of muscles cause injuries in the muscle fibres and it is the healing of these that actually create muscle strength as the injuries are repaired and overall strengthen the muscle.

*“Tendons attach muscles such as biceps to bones, allowing muscles to move elements of our body”*

## What are muscles made up of?

Muscles are made up of numerous cylindrical fibres, which work together to contract and control parts of the body. Muscle fibres are bound together by the perimysium into small bundles, which are then grouped together by the epimysium to form the actual muscle.

Blood vessels and nerves also run through the connective tissue to give energy to the muscle and allow feedback to be sent to the brain. Tendons attach muscles such as biceps and triceps to bones, allowing muscles to move elements of our body as we wish.

#### Epimysium

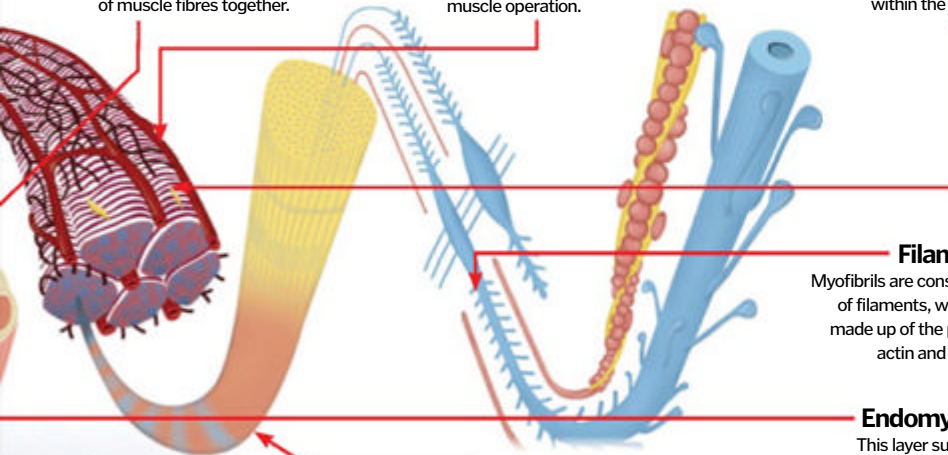
The external layer that covers the muscle overall and keeps the bundles of muscle fibres together.

#### Blood vessel

This provides oxygen and allows the muscle to access energy for muscle operation.

#### Perimysium

This layer groups together muscle fibres within the muscle.



#### Tendon

These attach muscle to bones, which in turn enables the muscles to move parts of the body around (off image).

#### Myofibril

Located within the single muscle fibres, myofibrils are bundles of actomyosin filaments. They are crucial for contraction.

#### Filaments

Myofibrils are constructed of filaments, which are made up of the proteins actin and myosin.

#### Endomysium

This layer surrounds each singular muscle fibre and keeps the myofibril filaments grouped together.

## How does the arm flex?

Biceps and triceps are a pair of muscles that work together to move the arm up and down. As the bicep contracts, the triceps will relax and stretch out and consequently the arm will move upwards. When the arm needs to move down, the opposite will occur – with the triceps contracting and the bicep relaxing and being forcibly stretched out by the triceps. The bicep is so named a flexor as it bends a joint, and triceps would be the extensor as it straightens the joint out. Neither of these muscles can push themselves straight, they depend on the other to oppose their movements and stretch them out. Many muscles therefore work in pairs, so-called antagonistic muscles.

#### 1. Tricep relaxes

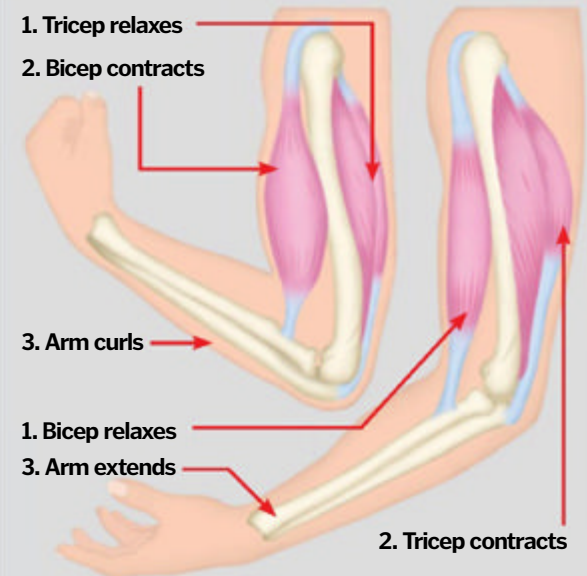
#### 2. Bicep contracts

#### 3. Arm curls

#### 1. Bicep relaxes

#### 3. Arm extends

#### 2. Tricep contracts

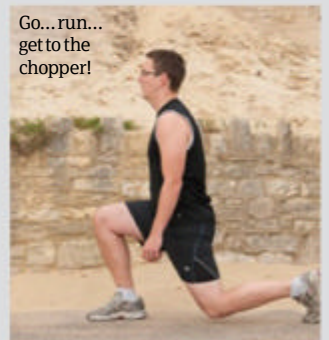


## What is a pulled muscle, and how does it happen?

They hurt like crazy so here's why it's important to warm up

A pulled muscle is basically a tear in muscle fibres. Sudden movements commonly cause pulled muscles, and often, when an individual has not warmed up appropriately before exercise or is unfit, a tear can occur as the muscle is not prepared for usage. The most common muscle to be pulled is the hamstring, which stretches from the buttock to the knee. A pulled muscle may result in swelling and pain can last for several days before the fibres repair themselves. To prevent pulling muscles, warming up is recommended before any kind of physical exertion.

Go...run... get to the chopper!





# Skin colour explained

## What is melanin and how does it affect the tone of our skin?



The light-absorbing pigment melanin is a chemical substance that gives your skin its natural colouring. Skin can vary from very dark brown to almost completely white due to a combination of your genes and inherited traits and the amount of sunlight to which you're exposed.

Skin colour differs from person to person depending on the concentration of melanin present in their skin and its distribution throughout the skin's layers. Basically, those with less melanin have lighter skin, while those with more of the pigment have darker skin. Melanin is produced by specialised skin cells called melanocytes in the lower layers of the epidermis and is contained inside a melanosome by a very thin membrane.

Exposure to sunlight stimulates the production of melanin granules. The melanosomes containing the melanin then move out towards the skin's protective keratinocyte cells along branch cells called dendrites. Melanin is then stored in the nuclei of the keratinocytes where it acts as a natural protector against the effects of the Sun's ultraviolet rays. Keratinocytes make up the bulk – around 95 per cent – of the outer layers of the skin and form the barrier between the body and the outside world. They take up melanin which can absorb cancer-causing UV radiation so it doesn't get into the body's internal tissues.

## Melanin and skin colour

### Keratinocytes

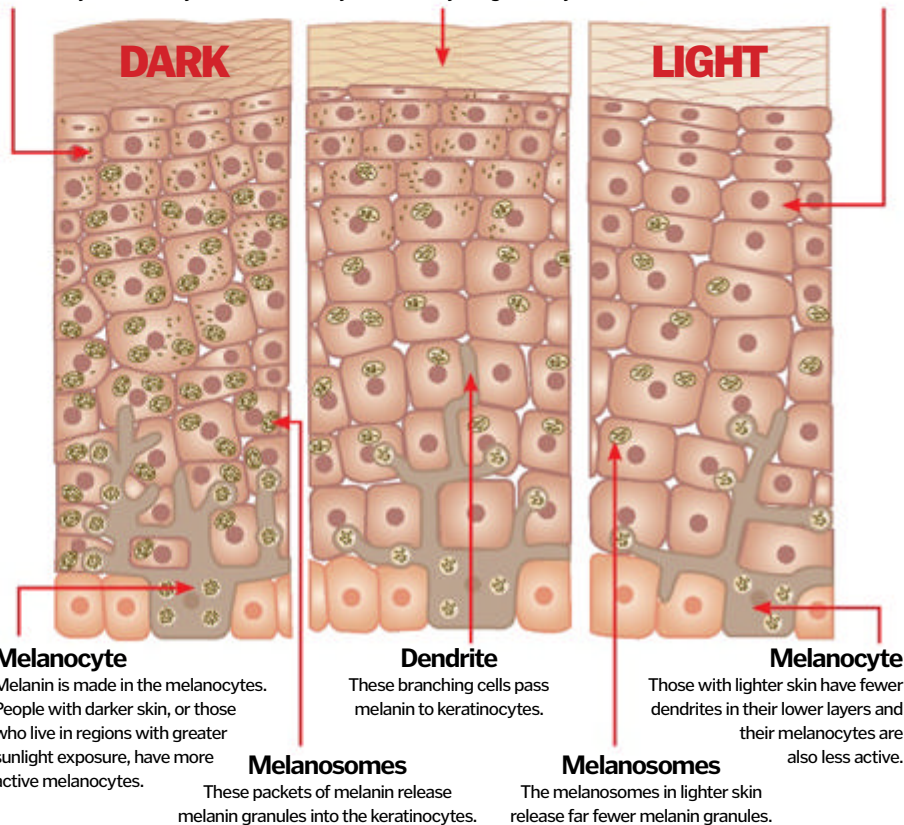
These protective cells are produced in the lower layers of the epidermis. They take up the melanosomes produced by the melanocytes.

### Surface

Basal skin cells manufactured in the lower layers of the epidermis grow through the skin to the surface, where they are eventually sloughed away.

### Keratinocytes

The keratinocytes of lighter-skinned people take up fewer melanosomes.



# How skin grafts work

## Skin graft surgery

### When our body's largest organ is damaged, sometimes it needs a helping hand to heal



Skin grafting is a medical procedure where a portion of skin is removed and stitched onto another part of the body. There are many cosmetic and medical reasons why this might be necessary: serious burns, surgery, tattoo removal and some medical conditions (skin cancer or diabetes, for example) might all necessitate skin grafting.

Autografts are skin grafts taken from the patient's own body, usually the buttocks, neck or back of the arm. Depending on the size of the area that it's removed from, it's then stitched or stapled closed again and the new skin applied to the injured area. Allografts and xenografts, meanwhile – taken from other humans and animals, respectively – are temporary grafts.

But perhaps most interesting is the artificial 'skin' called Integra, made of animal collagen that gives the damaged part an organic scaffolding for new skin to grow into. This is usually used in cases of extreme burns where there isn't enough healthy skin for an autograft.

### Gauze

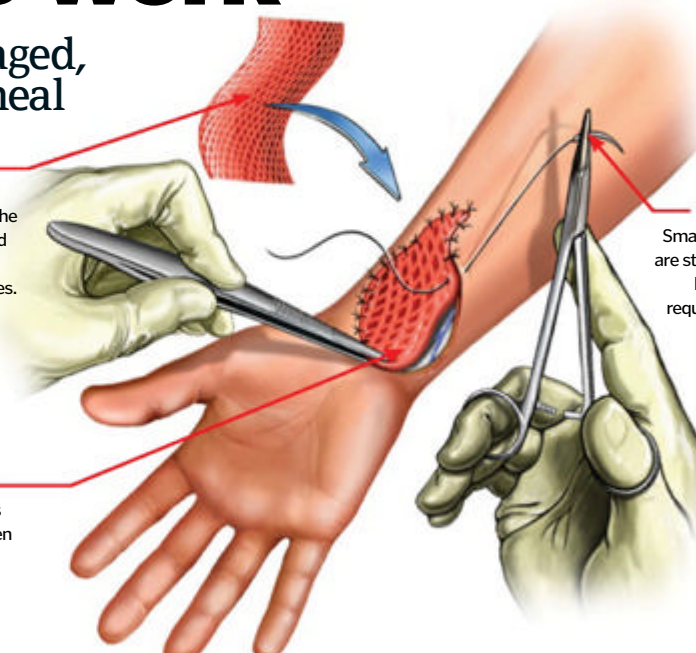
A sterile gauze is applied while the skin attaches and a new blood supply establishes.

### Donor skin

The donor skin is removed and then applied to the injured area.

### Stitching

Small skin grafts are stitched while bigger areas require stapling.



© Alamy

### Bacteria thrive on human skin

**1** Every square inch of a normal human's skin has an average of 32 million bacteria on it... no matter how many baths or showers you have a day!

### You shed skin every day!

**2** Every 24 hours, you will lose your uppermost layer of dead skin cells, helping to keep your skin fresh and clean and able to breathe.

### Skin varies drastically in thickness

**3** Skin is around 1mm thick on your eyelids, but on your feet this thickness increases to 3mm, giving you much more protection where needed.

### As we age, skin thins

**4** Skin thins over time and begins to loosen, which is where wrinkles come from, and why people opt for plastic surgery in later life.

### We have billions of sweat glands

**5** Each square inch of healthy skin contains close to 650 sweat glands, which are essential for keeping you cool.

**DID YOU KNOW?** All mammals have hair on their skin, including marine mammals which appear hairless

# Under the skin

Find out more about the largest organ in your body...



Our skin is the largest organ in our bodies with an average individual skin's surface area measuring around two square metres and accounting for up to 16 per cent of total body weight. It is made up of three distinct layers. These are the epidermis, the dermis and the hypodermis and they all have differing functions. Humans are rare in that we can see these layers distinctly.

The epidermis is the top, waterproofing layer. Alongside helping to regulate temperature of the body, the epidermis also protects against infection as it stops pathogens entering the body. Although generally referred to as one layer, it is actually made up of five. The top layers are actually dead keratin-filled cells which prevent water loss and provide protection against the environment, but the lower levels, where new skin cells are produced, are nourished by the dermis. In other species, such as amphibians, the epidermis consists of only live skin cells. In these cases, the skin is generally permeable and actually may be a major respiratory organ.

The dermis has the connective tissue and nerve endings, contains hair follicles, sweat glands, lymphatic and blood vessels. The top layer of the dermis is ridged and interconnects securely with the epidermis.

Although the hypodermis is not actually considered part of the skin, its purpose is to connect the upper layers of skin to the body's underlying bone and muscle. Blood vessels and nerves pass through this layer to the dermis. This layer is also crucial for temperature regulation, as it contains 50 per cent of a healthy adult's body fat in subcutaneous tissue. These kinds of layers are not often seen in other species, humans being one of few that you can see the distinct layers within the skin. Not only does the skin offer protection for muscle, bone and internal organs, but it is our protective barrier against the environment. Temperature regulation, insulation, excretion of sweat and sensation are just a few more functions of skin.

### 1. Epidermis

This is the top, protective layer. It is waterproof and protects the body against UV light, disease and dehydration among other things.

### 2. Dermis

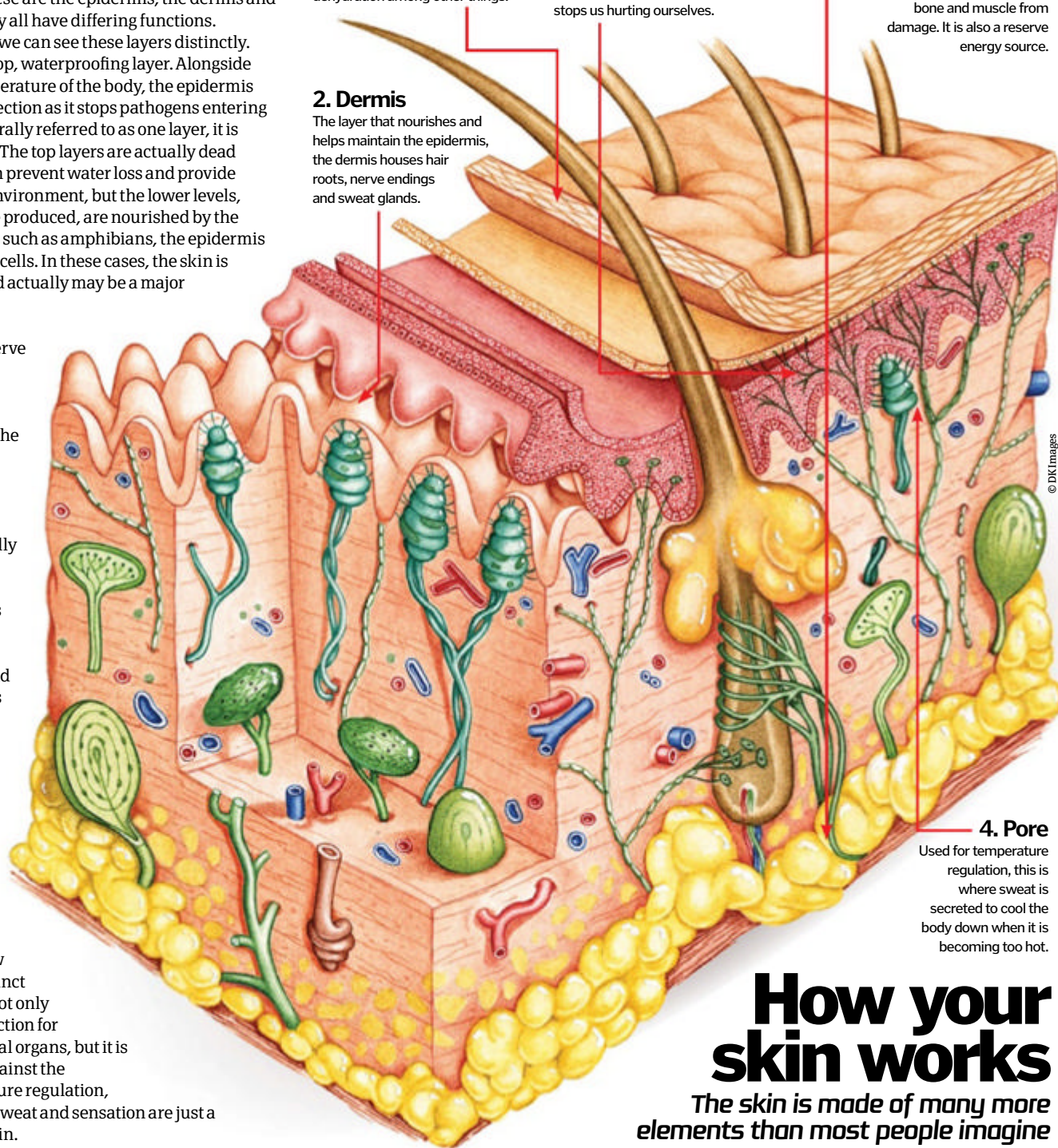
The layer that nourishes and helps maintain the epidermis, the dermis houses hair roots, nerve endings and sweat glands.

### 3. Nerve ending

Situated within the dermis, nerve endings allow us to sense temperature, pain and pressure. This gives us information on our environment and stops us hurting ourselves.

### 5. Subcutaneous tissue

The layer of fat found in the hypodermis that is present to prevent heat loss and protect bone and muscle from damage. It is also a reserve energy source.



### 4. Pore

Used for temperature regulation, this is where sweat is secreted to cool the body down when it is becoming too hot.

## How your skin works

The skin is made of many more elements than most people imagine



HOW IT WORKS

# HUMAN ANATOMY

## Rheumatoid arthritis

# Rheumatoid arthritis explained

### How does this condition cause intense inflammation of joints and the eventual destruction of cartilage tissue?



Rheumatoid arthritis is a chronic and progressive disease that effects many people around the world.

Through inflammation throughout the connective tissues of the body, it causes irreversible damage to individuals' joints. The disease develops when a person's body generates an autoimmune response – a mistaken immune system reaction against the body's own tissues – that attacks its joint components rather than the hostile invading organisms.

As of now, scientists are unsure of what instigates the autoimmune

response, but it is thought that it involves a body's genetic susceptibility to certain viruses. Regardless however, once activated by such a cause, a series of immune system reactions proceed to cause unwanted/abnormal levels of inflammation and tissue/bone destruction within the body. Inflammation is caused by a heavily abnormal interaction between B-cells and T-cells (see 'Cellular-level development' boxout below), a complex process that causes a variety of proteins, antibodies and other cells to be released which break down joint cartilage among other damaging activities.



© James Heilman

Extreme swelling and inflammation caused by rheumatoid arthritis

# Development of the condition

### The cellular mechanisms, proteins and antibodies involved in the development of rheumatoid arthritis

#### B-cells

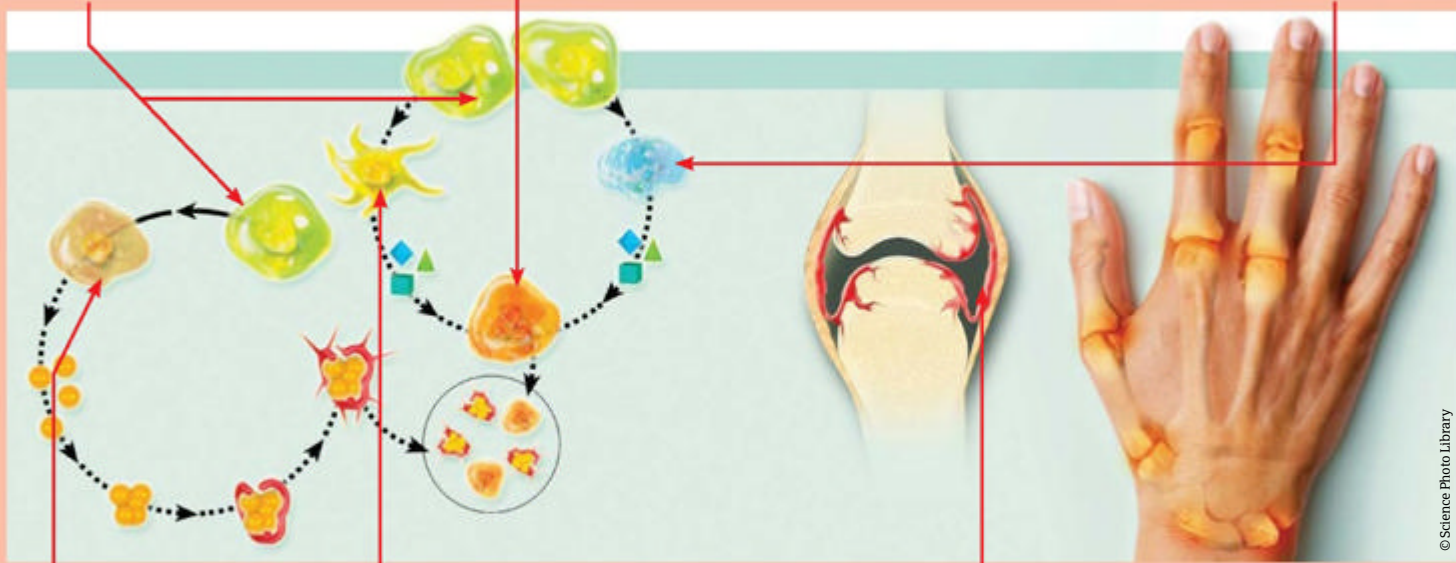
B-cells are lymphocytes (white blood cells) that make antibodies to combat antigens. These cells internalise antigens before presenting them to T-cells.

#### Osteoclasts

Osteoclasts are terminally differentiated cells of the macrophage lineage that re-absorb bone matrix. In rheumatoid arthritis, they aid joint destruction.

#### T-cells

Similar to B-cells, T-cells differ in the fact that they have special receptors on their surface. They assist the maturation of B-cells into plasma cells.



#### Plasma cells

Plasma cells develop when B-cells are activated under stimulation by T-cells. They are a larger and more specialised antibody-producing cell.

#### Macrophages

The role of the macrophage is to engulf and digest cellular debris and pathogens, stimulate B-cells and release enzymes and proteins.

#### Synovial membrane

The synovial membrane is the soft tissue that lines the non-cartilaginous surfaces within joints. With rheumatoid arthritis, the synovium becomes irritated and enlarged.

© Science Photo Library

# Inside our bones

Learn how bone marrow can transform cells into whatever the body needs



The skeleton is not only used as the body's main structural support, it is also home to the largest collective reserve of adult stem cells within us.

Bone marrow is a soft tissue present inside all the long bones of the limbs, and inside flat bones such as the pelvis, skull and ribs and it is jam-packed with haematopoietic stem cells. These cells are only partly committed to their development pathway, so depending on the signals they receive, can become any of the

cells in the blood, from oxygen-carrying red blood cells to bacteria-munching macrophages.

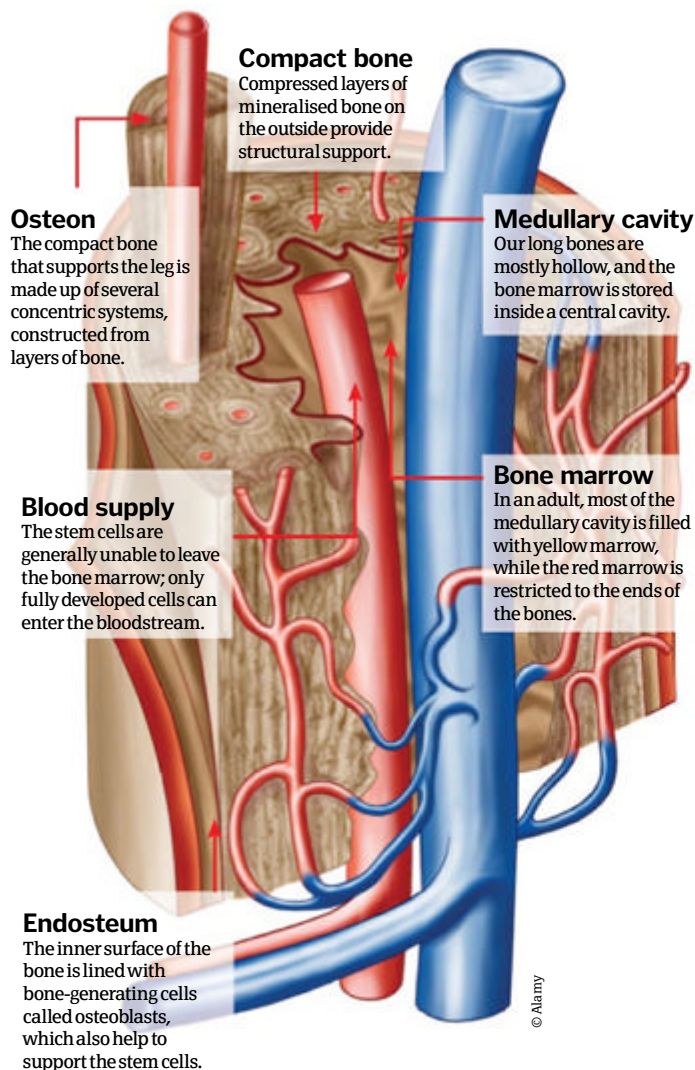
The majority of these stem cells are contained in the red marrow, which gains its colour from a rich network of blood vessels. The stem cells are supported by a range of other cells collectively known as stroma. The stromal cells provide the right microenvironment for the development of stem cells into the blood's components, making a range of growth factors to encourage cells to differentiate down the correct path.

In an adult human, most of the long bones are filled with yellow bone marrow – mostly made up of fat cells – however this can be converted to red marrow for blood cell production should an emergency arise.

Bone marrow also contains a second, less-studied population of stem cells known as mesenchymal stem cells (MSCs). These are able to produce the basic elements that make up the connective tissues of the body, including fat cells, bone cells and fibroblasts.

## Bone marrow in context

What is going on inside one of the long bones in our legs?



## The origins of blood

See how bone marrow is a factory capable of producing all of the components which make up our blood...

### 1. Haematopoietic stem cell

This stem cell in red bone marrow is able to develop into several different types of cell depending on the signals it receives.

### 2. Common myeloid progenitor

The HSC gradually commits to becoming a particular type of cell. Each step in development narrows down the options.

### 3. Common lymphoid progenitor

Once an HSC becomes a lymphoid progenitor, it is committed to becoming a lymphocyte (eg B-cells which make antibodies).

### 4. Macrophage

Which cell the common myeloid progenitor becomes depends on what the body needs.

### 4. Dendritic cell

These play a vital role in the immune system, capturing antigens and flagging other immune cells to take action.

### 4. Erythrocyte

Red blood cells are the most common type of blood cell and carry oxygen around the body.

### 4. Platelet

These are small cell fragments involved in blood clotting, and are created by fragmentation of huge cells called megakaryocytes.

# The human spine

The human spine is made up of 33 vertebrae, but how do they support our bodies while allowing us such flexibility?



The human spine is made up of 33 vertebrae, 24 of which are articulated (flexible) and nine of which normally become fused in maturity. They are situated between the base of the skull to the pelvis, where the spine trails off into the coccyx – an evolutionary remnant of a tail our ancestors would have displayed.

The primary functions of the vertebrae that make up the spine are to support the torso and head, which protect vital nerves and the spinal cord and allow the individual to move. By sitting closely together, separated only by thin intervertebral discs which work as ligaments and effectively form joints between the bones, the vertebrae form a strong pillar structure which holds the head up and allows for the body to remain upright. It also produces a base for ribs to attach to and to protect vital internal organs in the human body.

Vertebrae are not all fused together because of the need to move, and the vertebrae themselves are grouped into five types – cervical, thoracic, lumbar, sacral and coccygeal. The sacral vertebrae fuse during maturity (childhood and teenage years) and become solid bones towards the base of the spine. The coccygeal vertebrae will fuse in some cases, but studies have shown that often they actually remain separate. Collectively they are referred to as the coccyx (tail bone). The rest of the vertebrae remain individual and discs between them allow them to move in various directions without wearing the bones down. The cervical vertebrae in the neck allow particularly extensive movement, allowing the head to move up and down and side to side. The thoracic are far more static, with ties to the rib cage resisting much movement. The lumbar vertebrae allow modest side-to-side movement and rotation. A particular feature of the spine is how it is actually curved to allow distribution of the body's weight, to ensure no one vertebrae takes the full impact.

## Spine curvature

As you look at the human spine, you can see some distinct curves. The primary reasons for these are to help distribute weight throughout the spine and support aspects of the body. The curve most familiar to us is the lumbar curve, between the ribs and pelvis. This develops when we start to walk at about 12-18 months and helps with weight distribution during locomotion. Prior to this we develop the cervical curve, which allows us to support the weight of our head at around three-four months, and two smaller less-obvious curves in the spine (the thoracic and pelvic curves) are developed during gestation.

### Cervical vertebrae

These are the smallest of the articulating vertebrae, and support the head and neck. There are seven vertebrae, with C1, C2 and C7's structures quite unique from the others. They sit between the skull and thoracic vertebrae.

### C2 (axis)

C2 is the pivot for C1 (atlas), and nearly all movement for shaking your head will occur at this joint – the atlanto-axial joint.

### Thoracic vertebrae

The thoracic vertebrae are the intermediately sized vertebrae. They increase in size as you move down the spine, and they supply facets for ribs to attach to – this is how they are primarily distinguished.

### Intervertebral discs

These discs form a joint between each vertebrae and, effectively, work as ligaments while also serving as fantastic shock absorbers. They facilitate movement and stop the bones rubbing together.



### C1 (atlas)

This is the vertebrae which connects the spinal column with the skull. It is named 'atlas' after the legend of Atlas who held the entire world on his shoulders.



HOW IT WORKS

HUMAN ANATOMY

Science of the backbone

## Spinal cords and nerves

The human spinal cord is an immensely complex structure made up of nerve cells and a large amount of supporting, protective tissue. It splits into 31 different sections and stretches 43-45cm, down from the brain to between the first and second lumbar vertebrae. Although more commonly referred to in respect of the brain, there is both white and grey matter present in the centre of the spinal cord. White matter contains axons tracts surrounded by fats, and blood vessels to protect them. The grey matter contains more of the neural cell bodies, such as dendrites, more axons and glial cells. Spinal cord injuries are normally caused by trauma. If the trauma causes intervertebral discs and vertebrae to break, they can pierce the spinal cord, which can result in loss of feeling. Cord severance may result in paralysis.

**MOST**



**1. Swan**  
With their long thin necks, swans have 25 cervical vertebrae. Such a high number helps to ensure maximum flexibility.

**FEWEST**



**2. Amphibians**  
Some amphibians, such as frogs, only have one neck vertebrae! Their size and structure means they don't need the flexibility that most mammals need.

**SURPRISING**



**3. Giraffe**  
Despite how incredibly long giraffe's necks are, they only actually have the same number of cervical vertebrae as humans - just seven.

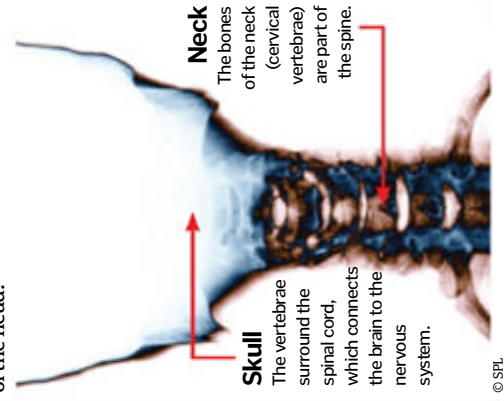
**DID YOU KNOW?** Cartilage (intervertebral discs) actually makes up 25% of the spine's length



Articulated vertebrae enable maximum flexibility

## How is the skull attached to the spine?

The skull is connected to the spine by the atlanto-occipital joint, which is created by C1 (atlas) and the occipital bone situated at the base of the cranium (skull). This unique vertebra has no 'body' and actually looks more like a ring than any other vertebra. It sits at the top of the cervical vertebrae and connects with the occipital bone via an ellipsoidal joint, allowing movement such as nodding or rotation of the head. An ellipsoidal joint is where an ovoid connection (in this case the occipital bone) is placed into an elliptical cavity (C1 vertebrae). The rest of the cervical vertebrae also work to support the weight of the head.



**Neck**

The bones of the neck (cervical vertebrae) are part of the spine.

**Skull**

The vertebrae surround the spinal cord, which connects the brain to the nervous system.

© SPL

## Lumbar vertebrae

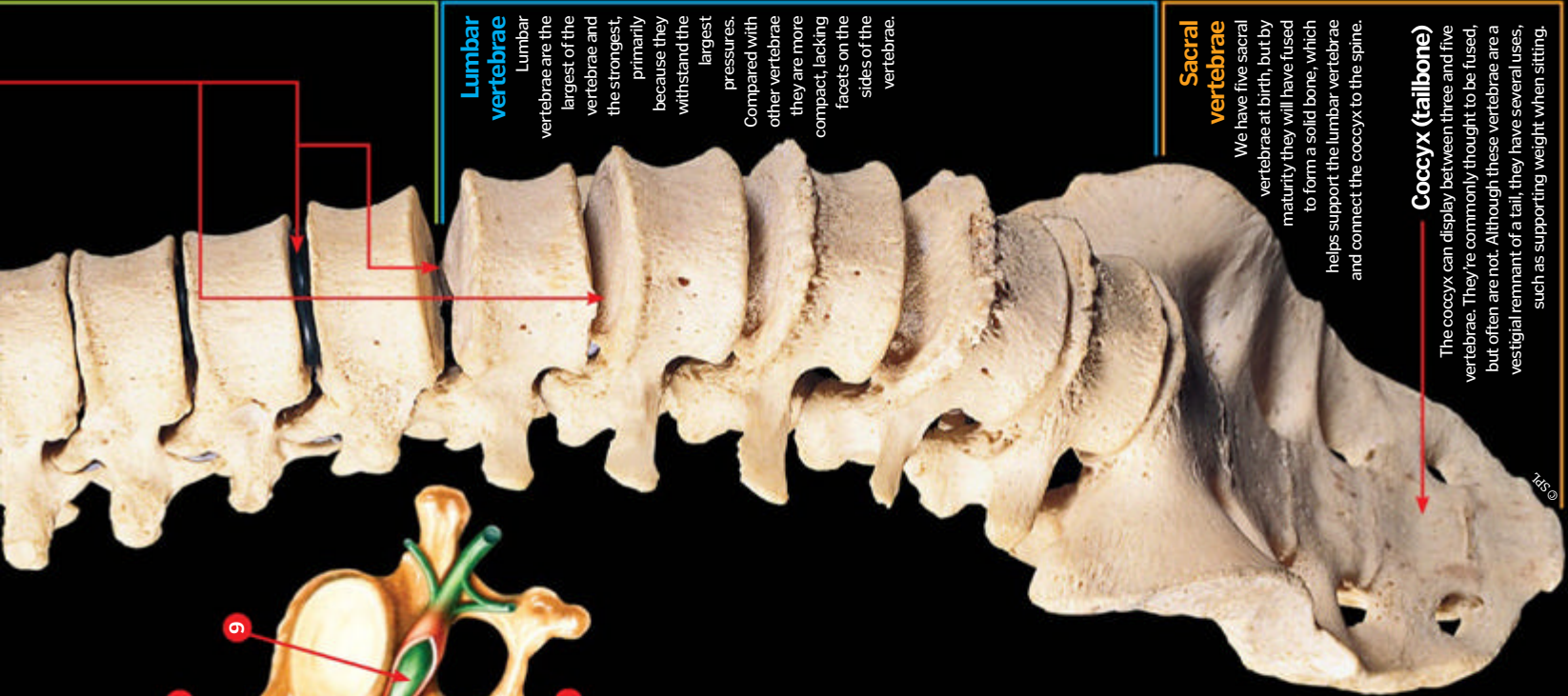
Lumbar vertebrae are the largest of the vertebrae and the strongest, primarily because they withstand the largest pressures. Compared with other vertebrae they are more compact, lacking facets on the sides of the vertebrae.

## Sacral vertebrae

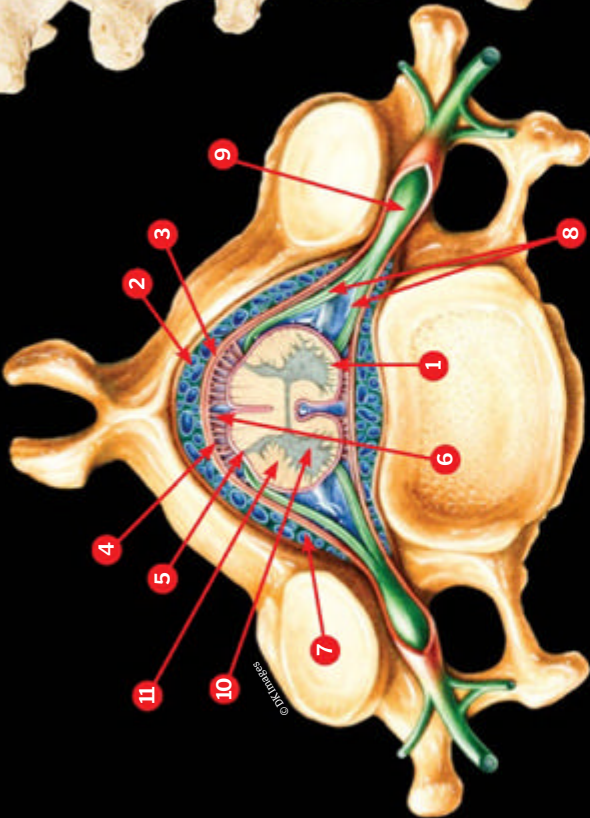
We have five sacral vertebrae at birth, but by maturity they will have fused to form a solid bone, which helps support the lumbar vertebrae and connect the coccyx to the spine.

## Coccyx (tailbone)

The coccyx can display between three and five vertebrae. They're commonly thought to be fused, but often are not. Although these vertebrae are a vestigial remnant of a tail, they have several uses, such as supporting weight when sitting.



145 ©



## Spinal column cross-section

- 1. Spinal cord**  
This is an immensely important pathway for information to transfer between the brain and the body's nervous system. It is heavily protected by tissue and vertebrae, as any damage to it can be fatal.
- 2. Epidural space**  
This is the space between the outer protective tissue layer, dura mater and the bone. It is filled with adipose tissue (fat), while also playing host to numerous blood vessels.
- 3. Dura mater**  
This is the tough outer layer of tissue that protects the spinal cord. The three layers of protection between the vertebrae and the spinal cord are called the spinal meninges.
- 4. Arachnoid mater**  
Named for its spider web appearance, this is the second layer of the tissue protection provided for the spinal cord.
- 5. Pia mater**  
This thin, delicate layer sits immediately next to the spinal cord.
- 6. Subarachnoid space**  
This is the space between the pia mater and the arachnoid mater, which is filled with cerebrospinal fluid.
- 7. Blood vessels**  
Four arteries, which form a network called the Circle of Willis, deliver oxygen-rich blood to the brain. The brain's capillaries form a lining called the 'blood-brain barrier', which controls blood flow to the brain.
- 8. Dorsal and ventral roots**  
These connect the spinal nerves to the spinal cord, allowing transition of information between the brain and the body.
- 9. Spinal nerves**  
Humans have 31 pairs of spinal nerves all aligned with individual vertebrae, and these communicate information from around the body to the spinal cord. They carry all types of information - motor, sensory and so on - and are commonly referred to as 'mixed spinal nerves'.
- 10. Grey matter**  
Within the horn-like shapes in the centre of the spinal cord, sit most of the important neural cell bodies. They are protected in many ways, including by the white matter.
- 11. White matter**  
This area that surrounds the grey matter holds axon trails, but is primarily made up of lipid tissue (fats) and blood vessels.



# Heart attacks

## What causes heart attacks and how do they kill?



A heart attack, also known as a myocardial infarction, occurs when a blockage stops blood oxygenating the heart muscle. If this is not corrected quickly, the muscle tissue that is lacking oxygen can become damaged, or indeed die. The scale of impact on the individual's health after the attack is dependant on how long the blockage occurs for, what artery it affected and what treatment was received. Following the initial attack, heart failure or arrhythmias can occur, both of which may prove fatal to the victim. However, given the right treatment many sufferers go on to make good recoveries and can eventually return to their normal activities.

The most common reason for heart attacks worldwide in humans is the

generation of coronary artery disease (CAD). This is where arteries are constricted due to plaque build-ups and this layer then ruptures. Blood platelets make their way to the site of rupture and start to form blood clots. If these clots become too large, the narrowed artery will block and a heart attack occurs. Heart attacks can also be caused by coronary artery spasms, but these are rare.

Although some people will be genetically predisposed to heart attacks, individuals can reduce risk by keeping their weight down, watching what they eat, not smoking and exercising regularly.

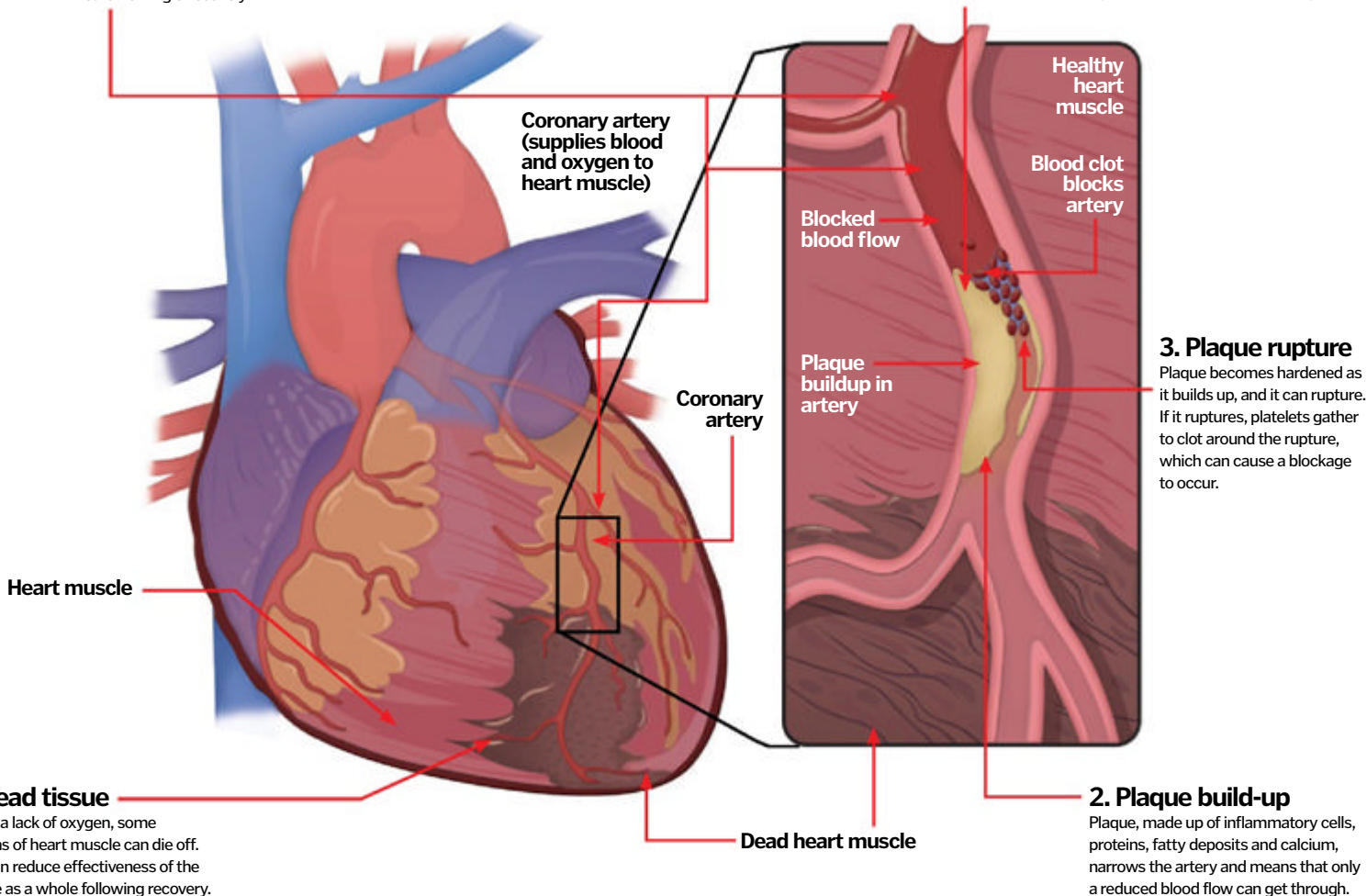


### 1. Coronary arteries

These are the arteries that supply the heart with blood. They are crucial to keeping the heart working effectively.

### 4. Blockage occurs

Either through excess clotting or further deposit build-up, a blockage can occur. This means blood flow cannot get through at all and the lack of oxygen results in heart tissue dying.



### Risk scores

**1** Using complex mathematical models, each individual patient is given a risk of dying from the operation, allowing them to make a decision about how risky the operation is.

### How much does it cost?

**2** The op is free on the NHS but in the private sector it would cost £16,000-£20,000 (\$23,300-\$29,000). The price varies with the risks and if it's the first surgery or a re-do.

### How much blood?

**3** On average, the heart beats 70 times per minute (about 100,000 times per day) which pumps five litres of blood per minute. Five per cent flows through the coronary arteries.

### Beating heart bypass

**4** A bypass can be performed without stopping the heart, using a special retractor. In a few places, surgery has been performed this way on patients who are awake.

### New techniques

**5** New techniques include using mini-incisions into the chest and also the use of robots. Small cameras are also used to harvest the new vessels for the bypass grafts.

**DID YOU KNOW?** The heart has four separate chambers, four valves to control blood flow and two main coronary arteries

### 3. Bypassing the heart

Blood is removed by pumping it out of the body, oxygen is added to it in a bypass machine and the blood pumped back in. This allows oxygenated blood to continually flow while the heart is stopped.

### 4. Stopping the heart

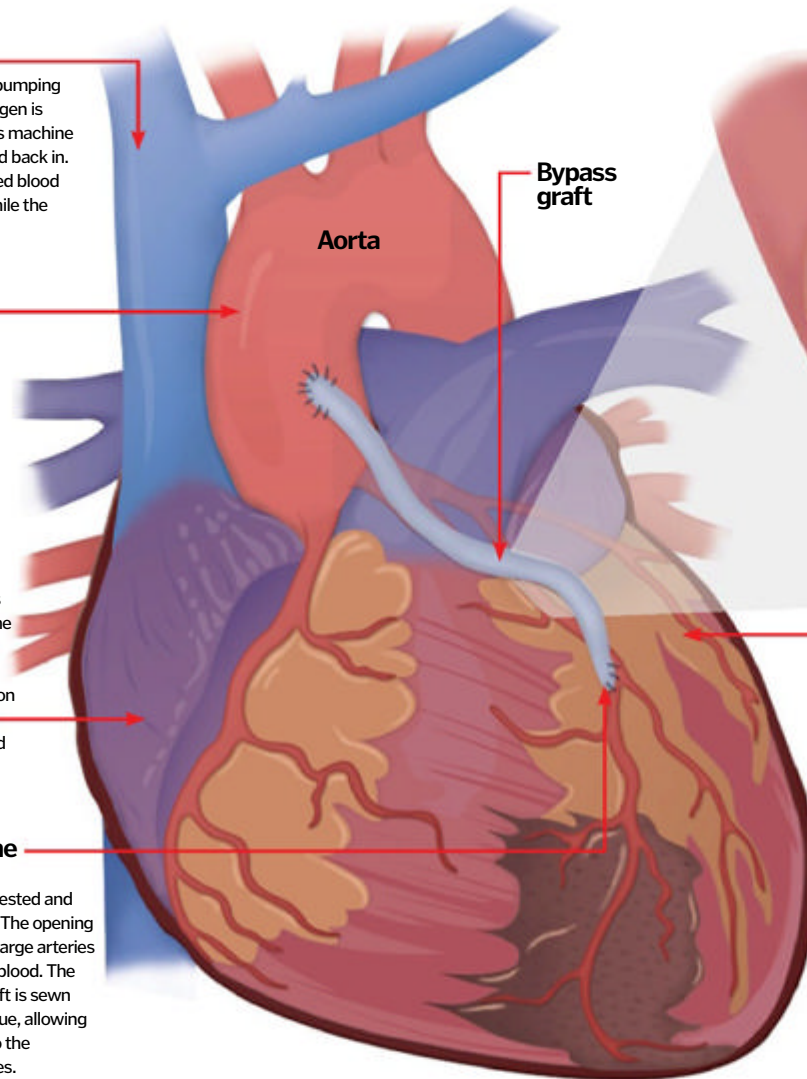
The aorta, the main vessel out of the heart, is clamped. The heart is then cooled and stopped using a potassium-rich solution.

### 6. Restarting the heart

Once the new vessels have been secured, the aorta is unclamped which washes the potassium-rich solution from the heart. The patient is warmed and the heart restarts.

### 5. Attaching the new vessels

The new vessels are tested and then sewn into place. The opening is sewn to one of the large arteries carrying oxygen-rich blood. The end of the bypass graft is sewn beyond the fatty plaque, allowing blood to freely flow to the affected heart muscles.



## Heart bypass

### What happens in surgery?

#### 1. The problem

Fatty plaques narrow and eventually block the coronary arteries, preventing oxygen-rich blood flowing to the heart muscle.

#### Plaque blockage

#### Coronary artery

#### 2. Getting to the heart

The chest is opened through a cut down the middle of the breastbone (sternum). A special bone saw is used to cut through the sternum, which doesn't damage the heart below.

#### 7. Closing the chest

After making sure there is no bleeding, thin metal wires are used to hold the two halves of the sternum back together.

## Bypass grafts

The body has certain vessels which it can do without, and these act as conduits for bypass surgery. Commonly used, the long saphenous vein runs from the ankle to the groin. A shallow incision allows the vein to be dissected away from its surrounding tissue. Other vessels often used include small arteries from behind the rib cage (internal mammary artery) or the arms (radial artery).

## Stopping the heart

Cardiopulmonary bypass (where a machine takes over the heart's pumping action and the gas exchange function of the lungs) is established to provide oxygenated blood to the rest of the body. Next, the heart is stopped. This is achieved using a potassium-rich solution, pumped down the coronary arteries. This stops the heart contracting. The surgeon can now carefully attach the fresh vessels to bypass the blockages.

# How heart bypasses work

When too little blood is getting to the muscles of the heart, a surgeon can bypass the blockages using the body's own vessels



Although the heart pumps oxygenated blood around the body, the heart's muscular walls need their own blood supply. Oxygen-rich blood is delivered to these tissues via small vessels on its surface – the coronary arteries. These arteries can get narrowed or blocked up with cholesterol causing fatty plaques which slow blood flow. At times of exercise, not enough blood gets to the heart muscles, leading to pain due to lack

of oxygen – angina. If a vessel becomes completely blocked, no blood gets through, causing a heart attack where the heart muscle dies.

The first way to treat this type of coronary artery disease is with medicines. Secondly, angioplasty can be used, where narrowings within the arteries are stretched using a balloon, with or without placing a stent to keep the vessel open. Finally, a heart bypass operation is an option for some patients.

The surgeon uses healthy vessels from other parts of the patient's body to bypass the blockage, allowing a new route for blood to flow. This delivers higher volumes of the oxygen-rich blood to the heart muscles beyond the blockage, preventing the pain.

Most bypasses are performed by stopping the heart and using a heart-lung bypass machine to deliver oxygenated blood to the body. The new vessels are then sewn into place.



HOW IT WORKS

# HUMAN ANATOMY

## The science of blood transfusions



No one can get a transfusion unless blood donors keep on donating

© Courtesy of NHS Blood and Transplant

### What's in your blood?

#### Red blood cells

Red blood cells are the most abundant cells in blood and give it a red colour. They carry oxygen from the lungs around the body, bound to a protein called haemoglobin.

#### Plasma

Plasma is a straw-coloured watery fluid that carries all of the cells and proteins in blood, including the vital clotting factors.

#### Platelets

Platelets are tiny fragments of blood that are crucial in stopping bleeding, along with clotting factors, by forming a platelet plug.

#### White blood cells

These are your infection-fighting cells; they circulate in the blood so they can quickly multiply and be transported to an area where there's an infection flaring.

#### Lymphocytes

Lymphocytes are a type of white blood cell that directs the body's immune system. They have a memory for invading bacteria and viruses.

# Blood transfusions

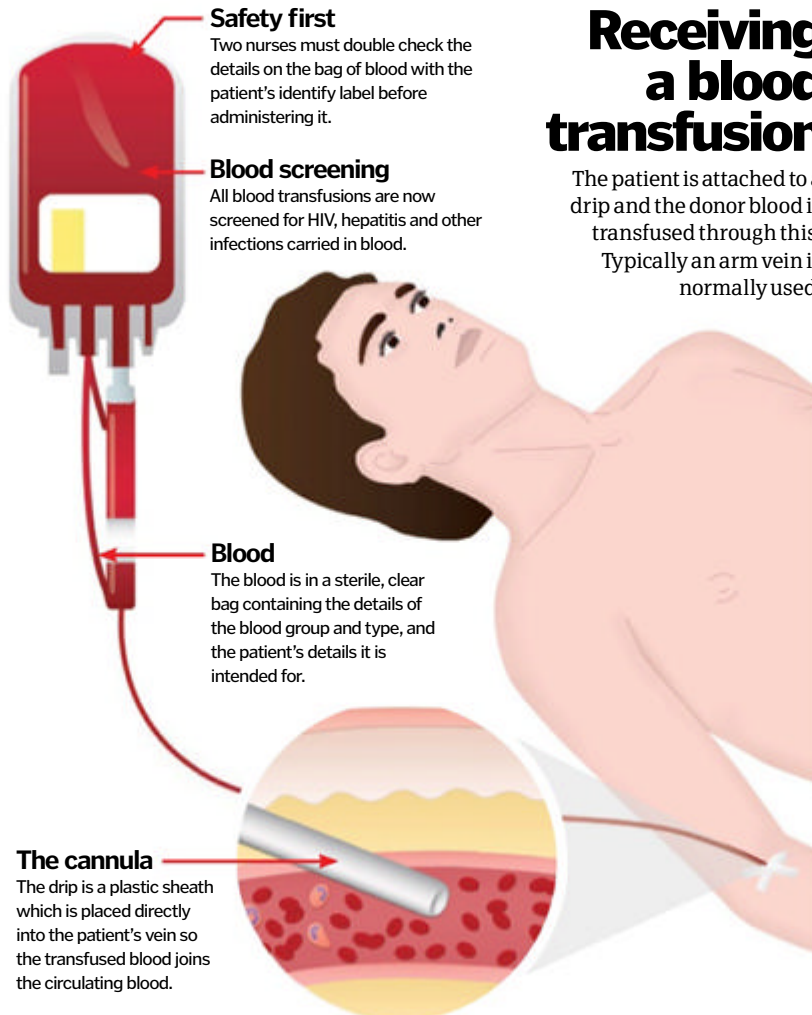
Whether it's a patient haemorrhaging to death or a 'top up' for life-long diseases, blood transfusions are vital procedures



A blood transfusion takes place when a patient is given components of blood from a donor when their own blood levels are too low. Having enough blood is essential because it carries oxygen around the body and returns carbon dioxide to the lungs to be exhaled as a waste product.

When a doctor decides a patient needs blood, they are 'cross-matched' with donor blood. A few millilitres of their blood is collected into a small bottle which must be hand-labelled to prevent confusion between patients. In the lab the blood is matched with donor blood of the same group (either A, B or O). The unit of donor blood is then transfused via a drip into the patient's vein over two to three hours.

During this time the nurse keeps close observation of the patient to look for transfusion reactions. These can be mild (such as a fever, chills or a rash), which are solved by slowing down the rate of flow, to severe, life-threatening allergic reactions.



### Receiving a blood transfusion

The patient is attached to a drip and the donor blood is transfused through this. Typically an arm vein is normally used.

### The ABO blood groups

We all belong to one of four blood types (below). Different antigens present on the surface of red blood cells identify to which group you belong. A patient must receive blood with the correct antigens or else their immune system will recognise that the red blood cells are foreign cells and will attack.

- A** - A antigens on red blood cells and anti-B antibodies in plasma
- B** - B antigens on red blood cells and anti-A antibodies in plasma
- AB** - A and B antigens on red blood cells and no antibodies in plasma
- O** - No antigens on red blood cells and anti-A and anti-B antibodies in plasma

### Anaemia

**1** One quarter of blood transfusions are given to patients with anaemia, whose blood levels have been dropping slowly over time due to diseases like cancer.

### Haematology

**2** Some patients have blood disorders where their own red blood cells are deficient, such as in sickle cell disease or red cells destroyed at a high rate called haemolysis.

### Orthopaedics

**3** In orthopaedic surgery – such as spinal fusion and hip arthroplasty – blood is lost during the operation. This is common with large joint replacement surgery.

### Gastrointestinal bleeding

**4** Blood loss from the gastrointestinal tract, such as stomach ulcers and colorectal cancer, accounts for 11 per cent of all human blood transfusions.

### Childbirth

**5** The fifth most common cause of blood transfusion is during or following traumatic childbirth. Normally blood loss during childbirth is less than 600ml.

**DID YOU KNOW?** The first ever successful blood transfusion was performed on a dog in 1665 by Richard Lower

# Strokes

The loss of blood supply to the brain can cause long-term damage or death



Strokes are caused when the flow of blood to the brain is interrupted. There are two main reasons why this might occur, and ischaemic strokes are the most common. They occur because of a blood clot that forms in an artery (thrombosis) or a blood clot that forms and travels to a brain artery (arterial embolism) that reduces or blocks the blood flow (ischemia).

The second reason is bleeding (haemorrhaging) of a blood vessel in the brain. This can be caused when a thin part of a vessel (an aneurysm) bursts. Between one and six per cent of the population have an intracranial aneurysm and every year in the United Kingdom 1,400 people die of ruptured intracranial aneurysms.

A stroke is defined when it either causes death or has a long-term effect after 24 hours. You can experience signs of a mini stroke that are called transient ischemic attacks (TIAs) that last only a few minutes or hours. The onset of a full stroke is characterised by numbness in the face and limbs. Vision can be impaired and you can have trouble walking or talking.

The effects of a stroke depend on which part of the brain was most starved of oxygen from the blood supply. In many cases, stroke victims will find it difficult to walk or eat due to muscle weakness and in extreme cases, they might experience paralysis.

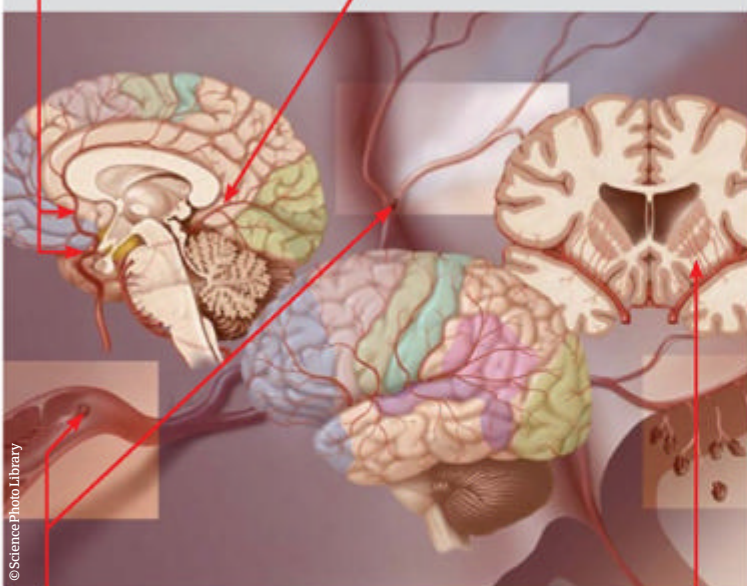
## Areas of impact

### Carotid arteries

Carotid blood vessels, served by the internal and external carotid arteries, supply blood to the front part of the cerebrum.

### Vertebral arteries

Vertebral arteries supply blood to the rest of the brain and enter the skull through the foramen magnum.



### Clot

Ischaemic strokes are caused by blood clots, which can either form directly in an artery, or form and then travel to a brain artery that it then blocks, reducing blood flow.

### Aneurysm

When part of a thin blood vessel bursts haemorrhaging can occur.

# Blood clotting

How the body reacts to blood vessel damage to aid the healing process



Through the action of the thrombin system, coagulation of the blood occurs instantly at the location where there is a cut or other injury to the skin. The blood clot, which consists of a combination of cellular platelets and sticky strings of fibrin, forms a plug in the damaged blood vessels.

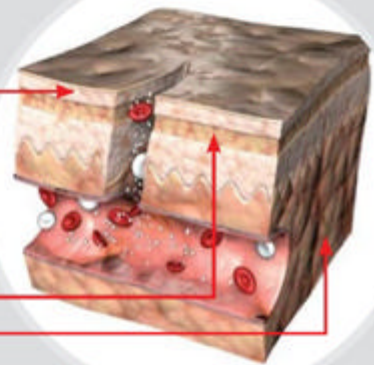
The clot stops blood from freely flowing out of the body and at the same time allows the blood to continue circulating. As the skin heals, plasmin enzymes break down the webs of fibrin and the clot is eventually dissolved into the body.

Clots can also form in blood vessels due to inactivity, old age, obesity, smoking, poor diet or during pregnancy. This condition is known as thrombosis and can lead to an embolism.

## Formation of a blood clot

### 1. Skin layer

Composed of a water-resistant and protective layer called the epidermis; beneath it is the dermis layer that consists of blood vessels and connective tissue.

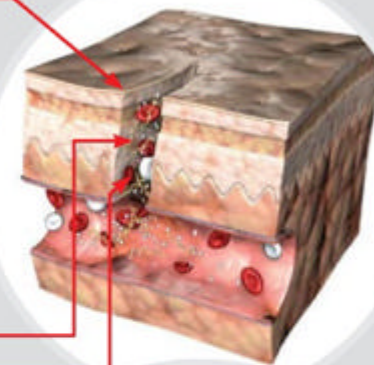


### Epidermis

### Dermis

### 2. Cut

If skin is cut, platelets in the blood vessels of the damaged area become 'sticky' and clump together at the damaged site to form a white clot. Other chemical reactions create sticky web-like strands of fibrin that adhere to the damaged blood vessel wall, to form a red clot.

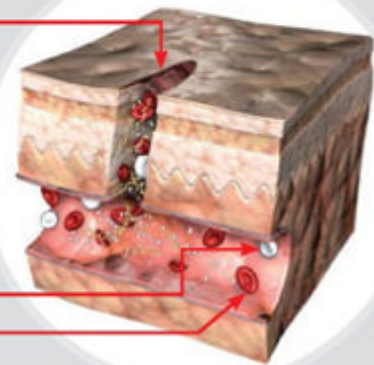


### Strands of fibrin

### Platelets

### 3. Healing

The blood clot stops blood escaping from the wound, and allows the normal circulation of the red blood cells which transport oxygen around the body and the white blood cells that protect it against infection.



### White blood cell

### Red blood cell



# Kidney function

## How do your kidneys filter waste from the blood to keep you alive?



Kidneys are bean-shaped organs situated halfway down the back just under the ribcage, one on each side of the body, and weigh between 115 and 170 grams each, dependent on the individual's sex and size. The left kidney is commonly a little larger than the right and due to the effectiveness of these organs, individuals born with only one kidney can survive with little or no adverse health problems. Indeed, the body can operate normally with a 30-40 per cent decline in kidney function. This decline in function would rarely even be noticeable and shows just how effective the kidneys are at filtering out waste products as well as maintaining mineral levels and blood pressure throughout the body. The kidneys manage to control all of this by working with other organs and glands across the body such as the hypothalamus, which helps the kidneys determine and control water levels in the body.

Each day the kidneys will filter between 150 and 180 litres of blood, but only pass around two litres of waste down the ureters to the bladder for excretion. This waste product is primarily urea – a by-product of protein being broken down for energy – and water, and it's more commonly known as 'urine'. The kidneys filter the blood by passing it through a small filtering unit called a nephron. Each kidney has around a million of these, which are made up of a number of small blood capillaries, called glomerulus, and a urine-collecting tube called the renal tubule. The glomerulus sift the normal cells and proteins from the blood and then move the waste products into the renal tubule, which transports urine down into the bladder through the ureters.

Alongside this filtering process, the kidneys also release three crucial hormones (known as erythropoietin, renin and calcitriol) which encourage red blood cell production, aid regulation of blood pressure and aid bone development and mineral balance respectively.

## Inside your kidney

As blood enters the kidneys, it is passed through a nephron, a tiny unit made up of blood capillaries and a waste-transporting tube. These work together to filter the blood, returning clean blood to the heart and lungs for re-oxygenation and recirculation and removing waste to the bladder for excretion.

### Renal cortex

This is one of two broad internal sections of the kidney, the other being the renal medulla. The renal tubules are situated here in the protrusions that sit between the pyramids and secure the cortex and medulla together.

### Renal artery

This artery supplies the kidney with blood that is to be filtered.

### Renal vein

After waste has been removed, the clean blood is passed out of the kidney via the renal vein.

### Ureter

The tube that transports the waste products (urine) to the bladder following blood filtration.

### Renal pelvis

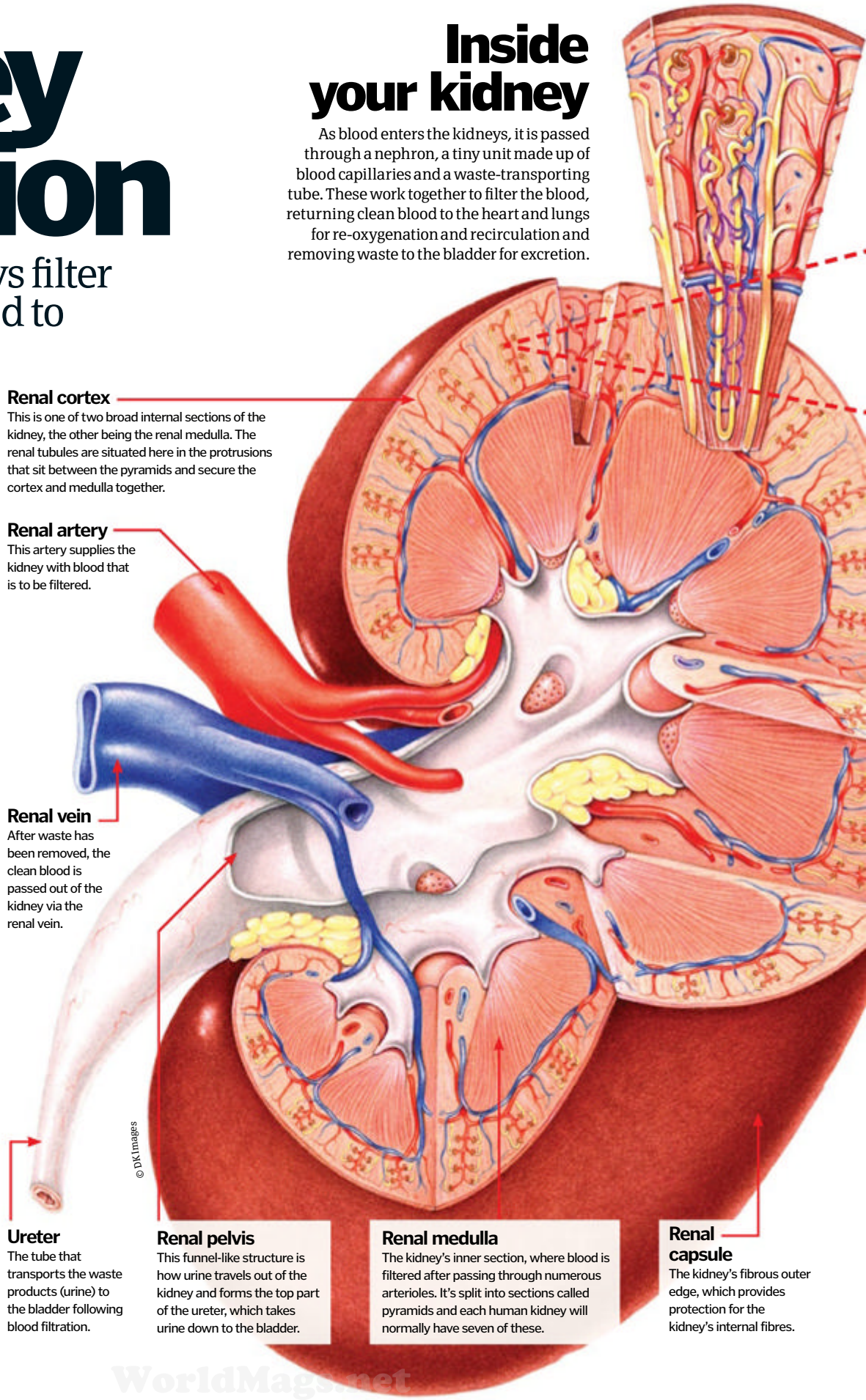
This funnel-like structure is how urine travels out of the kidney and forms the top part of the ureter, which takes urine down to the bladder.

### Renal medulla

The kidney's inner section, where blood is filtered after passing through numerous arterioles. It's split into sections called pyramids and each human kidney will normally have seven of these.

### Renal capsule

The kidney's fibrous outer edge, which provides protection for the kidney's internal fibres.



© DK Images



**Two for the price of one**

We are thought to have two kidneys because they are so crucial to our survival, the second is purely a 'back up'. Having two organs obviously increases our chances of survival and reproductive fitness.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Useless body parts include the appendix, the coccyx and wisdom teeth

**Nephrons - the filtration units of the kidney**

Nephrons are the units which filter all blood that passes through the kidneys. There are around a million in each kidney, situated in the renal medulla's pyramid structures. As well as filtering waste, nephrons regulate water and mineral salt by recirculating what is needed and excreting the rest.

**Proximal tubule**

Links Bowman's capsule and the loop of Henle, and will selectively reabsorb minerals from the filtrate produced by Bowman's capsule.

**Collecting duct system**

Although not technically part of the nephron, this collects all waste product filtered by the nephrons and facilitates its removal from the kidneys.

**Glomerulus**

High pressure in the glomerulus, caused by it draining into an arteriole instead of a venule, forces fluids and soluble materials out of the capillary and into Bowman's capsule.

**Bowman's capsule**

Also known as the glomerular capsule, this filters the fluid that has been expelled from the glomerulus. Resulting filtrate is passed along the nephron and will eventually make up urine.

**Distal convoluted tubule**

Partly responsible for the regulation of minerals in the blood, linking to the collecting duct system. Unwanted minerals are excreted from the nephron.

**Renal artery**

This artery supplies the kidney with blood. The blood travels through this, into arterioles as you travel into the kidney, until the blood reaches the glomerulus.

**Renal vein**

This removes blood that has been filtered from the kidney.

**Loop of Henle**

The loop of Henle controls the mineral and water concentration levels within the kidney to aid filtration of fluids as necessary. It also controls urine concentration.

**Renal tubule**

Made up of three parts, the proximal tubule, the loop of Henle and the distal convoluted tubule. They remove waste and reabsorb minerals from the filtrate passed on from Bowman's capsule.

**The glomerulus**

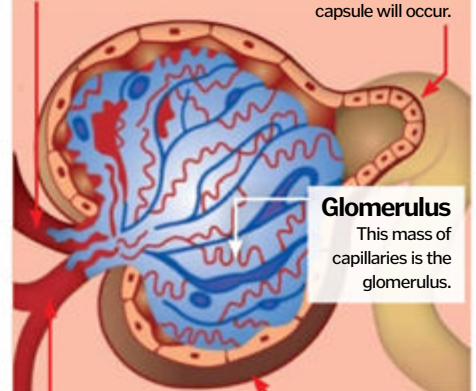
This group of capillaries is the first step of filtration and a crucial aspect of a nephron. As blood enters the kidneys via the renal artery, it is passed down through a series of arterioles which eventually lead to the glomerulus. This is unusual, as instead of draining into a venule (which would lead back to a vein) it drains back into an arteriole, which creates much higher pressure than normally seen in capillaries, which in turn forces soluble materials and fluids out of the capillaries. This process is known as ultrafiltration and is the first step in filtration of the blood. These then pass through the Bowman's capsule (also known as the glomerular capsule) for further filtration.

**Afferent arteriole**

This arteriole supplies the blood to the glomerulus for filtration.

**Proximal tubule**

Where reabsorption of minerals from the filtrate from Bowman's capsule will occur.



**Glomerulus**

This mass of capillaries is the glomerulus.

**Bowman's capsule**

This is the surrounding capsule that will filter the filtrate produced by the glomerulus.

**Efferent arteriole**

This arteriole is how blood leaves the glomerulus following ultrafiltration.

**What is urine and what is it made of?**

Urine is made up of a range of organic compounds such as proteins and hormones, inorganic salts and numerous metabolites. These by-products are often rich in nitrogen and need to be removed from the blood stream through urination. The pH-level of urine is typically around neutral (pH7) but varies depending on diet, hydration levels and physical fitness. The colour of urine is also determined by these factors, with dark-yellow urine indicating dehydration and greenish urine being indicative of excessive asparagus consumption.

94% water



6% other organic compounds



# Kidney transplants

The kidneys are the body's natural filters. You can survive on just one, but when that fails you may need a transplant



Transplanting organs is a complex process, although it can give a new lease of life to recipients. The kidney is the most frequently transplanted organ, both in the UK and around the world. However, there is a discrepancy between the number of patients waiting for a transplant and the number of available organs; only around one third of those waiting per

year receive their transplant. The number of patients registered for a kidney transplant increases each year, and has risen by 50 per cent since 2000.

Kidney transplants come from two main sources: the living and the recently deceased. If a healthy, compatible family member is willing to donate a kidney, they can survive with just one remaining kidney. In other cases, someone else's tragedy is

someone else's fortune. For those who are declared brain-dead, the beating heart will keep the kidneys perfused until they are ready to be removed. In some patients, the ventilator will be switched off and it's a race against time to harvest organs. Either way, consent from the family is needed, even at such an emotional and pressurised time.

When a suitable organ becomes available, it is matched via a national

register to a suitable recipient. A 'retrieval' team from a central transplant unit (of which there are 20 based around the UK) will go to whichever hospital the donor is in. They will remove the organs, while the recipient is being prepared in the base hospital. During the tricky operation, the new kidney is 'plumbed' into the pelvis, leaving the old, non-functioning ones in-situ.

## How to perform a kidney transplant

Transplanting a kidney is a case of careful and clever plumbing. The first step is to harvest the donor kidney, and then it's a dash to transplant the new kidney into the recipient. When the brain-dead donor is transferred to the operating theatre for organ harvest, they are treated with the same care and respect as if they were still alive. When consent has been given for multiple organ harvest, a cut is made from the top of the chest to the bottom of the pelvis. The heart and lungs are retrieved first, followed by the abdominal organs.

### 5. Plumbing it in

The renal artery and vein are connected to the corresponding iliac artery and vein in the recipient's body. Holes (arteriotomies) are created in the main arteries, and the kidney's vessels are anastomosed (a surgical join between two tubes using sutures).

### 1. The donor

The donor kidney is harvested, including enough length of artery, vein and ureter (which carries urine to the bladder) to allow tension-free implantation into the recipient.

### 2. Out with the old?

As long as there's no question of cancer, the original kidneys are left in place.

### 3. Into the pelvis

An incision is made in the lower part of the abdomen to gain access into the pelvis.

### 7. What's that lump?

The new kidney can be felt underneath the scar in the recipient. These patients are often recruited to medical student exams.

### 8. Catheter

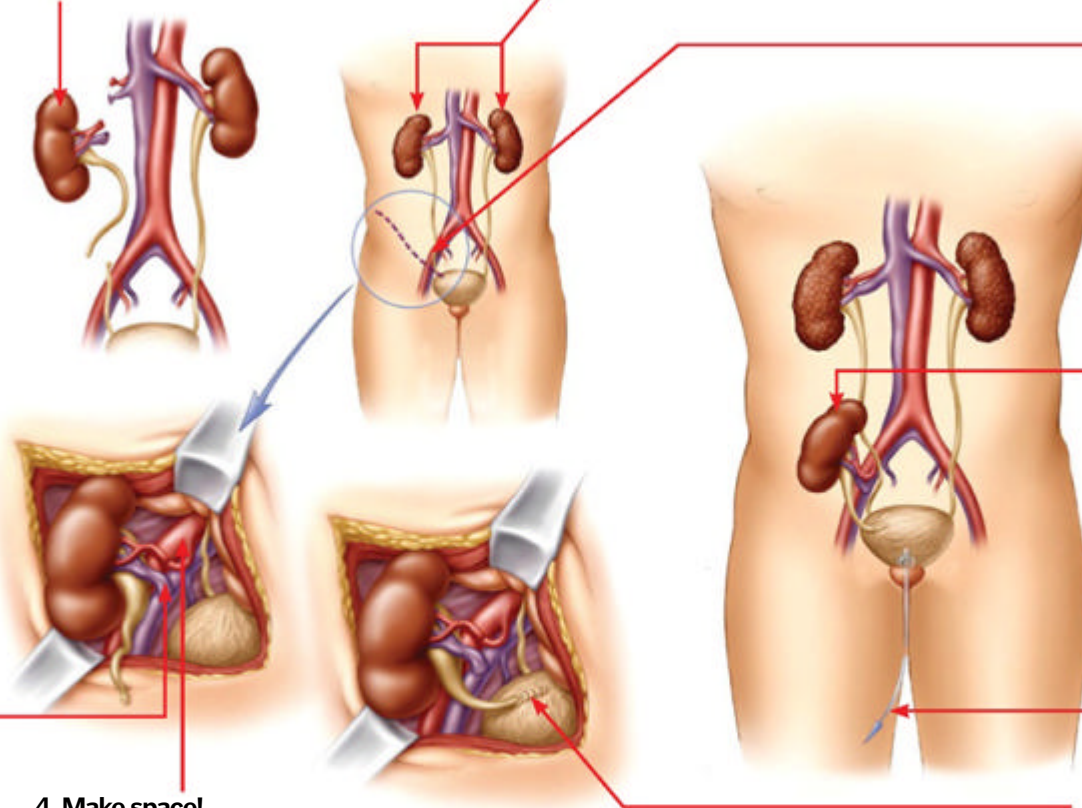
A catheter is left in-situ for a short while, so that the urine output of the new kidney can be measured exactly.

### 4. Make space!

The surgeon will create space in the pelvis, and identify the large vessels which run from the heart to the leg (the iliac arteries and veins). The new kidney's vessels will be connected to these.

### 6. The final link

The ureter, which drains urine from the kidney, is connected to the bladder. This allows the kidney to function in the same way as one of the original kidneys.



### Pioneers

**1** The very first kidney transplant to take place in the UK was performed in Edinburgh, 1960. Here a surgeon transplanted a kidney from a 49-year-old into his twin brother.

### The 'organ gap'

**2** Around 7,000 people in the United Kingdom last year were waiting for organ transplants, but only around 2,300 kidney transplants actually took place.

### Which other organs?

**3** Organs that can be transplanted include kidneys, livers, hearts, lungs, the pancreas and intestines; tissues include bones, heart valves, skin and corneas.

### Through the keyhole

**4** When removing a kidney from a living donor, the most modern centres use keyhole surgery (laparoscopy) to do it – this leads to smaller scars, less pain and faster recovery.

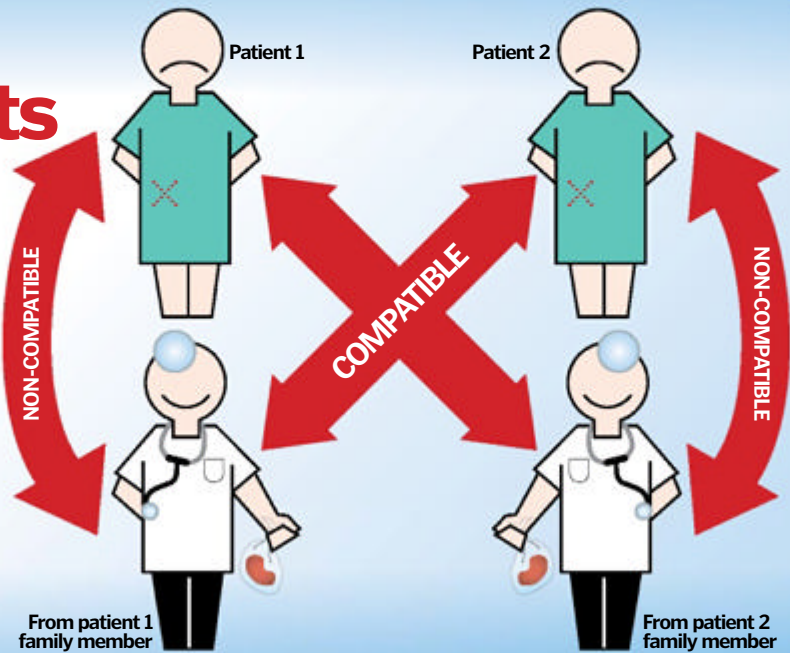
### Do something about it

**5** You can register to become an organ donor at <http://www.organdonation.nhs.uk/> – don't forget to talk to your loved ones about it.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Of the millions of people in the UK suffering from kidney disease, 50,000 will suffer end-stage renal failure

## Domino transplants

Patient 1 needs a new kidney but their family member isn't compatible. Patient 2 also needs a kidney and has an incompatible family member as well. However, patient 2's relation is compatible with patient 1 and vice versa. The surgeon arranges a swap – a 'paired' transplant. A longer line of patients and family members swapping compatible kidneys can be arranged – a 'daisy-chain' transplant. A 'good Samaritan' donor, who isn't related to any of the recipients, can start the process. This first recipient's family member will subsequently donate to someone else – a 'domino' transplant effect which can go on for several cycles.



Time is always of the essence

© Science Photo Library

## Who is suitable?

Of the several million people in the UK with kidney disease, only around 50,000 will develop end-stage renal failure (ESRF). For these people, dialysis or kidney transplantation are the only options. Kidney damage from diabetes is the most common cause of transplantation. Other causes include damage from high blood pressure, chronic kidney scarring (chronic pyelonephritis) and polycystic kidney disease (the normal kidney tissue is replaced with multiple cysts); many other less common causes exist also.

Patients must be selected carefully due to the scarcity of organs. Those with widespread cancer, severely calcified arteries, persistent substance abuse and unstable mental problems mean that transplants are likely to fail and so these patients are unsuitable to receive a precious kidney transplant.

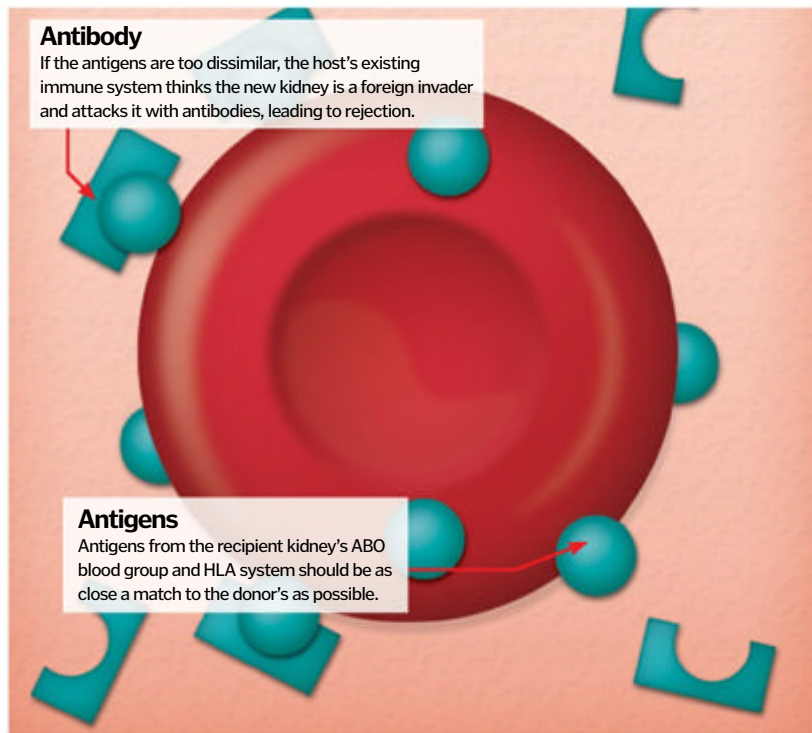
*"Patients are monitored for the rest of their lives"*

### Antibody

If the antigens are too dissimilar, the host's existing immune system thinks the new kidney is a foreign invader and attacks it with antibodies, leading to rejection.

### Antigens

Antigens from the recipient kidney's ABO blood group and HLA system should be as close a match to the donor's as possible.



## When things go wrong...

Kidneys need to be carefully matched to suitable donors, or rejection of the new organ will set in fast. Rejection occurs when the host body's natural antibodies think the new tissue is a foreign invader and attacks; careful pre-operative matching helps limit the degree of this attack. The most important match is via the ABO blood group type – the blood group must match or rejection is fast and aggressive. Next, the body's HLA (human leukocyte antigen) system should be a close a match as possible, although it doesn't need to be perfect. Incorrect matches here can lead to rejection over longer periods of time. After the operation, patients are started on anti-rejection medicines which suppress the host's immune system (immunosuppressants such as Tacrolimus, Azathioprine or Prednisolone). Patients are monitored for the rest of their lives for signs of rejection. These immunosuppressants aren't without their risks – since they suppress the body's natural defences, the risks of infections and cancers are higher.

## Pack carefully!

The transport of harvested organs is time critical – the sooner the surgeon can put them into the recipient the better. As soon as blood stops flowing to the harvested tissue, the lack of oxygen damages these cells, which is called ischaemia. The retrieval team have a few tricks up their sleeves to maximise the viability of the precious cargo they carry.

In the operating theatre, just before they remove the harvested kidney, it is flushed clean of blood with a special cold, nutrient-rich solution. Once removed, it is quickly put in a sterile container with ice. The most modern technique is to use a cold perfusion machine instead of ice, which pumps a cooled solution through the kidney and improves its lasting power. While hearts and lungs can only last around four hours, kidneys can last 24-48 hours. Transfer of the affected organ is done via the fastest method possible; this often involves using helicopters or police escorts.

All of these methods prolong the preservation time of the kidney, although once 'plugged' back in, it can take a few days for the kidney to start working properly (especially if harvested from a non-heart-beating donor).



HOW IT WORKS

# HUMAN ANATOMY

## Vestigial organs

# Useless body parts

Why have humans and other animals stopped using certain organs and functions which were once crucial for survival?



Charles Darwin is one of history's most famous naturalists. Living in the 19th Century, he became celebrated for his theories on evolution. In his seminal work *On The Origin Of Species* he described how similar animals were likely to be related by common ancestors, rather than be completely unrelated. As subsequent generations are born, traits and features that did not bring a survival benefit to that species were eliminated. That, in a nutshell, is the theory of evolution.

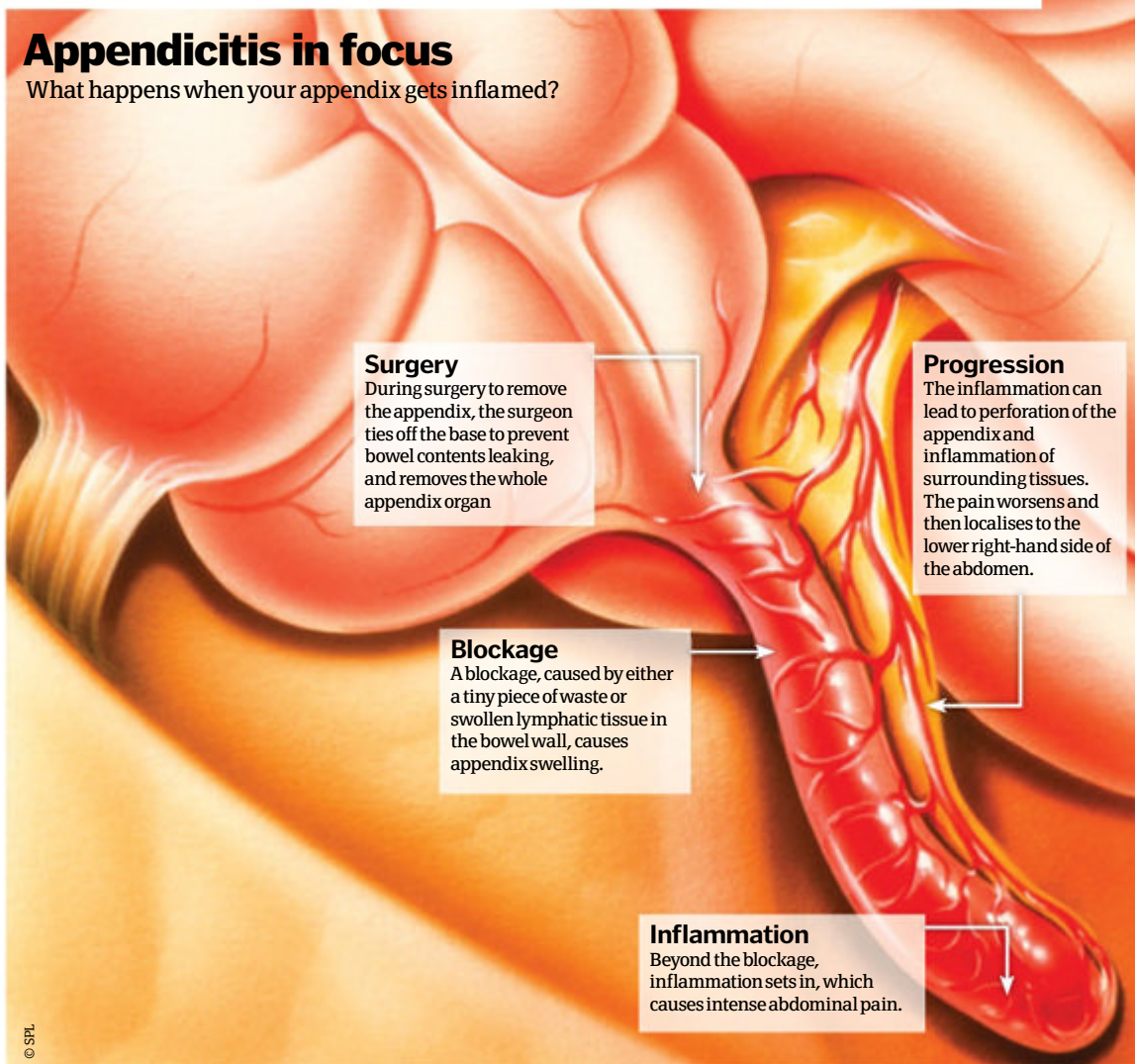
As a consequence, some organs and traits left in the body lose their function and are no longer used. This applies to modern human beings as

much as other creatures; some of our physical attributes and behavioural responses are functional in other animals, but they do not seem to be of any benefit to us. These evolutionary remnants that no longer serve any purpose are called vestigial organs, though this can apply as much to behaviour and other body structures as it does to actual organs.

Evolution has also adapted some existing features to help us in new ways, in a process known as exaptation. For example, birds' wings not only help them to fly but keep them warm too. These changes may take thousands of years to develop, and in some cases the original role is eventually eliminated altogether.

## Appendicitis in focus

What happens when your appendix gets inflamed?



### Surgery

During surgery to remove the appendix, the surgeon ties off the base to prevent bowel contents leaking, and removes the whole appendix organ

### Progression

The inflammation can lead to perforation of the appendix and inflammation of surrounding tissues. The pain worsens and then localises to the lower right-hand side of the abdomen.

### Blockage

A blockage, caused by either a tiny piece of waste or swollen lymphatic tissue in the bowel wall, causes appendix swelling.

### Inflammation

Beyond the blockage, inflammation sets in, which causes intense abdominal pain.

## Evolution's leftovers

### 1 Appendix

The best known of the vestigial organs, the appendix is used in animals to help digest cellulose found in grass, but in humans it serves no clear function now.

### 2 Tailbone

The hard bone at the bottom of your spine, the coccyx, is a remnant of our evolutionary ancestors' tail. It has no function in humans, but you could break it if you fall over.

### 3 Goosebumps

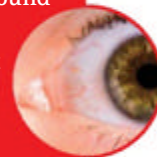
Animals use body hair for insulation from the cold, by trapping a warm layer of air around the body. Each hair can stand on end when its own tiny muscle contracts, but as human beings have lost most of their body hair, a jumper is more effective.

### 4 Plica semilunaris

The fleshy red fold found in the corner of your eye used to be a transparent inner eyelid, which is still present in both reptiles and birds.

### 5 Wisdom teeth

These teeth emerge during our late teens in each corner of the gums. Our ancestors used them to help chew dense plant matter, but they have no function today, but can cause a lot of pain.



© SPL

© SPL/Thinkstock

**DID YOU KNOW?** Around 15 per cent of us have an extra spleen – a small sphere close to but separate from the principal organ

# How the spleen works

Perhaps not as well known as famous organs like the heart, the spleen serves vital functions that help keep us healthy



The spleen's main functions are to remove old blood cells and fight off infection. Red blood cells have an average life span of 120 days. Most are created from the marrow of long bones, such as the femur. When they're old, it's the spleen's job to identify them, filter them out and then break them down. The smaller particles are then sent back into the bloodstream, and either recycled or excreted from other parts of the body. This takes place in the 'red pulp', which are blood vessel-rich areas of the spleen that make up about three-quarters of its structure.

The remainder is called 'white pulp', which are areas filled with different types of immune cell (such as lymphocytes). They filter out and destroy foreign pathogens, which have invaded the body and are circulating in the blood. The white pulp breaks them down into smaller, harmless particles.

The spleen is surrounded by a thin, fragile capsule and so is prone to injury. It sits beneath the lower ribs on the left-hand side of your body, which affords it some protection, but car crashes, major sports impacts and knife wounds can all rupture the organ. In the most serious cases, blood loss can endanger the person's life, and in these situations it needs to be removed by a surgeon. Since this reduces the body's ability to fight infections, some people will need to take antibiotics to boost their immunity for the rest of their lives.

## The immune system

Although the red blood that flows through our bodies gets all the glory, the transparent lymphatic fluid is equally important. It has its own body-wide network which follows blood vessel flow closely and allows for the transport of digested fats, immune cells and more...

### Spleen

One of the master co-ordinators that staves off infections and filters old red blood cells. It contains a number of lymphocytes that recognise and destroy invading pathogens present in the blood as it flows through the spleen.

### Thymus

A small organ that sits just above the heart and behind the sternum. It teaches T-lymphocytes to identify and destroy specific foreign bodies. Its development is directly related to hormones in the body so it's only present until puberty ends; adults don't need one.

### Tonsils

These are masses of lymphoid tissue at the back of the throat and can be seen when the mouth is wide open. They form the first line of defence against inhaled foreign pathogens, although they can become infected themselves, causing tonsillitis.

### Adenoids

These are part of the tonsillar system that are only present in children up until the age of five; in adults they have disappeared. They add an extra layer of defence in our early years.

### Bone marrow

This forms the central, flexible part of our long bones (eg femur). Bone marrow is essential as it produces our key circulating cells, including red blood cells, white blood cells and platelets. The white blood cells mature into different types (eg lymphocytes and neutrophils), which serve as the basis of the human immune system.

### Lymph nodes

These are small (about 1cm/0.4in) spherical nodes that are packed with macrophages and lymphocytes to defend against foreign agents. These are often linked in chains and are prevalent around the head, neck, axillae (armpits) and groin.

## Inside the spleen

We take you on a tour of the major features in this often-overlooked organ

### Hilum

The entrance to the spleen, this is where the splenic artery divides into smaller branches and the splenic vein is formed from its tributaries.

### Splenic artery

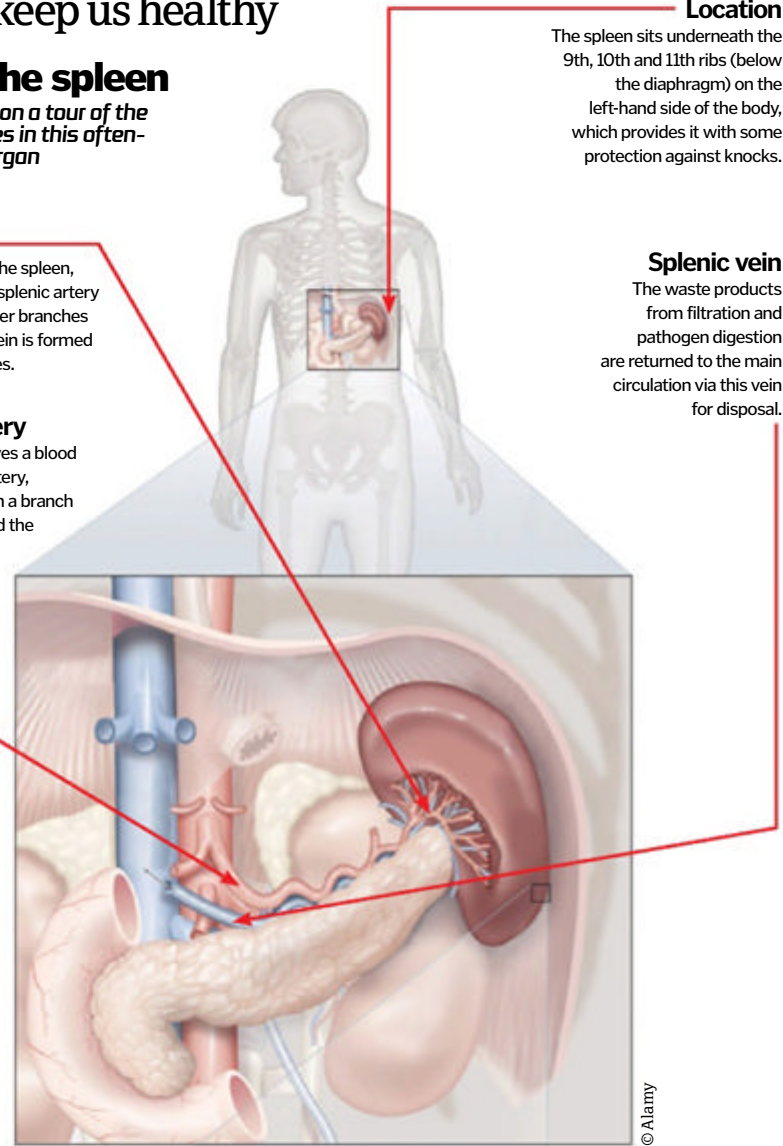
The spleen receives a blood supply via this artery, which arises from a branch of the aorta called the coeliac trunk.

### Location

The spleen sits underneath the 9th, 10th and 11th ribs (below the diaphragm) on the left-hand side of the body, which provides it with some protection against knocks.

### Splenic vein

The waste products from filtration and pathogen digestion are returned to the main circulation via this vein for disposal.



### White pulp

Making up roughly a quarter of the spleen, the white pulp is where white blood cells identify and destroy any type of invading pathogens.

### Red pulp

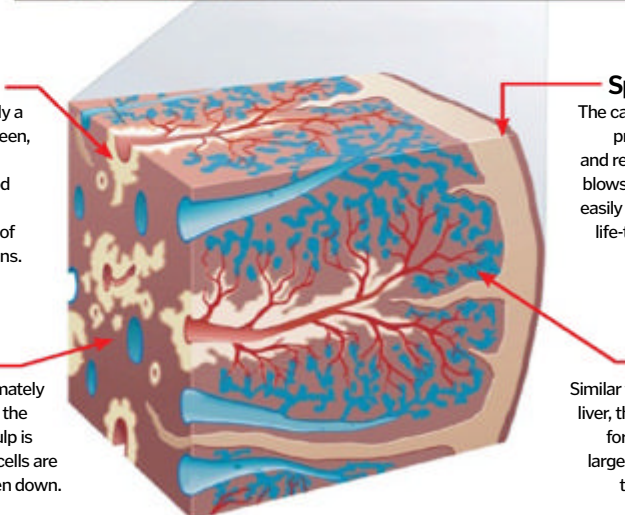
Forming approximately three-quarters of the spleen, the red pulp is where red blood cells are filtered and broken down.

### Splenic capsule

The capsule provides some protection, but it's thin and relatively weak. Strong blows or knife wounds can easily rupture it and lead to life-threatening bleeding.

### Sinusoid

Similar to those found in the liver, these capillaries allow for the easy passage of large cells into the splenic tissue for processing.





HOW IT  
WORKS

# HUMAN ANATOMY

Human digestive system

# Human digestion

## How does food get turned into energy?



The digestive system is a group of organs that process food into energy that the human body can use to operate. It is an immensely complex system that stretches all the way between the mouth and the anus.

Primary organs that make up the system are the mouth, oesophagus, stomach, small intestine, large intestine and the anus. Each organ has a different function so that the maximum amount of energy is gained from the food, and the waste can be safely expelled from the body. Secondary organs, such as the liver, pancreas and gall bladder, aid the digestive process alongside mucosa cells, which line all hollow organs and produce a secretion which helps the food pass smoothly through them. Muscle contractions called peristalsis also help to push the food throughout the system.

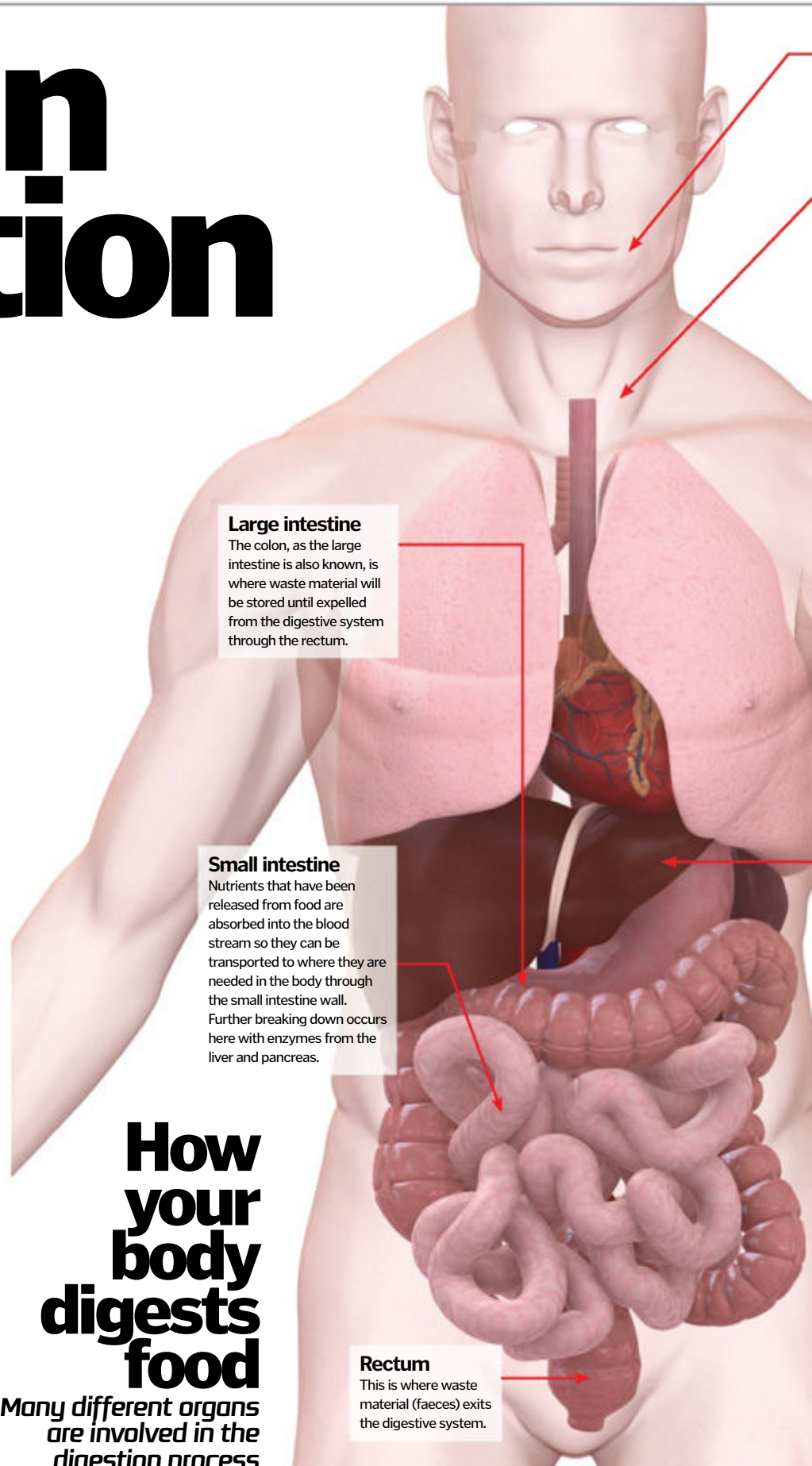
The whole digestive process starts when food is taken into the body through the mouth. Mastication (chewing) breaks down the food into smaller pieces and saliva starts to break starch in these pieces of food into simpler sugars as they are swallowed and move into the oesophagus. Once the food has passed through the oesophagus, it passes into the stomach. It can be stored in the stomach for up to four hours. The stomach will eventually mix the food with digestive juices that it produces, and this breaks down the food further into simpler molecules. These molecules then move into the small intestine slowly, where the final stage of chemical breakdown occurs through exposure to juices and enzymes released from the pancreas, liver and glands in the small intestine. Nutrients are then absorbed through the intestinal walls and transported around the body through the blood stream.

After all nutrients have been absorbed from food through the small intestine, resulting waste material, including fibre and old mucosa cells, is then pushed into the large intestine where it will remain until expelled by a bowel movement.

*“Nutrients are then absorbed through the intestinal walls and transported around the body”*

## How your body digests food

Many different organs are involved in the digestion process



### Complete digestion takes time!

**1** Generally, it can take between 24 and 72 hours for the food you eat to be fully digested, meaning you're constantly digesting food!

### Some food for thought...

**2** An average human male will consume approximately 50 tons of food during his lifetime. That's the equivalent of ten African elephants.

### The stomach can hold two litres

**3** The stomach will normally feel full when it reaches a capacity of one litre, but ultimately it can stretch up to two litres.

### We use pints of saliva a day!

**4** Up to four pints of saliva can be produced by an individual each day and it helps to digest food and protect teeth and tissue inside the mouth.

### Enzyme production declines through age

**5** Enzymes are crucial for digestion, but as we age, enzyme production reduces – at 70 a person may produce half what they did at 20.

**DID YOU KNOW?** The human digestive system is between 20 to 30 feet long!

### Mouth

This is where food enters the body and first gets broken into more manageable pieces. Saliva is produced in the glands and starts to break down starch in the food.

### Oesophagus

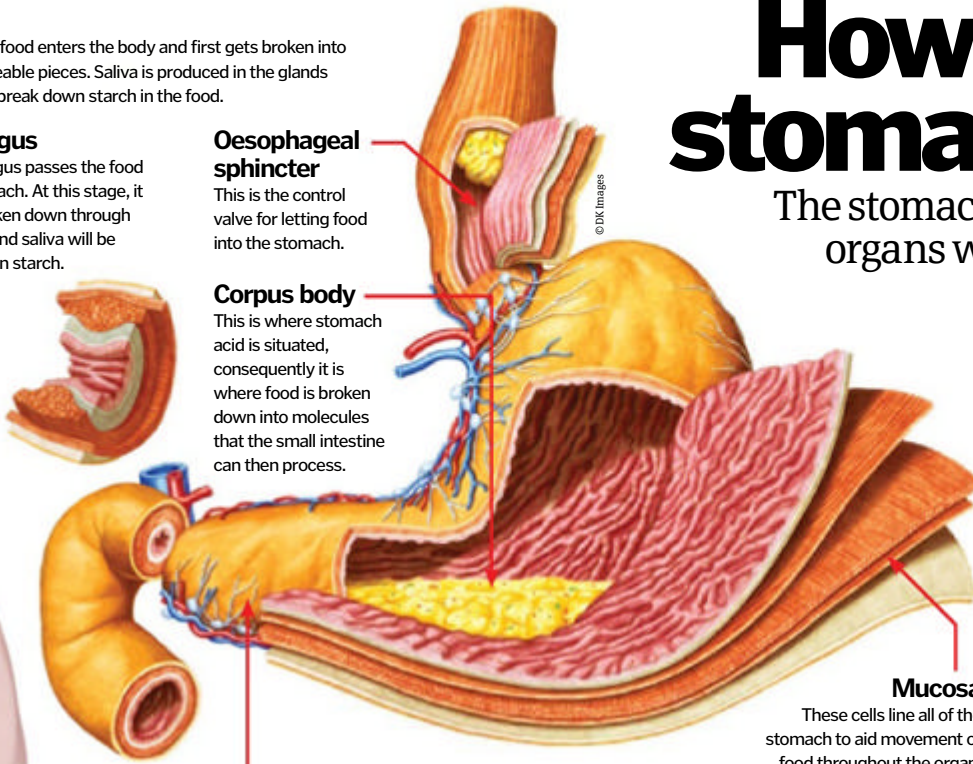
The oesophagus passes the food into the stomach. At this stage, it has been broken down through mastication and saliva will be breaking down starch.

### Oesophageal sphincter

This is the control valve for letting food into the stomach.

### Corpus body

This is where stomach acid is situated, consequently it is where food is broken down into molecules that the small intestine can then process.



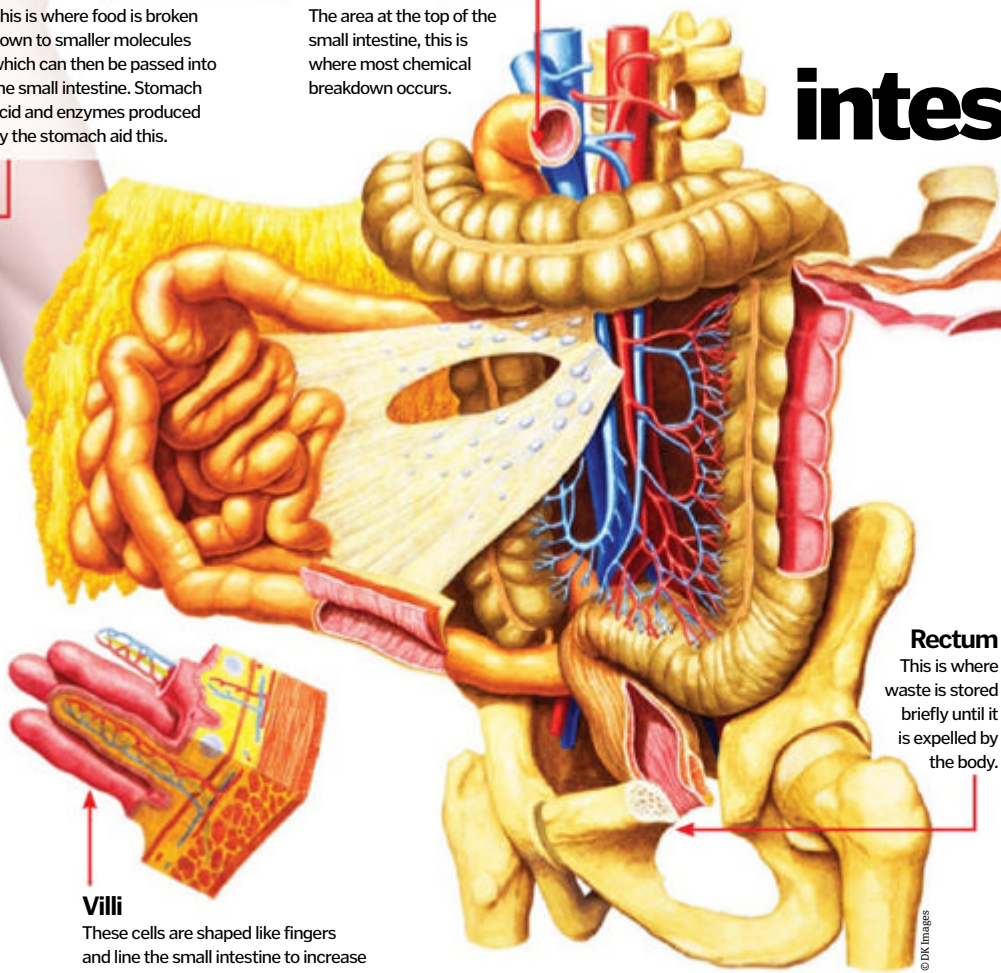
**Mucosa**  
These cells line all of the stomach to aid movement of food throughout the organ.

### Stomach

This is where food is broken down to smaller molecules which can then be passed into the small intestine. Stomach acid and enzymes produced by the stomach aid this.

### Duodenum

The area at the top of the small intestine, this is where most chemical breakdown occurs.



**Rectum**  
This is where waste is stored briefly until it is expelled by the body.

### Villi

These cells are shaped like fingers and line the small intestine to increase surface area for nutrient absorption.

# How does our stomach work?

The stomach is one of the most crucial organs within the digestive system

The stomach's function is to break down food into simple molecules before it moves into the small intestine where nutrients are absorbed. The organ actually splits into four distinct parts, all of which have different functions. The uppermost section is the cardia, where food is first stored, the fundus is the area above the corpus body, which makes up the main area of the stomach where food is mixed with stomach acid. The final section is the antrum, containing the pyloric sphincter, which is in control of emptying the stomach contents into the small intestine. Food is passed down into the stomach by mucosa and peristalsis through the oesophageal sphincter, and then mixed in the stomach with acids and juices by muscle contractions.

# How the intestine works

The intestine is a crucial part of the digestive system that is heavily involved in breaking down and absorbing nutrients released from ingested food

The intestine splits into two distinct parts, the small intestine and the large intestine. The small intestine is where the food goes through final stages of digestion and nutrients are absorbed into the blood stream, the large intestine is where waste is stored until expelled through the anus. Both the small and large intestines can be further divided into sections, the duodenum, jejunum and ileum are the three distinct sections of the small intestine and the cecum, colon and rectum are the sections of the large intestine. As well as storing waste, the large intestine removes water and salt from the waste before it is expelled. Muscle contractions and mucosa are essential for the intestine to work properly, and we see a variation of mucosa, called villi, present in the lower intestine.



HOW IT WORKS

HUMAN ANATOMY

The liver explained

# How the liver works

The human liver is the ultimate multitasker – it performs many different functions all at the same time without you even asking



The liver is the largest internal organ in the human body and amazingly has over 500 different functions. In fact, it is the second most complex organ after the brain and is intrinsically involved in almost every aspect of the body's metabolic processes. The liver's main functions are energy production, removal of harmful substances and the production of crucial proteins. These tasks are carried out within liver cells, called hepatocytes, which sit in complex arrangements to maximise their overall efficiency.

The liver is the body's main powerhouse, producing and storing glucose as a key energy source. It is also responsible for breaking down complex fat molecules and building them up into cholesterol and triglycerides, which the body needs but in excess are bad. The liver makes many complex proteins, including clotting factors which are vital in arresting bleeding. Bile, which helps digest fat in the intestines, is produced in the liver and stored in the adjacent gallbladder.

The liver also plays a key role in detoxifying the blood. Waste products, toxins and drugs are processed here into

## The hepatobiliary region

### Two halves

The liver is anatomically split into two halves: left and right. There are four lobes, and the right lobe is the largest.

### The gallbladder

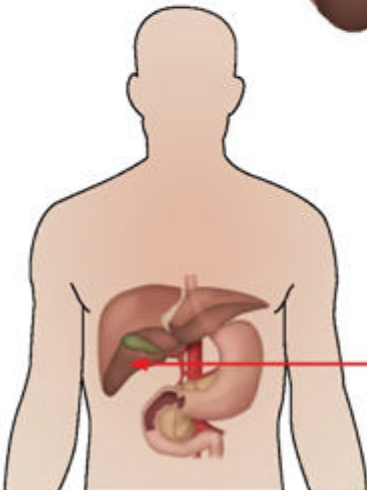
The gallbladder and liver are intimately related. Bile, which helps digest fat, is produced in the liver and stored in the gallbladder.

### The common bile duct

This duct is small, but vital in the human body. It carries bile from the liver and gallbladder into the duodenum where it helps digest fat.

### Feel your liver

Take a deep breath in and feel just under the right lower edge of your ribs – in some people the lower edge of the liver can be felt.



### The biggest organ

The liver is the largest of the internal organs, sitting in the right upper quadrant of the abdomen, just under the rib cage and attached to the underside of the diaphragm.

### Eight segments

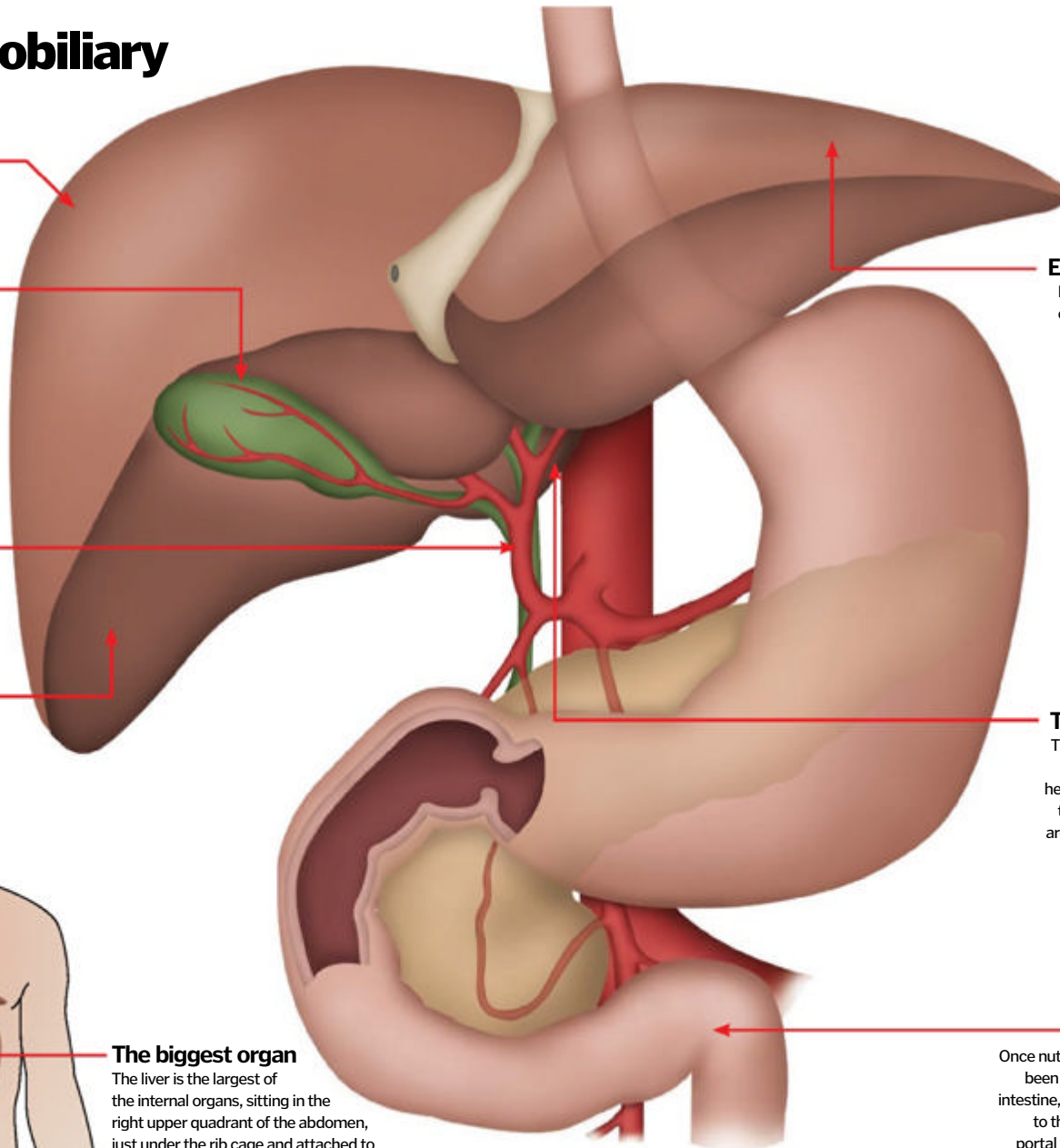
Functionally, there are eight segments of the liver, which are based upon the distribution of veins draining these segments.

### The portal triad

The common bile duct, hepatic artery and hepatic portal vein form the portal triad, which are the vital inflows and outflows for this liver.

### Digestion

Once nutrients from food have been absorbed in the small intestine, they are transported to the liver via the hepatic portal vein (not shown here) for energy production.



# 5 TOP FACTS

## LIVER

### Ice cold liver

**1** Polar bear liver is an incredibly rich source of vitamin A – so much so that Arctic explorers have actually died from eating it, as it can cause extreme vitamin A poisoning.

### Liver transplants

**2** In the UK 600-700 liver transplants are performed each year. The donor liver can be preserved in a solution for up to 24 hours before it is transplanted.

### Maximising numbers

**3** Ways around the shortage of donor livers include splitting an adult liver in half and giving it to two children, and live-donor transplantation (a portion of a relative's liver is transplanted).

### Largest organ in the body

**4** The liver is the largest internal organ in the human body and in most animals' bodies too. It typically has the same shape as a human's, except in snakes where it is elongated.

### Greek mythology

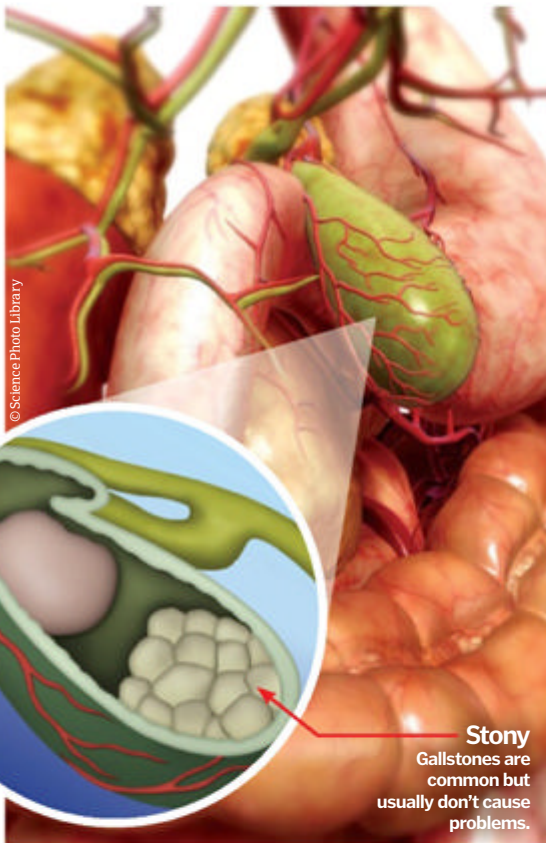
**5** Wise Titan Prometheus was chained for eternity to a rock in the Caucasus, where an eagle would eat at his liver and each day the liver would be renewed!

**DID YOU KNOW?** The liver can regenerate itself. If up to 75 per cent of the liver is removed, it can grow back to restore itself

forms which are easier for the rest of the body to use or excrete. The liver also breaks down old blood cells, produces antibodies to fight infection and recycles hormones such as adrenaline. Numerous essential vitamins and minerals are stored in the liver: vitamins A, D, E and K, iron and copper.

Such a complex organ is also unfortunately prone to diseases. Cancers (most often metastatic from other sources), infections (hepatitis) and cirrhosis (a form of fibrosis often caused by excess alcohol consumption) are just some of those which can affect the liver.

*"The liver also breaks down old blood cells and recycles hormones such as adrenaline"*



**Stony**  
Gallstones are common but usually don't cause problems.

## The gallbladder

Bile, a dark green slimy liquid, is produced in the hepatocytes and helps to digest fat. It is stored in a reservoir which sits on the under-surface of the liver, to be used when needed. This reservoir is called the gallbladder. Stones can form in the gallbladder (gallstones) and are very common, although most don't cause problems. In 2009, just under 60,000 gallbladders were removed from patients within the NHS making it one of the most common operations performed; over 90 per cent of these are removed via keyhole surgery. Most patients do very well without their gallbladder and don't notice any changes at all.

## A high demand organ

The liver deals with a massive amount of blood. It is unique because it has two blood supplies. 75 per cent of this comes directly from the intestines (via the hepatic portal vein) which carries nutrients from digestion, which the liver processes and turns into energy. The rest comes from the heart, via the hepatic artery (which

branches from the aorta), carrying oxygen which the liver needs to produce this energy. The blood flows in tiny passages in between the liver cells where the many metabolic functions occur. The blood then leaves the liver via the hepatic veins to flow into the biggest vein in the body – the inferior vena cava.

## Liver lobules

The functional unit which performs the liver's tasks

The liver is considered a 'chemical factory,' as it forms large complex molecules from smaller ones brought to it from the gut via the blood stream. The functional unit of the liver is the lobule – these are hexagonal-shaped structures comprising of blood vessels and sinusoids. Sinusoids are the specialised areas where blood comes into contact with the hepatocytes, where the liver's biological processes take place.

### 3. Sinusoids

These blood filled channels are lined by hepatocytes and provide the site of transfer of molecules between blood and liver cells.

### 1. The lobule

This arrangement of blood vessels, bile ducts and hepatocytes form the functional unit of the liver.

### 2. The hepatocyte

These highly active cells perform all of the liver's key metabolic tasks.

### 9. Central vein

Blood from sinusoids, now containing all of its new molecules, flows into central veins which then flow into larger hepatic veins. These drain into the heart via the inferior vena cava.

### 4. Kupffer cells

These specialised cells sit within the sinusoids and destroy any bacteria which are contaminating blood.

### 5. Hepatic artery branch

Blood from here supplies oxygen to hepatocytes and carries metabolic waste which the liver extracts.

### 6. Bile duct

Bile, which helps digest fat, is made in hepatocytes and secreted into bile ducts. It then flows into the gallbladder for storage before being secreted into the duodenum.

### 7. Portal vein

This vein carries nutrient-rich blood directly from the intestines, which flows into sinusoids for conversion into energy within hepatocytes.

### 8. The portal triad

The hepatic artery, portal vein and bile duct are known as the portal triad. These sit at the edges of the liver lobule and are the main entry and exit routes for the liver.



HOW IT WORKS

# HUMAN ANATOMY

## How the small intestine works



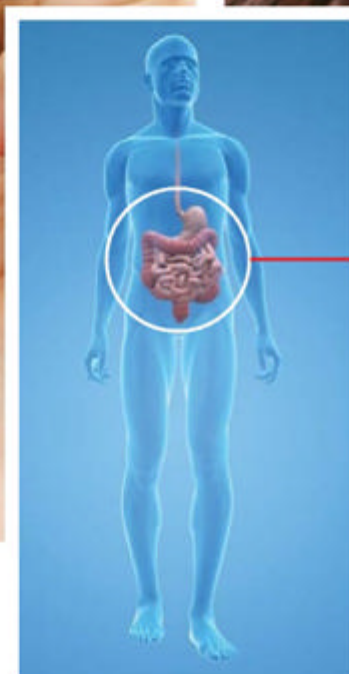
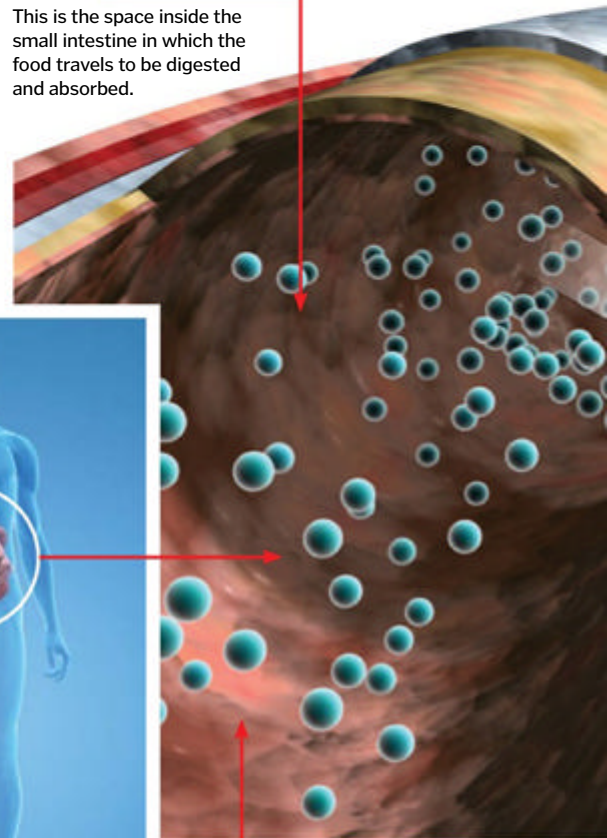
The surface area of the small intestine is huge - in fact, rolled flat it would cover a tennis court!

### Structure of the small intestine

Examine the anatomy of this vital organ in the human digestive tract

#### Lumen

This is the space inside the small intestine in which the food travels to be digested and absorbed.



#### Mucosa

The internal lining of the small intestine where the plicae circulares (mucosal folds) and villi are situated.

#### Mucosal folds

These line the small intestine to increase surface area and help push the food on its way by creating a valve-like structure, stopping food travelling backwards.

#### Submucosa

This supports the mucosa and connects it to the layers of muscle (muscularis) that make up the exterior of the small intestine.

# Exploring the small intestine

### Crucial for getting the nutrients we need from the food we eat, how does this digestive organ work?



The small intestine is one of the most important elements of our digestive system, which enables us to process food and absorb nutrients. On average, it sits at a little over six metres (19.7 feet) long with a diameter of 2.5-3 centimetres (1-1.2 inches), and it's made up of three distinctive parts: the duodenum, jejunum and the ileum.

The duodenum connects the small intestine to the stomach and is the key place for further enzyme breakdown, following the stomach

turning food into an amino acid state. While the duodenum is very important in breaking food down, using bile and enzymes from the gallbladder, liver and pancreas, it is the shortest element of the small bowel, only averaging about 30 centimetres (11.8 inches).

The jejunum follows the duodenum and its primary function is to encourage absorption of carbohydrates and proteins by passing the broken-down food molecules through an area with a large surface area so they can enter the bloodstream. Villi - small finger-like structures

- and mucosal folds line the passage and increase the surface area dramatically to aid this process. The ileum is the final section of the small bowel and serves to catch nutrients that may have been missed, as well as absorbing vitamin B12 and bile salts.

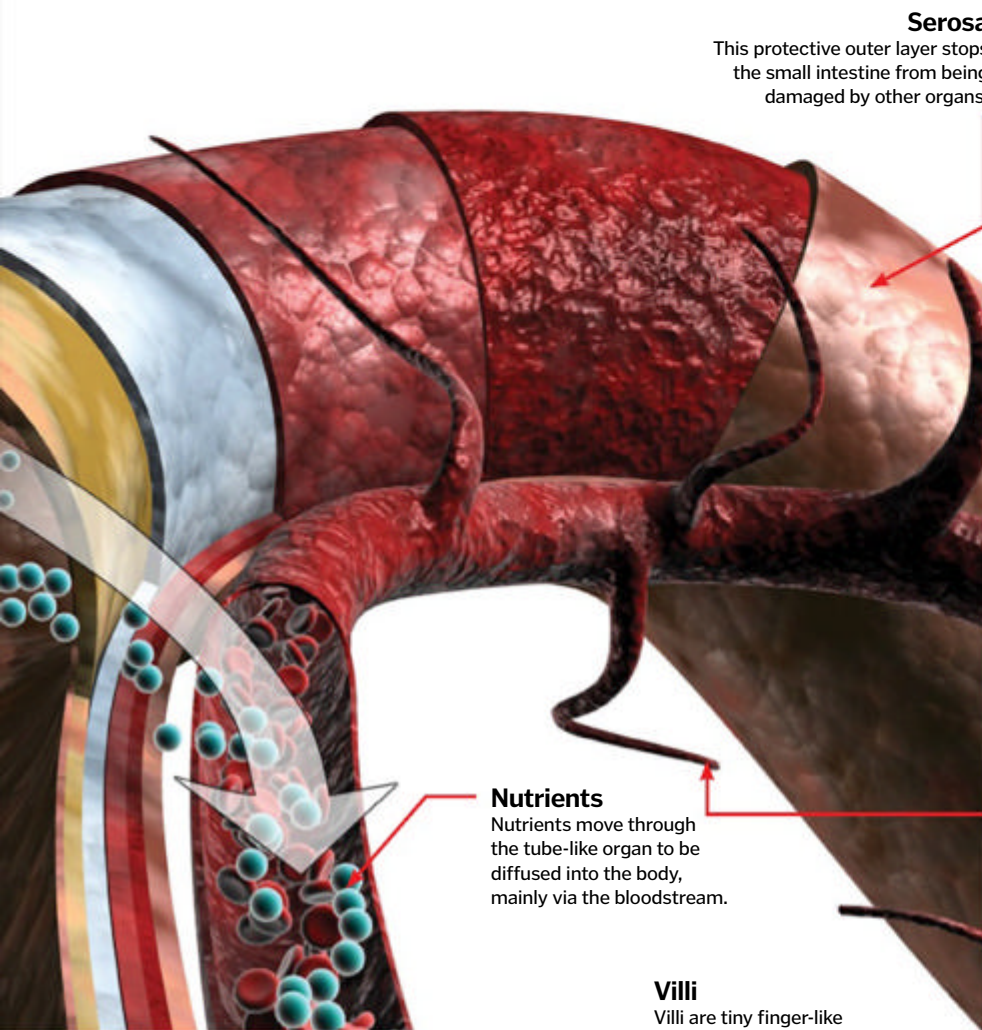
Peristalsis is the movement used by the small intestine to push the food through to the large bowel, where waste matter is stored for a short period then disposed of via the colon. This process is generated by a series of muscles which make up the organ's outer wall.

**THE  
STATS**  
SMALL BOWEL

LENGTH **6m** DIAMETER **2.5-3cm** TIME IT TAKES FOOD TO PASS THROUGH **1-4 hours**

SURFACE AREA **250m<sup>2</sup>** AMOUNT OF BODY'S NUTRIENT ABSORPTION **90%** NUMBER OF VILLI PER SQUARE MM **10-40**

**DID YOU KNOW?** The small intestine is actually longer than the large intestine, but is so called because of its narrower diameter



**Serosa**

This protective outer layer stops the small intestine from being damaged by other organs.

**Nutrients**

Nutrients move through the tube-like organ to be diffused into the body, mainly via the bloodstream.

**Blood vessels**

These sit close to the small intestine to allow easy diffusion of nutrients into the bloodstream.

**Villi**

Villi are tiny finger-like structures that sit all over the mucosa. They help increase the surface area massively, alongside the mucosal folds.

**Epithelium (epithelial cells)**

These individual cells that sit in the mucosa layer are where individual microvilli extend from.

**Mucosa**  
The lining of the small intestine on which villi are located.

**Lacteal**  
The lacteal is a lymphatic capillary that absorbs nutrients that can't pass directly into the bloodstream.

**Longitudinal muscle layer**

This contracts and extends to help transport food with the circular muscle layer.

**Circular muscle layer**

This works in partnership with the longitudinal muscle layer to push the food down via a process called peristalsis.

**Microvilli**

These are a mini version of villi and sit on villi's individual epithelial cells.

**Capillary bed**

These absorb simple sugars and amino acids as they pass through the epithelial tissue of the villi.

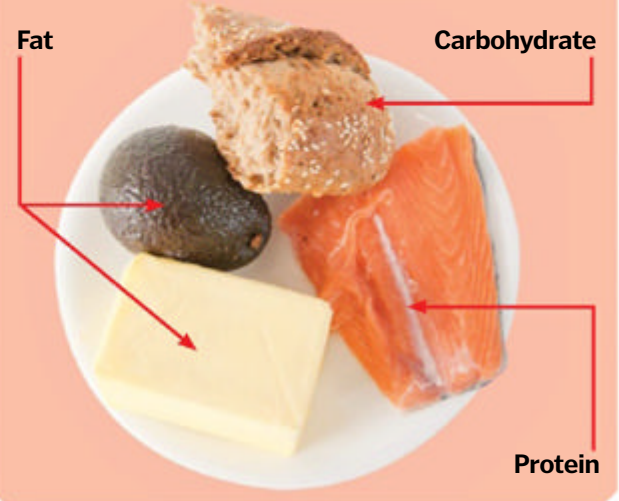
**What exactly are nutrients?**

There are three main types of nutrient that we process in the body: lipids (fats), carbohydrates and proteins. These three groups of molecules are broken down into sugars, starches, fats and smaller, simpler molecule elements, which we can absorb through the small intestine walls and that then travel in the bloodstream to our muscles and other areas of the body that require energy or to be repaired. We also need to consume and absorb vitamins and minerals that we can't synthesise within the body, eg vitamin B12 (prevalent in meat and fish).

**Fat**

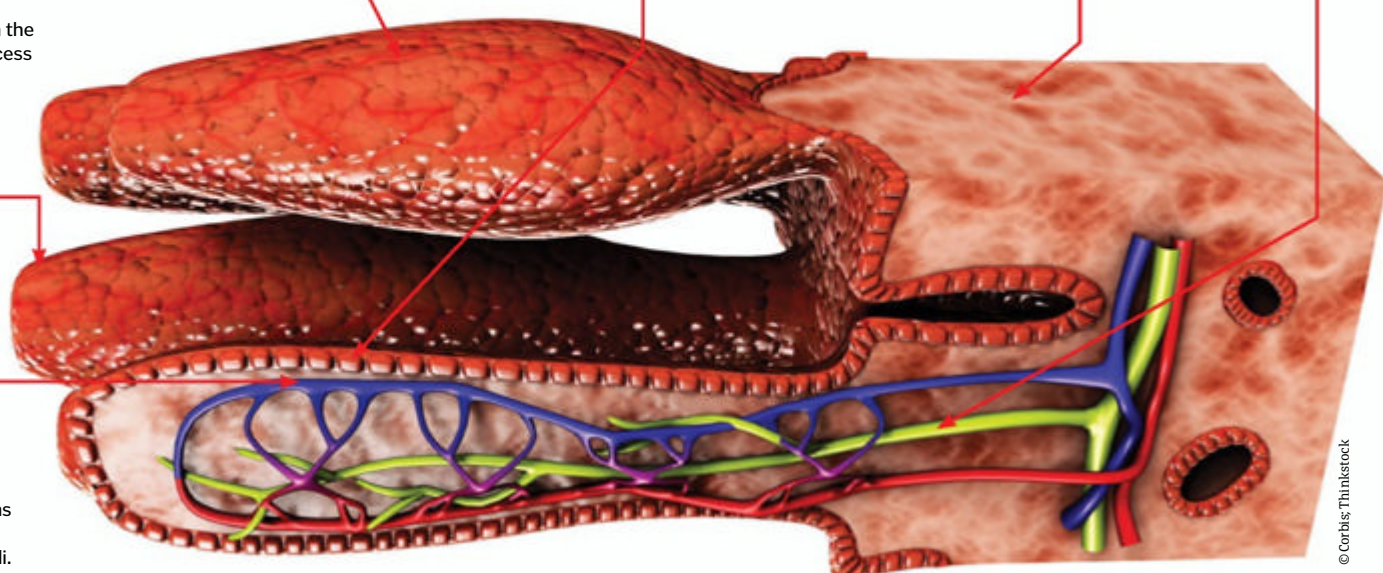
**Carbohydrate**

**Protein**



**A closer look at villi**

What role do these little finger-like protrusions play in the bowel?



© Corbis/Thinkstock



HOW IT WORKS

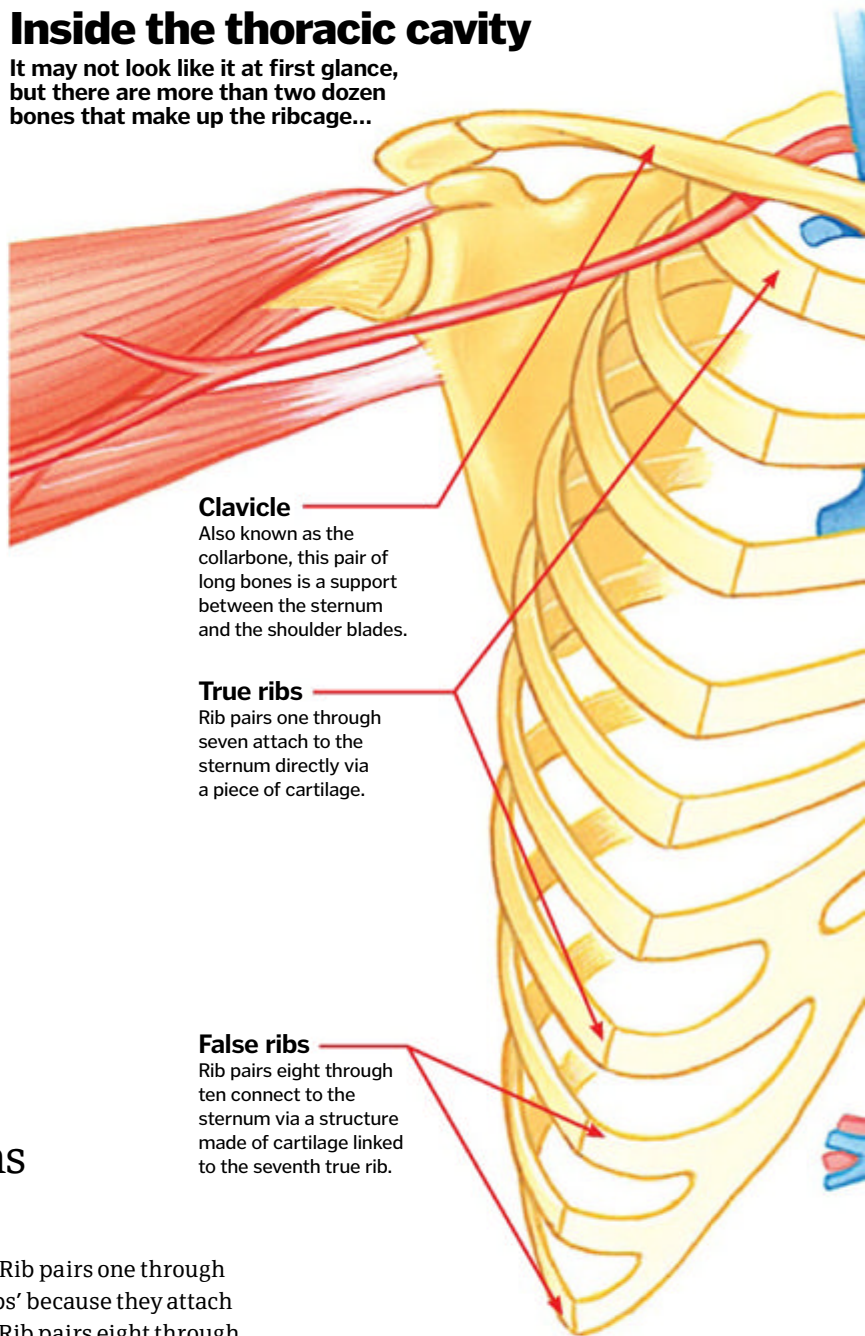
# HUMAN ANATOMY

## Human ribcage formation



### Inside the thoracic cavity

It may not look like it at first glance, but there are more than two dozen bones that make up the ribcage...



#### Clavicle

Also known as the collarbone, this pair of long bones is a support between the sternum and the shoulder blades.

#### True ribs

Rib pairs one through seven attach to the sternum directly via a piece of cartilage.

#### False ribs

Rib pairs eight through ten connect to the sternum via a structure made of cartilage linked to the seventh true rib.

# The human ribcage

Ribs are not merely armour for the organs inside our torsos, as we reveal here...



The ribcage – also known as the thoracic cage or thoracic basket – is easily thought of as just a framework protecting your lungs, heart and other major organs. Although that is one key function, the ribcage does so much more. It provides vital support as part of the skeleton and, simply put, breathing wouldn't be possible without it.

All this means that the ribcage has to be flexible. The conical structure isn't just a rigid system of bone – it's both bone and cartilage. The cage comprises 24 ribs, joining in the back to the 12 vertebrae making up the middle of the spinal column. The cartilage portions of the ribs meet in the front at the long, flat three-bone plate called the sternum (breastbone). Or

rather, most of them do. Rib pairs one through seven are called 'true ribs' because they attach directly to the sternum. Rib pairs eight through ten attach indirectly through other cartilage structures, so they're referred to as 'false ribs'. The final two pairs – the 'floating ribs' – hang unattached to the sternum.

Rib fractures are a common and very painful injury, with the middle ribs the most likely ones to get broken. A fractured rib can be very dangerous, because a sharp piece could pierce the heart or lungs. There's also a condition called flail chest, in which several ribs break and detach from the cage, which can even be fatal. But otherwise there's not much you can do to mend a fractured rib other than keep it stabilised, resting and giving it time to heal.

### What are hiccups?

Hiccupping – known medically as singultus, or synchronous diaphragmatic flutter (SDF) – is an involuntary spasm of the diaphragm that can happen for a number of reasons. Short-term causes include eating or drinking too quickly, a sudden change in body temperature or shock.

However, some researchers have suggested that hiccupping in premature babies – who tend to hiccup much more than full-term babies – is due to their underdeveloped lungs. It could be an evolutionary leftover, since hiccupping in humans is similar to the way that amphibians gulp water and air into their gills to breathe.

# 5 TOP FACTS

## RIBCAGE TRIVIA

### Flexible cage

**1** In normal adults, the ribcage expands by three to five centimetres (1.2 to two inches) when you inhale. In an average breath at rest, we take in about 500 millilitres (0.9 pints) of air.

### Endless ribs

**2** Snakes can have up to 400 vertebrae, with all but the tail vertebrae having a pair of ribs. Each rib is attached to a belly scale which is a key part of how snakes slither.

### Fractures

**3** The seventh and the tenth ribs are the ones most likely to get broken in humans, while the first pair is rarely fractured because of its location behind the clavicle.

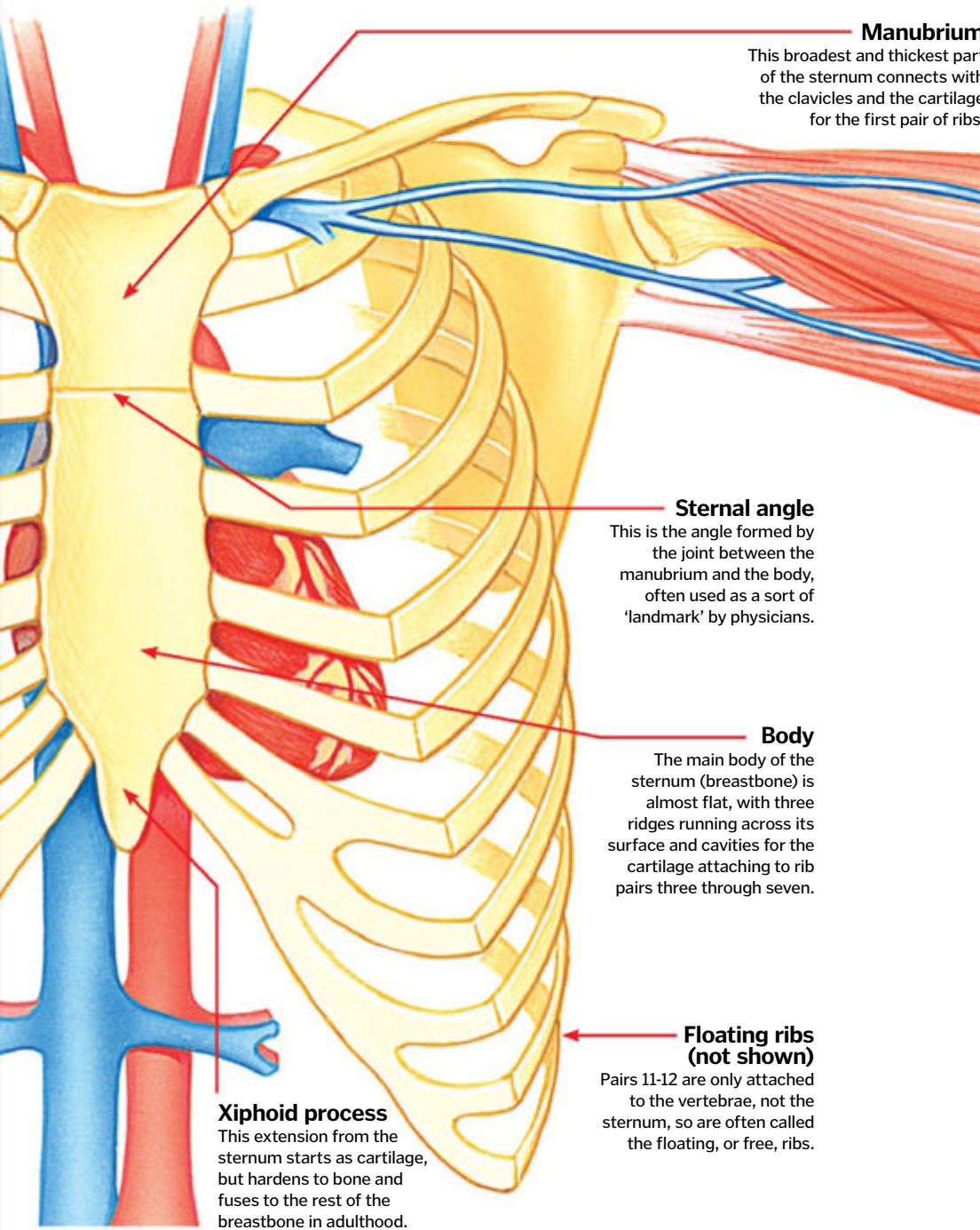
### Sunken chest

**4** Pectus excavatum is a congenital deformity caused by abnormal growth of the ribcage, resulting in a caved-in appearance that can also affect the heart and lungs.

### Tasty ribs

**5** Large carnivores, such as lions, often head towards the ribcages of their kills first to devour both the rib meat and rich organs, like the heart, which are encased within.

**DID YOU KNOW?** The condition known as flail chest is fatal in almost 50 per cent of cases



## Breathe in, breathe out...

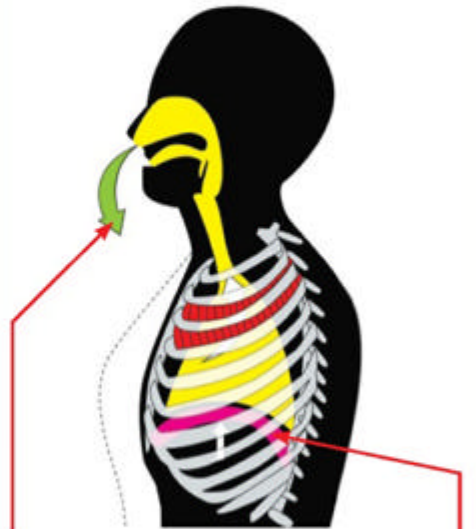
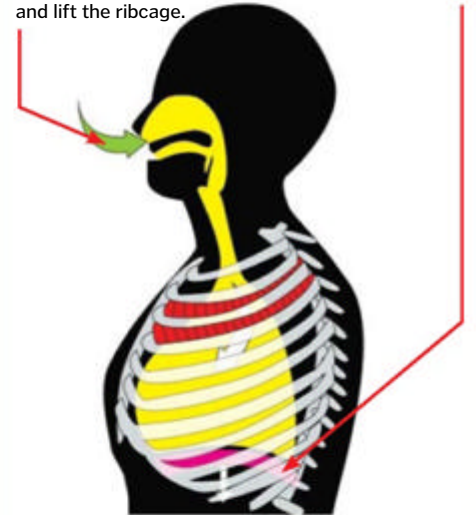
Consciously take in a breath, and think about the fact that there are ten different muscle groups working together to make it happen. The muscles that move the ribcage itself are the intercostal muscles. They are each attached to the ribs and run between them. As you inhale, the external intercostals raise the ribs and sternum so your lungs can expand, while your diaphragm lowers and flattens. The internal intercostals lower the ribcage when you exhale. This forces the lungs to compress and release air (working in tandem with seven other muscles). If you breathe out gently, it's a passive process that doesn't require much ribcage movement.

### Inhalation

As you inhale, the intercostal muscles contract to expand and lift the ribcage.

### Contraction

The diaphragm contracts by moving downward, allowing the lungs to fill with air.



### Exhalation

The intercostal muscles relax as we exhale, compressing and lowering the ribcage.

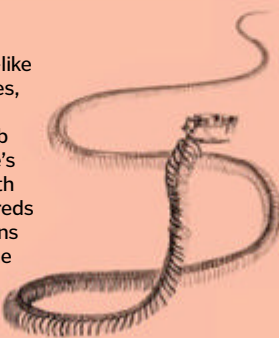
### Relaxation

The diaphragm relaxes, moving upward to force air out of the lungs.

## Ribs in other animals

Most vertebrates (ie animals with backbones) have a ribcage of sorts – however, ribcages can be very different depending on the creature. For example, dogs and cats have 13 pairs of ribs as opposed to our 12. Marsupials have fewer ribs than humans, and some of those are so tiny they aren't much more than knobs of bone sticking out from the vertebrae. Once you get into other vertebrates, the differences are even greater. Birds'

ribs overlap one another with hook-like structures called uncinat processes, which add strength. Frogs don't have any ribs, while turtles' eight rib pairs are fused to the shell. A snake's 'ribcage', meanwhile, runs the length of its body and can comprise hundreds of pairs of ribs. Despite the variations in appearance, ribcages all serve the same basic functions for the most part: to provide support and protection to the rest of the body.





# How the pancreas works

Learn how the workhorse of the digestive system helps to break down food and control our blood sugar levels



The pancreas is a pivotal organ within the digestive system. It sits inside the abdomen, behind the stomach and the large bowel,

adjacent to the spleen. In humans, it has a head, neck, body and tail. It is connected to the first section of the small intestine, the duodenum, by the pancreatic duct, and to the bloodstream via a rich network of vessels. The function of the pancreas is best considered by thinking about the two types of cell it contains: endocrine and exocrine.

The endocrine pancreas is made up of clusters of cells called islets of Langerhans, which in total contain approximately 1 million cells and are responsible for producing hormones. These cells include alpha cells, which secrete glucagon, and beta cells which generate insulin. These two hormones have opposite effects on blood sugar levels throughout the body: glucagon increases glucose levels, while insulin decreases them.

The cells here are all in contact with capillaries, so hormones which are produced can be fed directly into the bloodstream. Insulin secretion is under the control of a negative-feedback loop; high blood sugar leads to insulin secretion, which then lowers blood sugar with subsequent suppression of insulin. Disorders of these cells (and thus alterations of hormone levels) can lead to many conditions, including diabetes. The islets of Langerhans are also responsible for producing other hormones, like somatostatin, which governs nutrient absorption among other things.

The exocrine pancreas, meanwhile, is responsible for secreting digestive enzymes. Cells are arranged in clusters called acini, which flow into the central pancreatic duct. This leads into the duodenum – part of the small bowel – to come into contact with and aid in the digestion of food. The enzymes secreted include proteases (to digest protein), lipases (for fat) and amylase (for sugar/starch). Secretion of these enzymes is controlled by a series of hormones, which are released from the stomach and duodenum in response to the stretch from the presence of food.

## Anatomy of the pancreas

It might not be the biggest organ but the pancreas is a key facilitator of how we absorb nutrients and stay energised

### Pancreatic duct

Within the pancreas, the digestive enzymes are secreted into the pancreatic duct, which joins onto the common bile duct.

### Body of the pancreas

The central body sits on top of the main artery to the spleen.

### Common bile duct

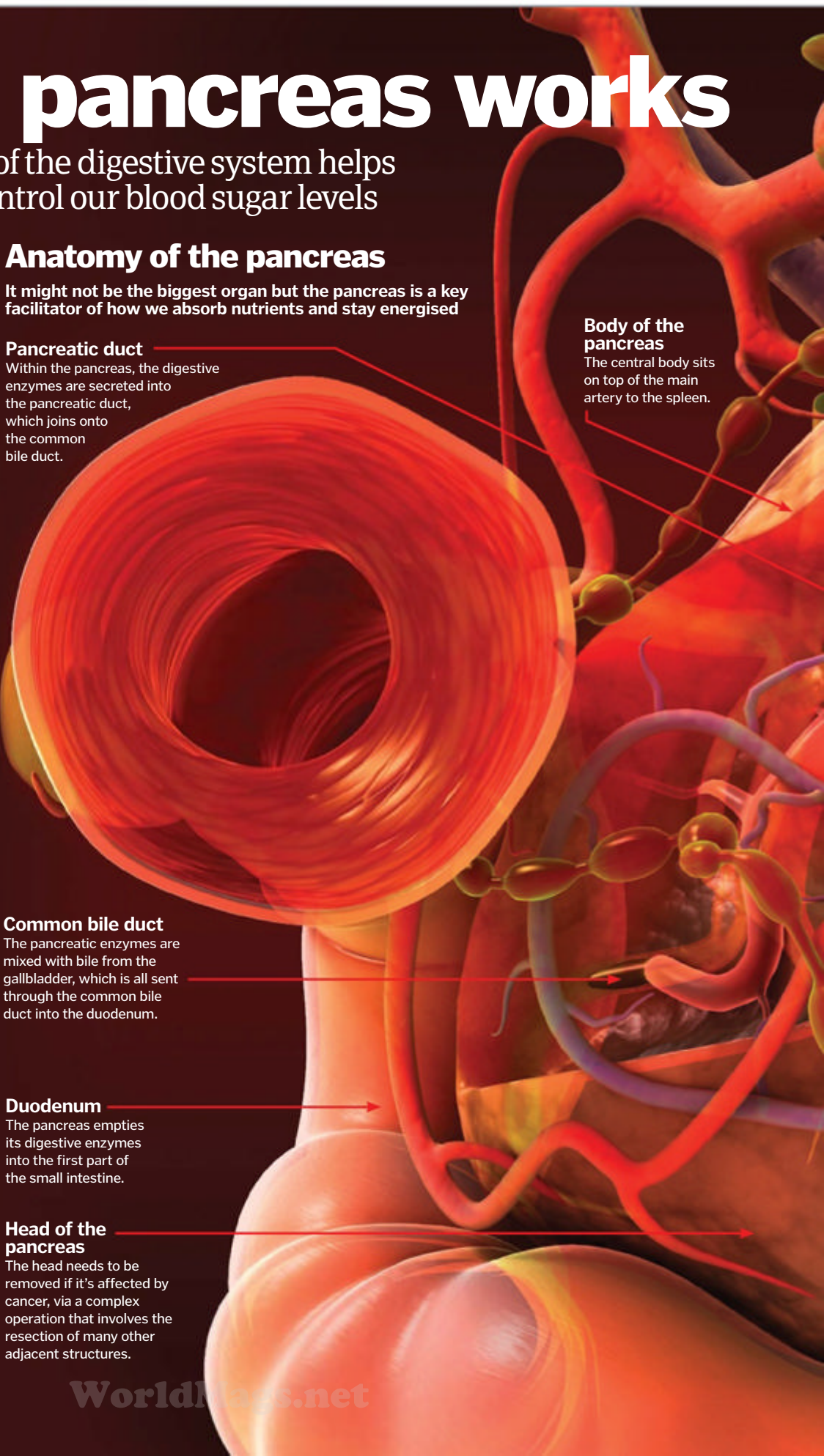
The pancreatic enzymes are mixed with bile from the gallbladder, which is all sent through the common bile duct into the duodenum.

### Duodenum

The pancreas empties its digestive enzymes into the first part of the small intestine.

### Head of the pancreas

The head needs to be removed if it's affected by cancer, via a complex operation that involves the resection of many other adjacent structures.



**KEY DATES**  
**PANCREATIC PAST**

**336 BCE 1st century CE**

The Greek anatomist who will first discover the pancreas - Herophilus - is born.

The name 'pancreas' is given, meaning 'all flesh', as it's believed to serve solely as a cushioning, protective fat pad.



**1642**

The pancreatic duct is found in Padua, Italy. It is named after its discoverer: the duct of Wirsung.

**1889**

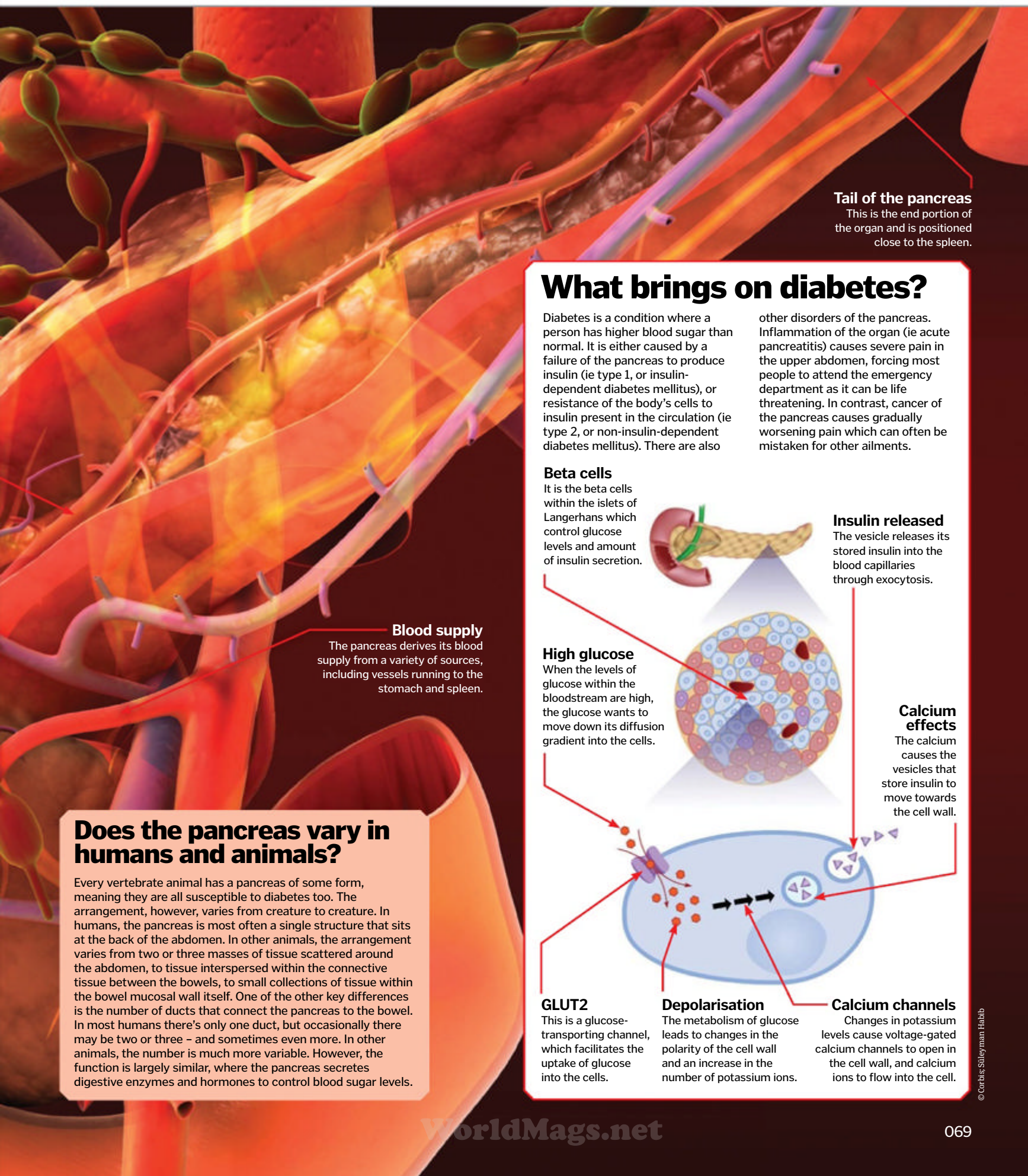
German scientists remove the pancreas in a dog and induce diabetes, proving an irrefutable link.



**1966**

The first modern human pancreatic transplant is performed in the USA on a 28-year-old female patient.

**DID YOU KNOW?** In the UK, 80 per cent of acute pancreatitis cases are caused by gallstones or excessive alcohol ingestion



**Tail of the pancreas**

This is the end portion of the organ and is positioned close to the spleen.

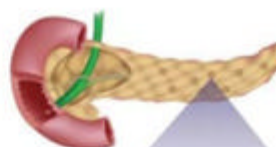
**What brings on diabetes?**

Diabetes is a condition where a person has higher blood sugar than normal. It is either caused by a failure of the pancreas to produce insulin (ie type 1, or insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus), or resistance of the body's cells to insulin present in the circulation (ie type 2, or non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus). There are also

other disorders of the pancreas. Inflammation of the organ (ie acute pancreatitis) causes severe pain in the upper abdomen, forcing most people to attend the emergency department as it can be life threatening. In contrast, cancer of the pancreas causes gradually worsening pain which can often be mistaken for other ailments.

**Beta cells**

It is the beta cells within the islets of Langerhans which control glucose levels and amount of insulin secretion.

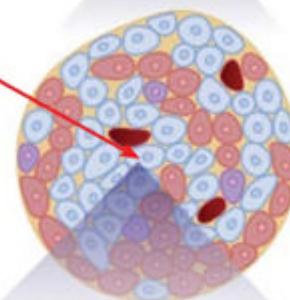


**Insulin released**

The vesicle releases its stored insulin into the blood capillaries through exocytosis.

**High glucose**

When the levels of glucose within the bloodstream are high, the glucose wants to move down its diffusion gradient into the cells.



**Calcium effects**

The calcium causes the vesicles that store insulin to move towards the cell wall.

**GLUT2**

This is a glucose-transporting channel, which facilitates the uptake of glucose into the cells.

**Depolarisation**

The metabolism of glucose leads to changes in the polarity of the cell wall and an increase in the number of potassium ions.

**Calcium channels**

Changes in potassium levels cause voltage-gated calcium channels to open in the cell wall, and calcium ions to flow into the cell.

**Does the pancreas vary in humans and animals?**

Every vertebrate animal has a pancreas of some form, meaning they are all susceptible to diabetes too. The arrangement, however, varies from creature to creature. In humans, the pancreas is most often a single structure that sits at the back of the abdomen. In other animals, the arrangement varies from two or three masses of tissue scattered around the abdomen, to tissue interspersed within the connective tissue between the bowels, to small collections of tissue within the bowel mucosal wall itself. One of the other key differences is the number of ducts that connect the pancreas to the bowel. In most humans there's only one duct, but occasionally there may be two or three - and sometimes even more. In other animals, the number is much more variable. However, the function is largely similar, where the pancreas secretes digestive enzymes and hormones to control blood sugar levels.



HOW IT WORKS

# HUMAN ANATOMY

## The human bladder

When you've got to go, you've got to go... but really our bodies are reacting to our bladders' direction



© Thinkstock

# How your bladder works

As a key part of the urinary system, the bladder is crucial to removing waste from your body



The bladder is one of the key organs in the urinary system and it stores urine following production by the kidneys until the body can release it.

Urine is a waste substance produced by the kidneys as they filter our blood of toxins and other unneeded elements. Up to 150 litres (40 gallons) of blood are filtered per day by your kidneys, but only around two litres (0.5 gallons) of waste actually pass down the ureters to the bladder.

Urine travels down the ureters and through the ureter valves, which attach each tube to the organ and prevent any liquid passing back. The bladder walls, controlled by the detrusor muscles, relax as urine enters and allow the organ to fill. When

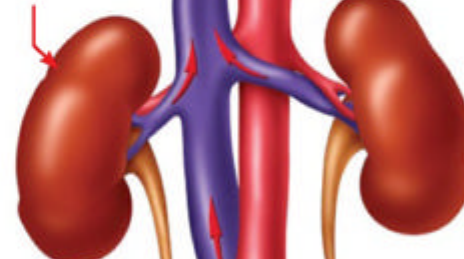
the bladder becomes full, or nearly full, the nerves in the bladder communicate with the brain, which in turn induces an urge to urinate. This sensation will get stronger if you do not go – creating the 'bursting for a wee' feeling that you can occasionally experience. When ready to urinate, both the internal and external sphincters relax and the detrusor muscles in the bladder wall contract in order to generate pressure, forcing urine to pass down the urethra and exit the body.

As well as telling you when you need to pass fluid, the urinary system also helps to maintain the mineral and salt balance in your body. For instance, when salts and minerals are too highly concentrated, you feel thirsty to regain the balance.

## THE COMPLETE URINARY SYSTEM

### Kidneys

The kidneys turn unwanted substances in the blood into urine.

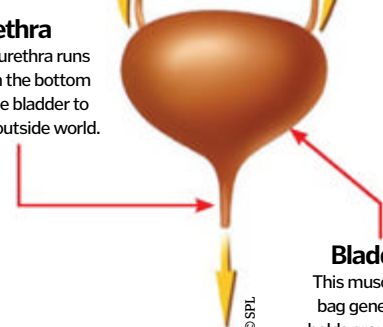


### Ureters

Ureters carry urine from the kidneys to the bladder.

### Urethra

The urethra runs from the bottom of the bladder to the outside world.



### Bladder

This muscular bag generally holds around a pint of urine.

© SPT

## Incontinence explained

For the bladder to work correctly, several areas within it must all function properly. It is most commonly the failure of one of these features that leads to incontinence.

A common type of urinary incontinence is urge incontinence. This is when an individual feels a sudden compulsion to urinate and will release

urine without control. It is often caused by involuntary spasms by the detrusor muscles which can be a result of either nervous system problems or infections.

Another type is stress incontinence, caused when the external sphincter or pelvic floor muscles are damaged. This means urine can accidentally escape, especially if the pelvic floor is under

pressure (eg while coughing, laughing or sneezing). This kind of incontinence is most common in the elderly.

One modern remedy is a preventative implant that has been developed to replace post-event incontinence pads. This comes in the form of a collagen-based substance injected around the urethra in order to support it.



**Urethras - all the same?**

**1** Women's urethras are much shorter than men's due to differing genitalia. Women are consequently far more likely to get bladder/urine infections because of this.

**Getting the urge**

**2** The urge to urinate normally comes when the bladder reaches between 25-50% of full volume to avoid reaching 100% when involuntary urination will occur.

**Duration**

**3** Urine can stay in the bladder for anywhere between one to eight hours before excretion. The time it remains there will vary depending on the amount of liquid consumed.

**Can you drink urine?**

**4** Of course, this would not generally be recommended in normal circumstances, but yes, urine is completely sterile - it contains no bacteria, viruses or fungi.

**How to keep healthy**

**5** It's advised to drink around 1-1.5 litres (2.1-3.1 pints) of water a day. This will keep the urinary system working most effectively. We lose more water than this but obtain some from food.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Everyone's bladder differs slightly in size. The average maximum capacity is between 600-800ml (1.3-1.7pt)

# Inside the bladder

How this organ acts as the middleman between your kidneys and excretion

## FULL BLADDER

**Ureter valves**  
These sit at the end of the ureters and let urine pass into the bladder without letting it flow back.

**Ureters**  
These tubes link the kidneys and the bladder, transporting the urine for disposal.

**Bladder wall (detrusor muscles)**

The detrusor muscles make up a layer of the bladder wall. These muscles cause the wall to relax and extend as urine enters, while nerves situated in the wall measure how full the bladder is and will signal to the brain when to urinate.

**Internal urethral sphincter**

The internal sphincter is controlled by the body. It stays closed to stop urine passing out of the body.

**Pelvic floor muscles**  
These hold the bladder in place, and sit around the urethra stopping unintended urination.

**External urethral sphincter (distal sphincter)**

This sphincter is controlled by the individual, and they control whether to open or close the valve.

## EMPTYING BLADDER

**Internal urethral sphincter**  
This relaxes when the body is ready to expel the waste liquid.

**Bladder wall (controlled by detrusor muscles)**

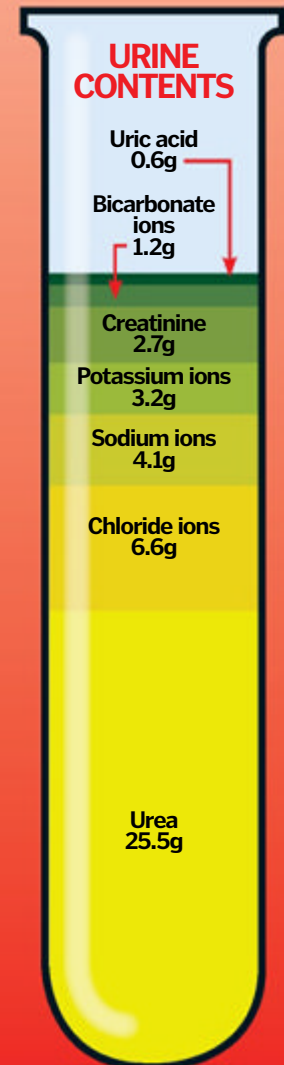
These muscles contract to force the urine out of the bladder.

**External urethral sphincter (distal sphincter)**  
This also relaxes for the urine to exit the body.

**Urethra**  
Urine travels down this passageway to leave the body.

# What is urine made up of?

A human bladder usually holds around 350 millilitres (0.7 pints) of urine, though male bladders can typically hold slightly more than those of females. Urine is made up of urea, the waste by-product the body forms while breaking down protein across the body. The kidneys will filter this out and pass it with extra water to the bladder for expulsion. Other waste products produced or consumed by the body that pass through the kidneys will also exit the body via this route. Typically, urine is made up of 95 per cent water and 5 per cent dissolved or suspended solids including urea, plus chloride, sodium and potassium ions.





HOW IT WORKS

# HUMAN ANATOMY

Human pregnancy explained

# Human pregnancy

## Nine months of change and growth



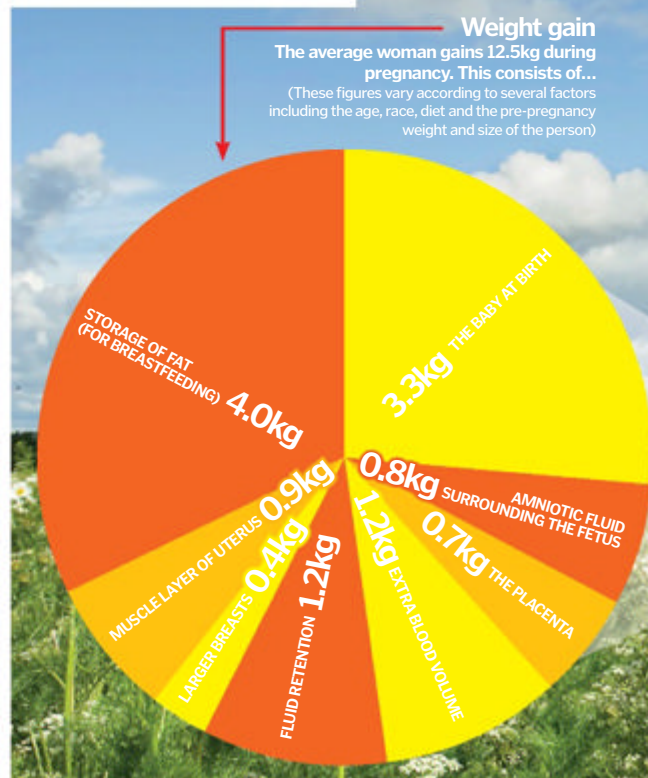
Pregnancy is a unique period in a woman's life that brings about physical and emotional changes. When it occurs, there is an intricate change in the balance of the oestrogen and progesterone hormones, which causes the cessation of menstruation and allows the conditions in the uterus (womb) to become suitable for the growth of the fetus. The lining of the uterus, rather than being discharged, thickens and enables the development of the baby.

At first, it is a collection of embryonic cells no bigger than a pinhead. By week four the embryo forms the brain, spinal cord and heart inside the newly fluid-filled amniotic sac. Protected by this cushion of fluid, it becomes recognisably human and enters the fetal stage by week eight.

Many demands are put on the mother's body and she is likely to experience sickness, tiredness, lower-back pain, heartburn, increased appetite and muscle cramps, as well as the enlargement of her breasts and stretch marks. Her blood sugar levels, heart rate and breathing also increase to cope with the growing demands of the fetus.

As the date of labour approaches, the mother feels sudden contractions known as Braxton-Hicks, and the neck of her uterus begins to soften and thin out. Meanwhile, the lungs of the fetus fill with surfactant. This substance enables the lungs to soften, making them able to inflate when it takes its first breath of air. Finally, chemical signals from the fetus trigger the uterus to go into labour.

*"Many demands are put on the mother's body and she is likely to experience sickness and cramps"*



### FIRST TRIMESTER (0-12 weeks)

This begins after the last menstrual period, when an egg is released and fertilised. It takes about nine weeks for the resulting embryo to develop into a fetus. During this period, the mother will be prone to sickness and mood swings due to hormonal changes.

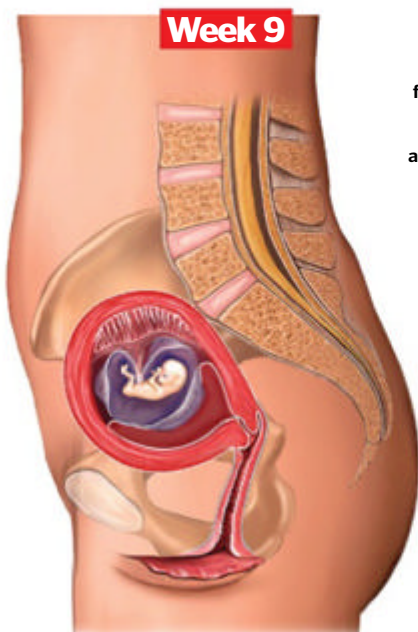
#### Head

Face begins to look human and the brain is developing rapidly.

#### Movement

Fetus moves around to encourage muscle development.

**Weight**  
10g



#### Heart

All the internal organs are formed and the heart is able to pump blood around its body.

**Length**  
5.5cm

### SECOND TRIMESTER (13-27 weeks)

The fetus grows rapidly and its organs mature. By week 20 its movements can be felt. At week 24 it can suck its thumb and hiccup, and can live independently of the mother with medical support.

#### Hair and teeth

At 16 weeks, fine hair (lanugo) grows over the fetal body. By 20 weeks, teeth start forming in the jaw and hair grows.

#### Movement

By week 16 the eyes can move and the whole fetus makes vigorous movements.

#### Sound and light

The fetus will respond to light and is able to hear sounds such as the mother's voice.

#### Vernix

By 20 weeks, this white, waxy substance covers the skin, protecting it from the surrounding amniotic fluid.

#### Sweating

An increase in blood circulation causes mother to sweat more.



**Weight**  
Week 16: 140g  
Week 20: 340g

**Length**  
Week 16: 18cm  
Week 20: 25cm



**1. Seahorses**

The female seahorse deposits her eggs in the pouch of the male seahorse. He fertilises the eggs and carries them for the full term of three weeks.



**2. Komodo dragons**

Female komodo dragons can give birth to male babies without fertilisation from a male partner. This is known as parthenogenesis.



**3. Spotted hyenas**

Female spotted hyenas have genitalia like a penis. It stretches to allow the insertion of the male penis during copulation, and stretches again when giving birth through it.

**DID YOU KNOW?** 200 extra calories a day are needed in mid-pregnancy, which is 10 per cent more than the usual



**The placenta**

The placenta is an essential interface between the mother and fetus. When mature it is a 22cm diameter, flat oval shape with a 2.5cm bulge in the centre. The three intertwined blood vessels from the cord radiate from the centre to the edges of the placenta. Like tree roots, these villous structures penetrate the placenta and link to 15 to 20 lobes on the maternal surface.

The five major functions of the placenta deal with respiration, nutrition, excretion of waste products, bacterial protection and the production of hormones.

**Placenta body**

Is firmly attached to the inside of the mother's uterus.

**Maternal surface**

Blood from the mother is absorbed and transferred to the fetal surface.

**Fetal surface**

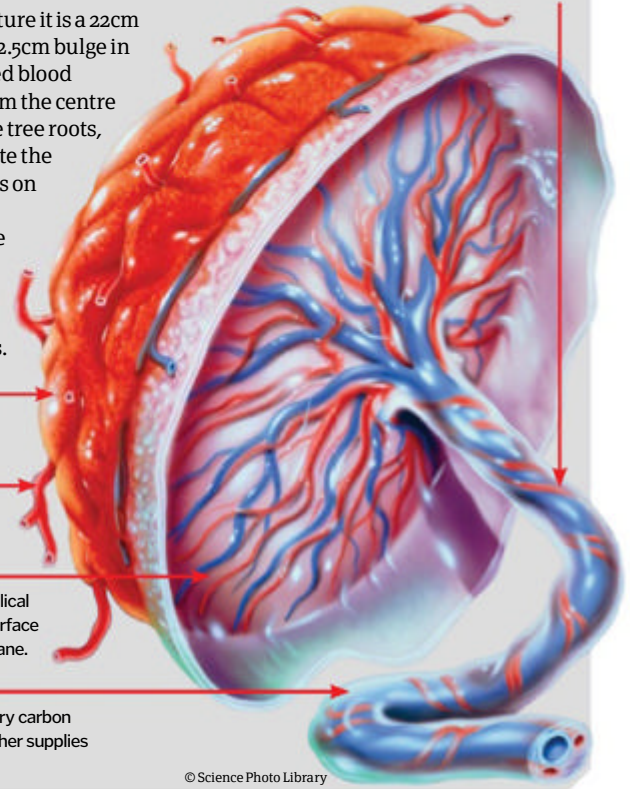
Blood vessels radiate out from the umbilical cord and penetrate the placenta. The surface is covered with the thin amnion membrane.

**Umbilical cord**

Consists of three blood vessels. Two carry carbon dioxide and waste from the fetus, the other supplies oxygen and nutrients from the mother.

**Wharton's jelly**

The umbilical blood vessels are coated with this jelly-like substance and protected by a tough yet flexible outer membrane.



© Science Photo Library

**THIRD TRIMESTER (28-40 weeks)**

**Breathlessness**

The increased size of the fetus by 24 weeks causes compression of rib cage and discomfort for mother.

**Movement**

By the 28th week, due to less room in uterus, the fetus will wriggle if it feels uncomfortable.

Now almost at full term, the fetus can recognise and respond to sounds and changes in light. Fat begins to be stored under the skin and the lungs are the very last organs to mature.

*"The three intertwined blood vessels radiate from the centre to the edges of the placenta"*

**Week 24**



**Weight**

Week 24: 650g  
Week 28: 1,250g

**Length**

Week 24: 34cm  
Week 28: 38cm

**Hands**

The fetus can move its hands to touch its umbilical cord at 24 weeks.

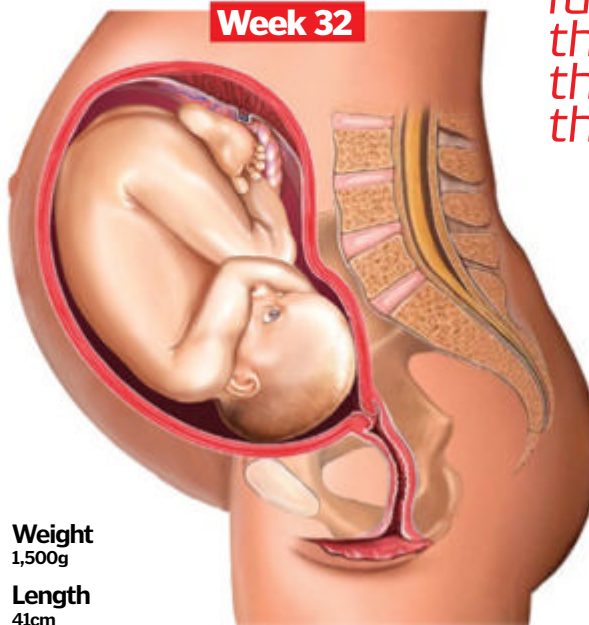
**Position**

By 28 weeks, the uterus has risen to a position between the navel and the breastbone.

**Head**

The head can move at 28 weeks and the eyes can open and see.

**Week 32**



**Weight**  
1,500g

**Length**  
41cm

**Under pressure**

Pressure on the diaphragm and other organs causes indigestion and heartburn in the mother. She will find it difficult to eat a lot.

**Position**

Head positions itself downwards, in preparation for labour.

**Sleep patterns**

Fetus will sleep and wake in 20-minute cycles.



# How does an embryo develop?

## Discover how a fertilised egg transforms into an embryo and eventually a new human being



After fertilisation, the single-celled zygote splits into two, then the two cells double to four, four to eight and so on. The journey along the Fallopian tube is quite slow, while growth continues. On its way, the zygote divides to make a clump of 32 cells, known as the morula stage. If the early embryo splits into two clumps before this, it may develop into identical twins. Every cell in the morula could still become part of the growing embryo.

By the time the womb cavity is reached, the cell cluster becomes hollow and filled with fluid; it is now referred to as the blastocyst. A blastocyst is an embryo that has developed to the stage where it has two different cell types: the surface

cells, or outer coat, will become, among other things, the placenta that nourishes the baby; the inner cells, known as the inner cell mass, will become the foetus itself. On contact, the blastocyst burrows into the uterine wall for nourishment; this process is known as implantation. Blastocyst formation usually occurs on the fifth day after fertilisation.

The embryonic stage begins in the fifth week. From weeks five to eight, development is rapid. Major body organs and systems, including the brain, lungs, liver and stomach, will begin to emerge. At this time, the first bone cells will also appear. By the end of the eighth week, the embryo is known as a foetus and increasingly looks like a mini human.

## Fertilisation and IVF explained

Natural fertilisation takes place via sexual intercourse. An egg, or ovum, is released by an ovary and is fertilised by a sperm. Fertilisation occurs when the sperm and egg unite in one of the female's Fallopian tubes. The fertilised egg, known as a single-celled zygote, then travels to the uterus,

where it implants into the uterine lining. In vitro fertilisation (IVF) is a form of assisted reproductive technology, where the sperm nucleus is combined with an egg cell in a lab. The resultant embryo is manually introduced to the uterus, where it develops in the same way as a natural conception.

### Uterus (womb)

The whole process from ejaculation to fertilisation can take less than an hour. If a woman has an average 28-day menstrual cycle, fertilisation is counted as having taken place around day 14, not on day one.

### Ovary

A woman usually has two tubes and two ovaries, one either side of her uterus. Every month one of the ovaries releases an egg, which passes slowly along its Fallopian tube towards the womb.

### Ovulated egg

The sperm cells are chemically attracted to the egg and attach themselves in an attempt to break through the outer coat.

### Fertilised egg

Only one sperm will be successful. The egg will then lose its attraction, harden its outer shell and the other sperm will let go. If eggs are not fertilised within 12 hours of release, they die.

### Fallopian tube

If a woman has sexual intercourse during the days of her monthly cycle, just before or after an egg has been released from the ovary, a sperm cell from her partner could travel to the Fallopian tube and fertilise the ovum.

### Sperm

During sexual intercourse, millions of sperm are ejaculated into the vagina, with only thousands surviving to make the journey to meet the egg.

### In vitro ('in glass')

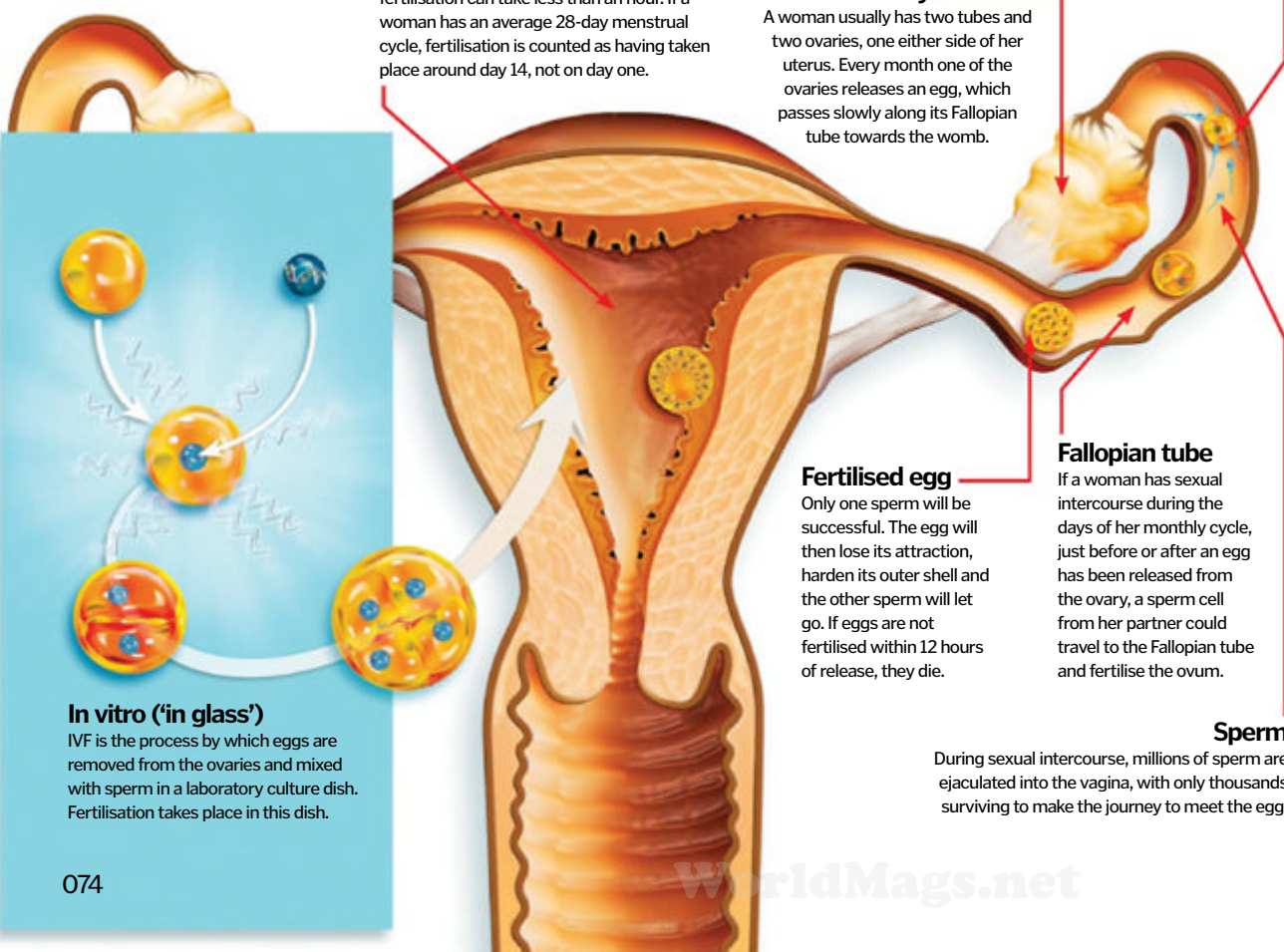
IVF is the process by which eggs are removed from the ovaries and mixed with sperm in a laboratory culture dish. Fertilisation takes place in this dish.

### Week 5

Pharyngeal arches that develop in the face, jaws, throat and neck appear between the head and body. A complex network of nerves and blood vessels are developing. The embryo's eyes have formed and the ears are becoming visible. The spleen and pancreas are beginning to develop in the central part of the gut. The thymus and parathyroid glands develop from the third pharyngeal arch. The arms and legs begin to emerge as paddle-shaped buds.

### Week 3

At the start of week 3 a groove will form towards what will become the tail end of the embryo; this is the primitive streak. A new layer of tissue – the mesoderm – will develop from the primitive streak. The spinal cord, kidneys and major tissues will all grow from this. Cells from the ectodermal tissue create the neural fold and plate, the first stages in the development of the nervous system. The neural groove will go on to form the spine.



**DID YOU KNOW?** In 2009, almost two per cent of all babies born in the UK were conceived as a result of IVF

# Journey of an embryo

The first eight weeks is an immense time of change for a just-conceived human



## Week 6

42 tissue blocks have formed along the embryo's back and the development of the backbone, ribs and muscles of the torso begins. The length of the embryo is now 7-8mm (0.3in). The embryo's heart has established a regular rhythm and the stomach is in place. Ears, nose, fingers and toes are just beginning to appear.



## Week 7

The embryo's eyelids begin to form from a single membrane that remains fused for several days. At this stage in development, the limb muscles are beginning to form. The chest cavity will be separated from the abdominal cavity by a band of muscles; this will later develop into the diaphragm.



## Week 8

Between the fourth and eighth weeks, the brain has grown so rapidly that the head is extremely large in proportion to the rest of the body. The gonads, or sex glands, will now start to develop into ovaries or testes. The elbows, fingers, knees and toes are really taking shape. Inside the chest cavity, the lungs are developing too. At the end of the eight-week period, the embryo becomes a foetus.

## Week 4

The kidneys are forming from mesodermal tissue and the mouth is emerging. A basic spinal cord and gut now run from the head to the tail. The head and tail fold downward into a curve as a result of the embryo developing more rapidly from the front. The heart tube bends into a U shape and blood begins to circulate around the body.

## Week 2

The inner cells of the embryo divide into two layers: the ectoderm and the endoderm. The tissues and organs of the body will eventually develop from these. The amniotic sac, which will soon form a protective bubble around the embryo, also starts to develop. The embryo, now completely embedded in the womb, is a disc-shaped mass of cells, measuring roughly 0.2mm (0.008in) in diameter.

## Week 1

Within one week of conception, the fertilised egg, known as a blastocyst, will make its way to the uterus. Within days the cells will arrange themselves into two masses; the outer coat will become the placenta, while the inner cell mass becomes the foetus. All being well, the developing embryo will settle into the folds of the womb lining.

## What is amniotic fluid?

The amniotic sac is a bag of fluid in the uterus, where the unborn baby develops. It's filled with a colourless fluid – mainly made of water – that helps to cushion the foetus and provides fluids which enable the baby to breathe and swallow. The fluid also guards against infection to either the foetus or the uterus. Amniotic fluid plays a vital role in the development of internal organs, such as the lungs and kidneys; it also maintains a constant temperature. The amniotic sac starts to form and fill with fluid within days of conception.



The body of this foetus is really taking shape, safe within the amniotic sac



# Inside the human stomach

Discover how this amazing digestive organ stretches, churns and holds corrosive acid to break down our food, all without getting damaged



The stomach's major role is as a reservoir for food; it allows large meals to be consumed in one sitting before being gradually emptied into the small intestine. A combination of acid, protein-digesting enzymes and vigorous churning action breaks the stomach contents down into an easier-to-process liquid form, preparing food for absorption in the bowels.

In its resting state, the stomach is contracted and the internal surface of the organ folds into characteristic ridges, or rugae. When we start eating, however, the stomach begins to distend;

the rugae flatten, allowing the stomach to expand, and the outer muscles relax. The stomach can accommodate about a litre (1.8 pints) of food without discomfort.

The expansion of the stomach activates stretch receptors, which trigger nerve signalling that results in increased acid production and powerful muscle contractions to mix and churn the contents. Gastric acid causes proteins in the food to unravel, allowing access by the enzyme pepsin, which breaks down protein. The presence of partially digested proteins stimulates enteroendocrine

cells (G-cells) to make the hormone gastrin, which encourages even more acid production.

The stomach empties its contents into the small intestine through the pyloric sphincter. Liquids pass through the sphincter easily, but solids must be smaller than one to two millimetres (0.04-0.08 inches) in diameter before they will fit. Anything larger is 'refluxed' backwards into the main chamber for further churning and enzymatic breakdown. It takes about two hours for half a meal to pass into the small intestine and the process is generally complete within four to five hours.

## Lining under the microscope

The stomach is much more than just a storage bag. Take a look at its complex microanatomy now...

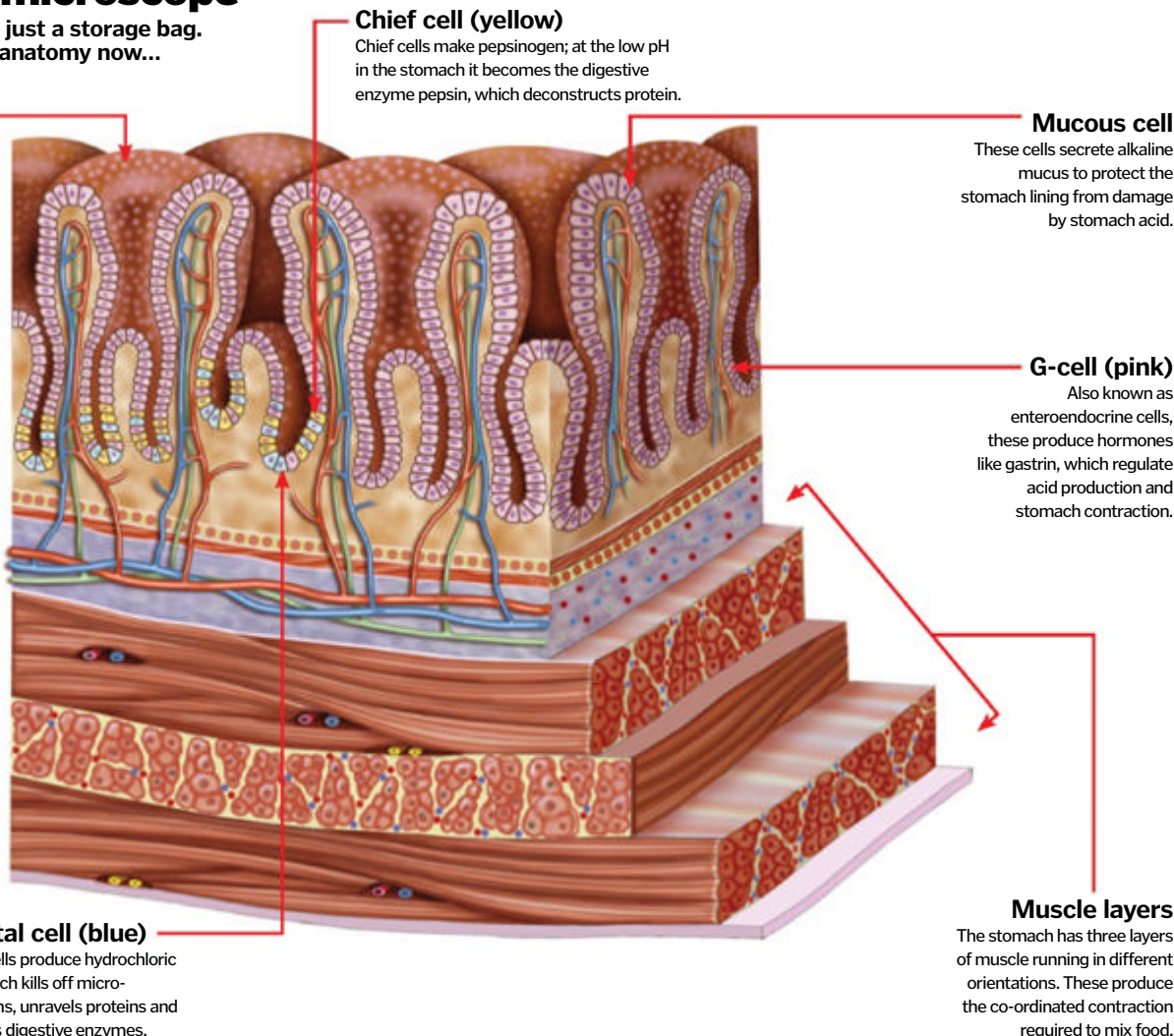
### Gastric pits

The entire surface of the stomach is covered in tiny holes, which lead to the glands that produce mucus, acid and enzymes.

### Mucosa

### Submucosa

### Muscularis



**DID YOU KNOW?** Stomach rumbling, also known as borborygmus, is actually the noise of air movement in the intestines

## Gastric anatomy

This major organ in the digestive system has several distinct regions with different functions, as we highlight here

### Pyloric sphincter

The pyloric sphincter is a strong ring of muscle that regulates the passage of food from the stomach to the bowels.

### Cardia

The oesophagus empties into the stomach at the cardia. This region makes lots of mucus, but little acid or enzymes.

### Antrum

The antrum contains cells that can stimulate or shut off acid production, regulating the pH level of the stomach.

### Fundus

The top portion of the stomach curves up and allows gases created during digestion to be collected.

### Body

Also called the corpus, this is the largest part of the stomach and is responsible for storing food as gastric juices are introduced.

### Small intestine

The stomach empties into the first section of the small intestine: the duodenum.

### Pancreas

The bottom of the stomach is located in front of the pancreas, although the two aren't directly connected.

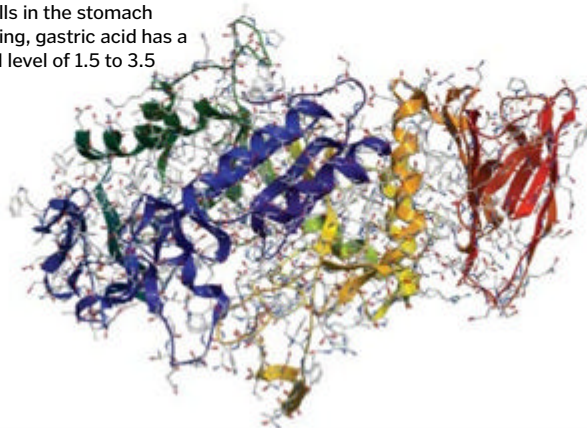
### Large intestine

The large intestine curls around and rests just below the stomach in the abdomen.

## Why doesn't it digest itself?

Your stomach is full of corrosive acid and enzymes capable of breaking down protein – if left unprotected the stomach lining would quickly be destroyed. To prevent this from occurring, the cells lining the stomach wall produce carbohydrate-rich mucus, which forms a slippery, gel-like barrier. The mucus contains bicarbonate, which is alkaline and buffers the pH at the surface of the stomach lining, preventing damage by acid. For added protection, the protein-digesting enzyme pepsin is created from a zymogen (the enzyme in its inactive form) – pepsinogen; it only becomes active when it comes into contact with acid, a safe distance away from the cells that manufacture it.

Produced by parietal cells in the stomach lining, gastric acid has a pH level of 1.5 to 3.5



## Vomit reflex step-by-step

Vomiting is the forceful expulsion of the stomach contents up the oesophagus and out of the mouth. It's the result of three co-ordinated stages. First, a deep breath is drawn and the body closes the glottis, covering the entrance to the lungs. The diaphragm then contracts, lowering pressure in the thorax to open up the oesophagus. At the same time, the muscles of the abdominal wall contract, which squeezes the stomach, which shifts in pressure both inside and outside the stomach forces any contents upwards.

©Thinkstock



# How does angioplasty work?

## Angioplasty is a cutting-edge medical procedure that helps your heart last longer



Your heart pumps blood-rich oxygen to your body's tissues – but the heart muscle needs oxygen itself. The coronary arteries are small vessels lining your heart's surface that do this job perfectly, in exact synchronisation with the beats of the heart. However, they can become blocked. A lack of exercise, smoking, poor diet and unlucky genes can all lead to plaques of fatty tissue, called atheroma, blocking these vital arteries. Then, if your heart needs to pump harder, such as during exercise, the reduced blood flow cannot supply enough oxygen. This leads to pain – angina – which is an early warning sign that the heart muscle is dying. Previously, the only way to cure advanced cases was to go under the surgeon's knife. However, cardiac surgery is a risky procedure. Then along came angioplasty.

Via a small artery in the patient's groin or wrist, doctors insert a guide wire directly into the coronary arteries of the heart. This is tricky, and so they use real-time X-ray images to guide them to exactly the right place. They feed a tiny, thin, flexible hollow tube over this wire (a catheter). Injecting dye into these arteries (via the hollow catheters) and looking carefully at the result shows them exactly where the blockages are. Next, they inflate tiny balloons attached to the end of these long catheters at the exact spot of the blockage. In some cases, this is enough. In others, to prevent the artery closing again, a stent can be placed through the affected area. These are clever stents and can contain drugs that prevent them blocking. A final check X-ray completes the angioplasty process.

Angioplasties like this can also be performed on blocked arteries in the legs, where the principle is exactly the same. But no matter where the blockage is, this procedure requires a steady hand and a doctor who can think fast and think in real-time 3D while looking at 2D black-and-white images.

### 2. Access

Guidewires are fed into these arteries via the small arteries in the groin or wrist. Even though the patient is awake, they don't feel it as a local anaesthetic is given.

### 5. Up close

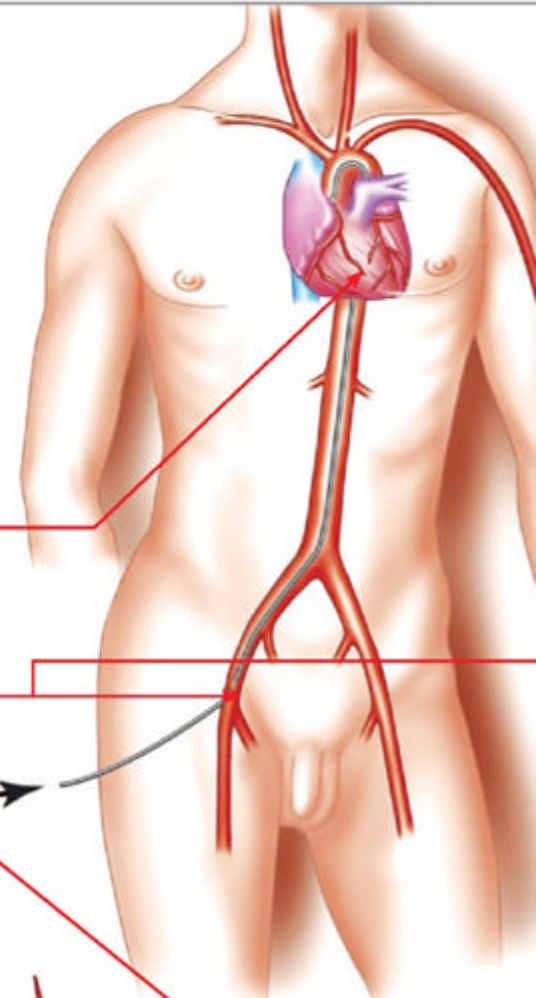
High blood pressure leads to tiny spots of damage on artery walls. These walls fill with cells, including fatty lipid cells. It is the combinations of all of these cells that lead to a fibrosis, stiff plaque that narrows and then blocks the artery.

Real-time X-ray images are a great help to doctors



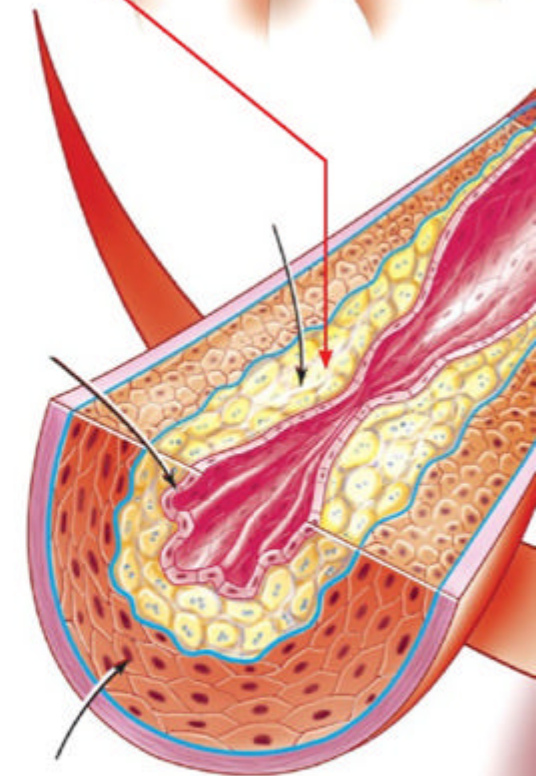
## The procedure

Angioplasty is one of the most commonly performed medical procedures around the world – there's a good chance that you know someone who's had one. However, the procedure still requires a lot of technical skill and a steady hand. Even in the best hands there are risks and complications, but most people get good results from it.



### 1. The blocked artery

Fatty plaques can block any of the four main arteries that feed the heart, leading to pain.



# 5 TOP FACTS ANGIOPLASTY

## Drug eluting

**1** The most modern stents that are used in angioplasty procedures aren't just bare metal, some also secrete drugs over time, which work to prevent a blockage.

## No napping

**2** In the modern era, angioplasty patients stay awake during the entire procedure, as it is now performed with the patient under local anaesthetic.

## High tech all the way

**3** Once the ballooning and stenting is done, the tech doesn't stop. There are devices to close holes made in the groin or wrist arteries to stop them getting bigger.

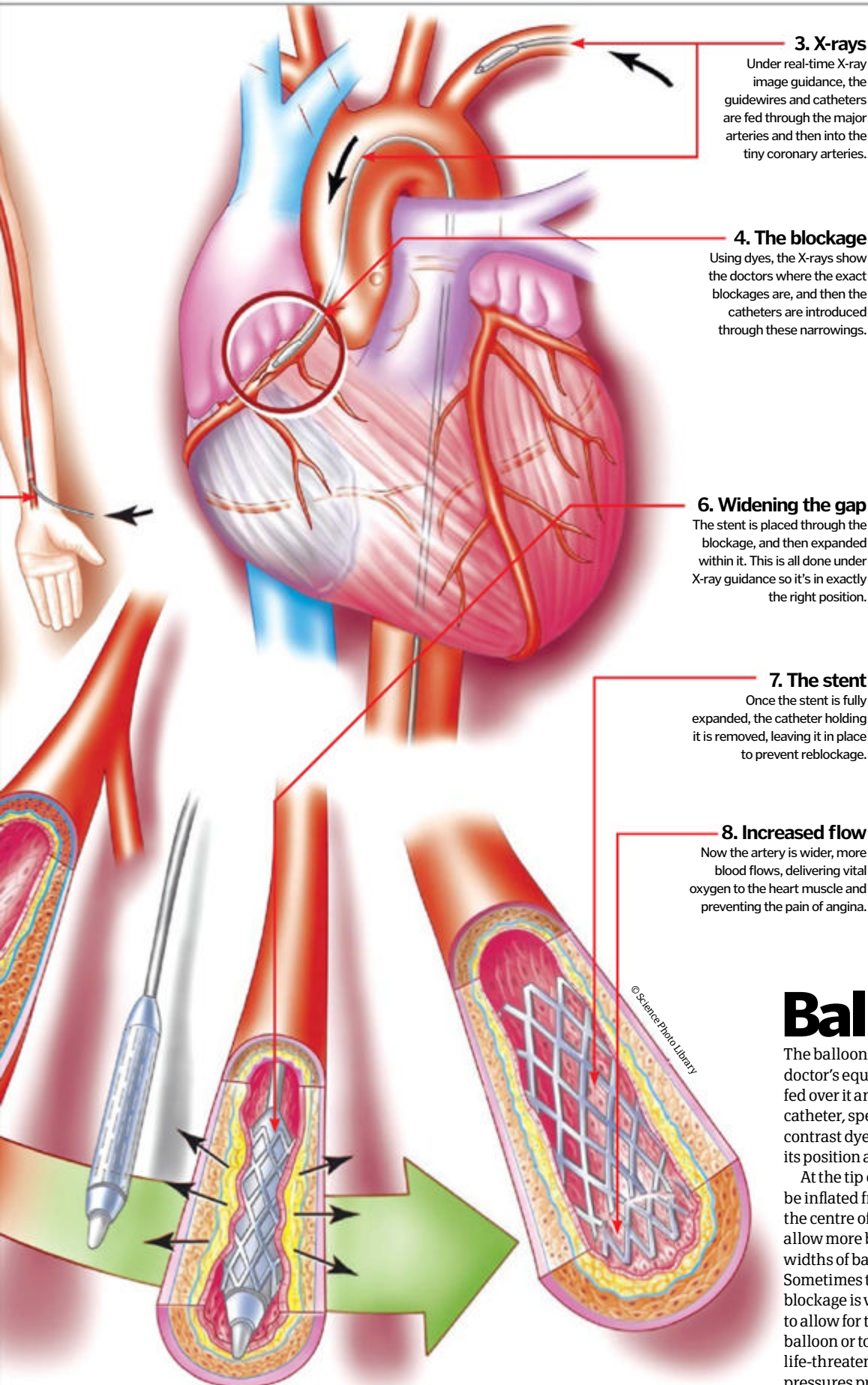
## All the way up?

**4** Although an angioplasty is mainly used on coronary arteries, there are some doctors trialing angioplasty for narrowed arteries that feed blood to the brain.

## Lasers

**5** Recent angioplasty-related technological developments include using lasers at the end of the catheters to burn away the offending plaques.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Emergency angioplasty is the best treatment for acute heart attacks



It all started 300 years ago... on a horse

## From a single horse to the whole world

The first angioplasty of the heart was carried out in the 18th Century on a horse. It took a while to perfect it for humans, and in 1929 the first angioplasty on a person's heart was performed in Germany. Over the next 30 years a small number of doctors pioneered the angioplasty into a diagnostic and therapeutic technique. While in the Sixties and Seventies open heart surgery became established, in the Seventies and Eighties angioplasty started to take over as a lower risk but equally effective treatment. Astonishingly, in the late-Nineties, over 1 million angioplasties were performed worldwide, making it one of the most common medical procedures on the planet.

## Balloon catheter

The balloon catheter is one of the key pieces of the angioplasty doctor's equipment. Once the guidewire is inserted, the catheter is fed over it and floated into exactly the right place. Through this catheter, special dyes that can be seen on X-ray images (radio-opaque contrast dye) can be injected through the hollow catheter to confirm its position and then confirm the location of the blockages.

At the tip of the catheter is a balloon. Using water, this balloon can be inflated from outside to precise pressures. When this is done from the centre of the blockage, the atheromatous plaque is expanded to allow more blood flow. There are many different sizes of catheter and widths of balloons, allowing exact tailoring to the patient's needs. Sometimes the doctor will start with a small balloon when the blockage is very narrow, and then sequentially insert larger balloons to allow for the maximum effect. However, care is needed – too large a balloon or too much pressure and the vessel can rupture, which is a life-threatening complication. Experience, care and control of the pressures prevent this.



HOW IT WORKS

# HUMAN ANATOMY

How do our hands work?



The human hand is an important feature of the human body, which allows individuals to manipulate their surroundings and also to gather large amounts of data from the environment that the individual is situated within. A hand is generally defined as the terminal aspect of the human arm, which consists of prehensile digits, an opposable thumb, and a wrist and palm. Although many other animals have similar structures, only primates and a limited number of other vertebrates can be said to have a 'hand' due to the need for an opposable thumb to be present and the degree of extra articulation that the human hand can achieve. Due to this extra articulation, humans have developed fine motor skills allowing for much increased control in this limb. Consequently we see improved ability to grasp and grip items and development of skills such as writing.

A normal human hand is made up of five digits, the palm and wrist. It consists of 27 bones, tendons, muscles and nerves, with each fingertip of each digit containing numerous nerve endings making the hand a crucial area for gathering information from the environment using one of man's most crucial five senses: touch. Muscles interact together with tendons to allow fingers to bend, straighten, point and, in the case of the thumb, rotate. However, the hand is an area that sees many injuries due to the number of ways we use it, one in ten injuries in A&E being hand related, and there are also several disorders that can affect the hand development in the womb, such as polydactyly, where an individual is born with extra digits, which are often in perfect working order.

# The human hand

## We take our hands for granted, but they are actually quite complex and have been crucial in our evolution

### Bones in the hand

The human hand contains 27 bones, and these divide up into three distinct groups: the carpals, metacarpals and phalanges. These also then further break down into three: the proximal phalanges, intermediate phalanges and distal phalanges. Eight bones are situated in the wrist and these are collectively called the carpals. The metacarpals, which are situated in the palm of the hand account for a further five out of the 27, and each finger has three phalanges, the thumb has two. Intrinsic muscles and tendons interact to control movement of the digits and hand, and attach to extrinsic muscles that extend further up into the arm, which flex the digits.

#### Distal phalanges

A distal phalange (fingertip) is situated at the end of each finger. Deep flexors attach to this bone to allow for maximum movement.

#### Intermediate phalanges

This is where the superficial flexors attach via tendons to allow the digit to bend.

#### Proximal phalanges

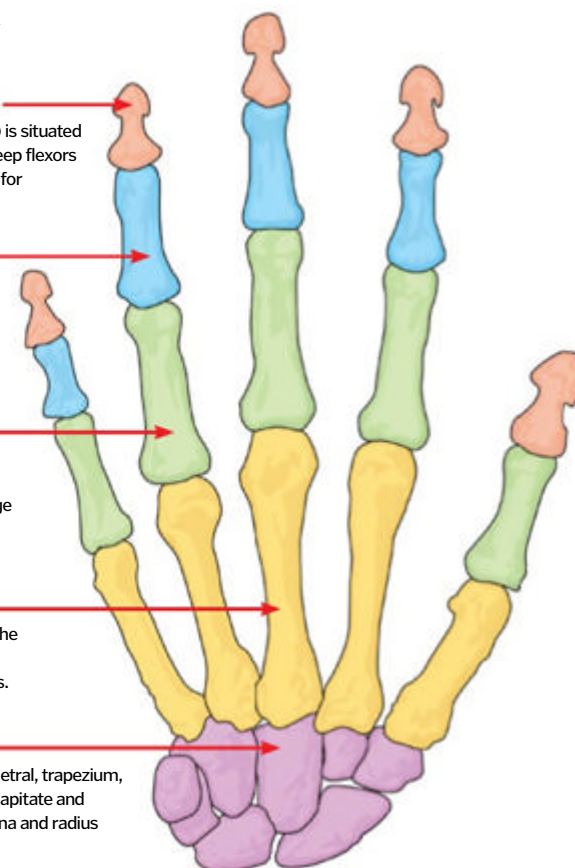
Each finger has three phalanges, and this phalange joins the intermediate to its respective metacarpal.

#### Metacarpals

These five bones make up the palm, and each one aligns with one of the hand's digits.

#### Carpals

The carpals (scaphoid, triquetral, trapezium, trapezoid, lunate, hamate, capitate and pisiform) sit between the ulna and radius and the metacarpals.





## 1. Julio Cesar Soares de Espindola

Having recovered from a few earlier blunders, the Brazilian keeper is now considered one of the best.



## 2. Gianluigi Buffon

Named the 'Serie A Goalkeeper of the Year' a record nine times, this is one guy it would be hard to put one past.



## 3. Iker Casillas Fernandez

Voted best goalie in the world by the International Federation of Football History and Statistics for two years running.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Skin is attached to tendons and so when you bend your fingers back, dimples appear on the back of your hand

# Muscles and other structures

The movements and articulations of the hand and by the digits are controlled by tendons and two muscle groups situated within the hand and wrist. These are the extrinsic and intrinsic muscle groups, so named as the extrinsics are attached to muscles which extend into the forearm, whereas the intrinsics are situated within the hand and wrist. The flexors and extensors, which make up the extrinsic muscles, use either exclusively tendons to attach to digits they control (flexors) or a more

complex mix of tendons and intrinsic muscles to operate (extensors). These muscles will contract in order to cause digit movement, and flexors and extensors work in a pair to complement each other to straighten and bend digits. The intrinsic muscles are responsible for aiding extrinsic muscle action and other movements in the digits and have three distinct groups; the thenar and hypothenar (referring to the thumb and little finger respectively), the interossei and the lumbrical.

### Thenar space

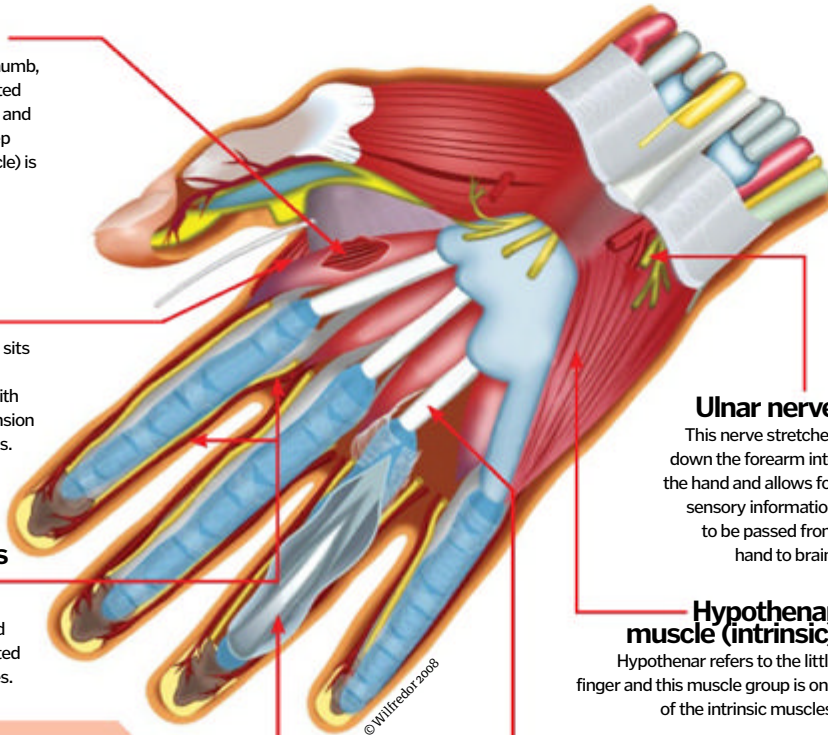
Thenar refers to the thumb, and this space is situated between the first digit and thumb. One of the deep flexors (extrinsic muscle) is located in here.

### Interossei muscle (intrinsic)

This interossei muscle sits between metacarpal bones and will unite with tendons to allow extension using extrinsic muscles.

### Arteries, veins and nerves

These supply fresh oxygenated blood (and take away deoxygenated blood) to hand muscles.



### Ulnar nerve

This nerve stretches down the forearm into the hand and allows for sensory information to be passed from hand to brain.

### Hypothenar muscle (intrinsic)

Hypothenar refers to the little finger and this muscle group is one of the intrinsic muscles.

### Mid palmar space

Tendons and intrinsic muscles primarily inhabit this space within the hand.

### Insertion of flexor tendon

This is where the tendon attaches the flexor muscle to the finger bones to allow articulation.

# Forearm muscles

Extrinsic muscles are so called because they are primarily situated outside the hand, the body of the muscles situated along the underside or front of the forearm. This body of muscles actually breaks down into two quite distinct groups: the flexors and the extensors. The flexors run alongside the underside of the arm and allow for the bending of the digits, whereas the extensor muscles' main purpose is the reverse this action, to straighten the digits. There are both deep and superficial flexors and extensors, and which are used at any one time depends on the digit to be moved.

### Tendons and intrinsics

These attach the flexor muscles to the phalanges, and facilitate bending. Tendons also interact with the intrinsics and extensors in the wrist, palm and forearm to straighten the digits.

### Thenars

The intrinsic group of muscles is used to flex the thumb and control its sideways movement.

### Superficial flexors

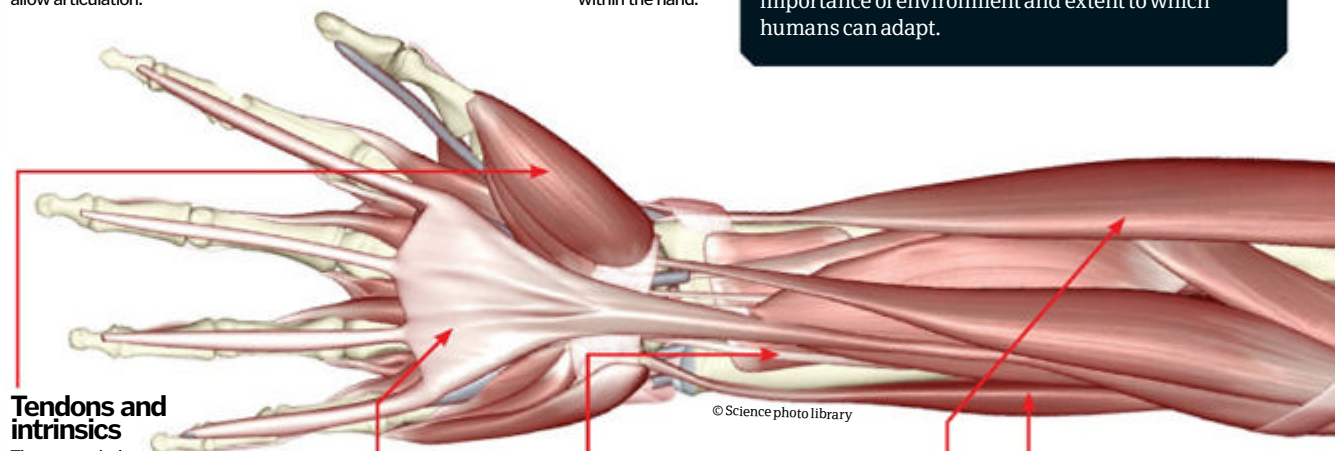
The other flexor that acts on the digits is the superior flexor, which attaches to the intermediate phalanges.

### Deep flexors

The digits have two extrinsic flexors that allow them to bend, the deep flexor and the superficial. The deep flexor attaches to the distal phalanges.

### Extensors

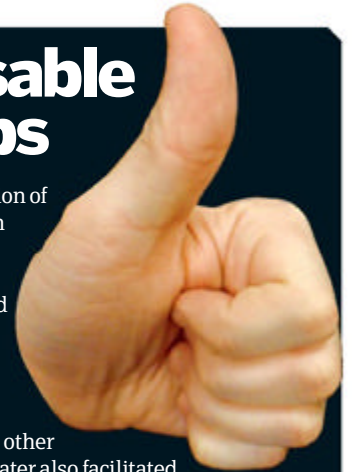
Extensors on the back of the forearm straighten the digits. Divided into six sections, their connection to the digits is complex.



© Science photo library

# Opposable thumbs

Increased articulation of the thumb has been heralded as a key factor in human evolution. It allowed for increased grip and control, and for tool use to develop among human ancestors as well as other primates. This has later also facilitated major cultural advances, such as writing. Alongside the four other flexible digits, the opposable thumb makes the human hand one of the most dexterous in the world. A thumb can only be classified as opposable when it can be brought opposite to the other digits.



# Left handed or right handed?

The most common theory for why some individuals are left handed is that of the 'disappearing twin'. This supposes that the left-handed individual was actually one of a set of twins, but that in the early stages of development the other, right handed, twin died. However, it's been found that dominance of one hand is directly linked with hemisphere dominance in the brain, as in many other paired organs.

Individuals who somehow damage their dominant hand for extended periods of time can actually change to use the other hand, proving the impact and importance of environment and extent to which humans can adapt.



# Knee-jerk reactions explained

### Why does your leg kick out when the doctor taps just below your knee?

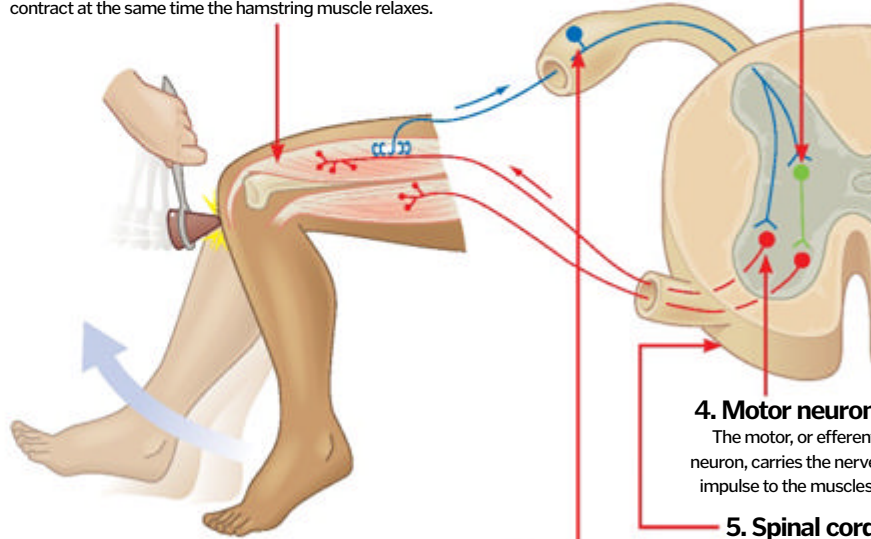


Doctors often test the knee-jerk, or patellar reflex, to look for potential neurological problems. Lightly tapping your patellar tendon just below the kneecap stretches the femoral nerve located in your thigh, which in turn causes your thigh muscle (quadriceps) to contract and the lower leg to extend. When struck, impulses travel along a pathway in the dorsal root ganglion, a bundle of nerves in the L4 level of the spinal cord. Reflex actions are performed independently of the brain. This allows them to happen almost instantaneously - in about 50 milliseconds in the case of the knee-jerk reflex. This reflex helps you to maintain balance and posture when you walk, without having to think about every step you take.

## The knee-jerk step-by-step

### 1. Quadriceps and hamstring muscles

The knee-jerk reflex means that the quadriceps muscles contract at the same time the hamstring muscle relaxes.



### 3. Interneuron

The interneuron provides a connection between the sensory and motor neurons.

### 4. Motor neuron

The motor, or efferent neuron, carries the nerve impulse to the muscles.

### 5. Spinal cord

The spinal cord has both grey matter, which contains nerve cell bodies, and white matter, which contains the nerve fibres.

■ Sensory neuron  
■ Motor neuron  
■ Interneuron

### 2. Sensory neuron

The sensory, or afferent neuron, receives an impulse from the femoral nerve.

*"Reflex actions are performed independently of the brain"*



# What are our fingernails made of?

### And how are they formed?



Fingernails are made of a tough protein called keratin (from the Greek word 'Kera', meaning horn). Keratin is also what animals hooves and horns are made from. Most animals have a supportive bone structure in their horns, although rhinoceros horns are made completely of keratin compacted together. The only other biological material which has a similar toughness to keratinised tissue is chitin, the main component of exoskeletons belonging to arthropods. The half-moon shape that you can see at the bottom of your nail (apart from maybe your little finger) is called the lanula. This is a group of cells that produce keratin and other living cells. As these living cells are pushed forward by newer cells, they die and merge with the keratin to become keratinised. They then become flattened, stiff and known as your fingernails.

*"The half-moon shape that you can see at the bottom of your nail is called the lanula"*

# Inside the knee

## How do our knee joints allow us to walk and run?



The knee is the largest and also one of the most complex joints in the body, allowing us bipedal humans to move around and get from point A to point B. Three different bones meet at the knee joint and work together to allow for movement and protection. At the top of the knee is the lower part of the thighbone (femur). This rotates on top of the shinbone (tibia) and the kneecap (patella), the latter of which moves in a groove between the femur and tibia. Cartilage within the knee cushions it from shock caused by motion, while ligaments prevent damage occurring to the joint in case of unusual or erratic motion. Muscles running from the hip down to the knee joint are responsible for working the knee joint and allowing our legs to bend, stretch, and ultimately allowing us to walk, run and skip.

### Cartilage

The point at which the three bones meet is covered in tough, elastic articular cartilage, allowing smooth movement of the joint and absorbing shock.

### Patella

This bone slides at the front of the femur and tibia as the knee moves, protecting the knee and giving the muscles leverage.

### Menisci

The three bones are separated with two discs of connective tissue called 'menisci', also acting as shock absorbers and enhancing stability.

### Tendons

These tough cords of tissue attach muscle to bone, so that the muscles can bend and straighten the leg as required.

### Tibia

This bone connects the knee to the ankle, running parallel to the thinner fibula bone.

### Quadriceps

The quadriceps, made up of four muscles, are on the front of the thigh and help to straighten the leg.

### Hamstrings

Hamstring muscles running from the thigh to the knee joint are responsible for bending the leg at the knee.

### Femur

This bone runs from the hip to the knee joint. It is the thickest and the longest bone in the human body.

## The knee structure

### How does everything work in tandem to allow for movement?

### Synovial membrane

The soft tissue at the centre of the knee joint contains synovial fluid, providing lubrication for the moving knee.

### Ligaments

These elastic bands of tissue connect the bones together and provide stability and strength to the knee joint.



The patella, seen separated above, is also known as the kneecap

© Science Photo Library



# How do your feet work?

Feet are immensely complex structures, yet we put huge amounts of pressure on them every day. How do they cope?



The human foot and ankle is crucial for locomotion and is one of the most complex structures of the human body. This intricate structure is made up of no less than 26 bones, 20 muscles, 33

joints – although only 20 are articulated – as well as numerous tendons and ligaments. Tendons connect the muscles to the bones and facilitate movement of the foot, while ligaments hold the tendons in place and help the foot move up and down to initiate walking. Arches in the foot are formed by ligaments, muscles and foot bones and help to distribute weight, as well as making it easier for the foot to operate efficiently when walking and running. It is due to the unique structure of the foot and the way it distributes pressure throughout all aspects that it can withstand constant pressure throughout the day.

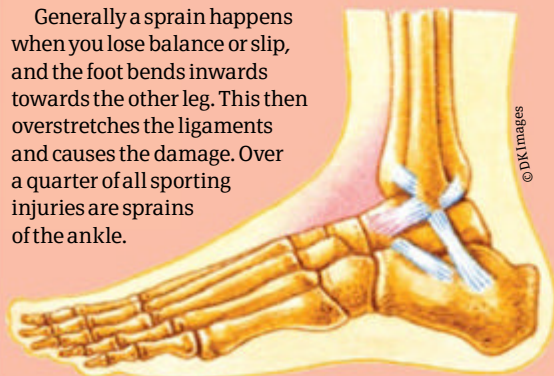
One of the other crucial functions of the foot is to aid balance, and toes are a crucial aspect of this. The big toe in particular helps in this area, as we can grip the ground with it if we feel we are losing balance.

The skin, nerves and blood vessels make up the rest of the foot, helping to hold the shape and also supplying it with all the necessary minerals, oxygen and energy to help keep it moving easily and constantly.

## What happens when you sprain your ankle?

A sprained ankle is the most common type of soft tissue injury. The severity of the sprain can depend on how you sprained the ankle, and a minor sprain will generally consist of a stretched or only partially torn ligament. However, more severe sprains can cause the ligament to tear completely, or even force a piece of bone to break off.

Generally a sprain happens when you lose balance or slip, and the foot bends inwards towards the other leg. This then overstretches the ligaments and causes the damage. Over a quarter of all sporting injuries are sprains of the ankle.



© DK Images

### Toes

Terminal aspects of the foot that aid balance by grasping onto the ground. They are the equivalent of fingers in the foot structure.

### Muscles - including the extensor digitorum brevis muscle

Muscles within the foot help the foot lift and articulate as necessary. The extensor digitorum brevis muscle sits on the top of the foot, and helps flex digits two-four on the foot.

### Blood vessels

These supply blood to the foot, facilitating muscle operation by supplying energy and oxygen and removing deoxygenated blood.

### Ligaments

Ligaments support the tendons and help to form the arches of the foot, spreading weight across it.

### Tendons (extensor digitorum longus, among others)

Fibrous bands of tissue which connect muscles to bones. They can withstand a lot of tension and link various aspects of the foot, facilitating movement.

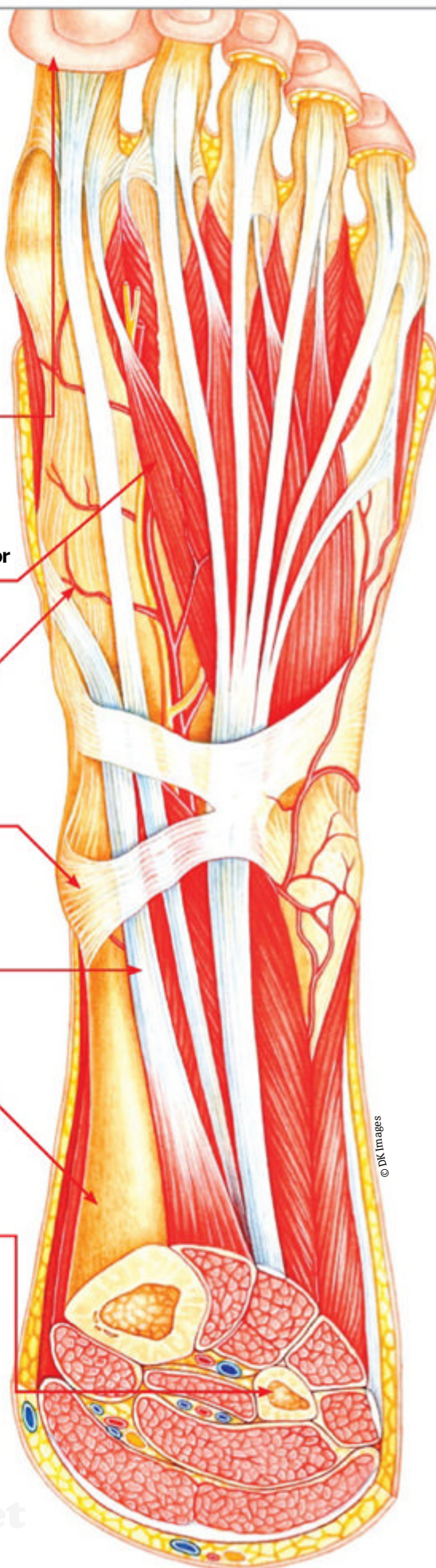
### Tibia

The larger and stronger of the lower leg bones, this links the knee and the ankle bones of the foot.

### Fibula

This bone sits alongside the tibia, also linking the knee and the ankle.

## The structure of the foot and how the elements work together



© DK Images

# 5 TOP FACTS

## FOOT AILMENTS

### Bunions

**1** This is an enlargement of the skin or tissue around the big toe. Formation is often attributed to ill-fitting shoes, though it's suspected that genetics is the root problem.

### Athlete's foot

**2** A fungal infection that's often transmitted in areas where people walk around barefoot, this develops when the skin is not properly dried and aired. It displays as flaky, itchy skin.

### Warts

**3** Warts are small, benign lumps of skin, which appear following exposure to a virus - most commonly the human papillomavirus 2 and 7.

### Ingrown toenails

**4** Ingrown toenails are a form of nail disease where the nail grows into either side of the nail bed. Infection can often occur if it is not caught and treated early.

### Achilles tendonitis

**5** This is the inflammation of the Achilles tendon, which occurs prior to the rupture of the tendon, and is commonly seen in athletes.

**DID YOU KNOW?** In a lifetime, a person will walk the equivalent of four times around the globe - more than 100,000 miles!



The structure of the foot enables us to stay balanced

# How do we walk?

'Human gait' is the term to describe how we walk. This gait will vary between each person, but the basics are the same

### 2. Weight transfer

The weight will transfer fully to the foot still in contact with the ground, normally with a slight leaning movement of the body.

### 3. Foot lift

After weight has transferred and the individual feels balanced, the ball of the first foot will then lift off the ground, raising the thigh.

### 5. Heel placement

The heel will normally be the part of the foot that's placed first, and weight will start to transfer back onto this foot as it hits the ground.

### 1. Heel lift

The first step of walking is for the foot to be lifted off the ground. The knee will raise and the calf muscle and Achilles tendon, situated on the back of the leg, will contract to allow the heel to lift off the ground.

### 4. Leg swing

The lower leg will then swing at the knee, under the body, to be placed in front of the stationary, weight-bearing foot.

### 6. Repeat process

The process is then repeated with the other foot. During normal walking or running, one foot will start to lift as the other starts to come into contact with the ground.

# Bones of the foot

### Distal phalanges

The bones which sit at the far end of the foot and make up the tips of the toes.

### Proximal phalanges

These bones link the metatarsals and the distal phalanges and stretch from the base of the toes.

### Metatarsals

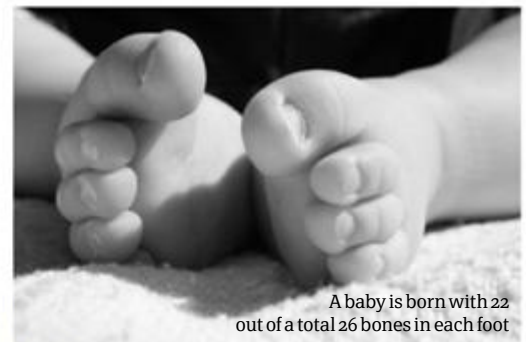
The five, long bones that are the metatarsals are located between the tarsal bones and the phalanges. These are the equivalent of the metacarpals in the hand.

### Cuneiforms bones (three)

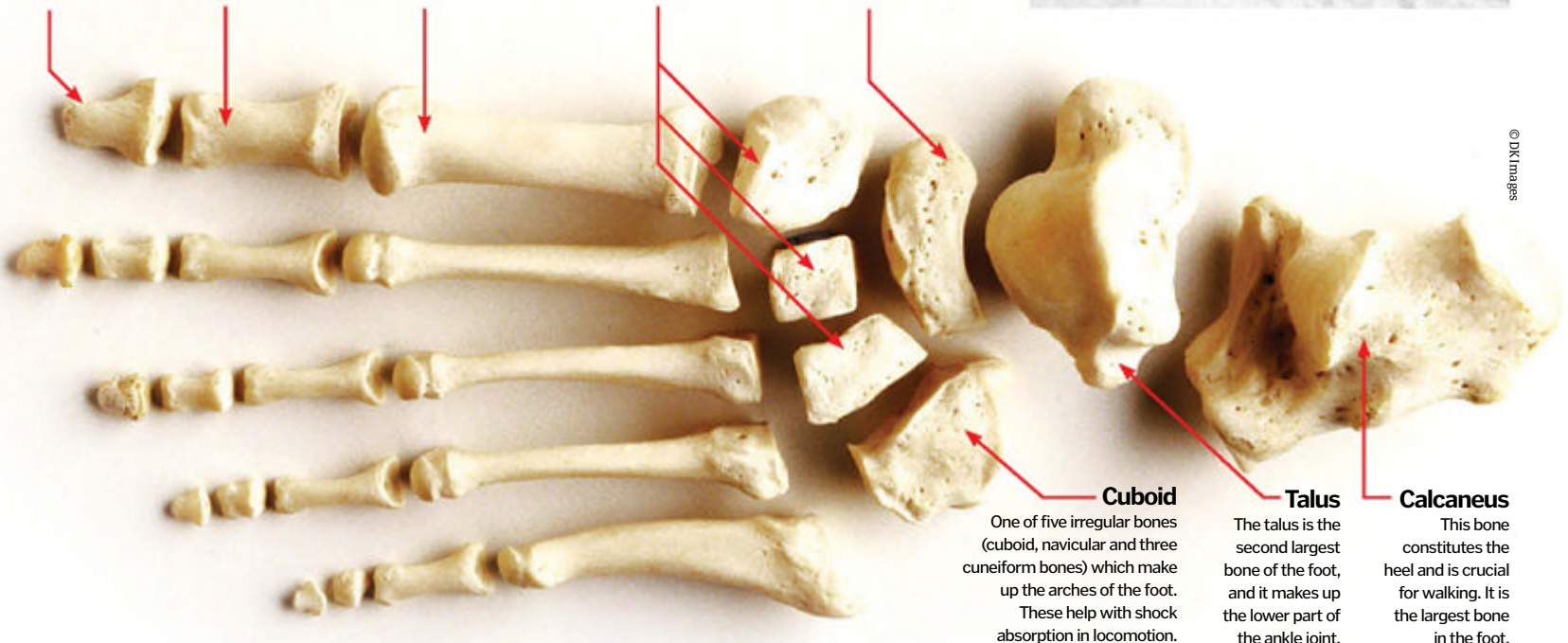
Three bones that fuse together during bone development and sit between the metatarsals and the talus.

### Navicular

This bone, which is so named due to its resemblance to a boat, articulates with the three cuneiform bones.



A baby is born with 22 out of a total 26 bones in each foot



### Cuboid

One of five irregular bones (cuboid, navicular and three cuneiform bones) which make up the arches of the foot. These help with shock absorption in locomotion.

### Talus

The talus is the second largest bone of the foot, and it makes up the lower part of the ankle joint.

### Calcaneus

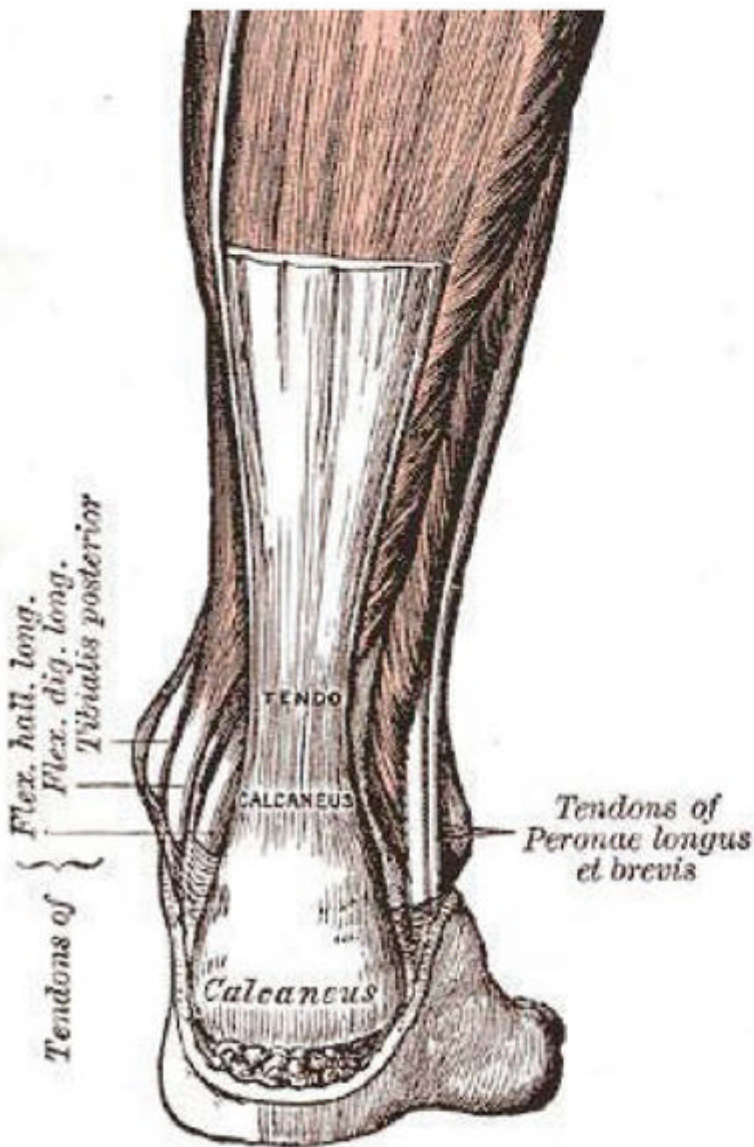
This bone constitutes the heel and is crucial for walking. It is the largest bone in the foot.



HOW IT WORKS

# HUMAN ANATOMY

## Achilles' tendon / Smelly feet



# What does the Achilles' tendon do?

Is it really a weak spot and how important is it?



This tendon, the strongest in your body, connects the calf muscles to the heel. When everything is fine, it pulls the back of the foot up when the calf muscles contract. This way, your heel raises and your weight goes to your toes. It enables us to do such things as sprinting, hopping or jumping. It also stores elastic energy to do these tasks more efficiently. Biological anthropologists believe all this was very important for the way we evolved to run around on two legs and survive.

The Achilles' tendon is seemingly named thus after the mythological Greek character of Achilles, who during the Trojan War - made famous by Homer's epic poem *The Iliad* - is shot by a poisoned arrow in his unprotected heel - hence the common phrase describing a person's weak point.

# Why do feet smell?

Producing up to a pint of sweat each day, no wonder your feet get a bit whiffy



Sweat actually keeps the skin of our feet moist and flexible to cope with the constantly changing pressure when we walk. Without this moisture the skin would dry and crack, and walking would become extremely painful.

Despite the huge number of glands (250,000 per foot) and amount of sweat that comes from our feet, remember it's still just salt and water. The odour comes from the bacteria that live on human skin which, while unsettling, are perfectly natural. Our socks are a dark, moist-infested feast for them, as they eat sweat and dead skin. It is the waste products they excrete from this consumption that are what smells bad. The more the bacteria eat the worse our feet smell. To keep the smell down, make sure you change your socks and let your shoes air for 24 hours if you can. Also, wash your feet and spray them with antiperspirant!

The wonderful smell of freshly cut grass, daisies and feet...



## Head to Head SMELLIEST ANIMAL, PLACE AND PLANT

ANIMAL



### 1. Striped Skunk

**Facts:** Well known for their ability to secrete a liquid with a strong, foul smelling odour which they can use as a defensive weapon. They can shoot it up to 5 metres.

PLACE



### 2. Rotorua, New Zealand

**Facts:** Located in the most geologically active area of New Zealand, Rotorua is surrounded by mud pools, geysers and steam vents.

PLANT



### 3. Titan arum

**Facts:** This monstrous, three-metre tall plant smells like a combination of rotten eggs and rotting meat to attract insects.



Blisters shouldn't be burst as they are the body's way of protecting deeper skin layers

# What are blisters?

Why do burns cause bubbles to develop below the surface of the skin?



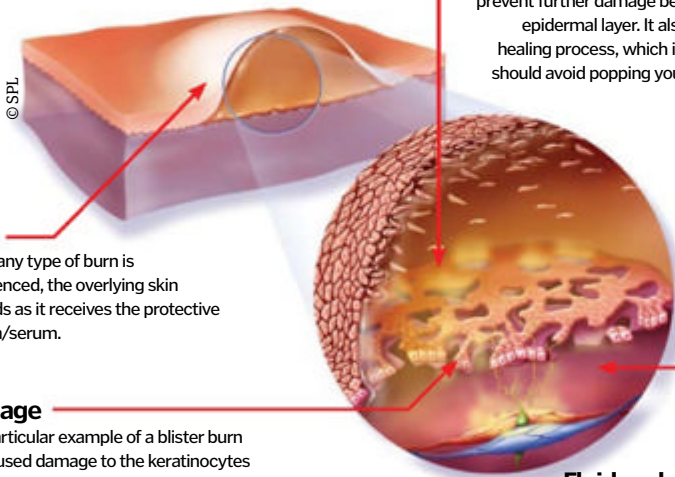
Though our skin is an amazing protector against the elements, it can become damaged by such factors as heat, cold, friction, chemicals, light, electricity and radiation, all of which 'burn' the skin. A blister is the resulting injury that develops in the upper layers of the skin as a result of such burns.

The most common example of a blister, which we've no doubt all experienced at some time, is due to the repeated friction caused by the material of a pair of shoes rubbing against, and irritating, the skin. The resulting water blister is a kind of plasma-filled bubble that appears just below the top layers of your skin. The plasma, or serum - which is a component of your blood - is released by the damaged tissue cells

and fills the spaces between the layers of skin in order to cushion the underlying skin that is being rubbed and protect it from further damage. As more and more serum pours into the space, the skin begins to inflate under the pressure, forming a small balloon full of the serous liquid. Given time to heal, the skin will reabsorb the plasma after about 24 hours.

Similarly, a blood blister is a variation of the same injury where the skin has been forcefully pinched or crushed but not pierced, causing small blood vessels to rupture, leaking blood into the skin. All blisters can be tender but should never be popped in order to drain the fluid as this leaves the underlying skin unprotected and also invites infection into the open wound.

## Blister caused by second-degree burns



**Skin**  
When any type of burn is experienced, the overlying skin expands as it receives the protective plasma/serum.

**Damage**  
This particular example of a blister burn has caused damage to the keratinocytes in the skin. Second-degree burns are most often caused when the skin comes into contact with a hot surface, such as an iron or boiling water, or even after exposure to excessive sunlight.

**Plasma**  
Serum is released by the damaged tissues into the upper skin layers to prevent further damage below in the epidermal layer. It also aids the healing process, which is why you should avoid popping your blisters.

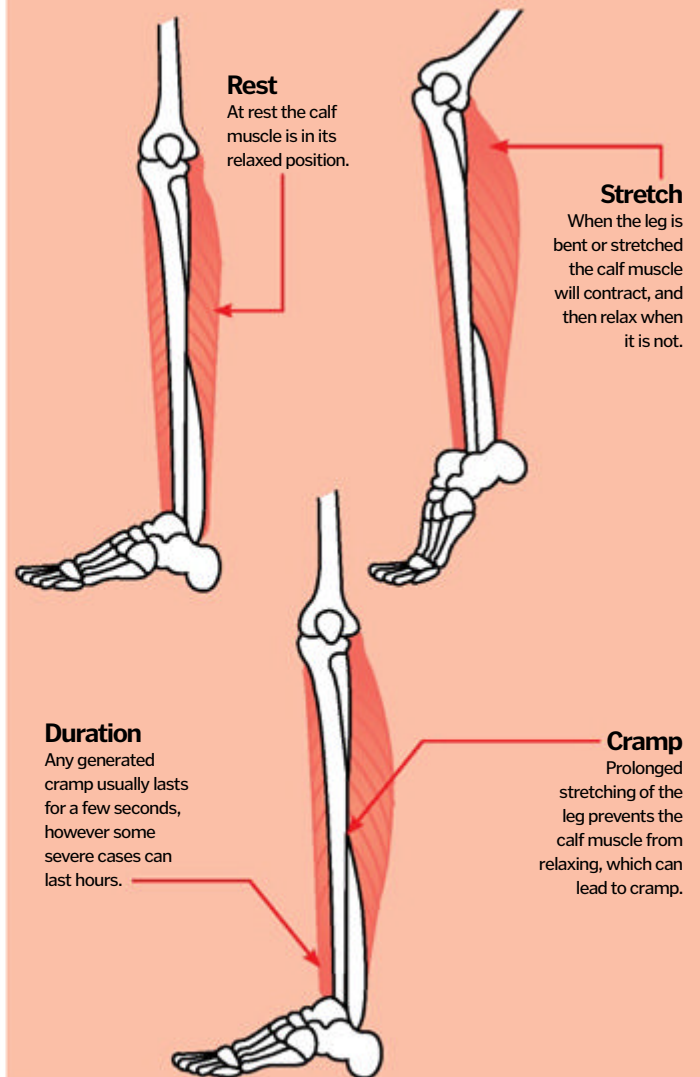
**Fluid reabsorbed**  
After a day or so the serum will be absorbed back into the body and the raised skin layers will dry out and flake off in their own time.

# Cramp explained

Why do our muscles tense up?

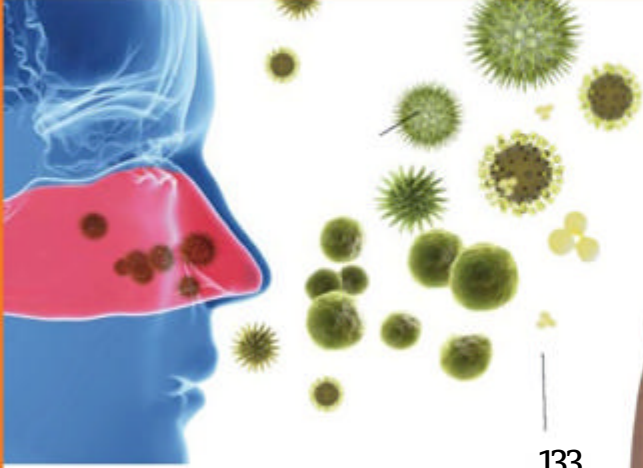


Cramp is an involuntary contraction of a muscle, often in a limb such as the leg, that can cause pain and discomfort for seconds, minutes or, in extreme cases, for several hours. They are most common after or during exercise, coinciding with low blood sugar levels, dehydration and a high loss of salt from sweating. Although the full range of causes is something of a mystery due to limited research in the area, cramp is believed to be the result of muscle fatigue. If a muscle has been shortened through prolonged use but is repeatedly stimulated, it isn't able to properly relax. A reflex arc from the central nervous system to the muscle informs it to continue contracting when it is not necessary, leading to a painful spasm known as cramp as the muscle continually attempts to contract. This is why athletes pushed beyond their limits, such as football players who have to play extra time in a soccer match, and long-distance runners, will often experience this condition.



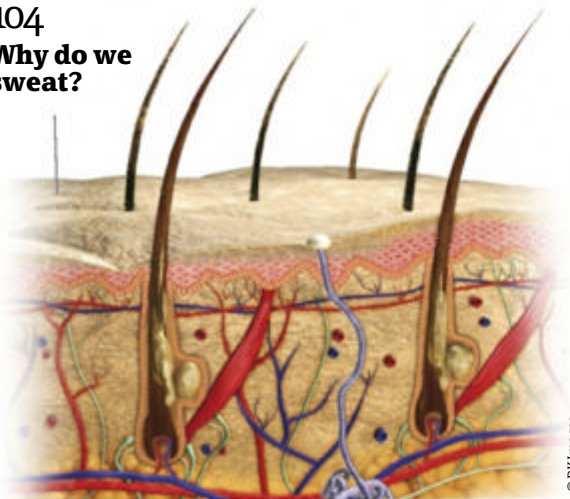


# THE BODY AT WORK



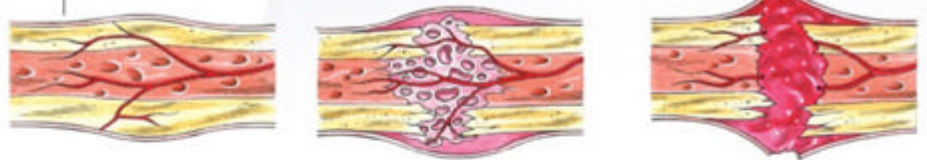
133  
**Hayfever explained**

104  
**Why do we sweat?**



© DK Images

110  
**How our bones heal**



**090 Food and your body**  
Inside the digestive system

**098 The blood-brain barrier**  
What important role does it play?

**099 Pituitary gland up close**  
The 'master gland' explored

**100 Brain electricity / Synapses**  
Revealing the truth behind both

**101 Adrenaline**  
How does it effect the body?

**102 Human respiration**  
The lungs explained

**104 Dehydration / Sweating**  
Why we sweat and using fluids

**105 Circadian rhythm**  
Our body clock explored

**106 The immune system**  
Combating viruses

**110 Healing bone fractures**  
How broken bones are mended

**111 Making protein**  
How are they manufactured?

**112 The cell cycle**  
Inside a vital process

**114 White blood cells**  
How infection is fought

**116 The science of genetics**  
How genes define who we are

**121 Burns**  
The causes and effects of burns

**122 Blood vessels**  
Our circulations system

**124 How your blood works**  
The miraculous fluid analysed

**128 Hormones**  
The human endocrine system

**130 The urinary system**  
How do we pass waste?

**132 Tracheotomy surgery**  
A life-saving procedure

**133 Hayfever**  
Why do people suffer?

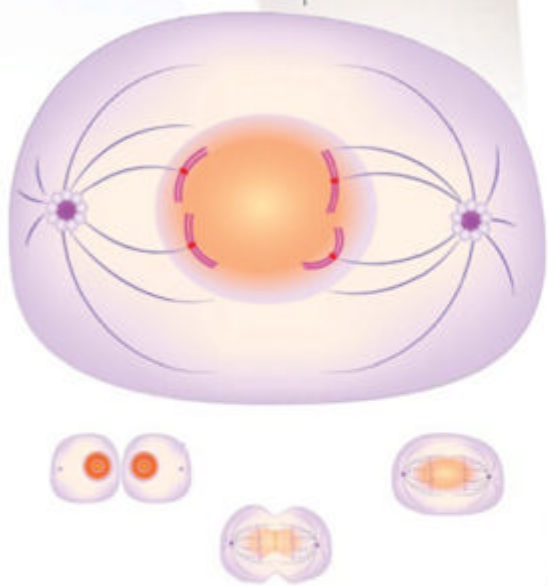
**134 Exploring the sensory system**  
How we experience the world

**138 Chickenpox**  
How harmful can it really be?

**139 Why do we cry?**  
The different types of tears



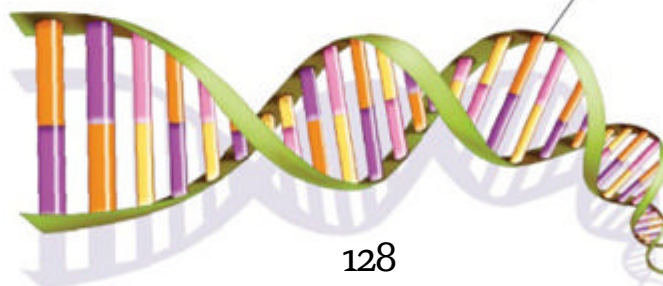
112  
The cell cycle



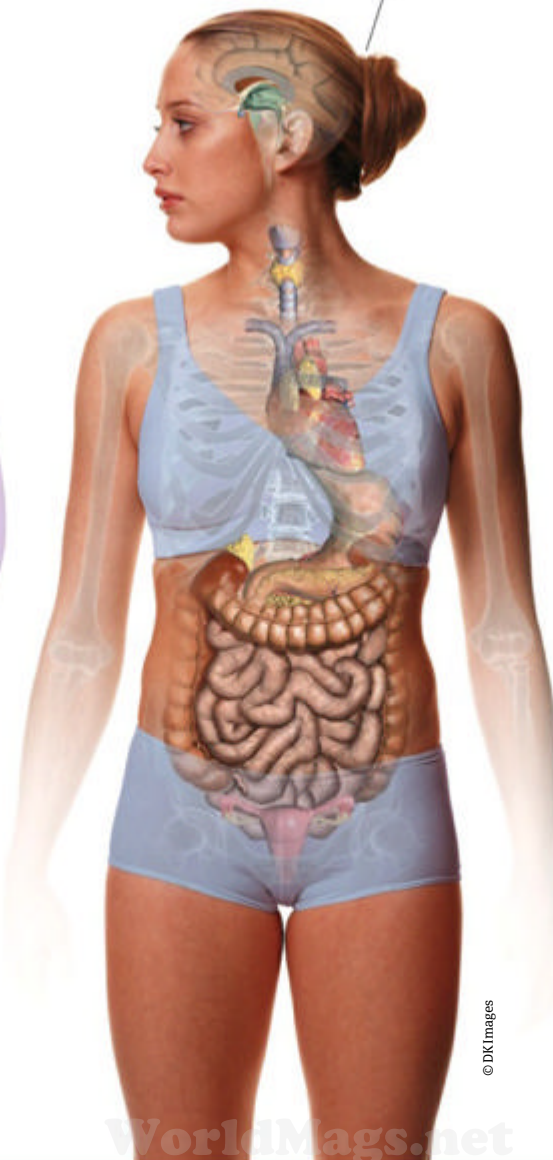
*"The cell damage from viruses causes diseases"*



116  
DNA explored



128  
The role of hormones

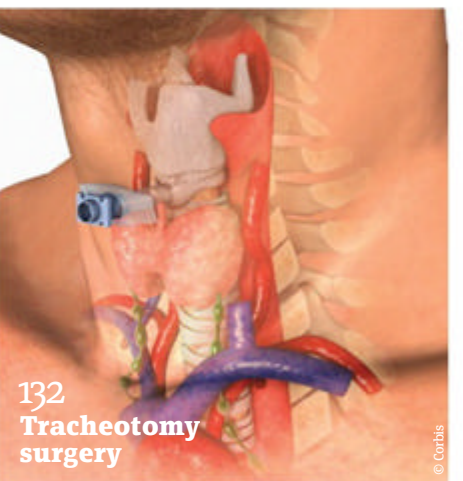


© Alamy

139  
Why do we cry?



© Thinkstock



132  
Tracheotomy surgery

© Corbis



# Food & your body

Join us as we unravel all nine metres of your digestive system



The digestive tract is a long, muscular tube that runs the entire length of your body. It is separated into five distinct sections, each with its own particular and specialised function.

Digestion begins in the mouth. As you chew your food, saliva is released, providing a slippery lubricant and kick-starting the break down of carbohydrates with an enzyme known as amylase. Touch receptors in your mouth tell you when it is time to swallow, and as your tongue comes upward, the food is pushed to the back of your throat.

As you swallow, you pass control of digestion over to your automatic motor functions. A flap of skin called the epiglottis folds down to cover the voice box, and the entrance to the lungs, and then a wave pushes the mouthful all the way down the oesophagus. When the food reaches your stomach, it passes through a ring of muscle known as the cardiac sphincter, which prevents it from coming back out the way it came in.

The inside of the stomach is a hostile environment, where the cells lining the walls pump out hydrochloric acid and protein-digesting enzymes. The presence of food triggers stretch receptors in the stomach lining, which in turn trigger a series of rhythmic contractions. These churn the stomach contents, mixing in the acid and enzymes, grinding down the food.

At the bottom of the stomach there is a second ring of muscle called the pyloric sphincter, which acts as a gatekeeper to the small intestine. The sphincter prevents anything larger than about two centimetres (0.8 inches) in diameter passing through, returning it to the body of the stomach until it has ▶



1. COMMON

### Shellfish

Shellfish allergies tend to develop during adulthood. Foods to avoid include barnacles, crabs, shrimps, lobsters, crawfish and krill.



2. MORE COMMON

### Milk

Children under the age of three are the most likely to develop an allergy to milk, but they usually outgrow it by the time they reach adulthood.



3. MOST COMMON

### Peanuts

By far the most common food allergy is peanuts. In the UK, as many as one in 50 children are sensitive.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Biological washing powder uses digestive enzymes to break down the stains on dirty laundry

been ground down further. This ensures that by the time it reaches the small intestine, your food is a runny, slightly lumpy paste, and is ready for the next stage of digestion.

The small intestine is the site of chemical digestion. Here, the pancreas adds digestive enzymes, and the liver adds a generous squirt of alkaline bile, delivered via the gall bladder. This bile not only neutralises the burning stomach acid, it also acts a little like washing-up liquid on dirty dinner dishes, helping to separate the food particles and forcing fats to disperse into tiny bubbles.

Muscles in the small intestine continue to squeeze and mix the contents together, allowing the enzymes to get to work inside the paste. As the nutrients are released, they are then absorbed over the walls of the intestine and into the bloodstream.

To ensure that everything keeps moving through the system, every five to ten minutes a wave of muscle contractions begins at the stomach and travels all the way down the intestines. Known as the migrating motor complex (MMC), this wave squeezes the digestive system like a tube of toothpaste, urging its contents further toward the colon.

As the food progresses through the small intestine, more and more of the nutrients are released by enzyme activity, and by the time it gets to the large intestine, most of the useful material has been absorbed into the bloodstream. However, the digestive process is not over, and here, bacteria help to break down even more of the undigested food.

The large intestine also absorbs most of the remaining water, leaving behind a combination of undigested material, dead cells and bacteria. When the waste has completed its journey through the large intestine it goes to the rectum for storage until there is a convenient time to get rid of it.

## Journey of your food

It can take up to 48 hours for a meal to travel through your body

### Chew

Digestion begins in the mouth, where our teeth start work on grinding food into manageable chunks.

### Add bile

As the liquid passes into the intestines, stomach acid is neutralised by alkaline bile from the liver.

### Ferment waste

Bacteria living in the large intestine help with the breakdown of waste, releasing even more nutrients.

### Absorb nutrients

As the enzymes begin to release nutrients, they are absorbed across the lining of the small intestine into the bloodstream.

### Get rid of waste

All that is left at the end of the digestive process is a combination of indigestible material, dead cells and bacteria.

### Swallow

Saliva makes each mouthful slippery, allowing it to slide easily down the oesophagus to the stomach.

### Add acid and enzymes

The stomach produces hydrochloric acid, and protein-digesting enzymes.

### Add more enzymes

The pancreas produces digestive enzymes, which are added to the mixture as it enters the small intestine.

**7 metres**  
LENGTH OF THE SMALL INTESTINE

### Churn

The muscles of the stomach rhythmically churn its contents, mechanically breaking food down into a lumpy paste.

### Remove water

The large intestine absorbs excess water from the food as it passes through.

## Food chain

Energy from the Sun is converted into to chemical energy by photosynthetic organisms like plants. The plants use the energy to build biological materials from nutrients in the air and soil. Herbivores then consume the plants, releasing some of the energy, and using the components to build their own bodies. Carnivores then eat the herbivores. When plants and animals die, decomposers break their bodies down, returning nutrients to the ground for reuse, and the cycle begins again.

### 1 The Sun

On average, every minute the Sun delivers 2kcal of energy for every cm<sup>2</sup> (0.2in<sup>2</sup>) of Earth.

### 2 Inefficient conversion

Less than five per cent of the available energy from the Sun is converted into chemical energy by plants.

### 3 Producer

Plants use the energy from the Sun to combine CO<sub>2</sub> and water, producing chemical energy in the form of sugars.



### 4 Herbivore

Herbivores can digest plant material, but the process is difficult, and they can only extract around ten per cent of the energy.

### 5 Energy loss

At every step up in the food chain, some of the energy is lost, mostly as heat.

### 6 Carnivore

Carnivores get easy energy by digesting the tissues of other animals.



# Sense of taste



Taste tells us whether our food is safe to eat, but smell gives it flavour

The human tongue is able to detect five different tastes: sweet, sour, salty, bitter and umami (savoury), providing us with a quick way to distinguish between different types of food. Sweet foods contain sugar and are a good source of energy. Salty foods provide sodium, which is vital for nerve function, but deadly in high quantities. Bitter foods might contain poison.

Babies are born with a natural preference for sweet food and a dislike of bitter, providing a biological safeguard that encourages them to eat safe, high-calorie food. However, nutrition is not that simple. Many vegetables are bitter but not poisonous and so learning to like them comes with experience.

The degree to which we can detect different tastes varies, and appears to be dictated by our individual anatomy. The population can be broadly divided into three categories based on the number of taste buds on their tongue. Those with the fewest are known as 'non-tasters', those with an average number are known as 'tasters', and those with many more taste buds than the rest of the population are 'supertasters.'

Supertasters are especially sensitive to taste and will react much more strongly than the rest of the population. As a result, they tend to really dislike bitter foods like green vegetables and coffee, and often shy away from rich desserts and sugary sweets.

Though these anatomical differences can explain some of our food preferences, most of our individual likes and dislikes are not down to taste, but to flavour; the combination of taste and smell. The act of chewing food releases chemicals known as volatiles, which evaporate rapidly. As we swallow, some of the air inside the mouth is forced up toward the nose, carrying these volatiles with it. Here, they bind to receptors on olfactory cells, triggering sensory messages to the brain.

Recently, scientists have found that these olfactory receptors can detect as many as 1 trillion different odours. Taste and smell are strongly linked to emotion and memory, and as a result, experience is a powerful decider in the development of our likes and dislikes.

# Anatomy of a human tongue

Contrary to popular belief, all five tastes can be detected almost anywhere on the tongue

**Muscle**  
There are eight muscles in the tongue that alter its shape and change its position.

**Posterior tongue**  
About a third of the tongue is hidden right at the back of the mouth.

**Papillae**  
The tongue is covered in tiny bumps, but not all of them contain taste buds.

**Filiform papillae**  
Most of the tongue is covered in thin, rough bumps that contain no taste receptors.

**Circumvallate papillae**  
These large bumps are found at the back of the tongue, each surrounded by a dip that collects saliva.

**Blood supply**  
The tongue receives blood from the lingual artery and it drains out through the lingual veins.

**Nerves**  
The front and back of the tongue send taste information to the brain.

**Foliate papillae**  
These contain taste receptors and are located on the back edges of the tongue, where saliva drips down the cheeks.

**Anterior tongue**  
The visible part of the tongue is responsible for the majority of taste detection.

**Gustatory hair**  
Each taste cell ends with a tiny hair, covered in receptors that allow it to detect chemicals dissolved in the saliva.

**Basal cell**  
Ageing or damaged taste cells are replaced by the basal cells waiting underneath.

**Sensory cell**  
Each cell is sensitive to one of the five tastes, but all types are found together in a single taste bud.

**Nerve**  
Messages are relayed to the brain via a nerve that exits at the bottom of the taste bud.

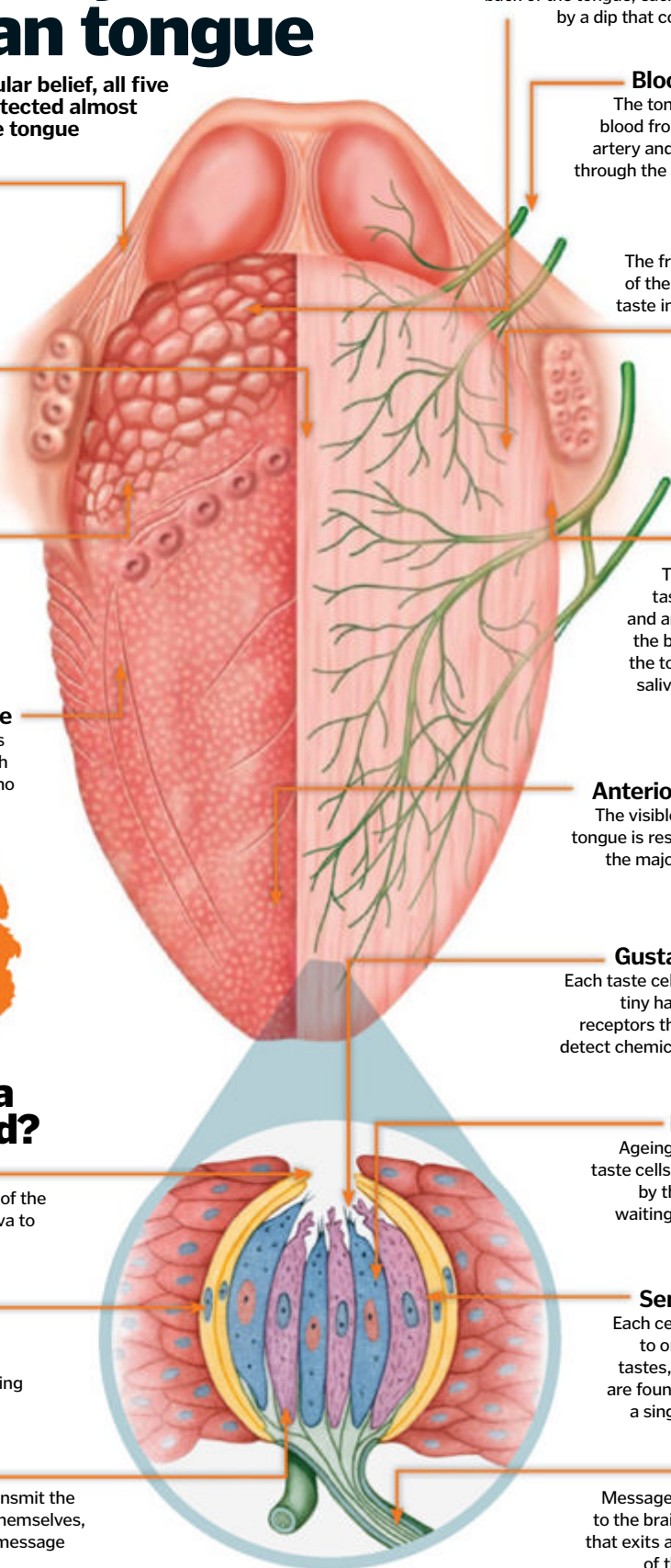
**10**  
TASTE CELLS ARE REPLACED EVERY TEN DAYS

## What is a taste bud?

**Pore**  
A tiny gap at the top of the taste bud allows saliva to touch the taste cells.

**Support cell**  
The taste cells are surrounded by an envelope of non-tasting support cells.

**Synapse**  
Taste cells do not transmit the signals to the brain themselves, instead passing the message over to a nerve cell.



**DID YOU KNOW?** Stomach ulcers were long thought to be caused by stress, but it's now known the culprit is a bacterial infection

# Inside the stomach

**This muscular bag turns your dinner into an acidic soup**

The stomach acts as a holding chamber, receiving food from the mouth and preparing it to be processed in the small intestine. At rest, the stomach is around the size of a fist, and its lining is curled into a convoluted network of folds known as rugae. As you eat, these folds stretch out, allowing an adult to eat around a litre (0.26 gallons) of food in one sitting. Stretching of the stomach walls triggers rhythmic contractions, mixing the food with acid and protein-digesting enzymes, grinding it to a paste in preparation for the next stage of digestion.

**Duodenum**  
The stomach empties its contents into the first section of the small intestine.

**Pyloric sphincter**  
A ring of muscle at the base of the stomach prevents the contents from leaking out before they are ready.

**Oesophagus**  
Food travels from the mouth to the stomach via a muscular tube that runs behind the windpipe.

**Cardiac sphincter**  
A ring of muscle at the top of the stomach stops the acidic contents moving back into the oesophagus.

**Antrum**  
The bottom part of the stomach generates powerful grinding contractions.

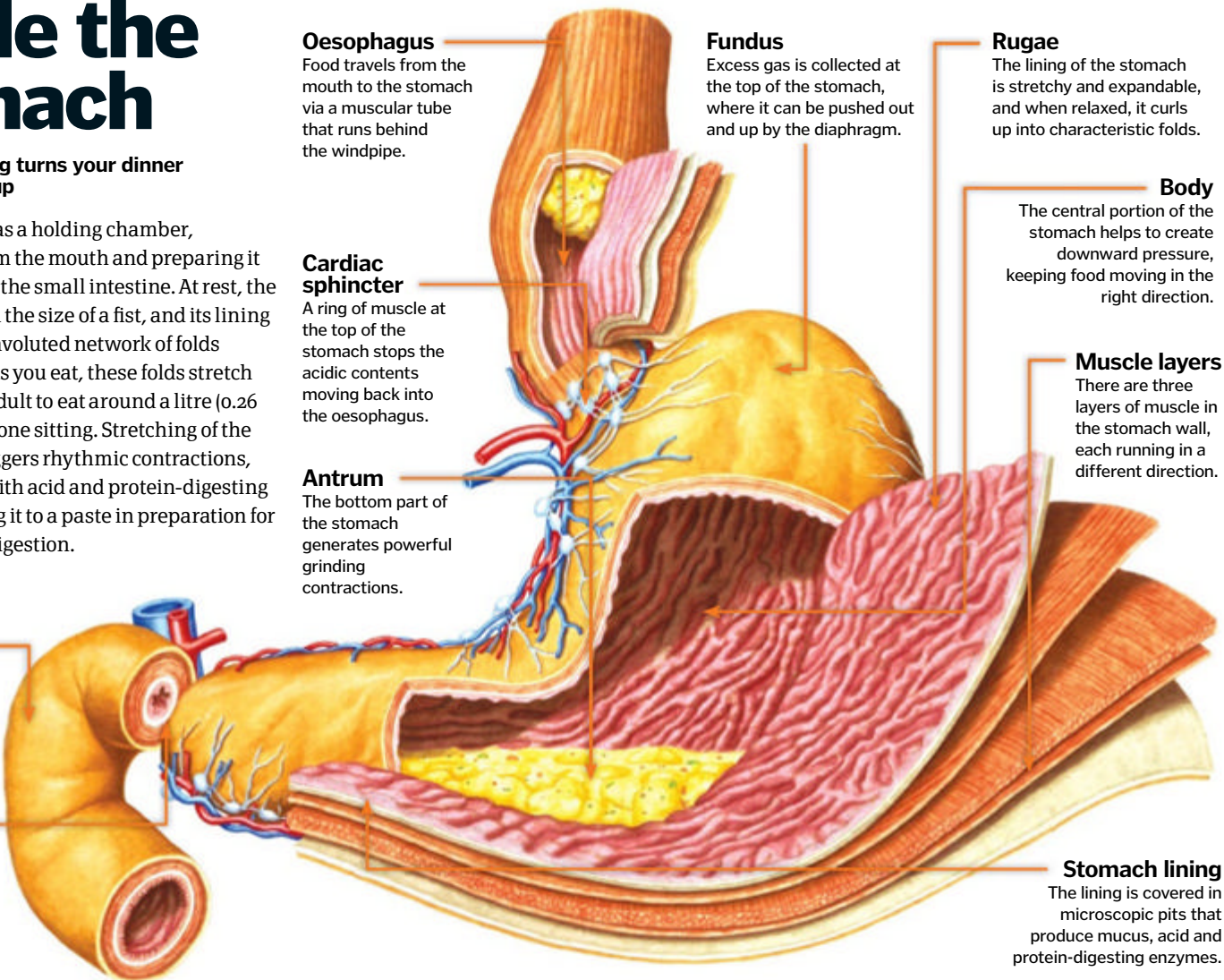
**Fundus**  
Excess gas is collected at the top of the stomach, where it can be pushed out and up by the diaphragm.

**Rugae**  
The lining of the stomach is stretchy and expandable, and when relaxed, it curls up into characteristic folds.

**Body**  
The central portion of the stomach helps to create downward pressure, keeping food moving in the right direction.

**Muscle layers**  
There are three layers of muscle in the stomach wall, each running in a different direction.

**Stomach lining**  
The lining is covered in microscopic pits that produce mucus, acid and protein-digesting enzymes.



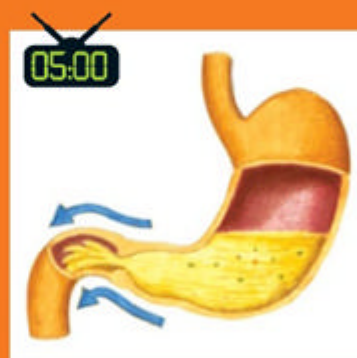
## How long does it take to digest food?



The sight, smell and even the thought of food begin to prepare the stomach for a meal, so by the time the swallowed mouthfuls start to arrive, it is already producing more acid.



Stretching and irritation of the stomach trigger it to turn up acid and enzyme production and to start churning. For the first 20 to 30 minutes after eating a meal, no food is allowed to leave.



To stop the stomach emptying too quickly, protein and fat are monitored in the first part of the small intestine. If too much food comes through, the intestine sends signals to slow the stomach down.

## Chewing the fat

**Fat has a bad reputation, but the truth is, your body needs it**

Every single cell in your body is surrounded by a membrane made of fats; it insulates your nerves and it provides a valuable energy reserve. Eating fat also provides a number of vitamins and essential fatty acids the body can't make on its own. Saturated fats (the solid fats found in meat and dairy) and trans fats (found in hydrogenated vegetable oil and many processed foods) have shown to raise cholesterol, which can lead to circulatory problems, but unsaturated fats (the liquid fats found in plants and fish) can have the opposite effect, and are considered good for your health.



HOW IT WORKS

# THE BODY AT WORK

## Taste and digestion

**4,500m<sup>2</sup>**

THE TOTAL ABSORPTIVE SURFACE AREA OF THE DIGESTIVE SYSTEM

### Large intestine

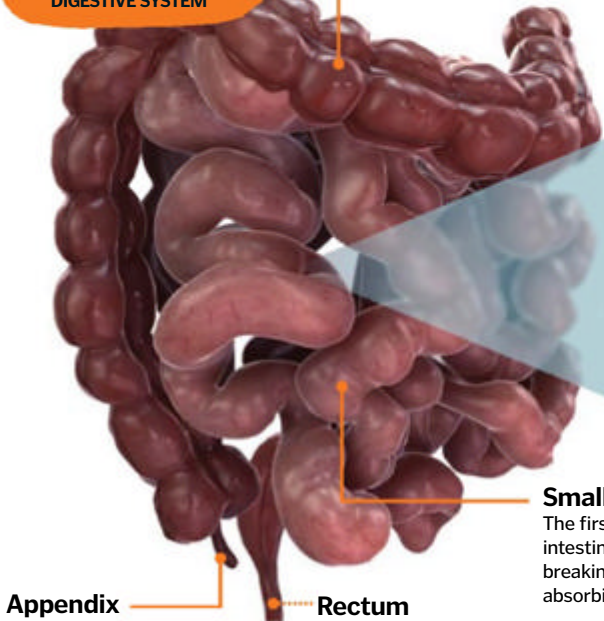
The second part of the intestine absorbs water and prepares waste.

### Brush border

The cells that make up the intestinal wall are covered in microscopic fingers known as microvilli.

### Villi

The cells that line the walls of the small intestine are arranged into folds known as villi.



### Appendix

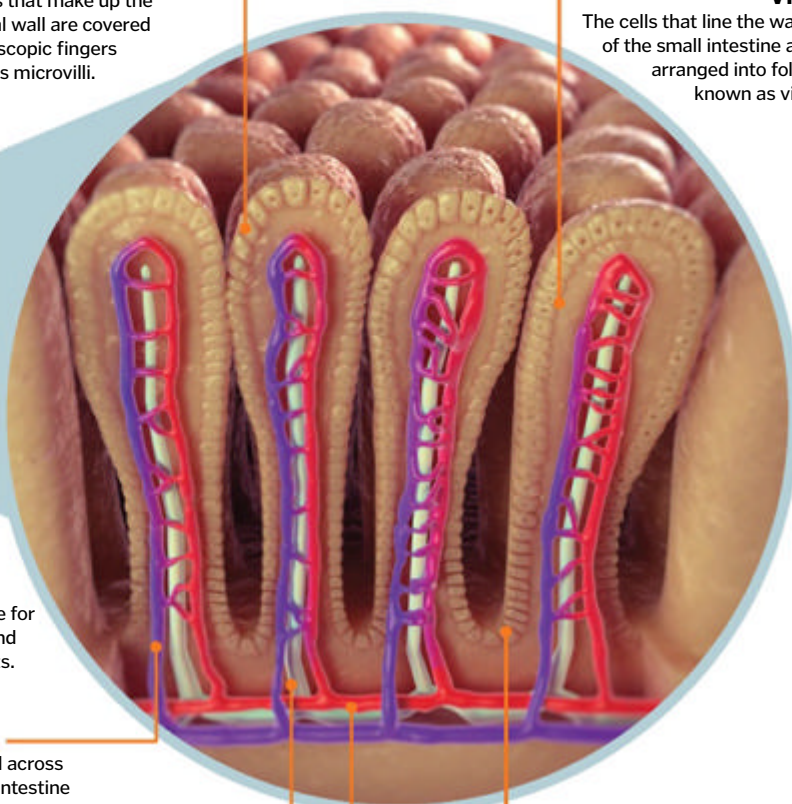
Near the start of the large intestine is a blind-ending tube known as the appendix - its function is largely unknown.

### Rectum

Before exiting the body, waste products are stored in a small pouch known as the rectum.

### Small intestine

The first part of the intestine is responsible for breaking food down and absorbing the nutrients.



### Small vein

Nutrients travel across the wall of the intestine into the blood stream.

### Lymph vessel

Fatty acids are transported away from the intestines via the lymphatic system.

### Small artery

Each of the villi has a rich blood supply.

### Intestinal crypt

Between the villi are crypts containing mucus-producing cells.

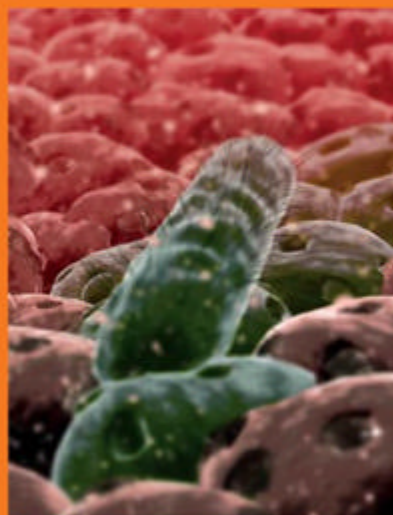
# The intestines

After leaving the stomach, food must pass through over 7m (23ft) of intestines

The stomach contents enter the intestine gradually, allowing time for the liquid food to be processed. First the acid is neutralised by bile, provided by the liver, and then digestive enzymes

are added by the pancreas. The enzymes act like molecular scissors, breaking proteins, carbohydrates and fats down into building blocks small enough to be carried over the wall of the

small intestine. The remaining undigested material passes into the large intestine, which absorbs water, leaving behind solid waste that can then be passed out of the body.



## Living with bacteria

Bacteria are often portrayed as the 'bad guys' of the body, but the proportion that cause food poisoning is surprisingly small. In fact, bacteria start to move into your digestive system from the moment you are born, and a healthy adult has around 300 to 500 different resident species living in their large intestine at any one time.

The upper parts of the digestive system are hostile to microorganisms; the stomach is highly acidic and the small intestine is filled with digestive enzymes, but the large intestine provides the perfect environment for sustaining a microscopic world.

By the time food reaches this point, our digestive enzymes have done their work and most of the

nutrients have been absorbed, but bacteria have a different set of enzymes. They are able to break indigestible material down even further, allowing us to absorb even more nutrients, mainly in the form of fatty acids.

The presence of these helpful bacteria also means there is little space or resources left for dangerous pathogens, helping to keep infections at bay.

The gut and its resident bacteria are in constant communication, picking up on chemical signals released into the environment. These signals can have far-reaching effects, and the types of bacteria present in your intestines have been shown to influence other organs, including the brain.

### Eight glasses of water

**1** Drinking plenty of water is beneficial for our health, but there is nothing special about drinking eight glasses. Drinking when you feel thirsty is usually more than enough.

### Vitamin C stops colds

**2** In trials involving over 11,000 people, it has been shown that vitamin C does not prevent or cure colds. However, washing hands regularly is effective at preventing transmission.

### Carrot night vision

**3** Carrots contain vitamin A, vital for eye health, but the idea that they help you see in the dark is a lie from WWII to keep radar technology secret from the Germans.

### Celery's minus-calories

**4** It is a popular fact among dieters that eating celery burns more calories than it provides. Although possible in theory, no foods have been found to have this effect.

### Chocolate causes acne

**5** Actually, this one might be true. New research is increasingly suggesting that diet does have an impact on acne and that saturated fats and sugars might be to blame.

**DID YOU KNOW?** The human mouth produces 1-2 litres of saliva every day

The first part of the digestive system prepares the food for the next stage, ensuring it is broken into a fine paste, mixed to form a homogenous fluid, and shocked with acid to limit the potential for dangerous infection. However, it is not until food reaches the small intestine that the microscopic breakdown and absorption of nutrients really begins.

At the start of the small intestine, the liver injects alkaline bile into the acidic liquid food, neutralising its pH and preparing it for the introduction of digestive enzymes.

Bile also helps to emulsify fats. Fats are not water soluble, so they tend to clump together in large globules to hide from and avoid the surrounding water, but bile acts a little like

washing-up liquid, separating the fats out into smaller blobs.

Now that the food is nicely mixed and separated, the enzymes can really get to work. The pancreas produces a cocktail of three kinds of enzyme, each used to break down a different type of molecule. Proteases clip amino acids from proteins, lipases break fats down into fatty acids and glycerol, and carbohydrases turn long chains of carbohydrate into sugars. These small blocks can be absorbed into the bloodstream, where they are distributed around the body, used to build our own biological molecules, or broken down and burnt for energy. The body requires different quantities of each of the nutrients, and

can sometimes convert one into another if supplies are running low. However, there are a number of nutrients that cannot be synthesised by the body at all or in high enough quantities, and these must be obtained directly from the diet. These essential nutrients include some types of amino acids, fatty acids like omega-3 and omega-6, and all of the vitamins and minerals needed.

Vitamins and minerals are organic and inorganic compounds required by the body in small amounts for various different functions. Some of these, like calcium, make up vital structural components of our bodies, while others, like vitamin C, are involved in biochemical reactions.

## MOLECULE / VITAMIN

## FOOD YOU'LL FIND IT IN

## WHAT THE BODY USES IT FOR

**IRON**

**IRON-RICH FOOD**







Egg yolks      Red meat      Spinach

Iron is a key component of haemoglobin, the red pigment that carries oxygen in our blood. Without it, oxygen cannot be transported effectively, resulting in iron-deficiency anaemia. This is most often caused by blood loss, so as a result, women are much more likely to be deficient of iron than men.

**FOLIC ACID**

**GREEN LEAFY VEGETABLES**







Cauliflower      Broccoli      Brussels sprouts

Folic acid is essential for the synthesis of DNA and without it the production of red blood cells starts to slow down. It is also extremely important in the formation of the central nervous system, and during the first 12 weeks of pregnancy, folic acid supplementation is recommended to pregnant women.

**VITAMIN D**

**OILY FISH**







Salmon      Tuna      Caviar

Vitamin D is involved in bone formation in the body, so deficiency of vitamin D in children can result in bone deformity. Luckily, this vitamin is easy to obtain. Not only can vitamin D be found in oily fish, eggs and dairy products, but our bodies can also make it themselves using sunlight.

**POTASSIUM**

**FRUITS**







Dried apricots      Avocados      Bananas

Cells use a combination of potassium and sodium to maintain their internal electrical balance. Potassium is vital to ensure muscles are able to contract properly and nerves are able to transmit their messages. It is easily obtained in the diet and deficiency is incredibly rare unless there is damage to the kidneys.



Hunger is one of the body's most basic and fundamental sensations, and it originates in the stomach. When the stomach is empty, it begins to produce a hormone known as ghrelin. This then travels to a region of the brain known as the hypothalamus.

The hypothalamus is responsible for maintaining a constant, optimum state; keeping the body at a set temperature, regulating hormones and monitoring hydration. The arrival of ghrelin is a signal that energy levels might be about to dip, so it triggers the production of a second hormone, neuropeptide Y. This hormone promotes eating.

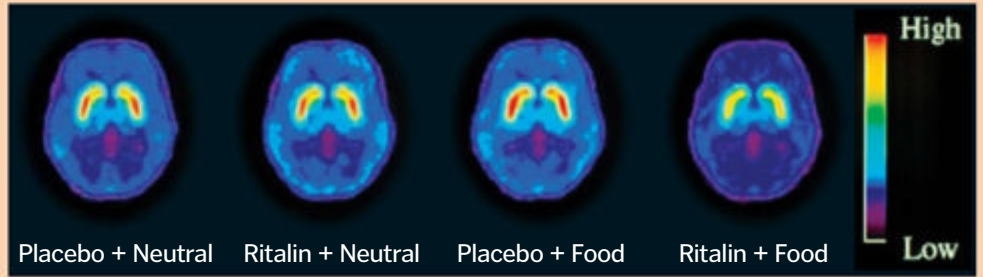
The cue to stop eating is much more subtle. The stomach has stretch receptors, and will signal to the brain that it is full. But what happens if it is empty, but there is already enough energy stored in the system? Fat stores produce a hormone known as leptin, which tells the brain exactly



### Food addiction

Research into food addiction is relatively new and the results are hotly debated, but there is increasing evidence that food can elicit some of the same brain responses as addictive substances like cocaine. In overweight people, overeating can become a compulsion that is difficult to control, and has been shown to activate the

same reward pathway that lights up when addictive drugs are ingested. In alcoholics, cocaine addicts and heroin addicts, the number of dopamine receptors in the reward pathway is lower than in the rest of the population and the same thing is found in obesity. It is thought that people with fewer dopamine receptors might need to over-stimulate their brains to experience the same rewards as normal people, and therefore turn to alcohol, drugs, or perhaps even food.



## Food and the brain

Why do we crave these foods?



### Comfort food

When we are feeling stressed or sad, many people turn to comfort foods such as mashed potatoes, beans on toast or macaroni cheese. Carbohydrates not only make us feel warm and full, they actually increase levels of serotonin, sometimes known as the happy hormone.



### Sweets

Sugary foods are craved for many reasons, the simplest of which is that your body needs an energy boost. However, eating sugar is just a temporary fix, and as the sugar is rapidly cleared from the blood, the craving will quickly return.



### Salty snacks

Animals have what is known as a 'salt appetite', similar to thirst, which drives them to seek out salt when they are running low. However, there is little evidence for an equivalent trait in humans. Men are more likely to crave salty foods than women, though.

how much energy the body has in reserve. When leptin levels are high, the hypothalamus makes hormones that suppress appetite.

The trouble is that with high levels of fat, we can become resistant to the leptin message, similar to insulin resistance in type-II diabetes. If the brain does not know there is enough fat, we just keep eating.

Cravings are slightly different. These are generated not in the stomach, but in the brain. There are three main areas of the brain implicated in food cravings, the hippocampus, the insula and the caudate.

Humans have been programmed through evolution to enjoy fatty and sugary foods; eating them ensures we have enough energy to survive. The hippocampus is involved in gathering sensory information, and processing it for long-term memory storage, and with food cravings, these memories become associated with activation of the brain's reward circuitry. The more we enjoy eating a food, the more likely we are to crave it.

Mental images are thought to play an important role in food cravings and picturing food makes it much harder to resist. But thinking about other visual images can help to curb the cravings and distract your brain.

Digestion happens subconsciously, but you do have a manual override, and what your brain thinks it wants isn't always what it needs.



**Answer:**

It is true that chewing gum cannot be digested, but as long as it is a small piece - less than 2cm (0.8in) in diameter - there is no reason it should get stuck, and it should pass out normally within a day or two.

**DID YOU KNOW?** The digestive system has its own dedicated nervous system, known as the enteric nervous system

# CHEMISTRY OF FOOD

TAKE A LOOK AT THE CHEMICALS BEHIND SOME OF OUR FAVOURITE FOODS AND DRINKS

## Tea

In England, drinking tea is a national pastime. The main chemicals in tea are known as polyphenols, and each cup contains around 200 milligrams (0.007 ounces). The polyphenols are large molecules made up of smaller building blocks, which are known as catechins. When these catechins react with oxygen, they make two types of chemical; theaflavins, which make the orange-brown colour of tea, and thearubigins, which are thought to contribute to the taste. The different amounts of the chemicals present in the tea are very dependent on the life of the plants and the processing of the leaves.

## Chocolate

Chocolate is one of the foods most commonly associated with happiness, particularly the hormone serotonin. The chocolate itself does contain the precursor to serotonin, an amino acid known as tryptophan, but this is also found in many other foods, including meat. Chocolate also contains phenylethylamine, a molecule chemically similar to amphetamine, but it is broken down in the digestive system, and does not reach the brain intact. The feel-good factor of chocolate is more likely to be down to its fat and sugar content, and a property known as mouthfeel. Chocolate is among the only foods that melts at close to body temperature.

**30<sup>CM</sup>**  
THE LENGTH OF AN  
AVERAGE STOMACH  
AFTER A MEAL

## Coffee

Coffee contains over 1,000 different aroma compounds, responsible for its unmistakable smell. Around 12 per cent of the green coffee bean is made up of a set of chemicals known as chlorogenic acids, and when the beans are roasted, most of these acids begin to break down. Some produce the brown-coloured compounds that give coffee its characteristic dark colour, while others produce the bitter-tasting chemicals responsible for its taste. Coffee also contains high quantities of caffeine, around 100 milligrams (0.0035 ounces) in every cup. It works on receptors in the heart and brain, blocking the action of a natural neurotransmitter and acting as a stimulant.

## Bacon

The distinctive smell of bacon is, as most of us have probably experienced, hard to resist. That fact is all down to the chemistry of cooking meat. As the bacon is heated, the amino acids that make up the muscle protein react with reducing sugars present in the bacon fat. This process, known as the Maillard reaction, occurs only at high temperatures and produces over 150 different volatile molecules, each able to interact with different smell receptors in the nose. Most of the delicious smell of bacon is attributed to a group of nitrogen-containing compounds known as pyridines and pyrazines.





# What is the blood-brain barrier?

## How does this gateway control the molecules that pass from the blood into the brain



The blood-brain barrier (BBB) is an essential group of cells that line the blood vessels in the central nervous system (brain and spinal cord).

They allow passage of materials between the clear fluid surrounding the brain (cerebrospinal fluid) and the red blood cells in arteries, veins and capillaries. The key advantage of having such a barrier is that it prevents large microorganisms passing into the brain and causing infections. While infections in other areas are common (such as after a cut finger, or mild chest infections), those affecting the brain are much rarer. However when they do occur (eg meningitis), they are potentially life threatening as they are very difficult to treat.

The tight junctions between cells regulate the size and type of particle that pass between them, including oxygen molecules, carbon dioxide molecules, nutrients and hormones. Since it's so effective, it also stops medications from entering the brain (such as certain antibiotics), so while they are effective in the rest of the body, they are ineffective in this vital organ. Overcoming this is a major aim of doctors in the next decade, and the battle has already started. Manipulating the blood-brain barrier's natural transport mechanisms and delivering drugs within nanoparticles to squeeze through the tight junctions are just two examples of the modern techniques that are under development.

### Crossing the BBB

The endothelial lining of the blood-brain barrier loves lipids (fatty molecules), but it hates particles with high electrical charges (ions) and large substances. Thus the ideal substance is small, rich in lipids and has a low electrical charge. Barbiturates are such an example, as they freely flow across the blood-brain barrier to suppress brain function; they act as sedatives and antidepressants. However this free movement comes with risks - too much of it will accumulate and slow the brain to a point where you can lose consciousness and even stop breathing.

## Breaking down the barrier

This built-in gateway is the main line of defence for the central nervous system

### Just passing through

Some ions are transported out of the blood cells and into the astrocytes, and then out of the astrocytes and into neurons in the brain.

### Lipophilic

Substances rich in lipids can diffuse across the barrier with relative ease.

### Astrocyte

These numerous star-shaped cells provide biochemical support to the endothelial cells, and also play an important role in transportation and repair.

### Special transport

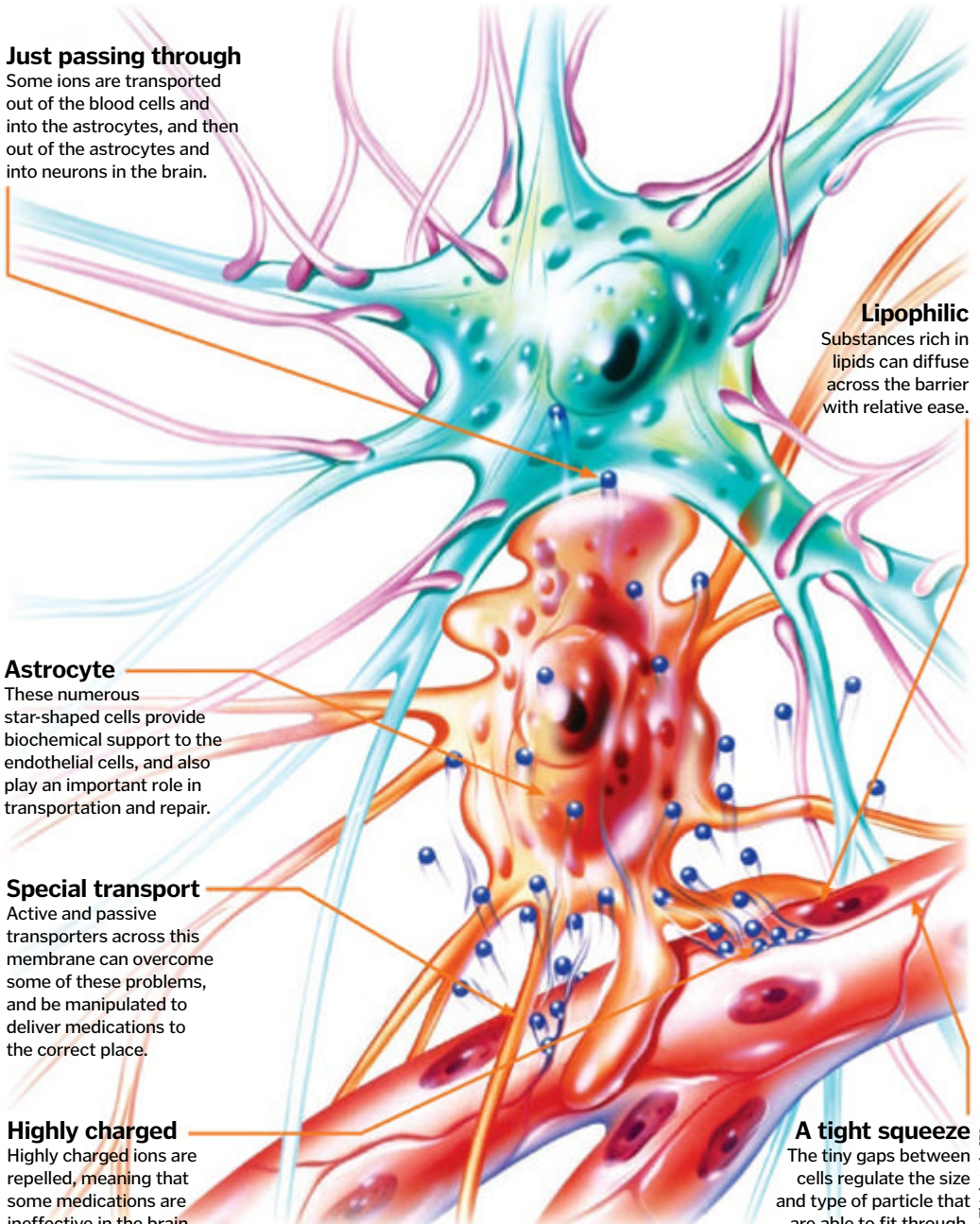
Active and passive transporters across this membrane can overcome some of these problems, and be manipulated to deliver medications to the correct place.

### Highly charged

Highly charged ions are repelled, meaning that some medications are ineffective in the brain.

### A tight squeeze

The tiny gaps between cells regulate the size and type of particle that are able to fit through.



At 2.72 metres (eight foot, 11.1 inches) Robert Wadlow is the tallest man on record. A sufferer of gigantism, he was 0.9 metres (three feet) taller than his father. Sadly, he was only 22 when he died in 1940.

**DID YOU KNOW?** In fish, the intermediate lobe controls skin colour change, while birds have no intermediate lobe at all

# Pituitary gland up close

What does this hormone factory do and why couldn't we live without it?



The pea-sized pituitary gland is found at the base of the brain, close to the hypothalamus. It looks a relatively insignificant part of the brain, but it plays a role in many vital systems.

Often referred to as the 'master gland', it not only releases hormones that control various functions, but it also prompts the activity of other glands like the ovaries and testes.

The pituitary gland comprises three sections called lobes: the anterior, the posterior and the intermediate – the latter of which is considered part of the anterior lobe in humans. These work together with the hypothalamus, which monitors hormones in the blood and stimulates the pituitary gland to produce/release the appropriate hormone(s) if levels fall too low.

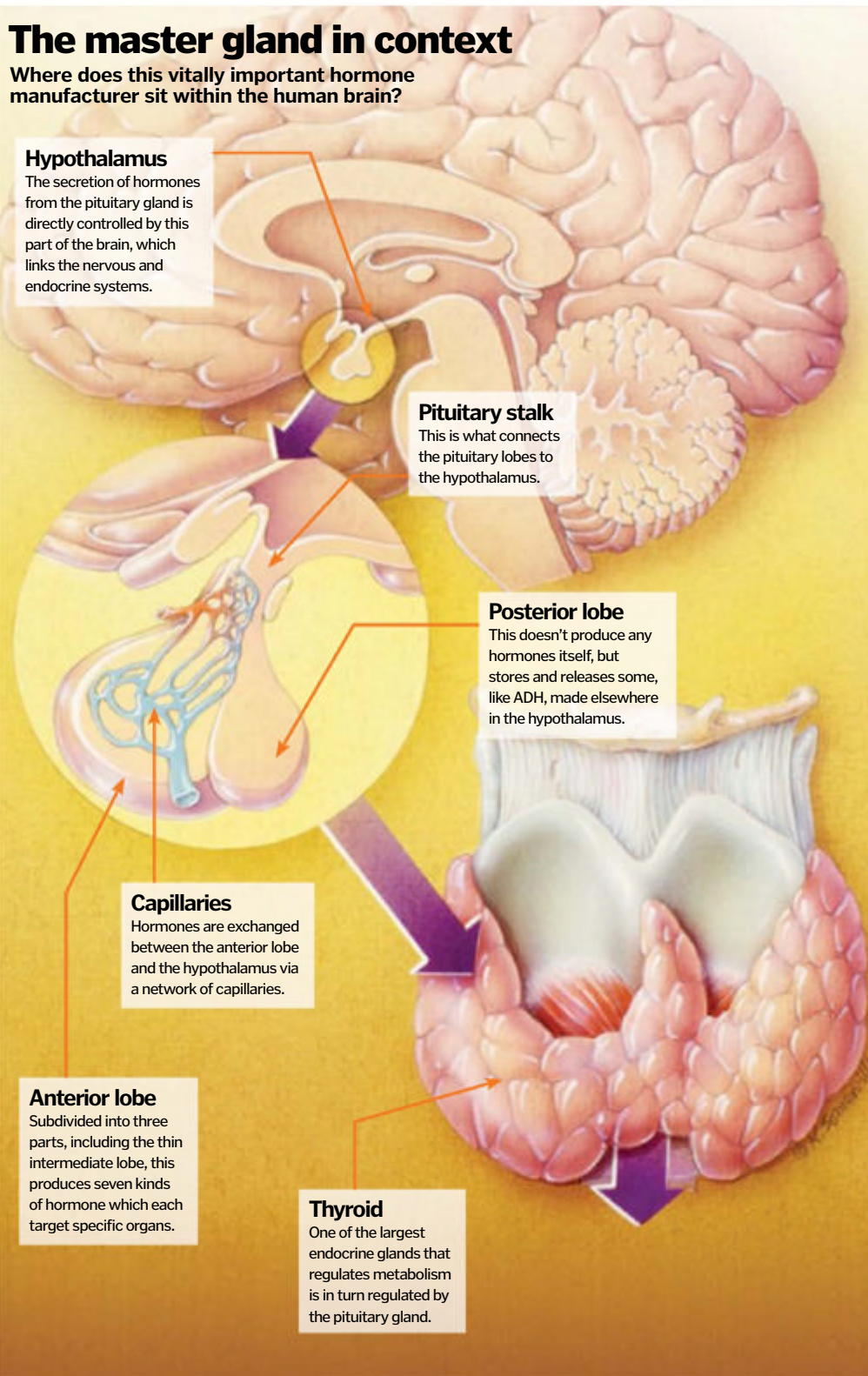
The anterior lobe produces seven important hormones, which include those that regulate growth and reproduction. Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) targets the adrenal glands to produce cortisol and controls metabolism, while luteinising hormone triggers ovulation in women and stimulates testosterone production in men. The posterior lobe, meanwhile, doesn't generate any hormones itself, but stores two: antidiuretic hormone (ADH), which decreases urine production by making the kidneys return more water to the blood, and oxytocin, which tells the uterus to contract during childbirth and also prompts milk production.

## Gigantism in focus

The pituitary gland also produces growth hormone, which in adults controls the amount of muscle and fat in the body and plays a key role in the immune system. In children, of course, growth hormone has a very noticeable effect in increasing height and bulk until adulthood. However, sometimes the pituitary gland becomes hyperactive – often as a result of a benign tumour – and produces excess growth hormone. In these cases, a person can grow to a far-beyond-average height, with hands, feet and facial features growing proportionally. While this might not seem so bad, gigantism is nearly always accompanied by other health issues, such as skeletal problems, severe headaches and more life-threatening conditions like heart disorders. If diagnosed early, treatment such as drugs that inhibit growth hormone production and surgical removal of the tumour can help avert the more serious conditions of gigantism.

## The master gland in context

Where does this vitally important hormone manufacturer sit within the human brain?





# Does the brain produce enough energy to power a light bulb?

The brain is a complex and extremely powerful organ, but would it be strong enough to power any everyday lightbulb?



The brain itself requires a relatively low power to operate on a day-to-day basis, around 20 watts which would be enough to power a very weak light bulb. 20 watts corresponds to 20 joules of energy per second. The generation of electricity in the brain results from the movement of ions (charged atoms) throughout the brain, as opposed to electrons moving through a wire.

Interestingly, a unique side effect of the brain's electrochemical processes is that it generates electric fields when it is active. Indeed, when large numbers of

neurons are signalling and in a highly synchronised manner, the generated electric fields are large enough to be detected outside of the skull through electroencephalography (EEG) or magnetoencephalography (MEG).

*"The generation of electricity results from the movement of ions"*



# How does a synapse work?

## Dendrite

As well as a long extension called the axon, each neuron has multiple branch-like extensions called dendrites, which take in nerve messages from other neurons.

## Nerve impulse

A nerve impulse is initiated when a stimulus (change in the internal or external environment) alters the electrical properties of the neuron membranes.

## Neuron

The 'sending' nerve cell contains a nucleus, which holds the cell's genes and controls its functions.

## Axon

The nerve signals travel in one direction along the axon to the synaptic knob at the end of the axon.

## Neurotransmitter molecules

When the nerve signal reaches the synapse, it is converted into neurotransmitters, which are the chemicals that bind to the receptor nerve cell, causing an electrical impulse.

## Vesicle

This is the tiny membrane that stores neurotransmitter molecules. The vesicles travel from the sending neuron to the synapse, where they fuse with the presynaptic membrane and release the neurotransmitters.

## Ions

The flow of these charged particles is the basis of the propagation of a nerve impulse.

## Trillions of neurons carry messages around the body, but how do they pass them on?



The nervous system involves a complex collection of nerve cells called neurons. Nerve messages can travel along individual neurons as electrical nerve impulses caused by the movement of lots of electrically charged ion particles. In order to cross the minuscule gaps between two neurons, the nerve message must be converted into a chemical message capable of jumping the gap. These tiny gaps between neurons are called synapses, forming the main contact zone between two neurons. Each neuron consists of a cell body and branching structures known as axons and dendrites. Dendrites are responsible for taking information in via receptors, while axons transmit information away by passing electrical signals across the synapse from one neuron to another.

## Presynaptic membrane Synaptic cleft Postsynaptic membrane

The cell membranes of the sending neuron (presynaptic membrane) and the receiving neuron (postsynaptic membrane) are separated by a fluid-filled gap called the synaptic cleft.

## Ongoing message

Once the neurotransmitters cross the gap between the two neurons, ion channels in the receiving neuron open allowing the positive ions to flow into the receiving neuron.

## Welcome to the world

**1** A baby's stress level during birth is high and, as a result, their adrenaline level is also very high at this time. This subsides post birth back down to normal levels.

## When you need to breathe

**2** Due to its blood-vessel-constricting properties, adrenaline is also used to treat breathing difficulties associated with anaphylactic shock caused by allergic reactions.

## And relax

**3** After stressful situations, it's often a good idea to physically work off the adrenaline in your body so it doesn't stay in your system, keeping you awake at night, for example.

## Amino what now?

**4** Adrenaline can be obtained from animals or synthesised in the lab. The chemical name for it is aminohydroxyphenylpropionic acid, which is represented with the chemical formula  $C_9H_{13}NO_3$ .

## Fight or flight

**5** The saying 'fight or flight' is associated with adrenaline because when we're stressed we produce the hormone in order that we can either get ready to defend ourselves or make a run for it.



# Adrenaline

Discover the science behind your body's amazing chemical coping mechanism



Nestling on a layer of fat located just above each of your kidneys are the body's adrenal glands.

Around 8cm long, the adrenal glands produce hormones that affect your body's consumption of energy as well as your stress responses.

Adrenal glands consist of two main layers of hormone-secreting cells: the outer cortex and the inner medulla. While the cortex produces energy-balancing hormones, the medulla produces a chemical called epinephrine, which we know better

as adrenaline. Identified in 1900, adrenaline is a fast-acting hormone that helps the body deal with unexpected stresses – not to mention high levels of excitement – by upping your heart rate and the flow of blood to your muscles.

The effect of this is that your blood vessels and air passages dilate, meaning that more blood passes to the muscles and more oxygen gets to the lungs quicker, temporarily improving the body's physical performance and potentially saving your life.

*“Adrenaline is a fast-acting hormone that helps the body deal with stresses”*

### Medulla

At the core of the adrenal gland, the adrenal medulla produces, stores and releases adrenaline.

### Cortex

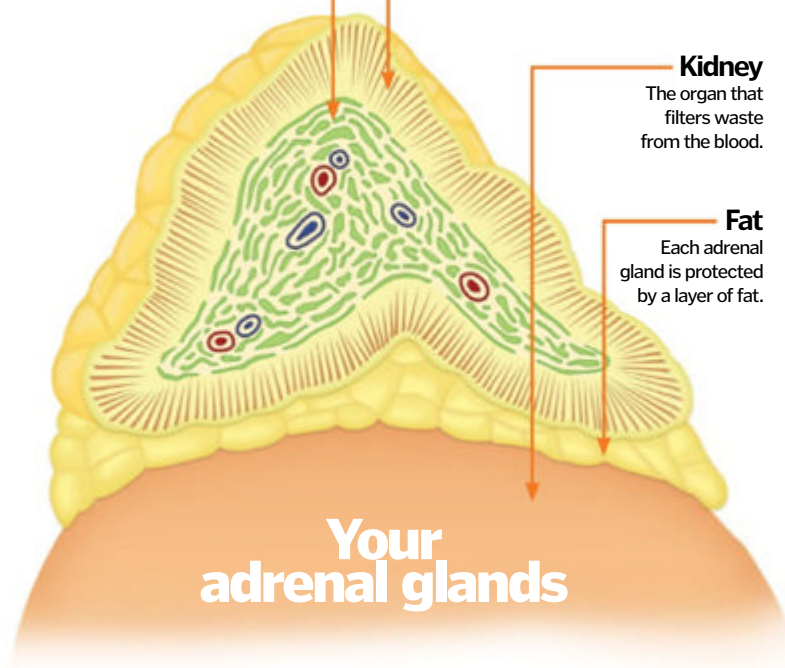
At the edge of the adrenal gland, the cortex produces steroid hormones that include cortisol (for balancing blood sugar and carb metabolism) and aldosterone (for balancing the body's salts and water).

### Kidney

The organ that filters waste from the blood.

### Fat

Each adrenal gland is protected by a layer of fat.



Your adrenal glands



# Human respiration

Respiration is crucial to an organism's survival. The process of respiration is the transportation of oxygen from the air that surrounds us into the tissue cells of our body so that energy can be broken down



The primary organs used for respiration in humans are the lungs. Humans have two lungs, with the left lung being divided into two lobes and the right into three. Lungs have between 300–500 million alveoli, which is where gas exchange occurs.

Respiration of oxygen breaks into four main stages: ventilation, pulmonary gas exchange, gas transportation and peripheral gas exchange. Each stage is crucial in getting oxygen to the body's tissue, and removing carbon dioxide. Ventilation and gas transportation need energy to occur, as the diaphragm and the heart are used to facilitate these actions whereas gas exchanging is passive. As air is drawn into the lungs at a rate of between 10-20 breaths per minute while resting, through either your mouth or nose by diaphragm contraction, and travels through the pharynx, then the larynx, down the trachea, and into one of the two main bronchial tubes. Mucus and cilia keep the lungs clean by catching dirt particles and sweeping them up the trachea.

When air reaches the lungs, oxygen is diffused into the bloodstream through the alveoli and carbon dioxide is diffused from the blood into the lungs to be exhaled. Diffusion of gases occurs because of differing pressures in the lungs and blood. This is also the same when oxygen diffuses into tissue around the body. When blood has been oxygenated by the lungs, it is transferred around the body to where it is most needed in the bloodstream. If the body is

exercising, breathing rate increases and consequently so does heart rate to ensure that oxygen reaches tissues that need it. Oxygen is then used to break down glucose to provide energy for the body. This happens in the mitochondria of cells. Carbon dioxide is one of the waste products of this, which is why we get a build up of this gas in our body that needs to be transported back into the lungs to be exhaled.

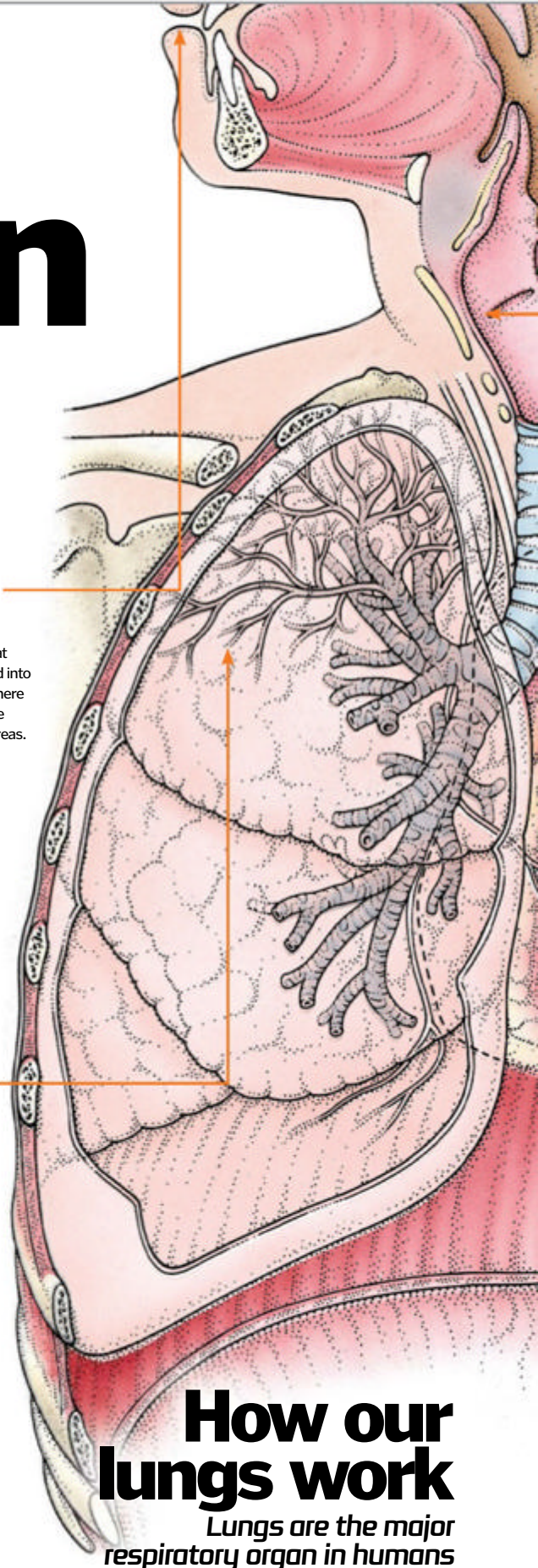
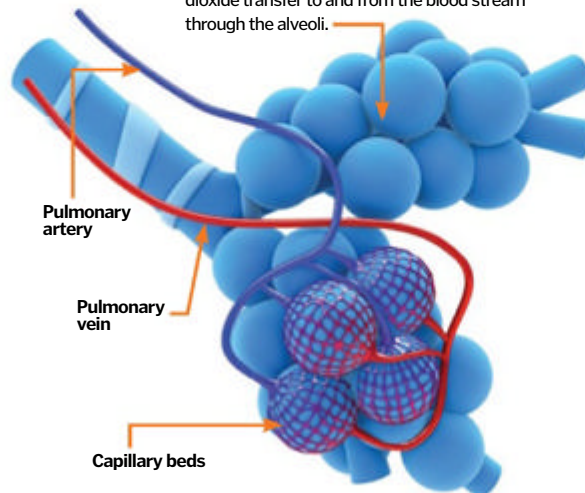
The body can also respire anaerobically, but this produces far less energy and instead of producing CO<sub>2</sub> as a byproduct, lactic acid is produced. The body then takes time to break this down after exertion has finished as the body has a so-called oxygen debt.

## 1. Nasal passage/ oral cavity

These areas are where air enters into the body so that oxygen can be transported into and around the body to where it's needed. Carbon dioxide also exits through these areas.

## 5. Alveoli

The alveoli are tiny little sacs which are situated at the end of tubes inside the lungs and are in direct contact with blood. Oxygen and carbon dioxide transfer to and from the blood stream through the alveoli.



**How our lungs work**  
Lungs are the major respiratory organ in humans

### Lung capacity varies hugely

**1** Dependant on sex and body size, alongside external factors such as altitude, lung capacity ranges between 4,000 and 6,000cm<sup>3</sup>.

### The right lung is bigger

**2** Interestingly, the left lung is slightly smaller than the right in the human body because the left lung has to make room for the heart to fit in.

### We have excess lung capacity

**3** On average, humans only use about one-eighth of the capacity of our lungs for each breath so we have a large reserve volume.

### Alveoli have massive surface area

**4** If one person's entire alveoli were laid out they would have the surface area of about 70cm<sup>2</sup> - that's roughly the size of half a tennis court!

### We breathe 11,000 litres of air per day

**5** On average, one individual will breathe in 11,000 litres of air in any given day. If they exercise heavily during that day, this will increase further.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Trained free-divers can hold their breath underwater for up to nine minutes

### 2. Pharynx

This is part of both the respiratory and digestive system. A flap of connective tissue called the epiglottis closes over the trachea to stop choking when an individual takes food into their body.

### 3. Trachea

Air is pulled into the body through the nasal passages and then passes into the trachea.

### 4. Bronchial tubes

These tubes lead to either the left or the right lung. Air passes through these tubes into the lungs, where they pass through progressively smaller and smaller tubes until they reach the alveoli.

### 6. Ribs

These provide protection for the lungs and other internal organs situated in the chest cavity.

# How do we breathe?

The intake of oxygen into the body is complex

Breathing is not something that we have to think about, and indeed is controlled by muscle contractions in our body. Breathing is controlled by the diaphragm, which contracts and expands on a regular, constant basis.

When it contracts, the diaphragm pulls air into the lungs by a vacuum-like effect. The lungs expand to fill the enlarged chest cavity and air is pulled right through the maze of tubes that make up the lungs to

the alveoli at the ends, which are the final branching. The chest will be seen to rise because of this lung expansion. Alveoli are surrounded by blood vessels, and oxygen and carbon dioxide are then interchanged at this point between the lungs and the blood. Carbon dioxide removed from the blood stream and air that was breathed in but not used is then expelled from the lungs by diaphragm expansion. Lungs deflate back to a reduced size when breathing out.

### Chest cavity

This is the space that is protected by the ribs, where the lungs and heart are situated. The space changes as the diaphragm moves.

### Lungs

Deoxygenated blood arrives back at the lungs, where another gas exchange occurs at the alveoli. Carbon dioxide is removed and oxygen is placed back into the blood.

### Diaphragm

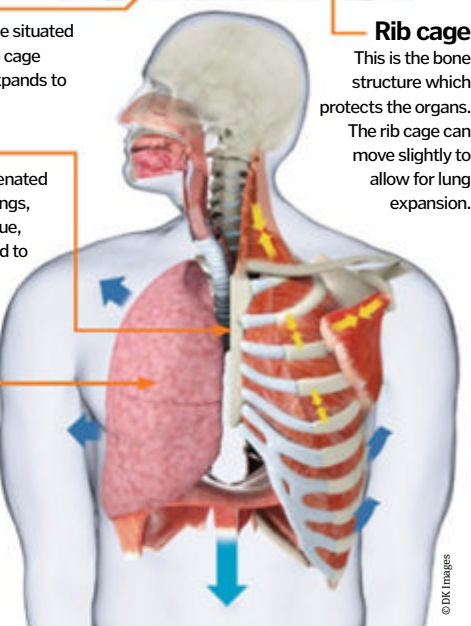
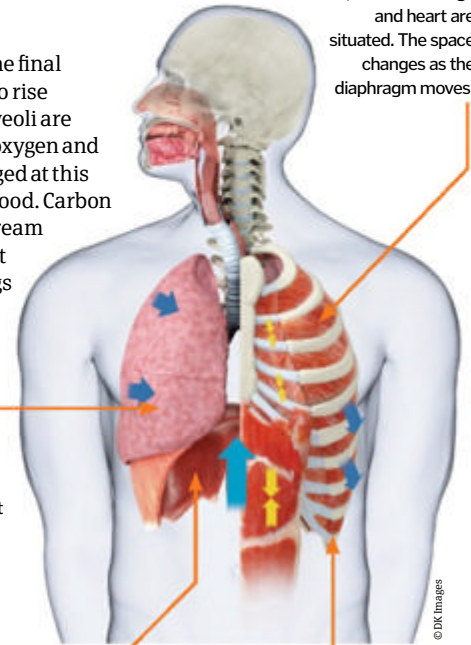
This is a sheet of muscle situated at the bottom of the rib cage which contracts and expands to draw air into the lungs.

### Heart

The heart pumps oxygenated blood away from the lungs, around the body to tissue, where oxygen is needed to break down glucose into a usable form of energy.

### Tissue

Oxygen arrives where energy is needed, and a gas exchange of oxygen and carbon dioxide occurs so that aerobic respiration can occur within cells.



### Rib cage

This is the bone structure which protects the organs. The rib cage can move slightly to allow for lung expansion.

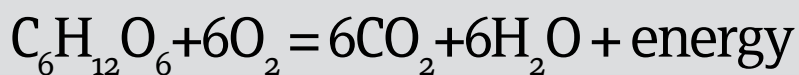


## Why do we need oxygen?

We need oxygen to live as it is crucial for the release of energy within the body

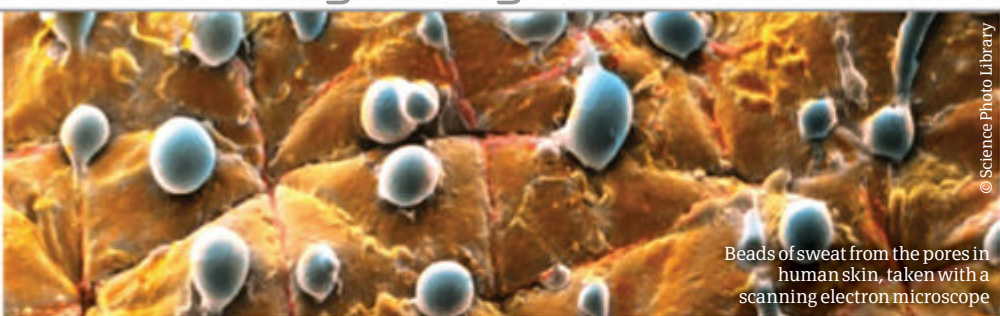
Although we can release energy through anaerobic respiration temporarily, this method is inefficient and creates an oxygen debt that the body must repay after excess exercise or exertion has ceased. If oxygen supply is cut off for

more than a few minutes, an individual will die. Oxygen is pumped around the body to be used in cells that need to break down glucose so that energy is provided for the tissue. The equation that illustrates this is:

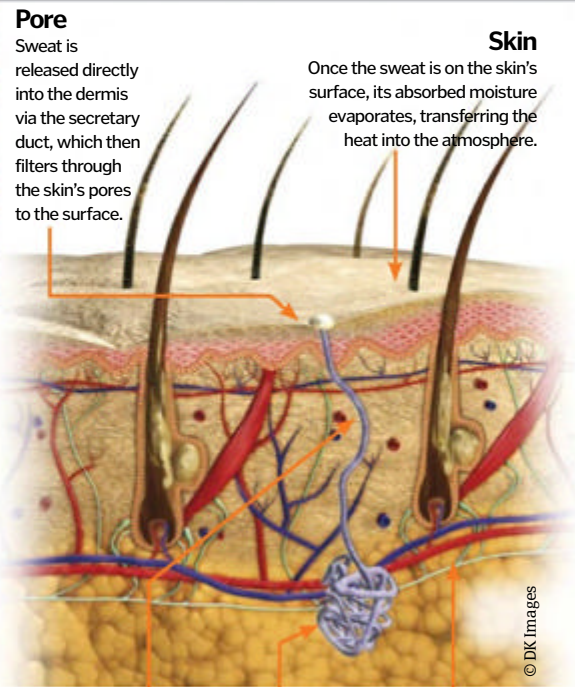




Sweating / Dehydration



Beads of sweat from the pores in human skin, taken with a scanning electron microscope



**Pore**  
Sweat is released directly into the dermis via the secretory duct, which then filters through the skin's pores to the surface.

**Skin**  
Once the sweat is on the skin's surface, its absorbed moisture evaporates, transferring the heat into the atmosphere.

**Secretory duct**  
Secreted sweat travels up to the skin via this duct.

**Secretory part**  
This is where the majority of the gland's secretory cells can be located.

**Nerve fibres**  
Deliver messages to glands to produce sweat when the body's temp rises.

# Why do we sweat?

## As your doctor may tell you, it's glandular...



Sweat is produced by dedicated sweat glands, and is a mechanism used primarily by the body to reduce its internal temperature. There are two types of sweat gland in the human body, the eccrine gland and the apocrine gland. The former regulates body temperature, and is the primary source of excreted sweat, with the latter only secreting under emotional stresses, rather than those involved with body dehydration.

Eccrine sweat glands are controlled by the sympathetic nervous system and, when the

internal temperature of the body rises, secrete a salty, water-based substance to the skin's surface. This liquid then cools the skin and the body through evaporation, storing and then transferring excess heat into the atmosphere.

Both the eccrine and apocrine sweat glands only appear in mammals and, if active over the majority of the animal's body, act as the primary thermoregulatory device. Certain mammals such as dogs, cats and sheep only have eccrine glands in specific areas – such as paws and lips – warranting the need to pant to control their temperature.

# Dehydration

## What happens if we don't drink enough?



Just by breathing, sweating and urinating, the average person loses ten cups of water a day. With H<sub>2</sub>O making up as much as 75 per cent of our body, dehydration is a frequent risk. Water is integral in maintaining our systems and it performs limitless functions.

Essentially, dehydration strikes when your body takes in less fluid than it loses. The mineral balance in your body becomes upset with

salt and sugar levels going haywire. Enzymatic activity is slowed, toxins accumulate more easily and even breathing can become more difficult as the lungs are having to work harder.

Babies and the elderly are most susceptible as their bodies are not as resilient as others. It has been recommended to have eight glasses of water or two litres a day. More recent research is undecided as to how much is exactly needed.

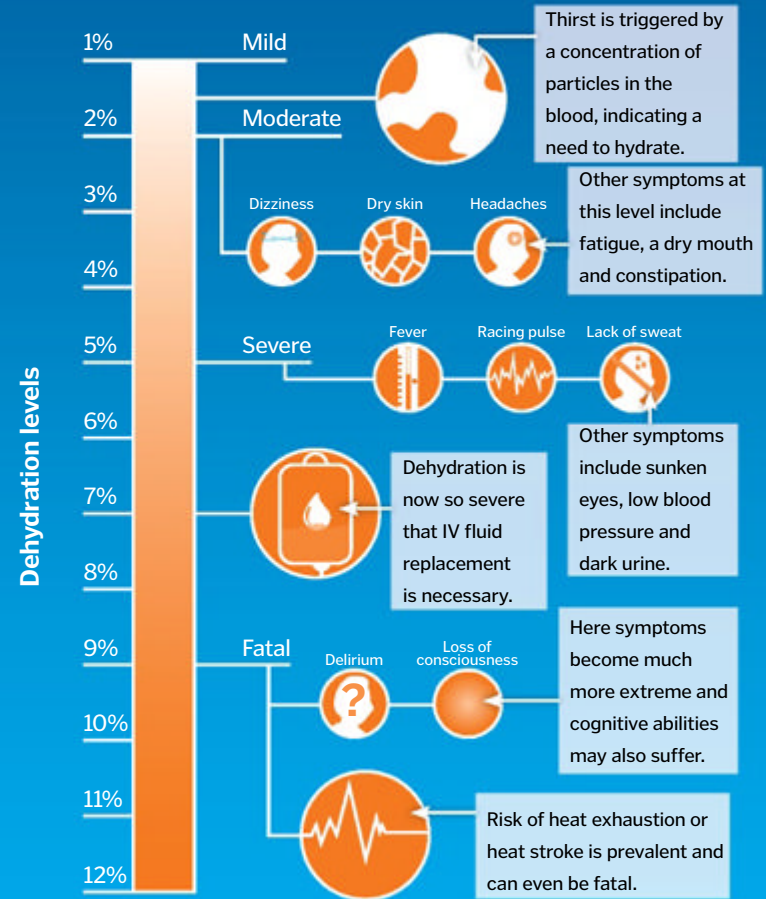


## Too much H<sub>2</sub>O?

Hydration is all about finding the perfect balance. Too much hydration can be harmful as well as too little; this is known as water intoxication. If too much liquid is in your body, nutrients such as electrolytes and sodium are diluted and the body suffers. Your cells bloat and expand and can even burst, and it can be fatal if untreated. The best treatment is to take on IV fluids containing electrolytes.

# Dangers of dehydration

## How does a lack of water vary from mild to fatal?



**Jet lag**

**1** Time zone changes can often disrupt circadian rhythms. Your body clock may be out of sync with your wristwatch, but it will reset itself after a few days.

**Mental state**

**2** Health conditions such as depression, bipolar disorder and seasonal affective disorder (SAD) are all associated with abnormalities in circadian rhythms.

**Latin name**

**3** With these rhythms known to occur approximately every 24 hours, the phrase 'circadian' stems from Latin for 'circa', which means 'about', and 'diem', which means 'day'.

**The living clock**

**4** In the 18th Century, a botanist called Carolus Linnaeus is said to have invented a living clock. His garden could help him tell the time based on the flowers he planted.

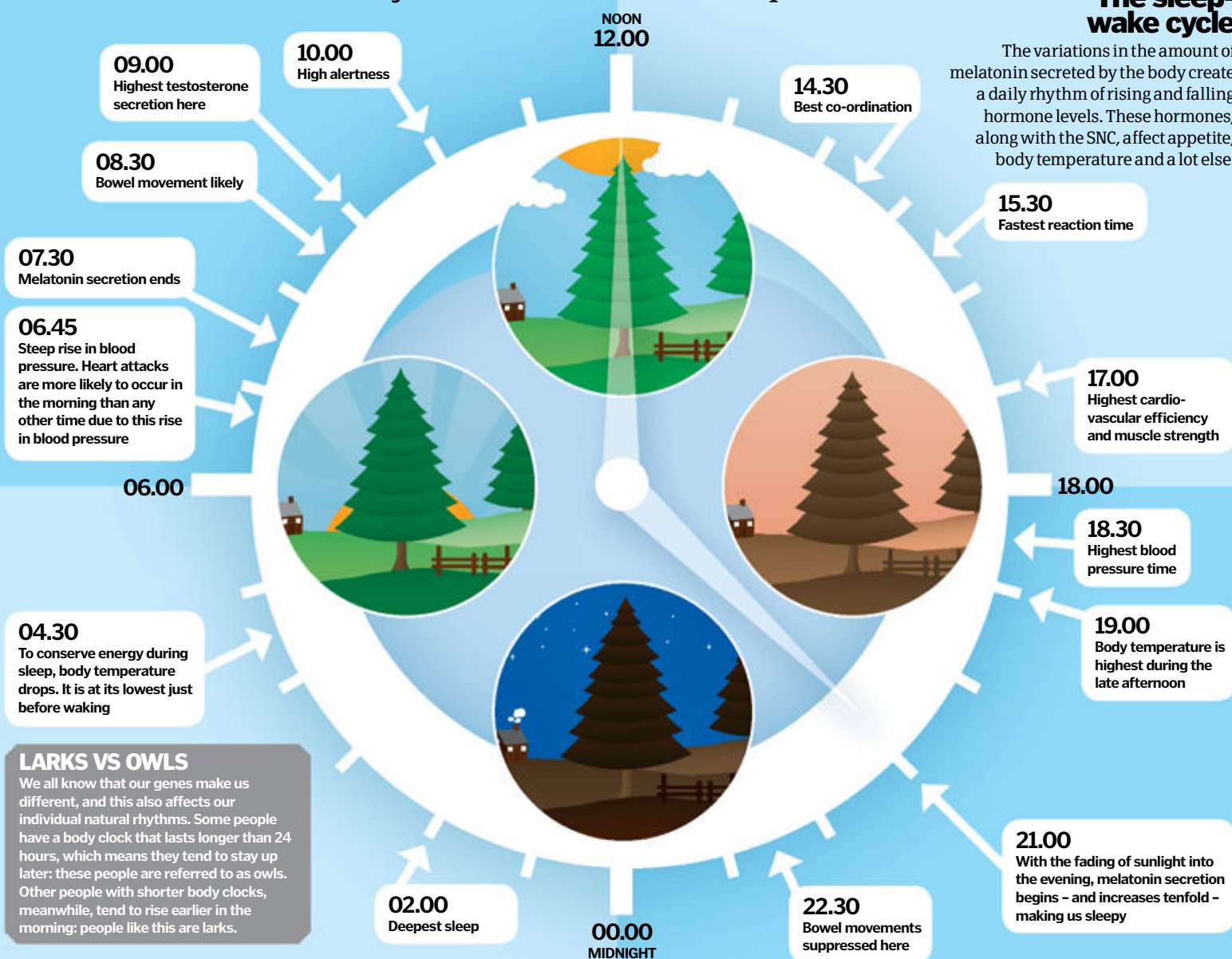
**Time to take your pills**

**5** Doctors tell you to take medicine at a prescribed time because the human body clock can affect their effectiveness. Aspirins function better when taken early in the morning.

**DID YOU KNOW?** The pineal gland, located near the centre of the brain, is about 8mm long and shaped like a pine cone

# Circadian rhythms

How does our internal body clock tell us when to sleep?



**The sleep-wake cycle**

The variations in the amount of melatonin secreted by the body create a daily rhythm of rising and falling hormone levels. These hormones, along with the SNC, affect appetite, body temperature and a lot else.

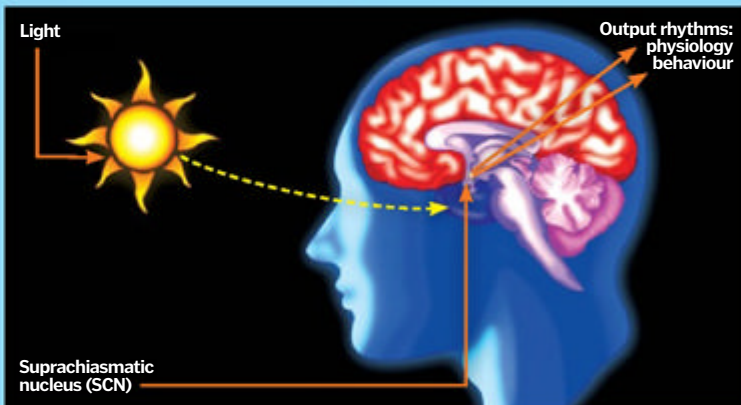
**LARKS VS OWLS**

We all know that our genes make us different, and this also affects our individual natural rhythms. Some people have a body clock that lasts longer than 24 hours, which means they tend to stay up later: these people are referred to as owls. Other people with shorter body clocks, meanwhile, tend to rise earlier in the morning: people like this are larks.



Circadian rhythms are biological changes that occur at roughly 24-hour intervals, whether we're aware of the time on our watch or not. These changes, which are controlled by internal biological time-keeping systems, affect us physically, mentally and behaviourally.

Located behind the eyes in the hypothalamus is a region of the brain called the suprachiasmatic nucleus. No larger than a grain of rice, the SCN is a kind of master body clock that controls all our other internal clocks, which in turn control our circadian rhythms, or daily wake-sleep cycles. Circadian rhythms respond mainly to light and dark cues but even if the body was monitored under conditions devoid of day or night signals, our circadian rhythms still cycle in a period of around 24 hours. The retina in the eye senses light level information, which is relayed to the SCN, which sends a signal to the pineal gland. This pea-sized gland, located beneath the thalamus, is responsible for the secretion of melatonin - a hormone that tells the body to sleep - and so at night when light levels fall, the production of melatonin increases, telling us to head to bed...



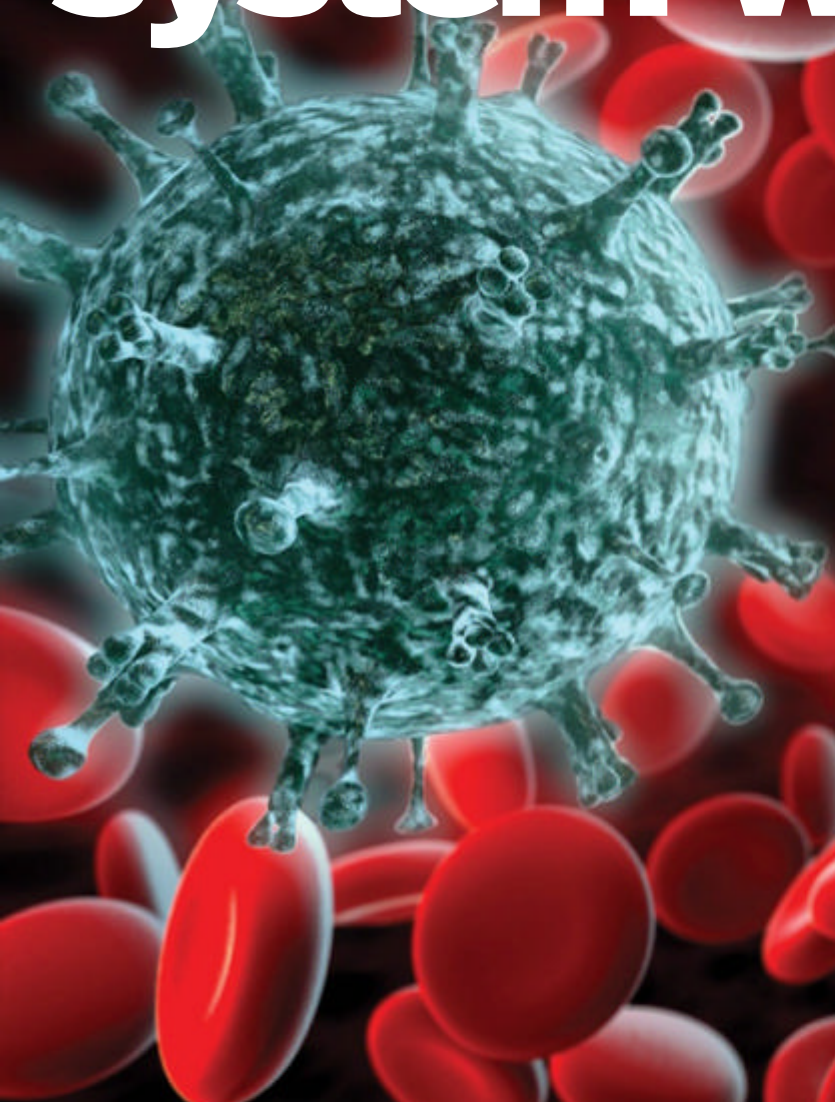


HOW IT  
WORKS

THE BODY AT WORK

Human immune system

# How your immune system works



## Your body is locked in a constant war against a viscous army



It's true: while you're sitting around watching TV, trillions of foreign invaders are launching a full scale assault on the trillions of cells that constitute 'you'.

Collectively known as pathogens, these attackers include bacteria, single-celled creatures that live to eat and reproduce; protists, larger single-cell organisms; viruses, packets of genetic information

that take over host cells and replicate inside them; and fungi, a type of plant life.

Bacteria and viruses are by far the very worst offenders. Dangerous bacteria release toxins in the body that cause diseases such as E. coli, anthrax, and the black plague. The cell damage from viruses causes measles, the flu and the common cold, among numerous other diseases.

## Physical defences

Human anatomy subscribes to the notion that good fences make good neighbours. Your skin, made up of tightly packed cells and an antibacterial oil coating, keeps most pathogens from ever setting foot in body. Your body's openings are well-fortified too. Pathogens that you inhale face a wall of mucus-covered membranes in your respiratory tract, optimised to trap germs. Pathogens that you digest end up soaking in a bath of potent stomach acid. Tears flush pathogens out of your eyes, dousing bacteria with a harsh enzyme for good measure.

Just about everything in our environment is teeming with these microscopic intruders... including you. The bacteria in your stomach alone outnumber all the cells in your body, ten-to-one. Yet, your scrappy microscopic soldiers usually win the day against pathogens, through a combination of sturdy barriers, brute force, and superior battlefield intelligence, collectively dubbed the immune system.

**The cure can sometimes hurt**

**1** Sneezing, coughing, a sore throat, and fever are all common means of expelling pathogens, so as annoying as they are, each one is necessary.

**Immunity soldiers are everywhere**

**2** A single drop of blood contains around 375,000 white blood cells, and blood constitutes for seven per cent of your total body weight.

**You can 'borrow' immunity**

**3** Antibodies in breast milk give babies temporary immunity from diseases their mother is immune to, preventing infancy infection.

**It deals with internal troubles, too**

**4** In addition to fighting pathogens, T-cells fight the body's own cancerous cells and some cancer therapies boost the number of T-cells.

**It has trouble with change**

**5** Unfortunately you cannot develop immunity to the flu and common cold because the viruses are always mutating.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Dr Karl Landsteiner first identified the major human blood groups – A, B, AB and O – in 1901

# The adaptive immune system

Fighting the good fight, and white blood cells are right on the front line...

When a pathogen is tough, wily, or numerous enough to survive non-specific defences, it's up to the adaptive immune system to clean up the mess. The key forces in the adaptive immune system are white blood cells called lymphocytes. Unlike their macrophage cousins, lymphocytes are engineered to attack only one specific type of pathogen. There are two types of lymphocytes: B-cells and T-cells.

These cells join the action when macrophages pass along information about the invading pathogen, through chemical messages called interleukins. After engulfing a pathogen, a macrophage communicates details about the pathogen's antigens – telltale molecules that characterise a particular pathogen. Based on this information, the immune system identifies specific B-cells and T-cells equipped to recognise and battle the pathogen. Once they are successfully identified, these cells rapidly reproduce, assembling an army of cells that are ready and equipped to take down the attacker.

The B-cells flood your body with antibodies, molecules that either disarm a specific pathogen or bind to it, marking it as a target for other white blood cells. When T-cells find their target, they lock on and release toxic chemicals that will destroy it. T-cells are especially adept at destroying your body's cells that are infected with a virus.

This entire process takes several days to get going and may take even longer to conclude. All the while, the raging battle can make you feel terrible. Fortunately, the immune system is engineered to learn from the past. While your body is producing new B-cells and T-cells to fight the pathogens, it also produces memory cells – copies of the B-cells and T-cells, which stay in the system after the pathogen is defeated. The next time that pathogen shows up in your body, these memory cells help launch a counter-attack much more quickly. Your body can wipe out the invaders before any infection takes hold. In other words, you develop immunity.

Vaccines accomplish the same thing by giving you just enough pathogen exposure for you to develop memory cells, but not enough to make you sick.

## Non-specific defences

As good as your physical defence system is, pathogens do creep past it regularly. Your body initially responds with counterattacks known as non-specific defences, so named because they don't target a specific type of pathogen.

After a breach – bacteria rushing in through a cut, for example – cells release chemicals called inflammatory mediators. This triggers the chief non-specific defence, known as inflammation. Within minutes of a breach, your blood vessels dilate, allowing blood and other fluid to flow into the tissue around the cut.

The rush of fluid in inflammation carries various types of white blood cells, which get to work destroying intruders. The biggest and toughest of the bunch are macrophages, white blood cells with an insatiable appetite for foreign particles. When a macrophage detects a bacterium's telltale chemical trail, it grabs the intruder, engulfs it, takes it apart with chemical enzymes, and spits out the indigestible parts. A single macrophage can swallow up about 100 bacteria before its own digestive chemicals destroy it from within.

## How B-cells attack

*B-cells target and destroy specific bacteria and other invaders*

**11. Phagocyte**

White blood cells called phagocytes recognise the antibody marker, engulf the bacteria, and digest them.

**10. Antibodies**

The plasma cells release antibodies, which disable the bacteria by latching on to their antigens. The antibodies also mark the bacteria for destruction.

**8. Plasma cell**

The matching B-cell replicates itself, creating many plasma cells to fight all the bacteria of this type in the body.

**4. Engulfed bacterium**

During the initial inflammation reaction, a macrophage engulfs the bacterium.

**3. Macrophage**

These white blood cells engulf and digest any pathogens they come across.

**2. Bacterium antigen**

These distinctive molecules allow your immune system to recognise that the bacterium is something other than a body cell.

**1. Bacterium**

Any bacteria that enter your body have characteristic antigens on their surface.

**7. Non-matching B-cells**

Other B-cells, engineered to attack other pathogens, don't recognise the antigen.

**5. Presented bacterium antigen**

After engulfing the bacterium, the macrophage 'presents' the bacterium's distinctive antigens, communicating the presence of the specific pathogen to B-cells.

**6. Matching B-cell**

The specific B-cell that recognises the antigen, and can help defeat the pathogen, receives the message.

**9. Memory cell**

The matching B-cell also replicates to produce memory cells, which will rapidly produce copies of itself if the specific bacteria ever returns.



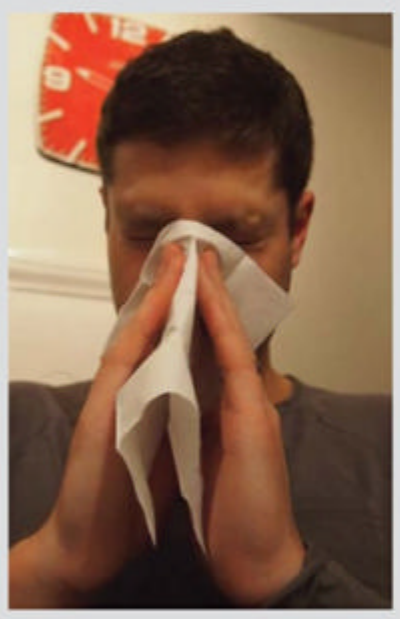
Your tonsils can help fight bacteria

© Klam2007

### Disorders of the immune system

#### Who watches the watchmen?

The immune system is a powerful set of defences, so when it malfunctions, it can do as much harm as a disease. Allergies are the result of an overzealous immune system. In response to something relatively benign, like pollen, the immune system triggers excessive measures to expel the pathogen. On the extreme end, allergies may cause anaphylactic shock, a potentially deadly drop in blood pressure, sometimes accompanied by breathing difficulty and loss of consciousness. In autoimmune disorders such as rheumatoid arthritis, the immune system fails to recognise the body's own cells and attacks them.



In an allergic reaction, the body may resort to sneezing to expel a fairly harmless pathogen

#### 1. Tonsils

Lymphoid tissue loaded with lymphocytes, which attack bacteria that get into the body through your nose or mouth.

#### 2. Left subclavian vein

One of two large veins that serve as the re-entry point for lymph returning to the bloodstream.

#### 3. Right lymphatic duct

Passageway leading from lymph vessels to the right subclavian vein.

#### 4. Right subclavian vein

The second of the two subclavian veins, this one taking the opposite path to its twin.

#### 5. Spleen

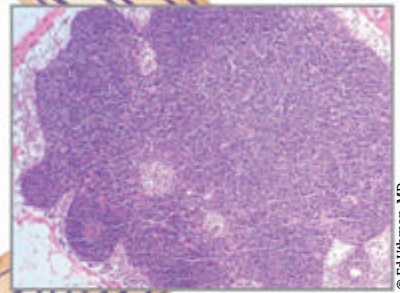
An organ that houses white blood cells that attack pathogens in the body's bloodstream.

#### 10. Lymph vessels

Lymph collects in tiny capillaries, which expand into larger vessels. Skeletal muscles move lymph through these vessels, back into the bloodstream.

# The lymphatic system

The lymphatic system is a network of organs and vessels that collects lymph - fluid that has drained from the bloodstream into bodily tissues - and returns it to your bloodstream. It also plays a key role in your immune system, filtering pathogens from lymph and providing a home-base for disease-fighting lymphocytes.



© Ed Uthman, MD

#### 6. Lymph node cluster

Located along lymph vessels throughout the body, lymph nodes filter lymph as it makes its way back into the bloodstream.

#### 7. Left lymphatic duct

Passageway leading from lymph vessels to the left subclavian vein.

#### 8. Thymus gland

Organ that provides area for lymphocytes produced by bone marrow to mature into specialised T-cells.

#### 9. Thoracic duct

The largest lymph vessel in the body.

#### 11. Peyer's patch

Nodules of lymphoid tissue supporting white blood cells that battle pathogens in the intestinal tract.

#### 12. Bone marrow

The site of all white blood cell production.

## Lymph nodes explained

Lymph nodes filter out pathogens moving through your lymph vessels

Your immune system depends on these .04-1-inch swellings to fight all manner of pathogens.

As lymph makes its way through a network of fibres in the node, white blood cells filter it, destroying any pathogens they find.

© DKimages



**1. Influenza**  
The flu kills hundreds of thousands of people in a good year. And every once in a while, a virulent form can take out tens of millions of people.

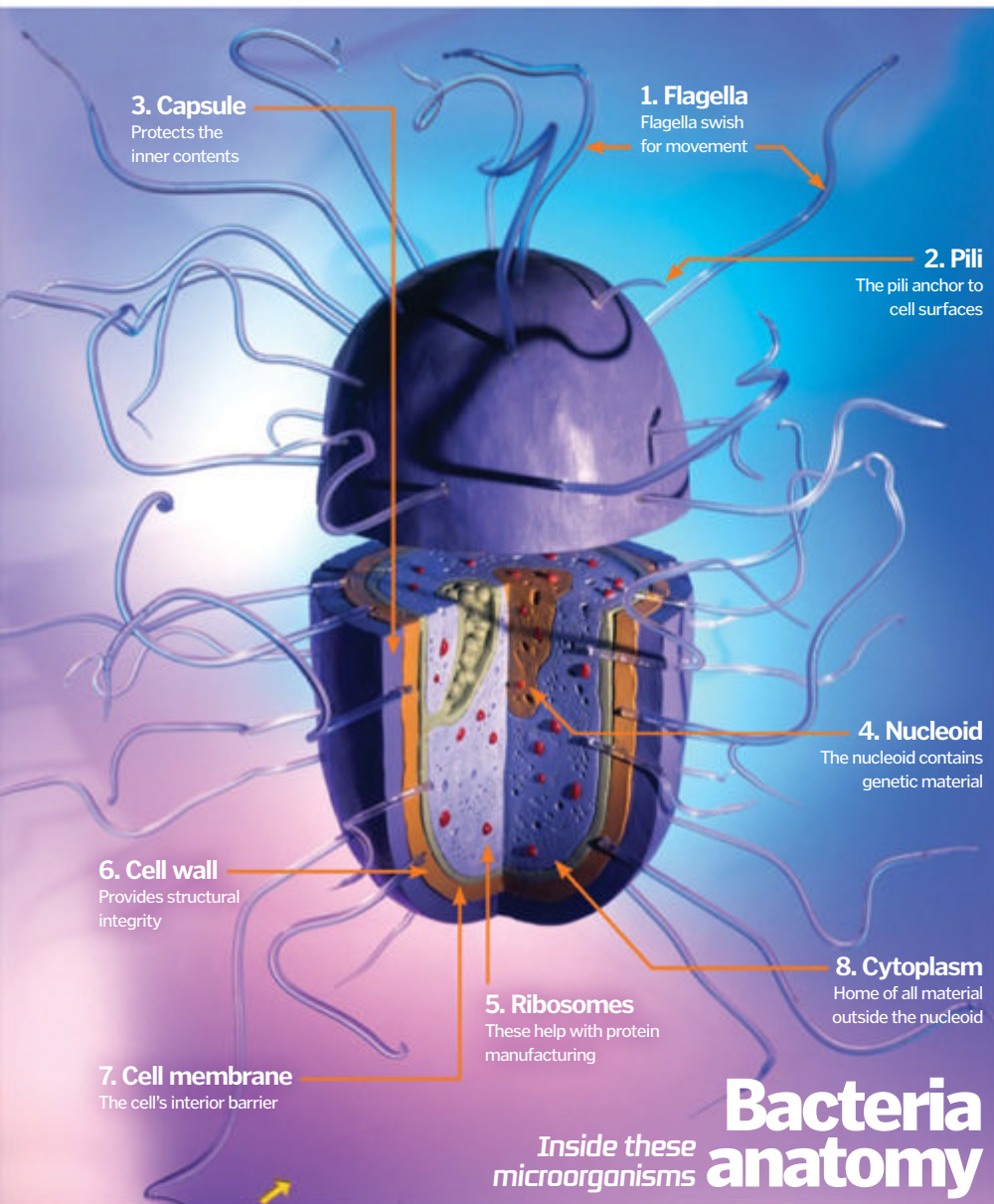


**2. Measles**  
One person infected with measles will spread the virus to just about every unvaccinated person they encounter. Luckily, the vaccine is very effective.



**3. Tuberculosis**  
Excavated Ancient Egyptian mummies show signs of tuberculosis, and the disease is still thriving today. Around 2 billion people around the world are infected.

**DID YOU KNOW?** In 2008, approximately 33 million people worldwide were living with HIV or AIDS



**3. Capsule**  
Protects the inner contents

**1. Flagella**  
Flagella swish for movement

**2. Pili**  
The pili anchor to cell surfaces

**4. Nucleoid**  
The nucleoid contains genetic material

**6. Cell wall**  
Provides structural integrity

**5. Ribosomes**  
These help with protein manufacturing

**8. Cytoplasm**  
Home of all material outside the nucleoid

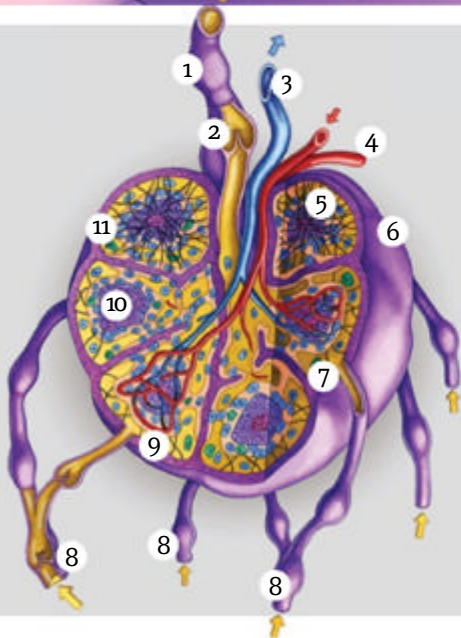
**7. Cell membrane**  
The cell's interior barrier

*Inside these microorganisms* **Bacteria anatomy**

**Major points of the lymph node**

- 1. Outgoing lymph vessel**  
The vessel that carries filtered lymph out of the lymph node
- 2. Valve**  
A structure that prevents lymph from flowing back into the lymph node
- 3. Vein**  
Passageway for blood leaving the lymph node
- 4. Artery**  
Supply of incoming blood for the lymph node
- 5. Reticular fibres**  
Divides the lymph node into individual cells
- 6. Capsule**  
The protective, shielding fibres that surround the lymph node

- 7. Sinus**  
A channel that slows the flow of lymph, giving macrophages the opportunity to destroy any detected pathogens
- 8. Incoming lymph vessel**  
A vessel that carries lymph into the lymph node
- 9. Lymphocyte**  
The T-cells, B-cells and natural killer cells that fight infection
- 10. Germinal centre**  
This is the site of lymphocyte multiplication and maturation
- 11. Macrophage**  
Large white blood cells that engulf and destroy any detected pathogens



# Know your enemy: Bacteria

Bacteria are the smallest and, by far, the most populous form of life on Earth. Right now, there are trillions of the single-celled creatures crawling on and in you. In fact, they constitute about four pounds of your total body weight. To the left is a look at bacteria anatomy...

## What is HIV... ... and how does it affect the immune system?

The human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) is a retrovirus (a virus carrying ribonucleic acid, or RNA as it's known), transmitted through bodily fluids. Like other deadly viruses, HIV invades cells and multiplies rapidly inside. Specifically, HIV infects cells with CD4 molecules on their surface, which includes infection-fighting helper T-cells. HIV destroys the host cell, and the virus copies go on to infect other cells. As the virus destroys helper T-cells, it steadily weakens the immune system. If enough T-cells are lost, the body becomes highly susceptible to a range of infections, a condition known as acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS).



Scanning electron micrograph of HIV-1 budding (in green) from cultured lymphocyte. This image has been coloured to highlight the most important features. Multiple round bumps on the cell surface represent sites of assembly and budding of virions.



# Bone fracture healing process

Learn how your body mends broken bones



If a bone has too much pressure put on it, there is a chance it will break. Your body has ways of repairing these breaks, but it takes time and care. There are different kinds of break, ranging from a hairline fracture to a fully shattered bone, but they all mend in a similar way.

As a bone breaks, the blood vessels are also severed. Blood leaks out and forms a clot called a fracture haematoma. This stops blood flow to the area and also helps keep both pieces of bone aligned, ready for healing.

The body then makes fibrous cells and cartilage, which reinforce the bond and strengthen it. This creates a callus, which is essentially a weakened bone. Over time, the callus builds up and the two parts of the bone

gradually fuse together, like a bridge being constructed from either side of a river until both ends meet in the middle.

Once both sections of bone are connected again, specialised cells called osteoblasts enter to produce bone cells. These new cells replace the callus, returning the bone to its original shape.

Much like repairing a broken toy with glue, the bone needs to be kept straight and steady for the fusion to happen correctly. This is why doctors will put a cast on the broken bone. The cast provides essential support, protection and stability, ensuring the broken bone doesn't move. A cast will generally stay on for a few weeks until the bond has become strong enough, but it could take months for a properly set bone to fully recover.



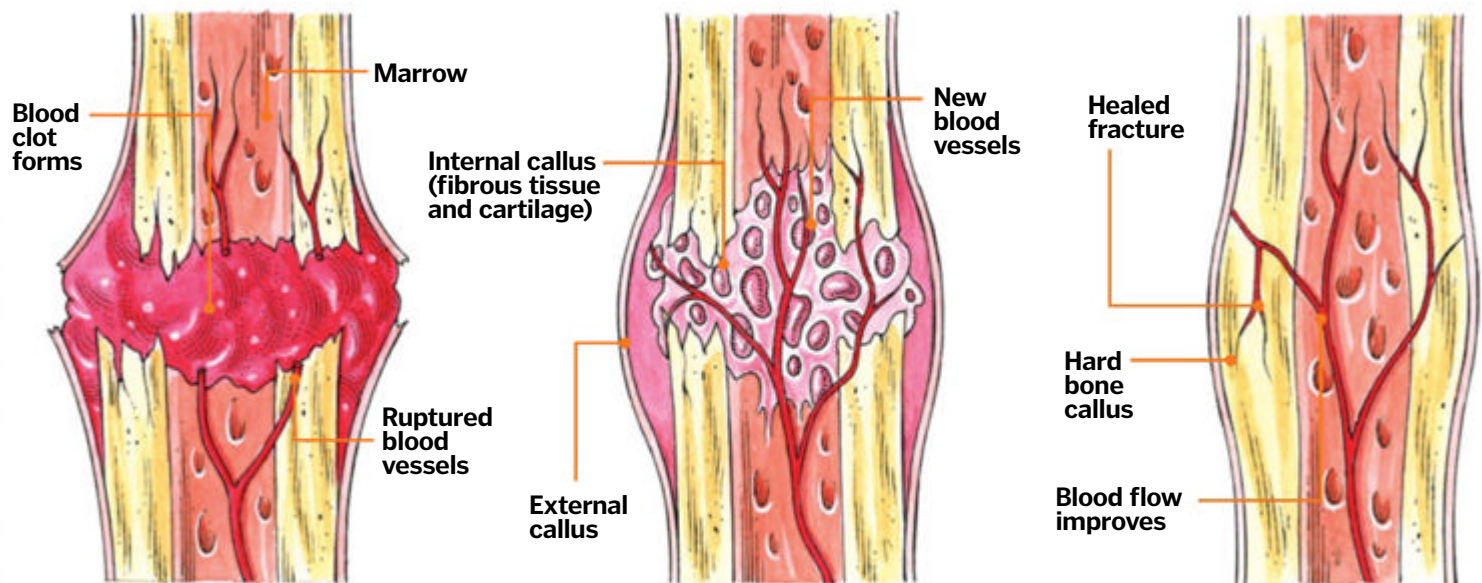
## All-star cast

Most breaks on an arm or a leg will have a plaster cast put on them to prevent the bone from setting at a wonky angle or not setting at all.

It will generally be made from plaster of Paris. This is a mixture of water and gypsum that sets really hard once it has dried. The broken bone is bandaged and the wet mixture is applied to the gauze. Once it has dried then it should provide safety and stability for the bone.

Fibreglass is an increasingly common cast material. As with the plaster cast, the broken bone is bandaged up. Next, another bandage, made of fibreglass and layered with resin, is soaked in water. This makes it flexible enough to be wrapped around the bone before it hardens as it dries. This is much lighter than a plaster cast and the outer layer is waterproof.

## The stages of bone repair



### Blood clot

When a bone breaks, the blood vessels that run through the bone are severed. The blood forms a clot to align the bones. This creates a solid yet weak structure to prepare for mending. The clot also cuts off blood flow to the edges of the broken bone, so these cells die.

### Tissue growth

A few days later, the blood clot – called the fracture haematoma – is gradually replaced by tougher tissue, which becomes a soft callus. Fibrous tissue and cartilage are produced that begin to bridge the gap between the fractured ends. New blood vessels begin to form and the callus usually lasts around three weeks.

### Remodelling

Bone-forming cells called osteoblasts work in teams to build a new bone, creating a more solid structure called a hard bone callus. It takes several months to fill the cavity with harder bone, strengthened by nutrients like calcium and phosphorus. However, it may take longer for the bone to be completely healed.

### Pokémon

**1** Speedy Pokémon character Pikachu had a protein named after it in 2008. The protein, pikachurin, is used in kinetic vision, which, aptly, is the detection of fast objects.

### Protein from food

**2** We get protein from meat, fish, eggs, nuts and dairy products. We digest the proteins into amino acids, which we later use to replace these proteins in our bodies.

### Protein we need

**3** Your body makes thousands of proteins every day. For each 1kg you weigh, you typically require 1g of protein. So daily a 70kg man must manufacture 70g of protein for his needs.

### Biuret test

**4** The Biuret test is a chemical form of analysis that is used to measure the amount of protein that is present in food. It works out protein levels by analysing the peptide bonds.

### Genome studies

**5** From studies into the human genomes sequenced so far, it has been discovered that the body contains over 2 million proteins, coded by just 20,000-25,000 genes.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Around half of your body's 'non-water' mass is made up of proteins

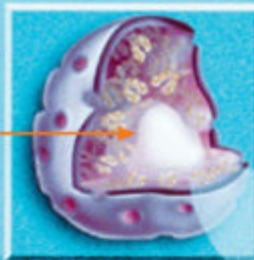
### 1. Cell

The body is made up of millions of cells, none of which could survive without protein, for repair and replacement.



### 2. Nucleus

This is the control centre of the cell where all important genetic data is stored.



### 6. mRNA

This type of genetic acid forms a template based on DNA sequences, which is then used to produce amino acids by the ribosome.

### 9. Protein

Proteins are made up of long chains of amino acids. Each protein has a specific function which suits its role and is crucial to our bodies being able to operate effectively.



# Protein production

Protein is generated in the nucleus of a cell using genetic coding information held within our DNA. To produce protein, DNA unravels to allow messenger RNA (or mRNA) to copy it and form a template. This template is translated by ribosomes into amino acids, which then line up to form a protein. Parts of DNA code will serve as punctuation, telling the ribosome when to start and stop, and some parts will instruct the cell how frequently it must produce the specific protein.

### 5. DNA

DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid) holds the information necessary for amino acid – and ultimately protein – production in the letter sequence in its structure.

### 7. Ribosome

This is the 'protein-making machine' in the cell. It uses mRNA templates to synthesise the specific protein needed.

### 8. Amino acid

These small molecules combine in specific string sequences to generate the different types of protein.

### 4. Nucleosomes

These are balls formed of DNA strands and histones (spool-like proteins) which sit inside chromosomes.

### 3. Chromosome

Most human cells have a set of 46 chromosomes and these contain our genetic information which, among other things, instructs the cell which protein to make and also how.

## Why are amino acids important?

Amino acids are vital to our bodies being able to operate as they are the building blocks of proteins. Each type of amino acid performs a different job, which aids protein activity in the body and determines the protein's primary function(s). Without these, proteins would not be able to help the body with movement, defence against disease, processing food or co-ordinating general growth and development.

There are nine essential amino acids for humans that must be absorbed from external protein sources (eg meat/fish) as they cannot be synthesised by the body. Without the required amount of amino acids, the body can really suffer.

# How do we make protein?

Proteins are the building blocks of the human body, but how do we go about manufacturing them?



Proteins are large complex molecules made up of a chain of amino acids. Every cell in our body needs protein to stay alive as it is necessary for tissue repair and replacing dead cells.

They have many other functions as well as aiding cell repair and production including forming antibodies to help fight off disease, forming enzymes which speed up or trigger chemical reactions and co-ordinating processes within the body (via hormone regulation, for instance). Proteins also provide support for cells and form structural elements of the body, such as nails and teeth, as well as facilitating the transportation of some small molecules around various systems.

We build proteins using information encoded in our genetic code. DNA code utilises groups of three letters (a mix of A, G, C

and T) and these short sequences, which are known as triplets or codons, then code mRNA templates; these templates are 'translated' by cell ribosomes into amino acids.

Each protein is made up of hundreds of thousands of amino acids, which are in long chains. There are 20 different types of amino acid that can be combined to build a protein and it is the sequence of amino acids that determines each protein's unique three-dimensional structure and its function.

However, not all amino acids can be made by the body. The ones that need to be consumed via our diet are called essential amino acids. If possible, the body will also conserve energy by using amino acids from food rather than producing them itself. Protein deficiency can cause diseases such as kwashiorkor, a form of malnutrition common in poverty-stricken areas.



# The cell cycle

Inside one of the body's most vital processes



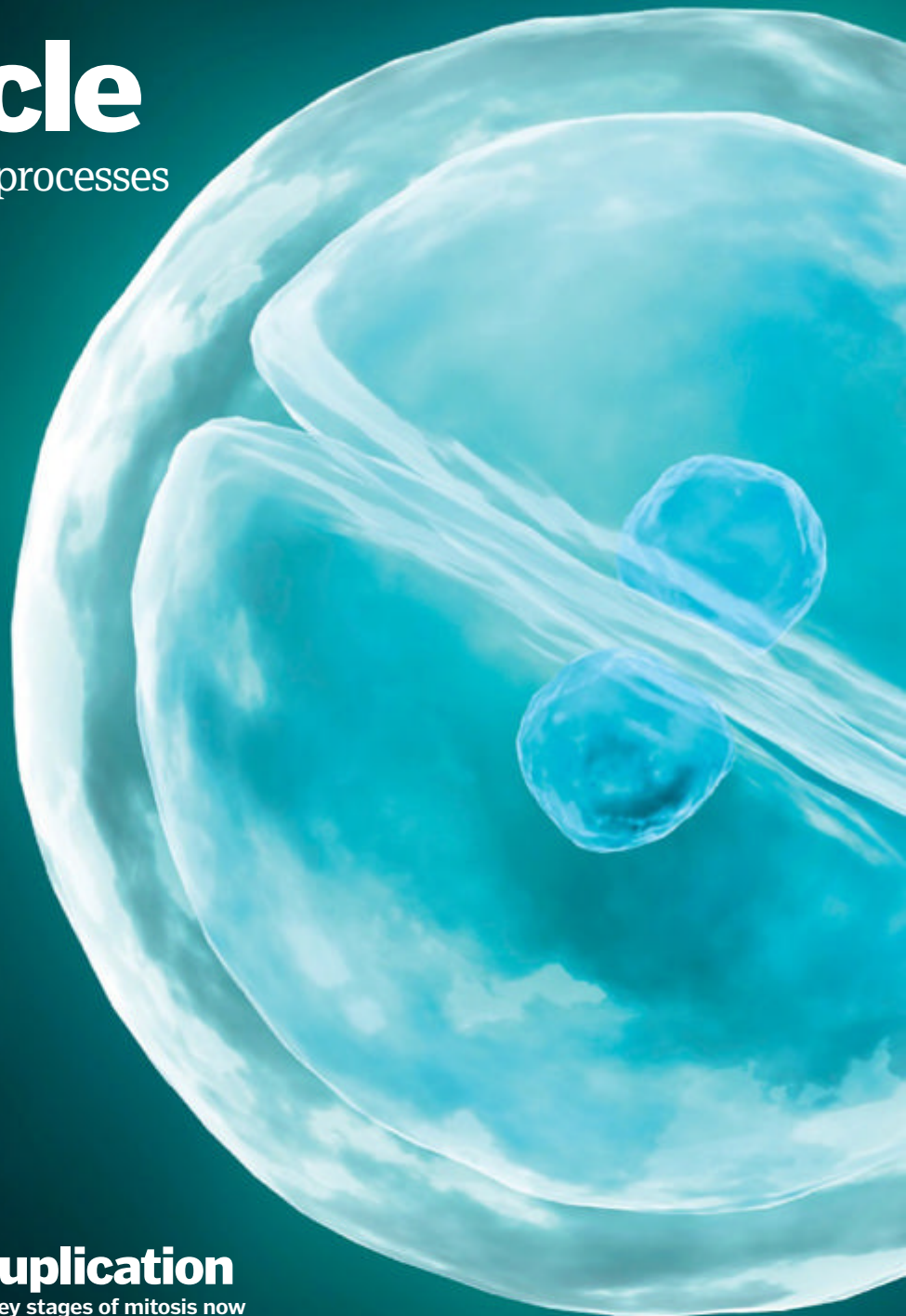
The continuous cycle of cell division and growth is essential to all life on Earth. Without it, no organism on the planet would be able to reproduce or develop. The cell cycle consists of three main stages: interphase, mitosis and cytokinesis.

During interphase, the cell expands and makes the new proteins and organelles it will need for division. It then makes copies of its chromosomes, doubling the amount of DNA in the cell and ensuring the conditions are right to begin the next phase.

In mitosis, the membrane surrounding the nucleus breaks down, exposing the chromosomes, which are pulled to opposite sides of the cell by tiny spindle fibres. A new nuclear envelope then forms around the chromosomes at each end of the cell. During cytokinesis the cytoplasm splits in half to create two 'daughter' cells, each with their own nucleus and organelles.

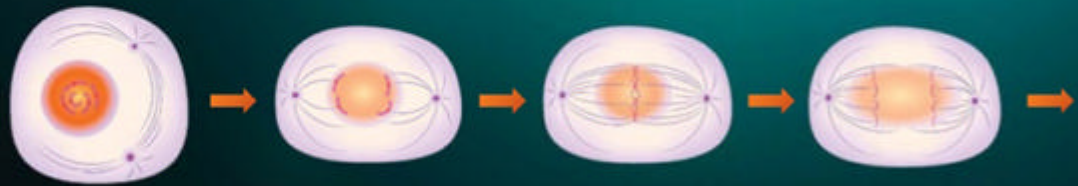
The cycle is managed by regulating enzymes known as CDKs. These act as a checkpoint between the phases of division, giving the signal for the next stage in the cycle to begin.

The cell cycle of prokaryotic cells (those without a nucleus) is slightly different. Bacteria and other prokaryotes divide via a process called binary fission, in which the cell duplicates its genetic material before doubling in size and splitting in two. Meiosis is another type of cell division and is concerned with sexual reproduction as opposed to the asexual organic growth of tissue in mitosis.



## Cell duplication

Explore the key stages of mitosis now



### Prophase

Chromosomes condense, becoming thicker and shorter. Sister chromatids form when the chromosomes replicate themselves.

### Prometaphase

The nuclear envelope breaks down and spindle fibres extend from either side of the cell to attach to the middle of each chromatid.

### Metaphase

In this phase, all the spindle fibres are attached and the chromosomes are arranged in a line along the equator of the cell.

### Anaphase

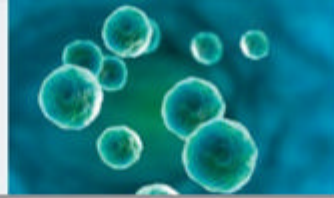
Now, the spindle fibres pull the chromosomes apart, with the chromatids moving to opposite ends or 'poles' of the cell.

## Cancer and the cycle

If the cell cycle goes wrong, cancerous tumours are a possible consequence. It all depends on the levels of proteins in the cycle. A protein called p53 halts the process if DNA is damaged. This provides time for the protein to repair the DNA as the cells are then killed off and the cycle begins anew. On the rare occasions this process fails, cells can reproduce at a rapid rate and tumours can form. Chemo- and radiotherapy work by destroying these mutated cells. A p53 mutation is the most frequent one leading to cancer. An extreme case is Li Fraumeni syndrome, where a genetic defect in p53 leads to a high frequency of cancer in those affected.

## What is apoptosis?

**A** Another type of cell division **B** Programmed cell death **C** A new type of soft drink



### Answer:

Essentially a cell committing suicide, apoptosis is a controlled biological system that kills off unneeded or excess cells. One example is the removal of webbing in between your fingers and toes before you are born.

**DID YOU KNOW?** A common theory is that every living cell is descended from a single ancestral cell from 3-4bn years ago

Every step of the cell division cycle is vital for life as we know it

## An expert's view

**Paul Nurse, Nobel Prize winner and director of the Francis Crick Institute, chats about cell cycle**

### What is the cell cycle?

The cell is the basic unit of life for all living things. One of its many properties is the ability to reproduce. The cell cycle is a series of processes that occur between the birth of the cell and its division into two.

### What is mitosis?

Mitosis describes what happens near the end of the cycle. The replicated chromosomes are separated from each other into opposite ends of the cell just before the cell divides.

### What are the different parts of the cycle?

The other major part occurs before mitosis and is the process in which the DNA that makes up the chromosomes replicates itself. This is called the S-phase or DNA synthetic phase [which is part of interphase]. The S-phase replicates and mitosis separates and divides.

### What is the difference between mitosis and meiosis and does cell division occur in both?

Meiosis is usually considered to be the mitotic full cycle and also leads towards cell reproduction. However, in meiosis there are two M-phases or divisions so the number of DNA and chromosomes are halved. Meiosis uses gametes for fertilisation in diploid cells in animal and plants.

### Does it occur in eukaryotic or prokaryotic cells?

Only in eukaryotic cells. In prokaryotic cells there is a cell cycle but it is not mitosis. This [process] is simply the copying of DNA and then a much less obvious separation of the copied DNA into the two divided cells.

### Why did you use yeast in your experiments?

Yeast is a very simple eukaryote, which reproduces in much the same way as more complex cells in us. It only has 5,000 genes compared to our 25,000. It simplifies cell division so is extremely convenient to study. It's got fantastic genetics and genomics, which allow you to investigate complicated processes like the cell cycle.

### Why do skin cells divide so quickly and nerve cells so slowly?

Cells change at varying rates and some nerve cells barely divide at all. This is one reason why it is difficult to regenerate the nervous system when it becomes damaged. Because the body has to deal with cuts and abrasions, it is much easier to get skin cells to divide.

### What is tissue culture and why is it important?

It is simply a way of growing cells from animals and plants in test tubes. They will divide under these circumstances so you can study the cell cycle away from the complexities of an animal or plant.

### What are the differences between plant and animal cell cycles?

Fundamentally, not very much. They both undergo the same processes but are subject to different overall controls.

### What is proteolysis and how does that mechanism help the cell cycle?

It is a biochemical mechanism that breaks down protein. It takes away certain proteins as part of a regulatory system for a variety of biological process such as the cell cycle. It is used at the end of the cycle to destroy excess protein and prepare for the next cycle.

### You discovered CDK (Cyclin-dependent kinase). How do they contribute to the cell cycle?

CDK is a type of enzyme and my research group was involved in discovering that they were the major regulators in the cycle. CDK brings about the S-phase and mitosis and controls them.

### How can the cycle help understand potential cures for cancer?

To understand cancer, you have to be able to understand the cell cycle. Crudely blocking the cell cycle is a problem as a therapy as our body is full of other cells that have to divide.



### Telophase

The two new sets of chromosomes form groups at each pole and a new envelope forms around each as the spindle disappears.

### Cytokinesis

The cytoplasm divides and two or more daughter cells are produced. Mitosis and the cell cycle have now reached their end.



Paul Nurse is also the former director of Cancer Research UK and president of the Royal Society



# How do white blood cells work?

One of the body's main defences against infection and foreign pathogens, how do these cells protect our bodies?



White blood cells, or leukocytes, are the body's primary form of defence against disease. When the body is invaded by a pathogen of any kind, the white blood cells attack in a variety of ways; some produce antibodies, while others surround and ultimately devour the pathogens whole.

In total, there are five types of white blood cell (WBC), and each cell works in a different way to fight a variety of threats. These five cells sit in two groupings: the granulocytes and the agranulocytes. The groups are determined based on whether a cell has 'granules' in the cytoplasm. These granules are digestive enzymes that help break down pathogens. Neutrophils, eosinophils and basophils are all granulocytes, the enzymes in which also give them a distinct colouration which the agranulocytes do not have.

As the most common WBC, neutrophils make up between 55 and 70 per cent of the white blood cells in a normal healthy individual, with the other four types (eosinophils, basophils, monocytes and lymphocytes) making up the rest. Neutrophils are the primary responders to infection, actively moving to the site of infection following a call from mast cells after a pathogen is initially discovered. They consume bacteria and fungus that has broken through the body's barriers in a process called phagocytosis.

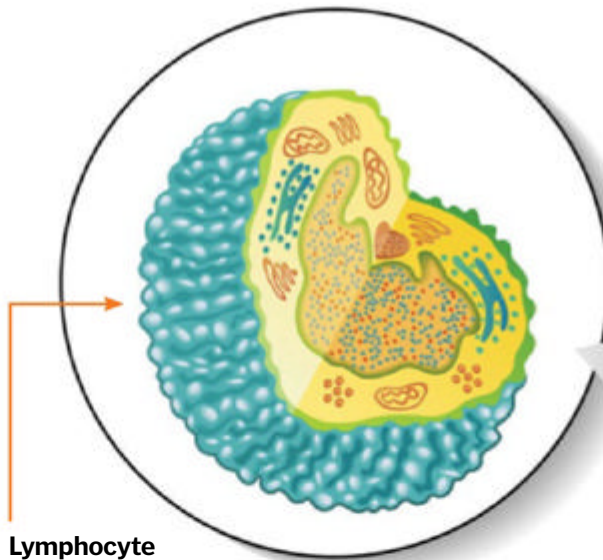
Lymphocytes – the second-most common kind of leukocyte – possess three types of defence cells: B cells, T cells and natural killer cells. B cells release antibodies and activate T cells, while T cells attack diseases such as viruses and tumours when directed, and regulatory T cells ensure the immune system returns to normal after an attack. Natural killer cells, meanwhile, aid T cell response by also attacking virus-infected and tumour cells, which lack a marker known as MHC.

The remaining types of leukocyte release chemicals such as histamine, preparing the body for future infection, as well as attacking other causes of illness like parasites.

*"Natural killer cells aid T cell response by also attacking virus-infected and tumour cells"*

## Types of leukocyte

Different kinds of WBC have different roles, which complement one another to defend the body



### Lymphocyte

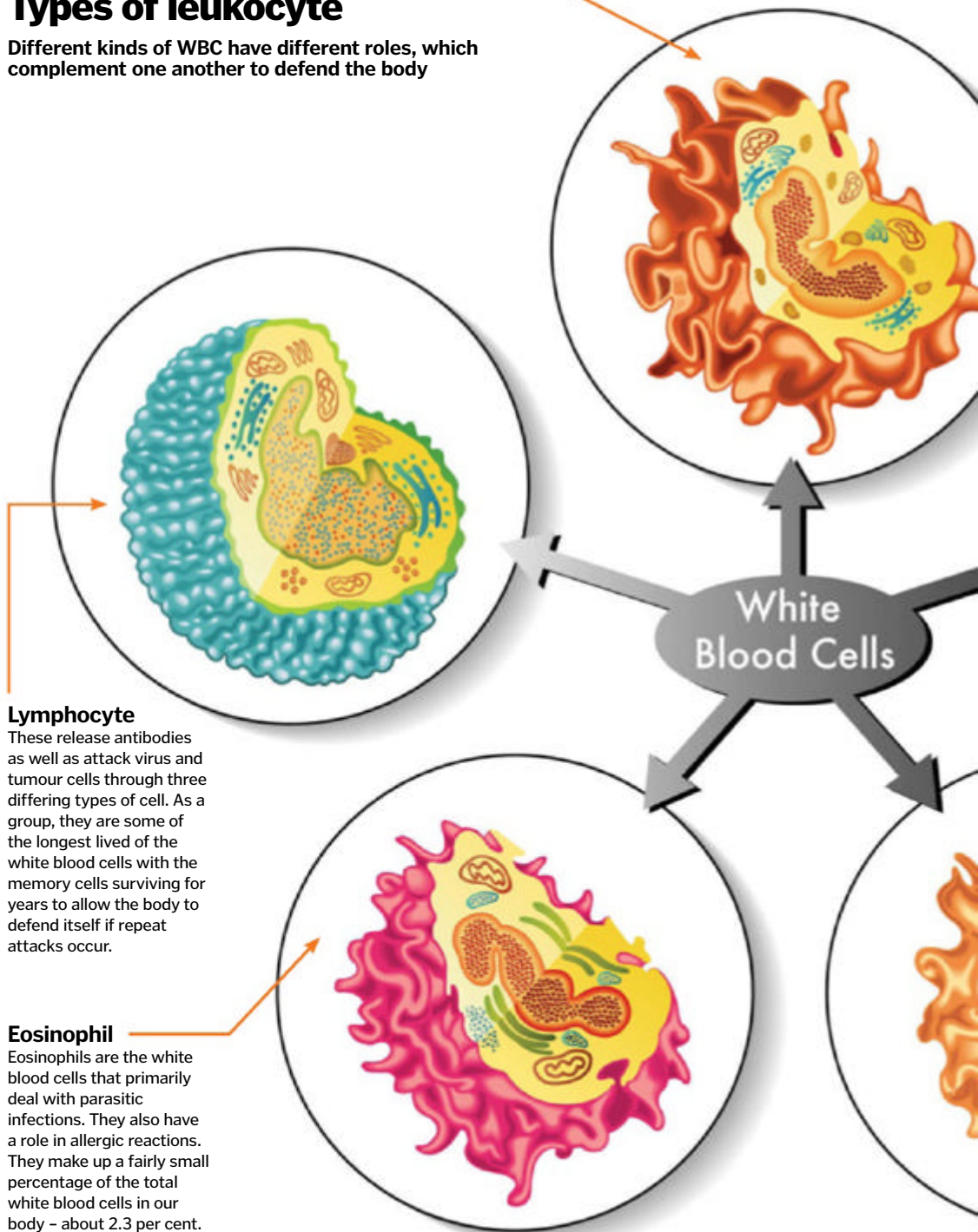
These release antibodies as well as attack virus and tumour cells through three differing types of cell. As a group, they are some of the longest lived of the white blood cells with the memory cells surviving for years to allow the body to defend itself if repeat attacks occur.

### Eosinophil

Eosinophils are the white blood cells that primarily deal with parasitic infections. They also have a role in allergic reactions. They make up a fairly small percentage of the total white blood cells in our body – about 2.3 per cent.

### Monocyte

Monocytes help prepare us for another infection by presenting pathogens to the body, so that antibodies can be created. Later in their life, monocytes move from the bloodstream into tissue, and then evolve into macrophages which can conduct phagocytosis.



**DID YOU KNOW?** WBCs have colour but appear white when blood is put through a centrifuge, hence their group name

### White blood cells at work

The body has various outer defences against infection, including the external barrier of the skin, but what happens when this is breached?

**Skin breach**  
A foreign object breaks through the skin, introducing bacteria (shown in green) into the body.

**Mast cells**  
Mast cells release cytokines and then WBCs are called into action to ensure the infection does not spread.

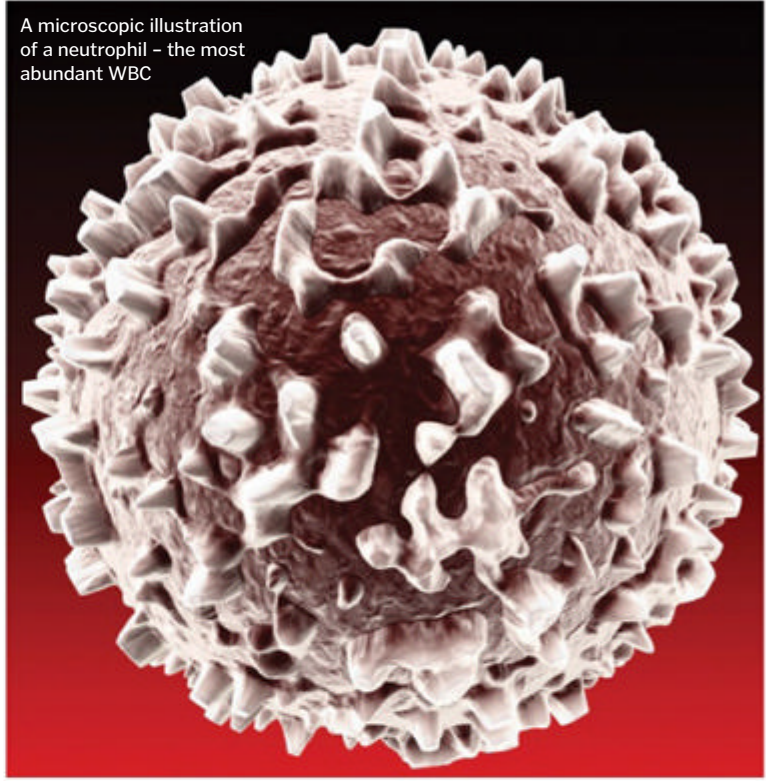
**WBCs arrive**  
Macrophages move to the site via the bloodstream to start defending against invading bacteria.

**Macrophages consume bacteria**  
Bacteria are absorbed into cytoplasm and broken down by the macrophages.

**Healing**  
Following removal of the bacteria, the body will start to heal the break in the skin to prevent further infection.

**Basophil**  
Basophils are involved in allergic response via releasing histamine and heparin into the bloodstream. Their functions are not fully known and they only account for 0.4 per cent of the body's white blood cells. Their granules appear blue when viewed under a microscope.

**Neutrophil**  
Neutrophils are the most common of the leukocytes. They have a short life span so need to be constantly produced by the bone marrow. Their granules appear pink and the cell has multi-lobed nuclei which make them easily differentiated from other types of white blood cell.



### A faulty immune system

If the immune system stops working properly, we are at risk of becoming ill. However, another problem is if the immune system actually goes into overdrive and starts attacking the individual's cells, mistaking them for pathogens. There are a large number of autoimmune ailments seen across the world, such as Crohn's disease, psoriasis, lupus and some cases of arthritis, as well as a large number of diseases that are suspected to have autoimmune roots.

We can often treat these conditions with immunosuppressants, which deactivate elements of the immune system to stop the body attacking itself. However, there are drawbacks with this treatment as, if the person exposes themselves to another pathogen, they would not have the normal white blood cell response. Consequently, the individual is less likely to be able to fight normally low-risk infections and, depending on the pathogen, they can even be fatal.



HOW IT  
WORKS

THE BODY AT WORK

*The science of genetics*

# THE SCIENCE OF GENETICS

From inheritance to genetic diseases, what secrets are hidden in our genes and how do they determine who we are?



An ordinary-looking white flower, *Paris japonica*, has the longest known genome with 150 billion base pairs. If stretched out it would measure over 91 metres (300 feet)!

**DID YOU KNOW?** If all 46 human chromosomes were stitched together and stretched they would measure nearly 2m [6.6ft]



Genes define who we are. They are the basic unit of heredity, each containing a coded set of instructions to make a protein.

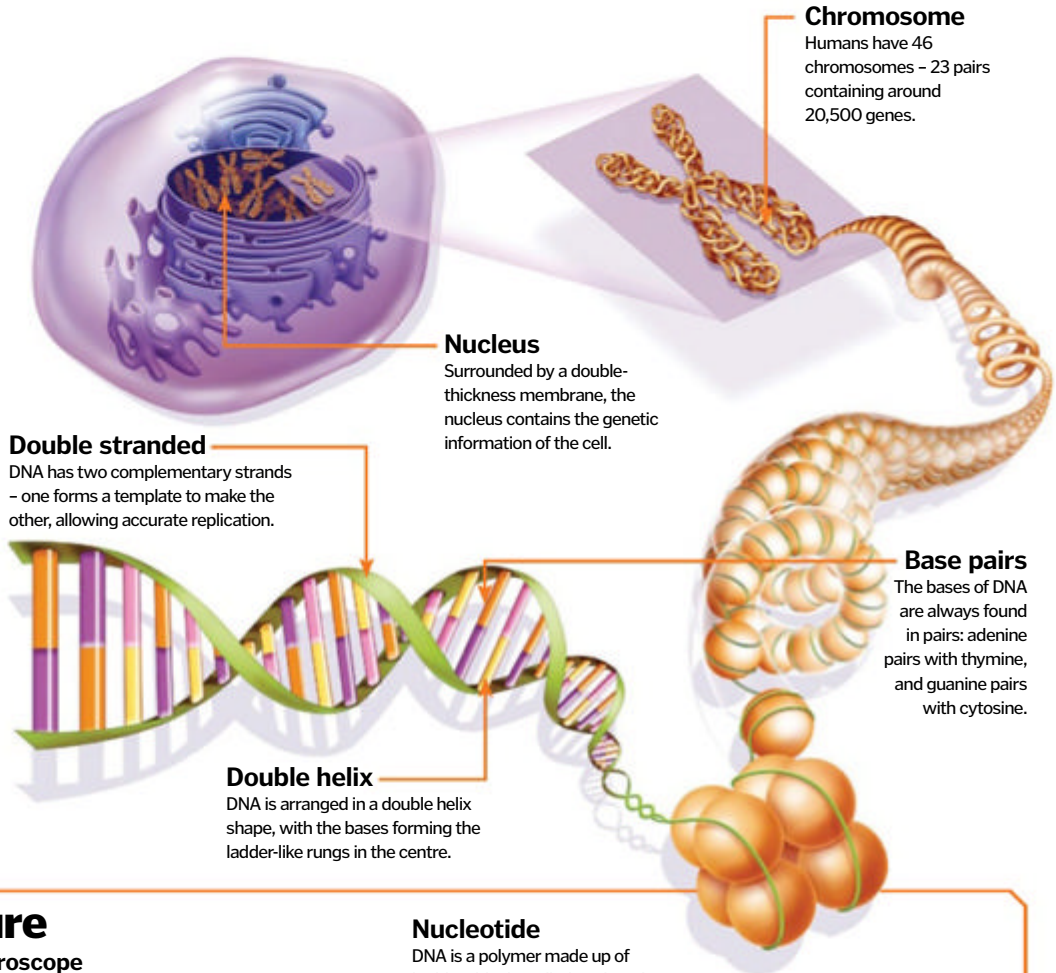
Humans have an estimated 20,500 genes, varying in length from a few hundred to more than 2 million base pairs. They affect all aspects of our physiology, providing the code that determines our physical appearance, the biochemical reactions that occur inside our cells and even, many argue, our personalities.

Every individual has two copies of every gene – one inherited from each parent. Within the population there are several alleles of each gene – that is, different forms of the same code, with a number of minor alterations in the sequence. These alleles perform the same underlying function, but it is the subtle differences that make each of us unique.

Inside each of our cells (except red blood cells) is a nucleus, the core which contains our genetic information: deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA). DNA is a four-letter code made up of bases: adenine (A), guanine (G), cytosine (C) and thymine (T). As molecular biologist Francis Crick once put it, "DNA makes RNA, RNA makes protein and proteins make us." Our genes are stored in groups of several thousand on 23 pairs of chromosomes in the nucleus, so when a cell needs to use one particular gene, it makes a temporary copy of the sequence in the form of

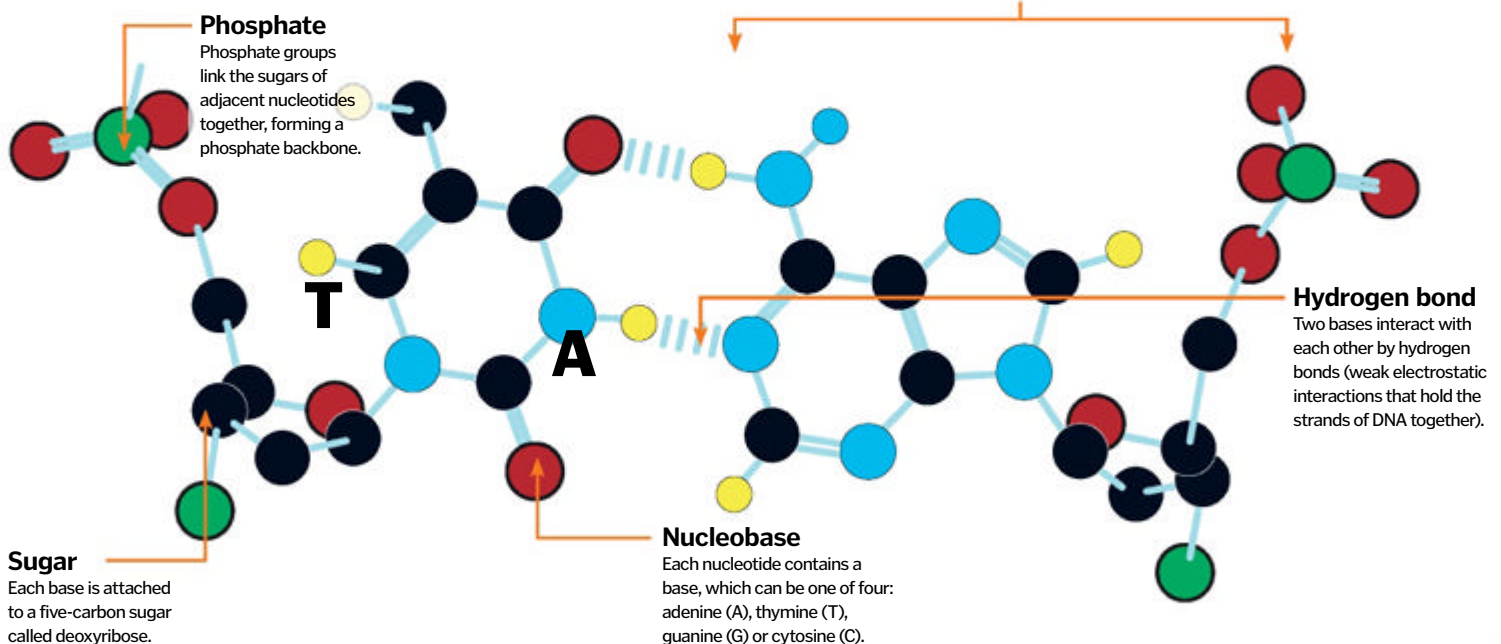
## How is our genetic code stored?

Genetic information is coded into DNA using just four nucleobases: A, C, G and T



## DNA's chemical structure

We put deoxyribonucleic acid under the microscope





HOW IT WORKS

# THE BODY AT WORK

## The science of genetics

ribonucleic acid (RNA). This copy contains all of the information required to make a protein – the building blocks of the human body.

The Human Genome Project aimed to map the entire human genome; this map is effectively a blueprint for making a human. Using the information hidden within our genetic code, scientists have been able to identify genes that contribute to various diseases. By logging common genetic variation in the human population, researchers have been able to identify over 1,800 disease-associated genes, affecting illnesses ranging from breast cancer to Alzheimer's. The underlying genetic influences that affect complex diseases like heart disease are not yet

fully understood, but having the genome available to study is making the task of identifying genetic risk factors much easier.

Interestingly, the Human Genome Project discovered we have far fewer genes than first predicted; in fact, only two per cent of our genome codes for proteins. The remainder of the DNA is known as 'non-coding' and serves other functions. In many human genes are non-coding regions called introns, and between genes there is intergenic DNA. One proposed function is that these sequences act as a buffer to protect the important genetic information from mutation. Other non-coding DNA acts as switches, helping the cell to turn genes on and off at the right times.

Genetic mutations are the source of variation in all organisms. Most genetic mutation occurs as the DNA is being copied, when cells prepare to divide. The molecular machinery responsible for duplicating DNA is prone to errors, and often makes mistakes, resulting in changes to the DNA sequence. These can be as simple as accidentally substituting one base for another (eg A for G), or can be much larger errors, like adding or deleting bases. Cells have repair machinery to correct errors as they occur, and even to kill the cell if it makes a big mistake, but despite this some errors still slip through.

Throughout your life you will acquire many mutations in your cells. Many of these are completely harmless, either occurring in

### The Human Genome Project

The Human Genome Project, an initiative to map the sequence of the entire human genetic code, began in 1990 and was completed in 2003. The 3.3-billion base pair sequence was broken into sections of around 150,000 base pairs in length and the sequence for each identified. These were then joined and used to map the information on to chromosomes to determine which genes were found on each – and in what order. The genome map (right) shows a human chromosome compared with other animals; the colours are a 'heat map' demonstrating areas where genetic information has been conserved through evolution (the more fragmented the pattern, the more differences there are in the genetic code).

### Mapping the human genome

How does our genetic makeup compare to that of other creatures?

#### Zebrafish

Divergence between fish and mammals occurred very early in evolution, so similarities in our genes are very fragmented.

#### Human

This ring represents the genes on a human chromosome, with the numbers providing a representation of scale.

#### Chimpanzee

One of our closest living relatives – the solid bands demonstrate we share a great deal of genetic information (ie 98 per cent).

#### Mouse

There is less in common between human and mouse (90 per cent), but we are sufficiently similar that mice make a good scientific model for studying human disease.

#### Chicken

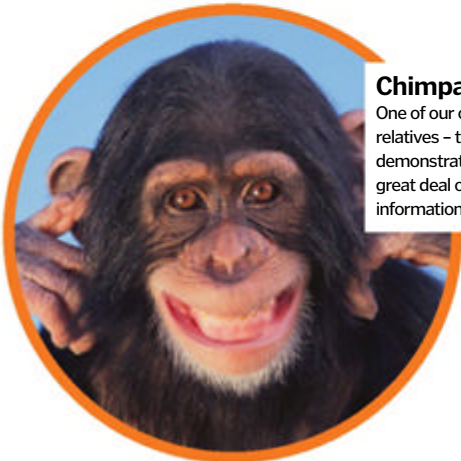
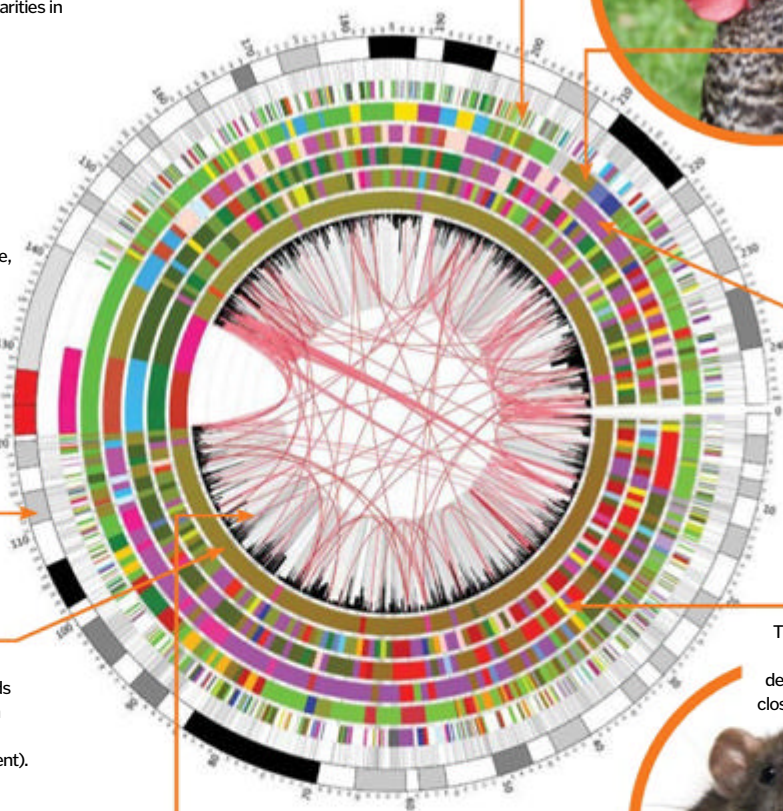
Despite the fact that we are not closely related to birds, the chicken still has regions of DNA that are quite similar to ours.

#### Dog

Some regions of the canine genome are very different to ours, but the pink bands show an area that has been conserved.

#### Rat

The mouse and rat genomes have similar patterns, demonstrating these rodents' close evolutionary relationship.



# KEY DATES

## GENETICS HISTORY

1865

Gregor Mendel, the father of modern genetics, observes patterns of genetic inheritance in peas grown in his garden.



1905

William Bateson is the first person to use the term 'genetics' to describe the study of biological inheritance.

1953

Francis Crick (right) and James Watson reveal the double helix structure of DNA using X-rays.



1983

Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) is invented, enabling small DNA samples to be amplified for testing.

2003

Completion of the Human Genome Project provides access to the human DNA blueprint.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Humans share 98 per cent genetic similarity with chimpanzees but just seven per cent with *E coli*

non-coding regions of DNA, or changing the gene so nominally that the protein is virtually unaffected. However, some mutations do lead to disease (see 'When genes go wrong' box).

If mutations are introduced into the sperm and egg cells they can be passed on to the next generation. However, not all mutations are bad, and this process of randomly introduced changes in the DNA sequence provides the biological underpinning that supports Darwin's theory of evolution. This is most easily observed in animals. Take, for example, the peppered moth. Before the Industrial Revolution the majority of these moths had white wings, enabling them to hide against light-coloured trees and lichens. However, a minority had a

mutant gene, which gave them black wings; this made them an easy target for predators and kept their numbers low. When factories began to cover the trees in soot, however, the light-coloured moths struggled to hide themselves against the newly blackened environment, so black moths flourished. They survived much longer, enabling them to pass on their mutation to their offspring and altering the gene pool.

It is easy to see how a genetic change like the one that occurred in the peppered moth could give an advantage to a species, but what about genetic diseases? Even these can work to our advantage. A good example is sickle cell anaemia – a genetic disorder that's quite common in the African population.

A single nucleotide mutation causes haemoglobin, the protein involved in binding oxygen in red blood cells, to misfold. Instead of forming its proper shape, the haemoglobin clumps together, causing red blood cells to deform. They then have trouble fitting through narrow capillaries and often become damaged or destroyed. However, this genetic mutation persists in the population because it has a protective effect against malaria. The malaria parasite spends part of its life cycle inside red blood cells and, when sickle cells rupture, it prevents the parasite from reproducing. Individuals with one copy of the sickle cell gene and one copy of the healthy haemoglobin gene have few symptoms of sickle cell anaemia,

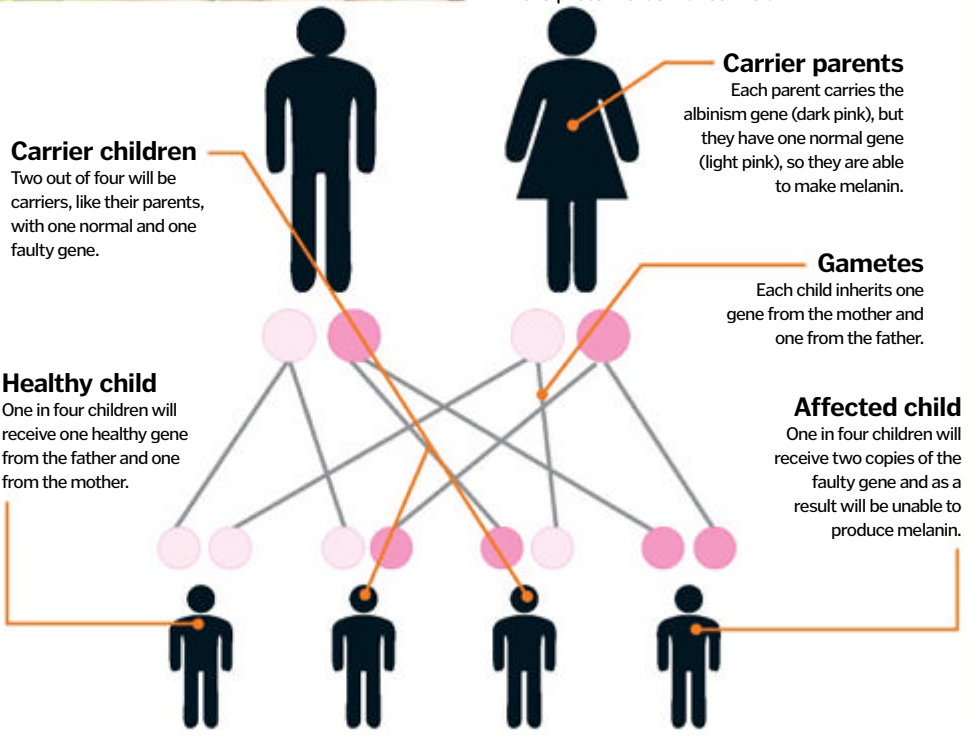
### Using genetics to convict criminals

Forensic scientists can use traces of DNA to identify individuals involved in criminal activity. Only about 0.1 per cent of the genome differs between individuals, so rather than sequencing the entire genome, scientists take 13 DNA regions that are known to vary between different people in order to create a 'DNA fingerprint'. In each of these regions there are two to 13 nucleotides in a repeating pattern hundreds of bases long – the length varies between individuals. Small pieces of DNA – referred to as probes – are used to identify these repeats and the length of each is determined by a technique called polymerase chain reaction (PCR). The odds that two people will have exactly the same 13-region profile is thought to be one in a billion or even less, so if all 13 regions are found to be a match then scientists can be fairly confident that they can tie a person to a crime scene.



### Why do we look like our parents?

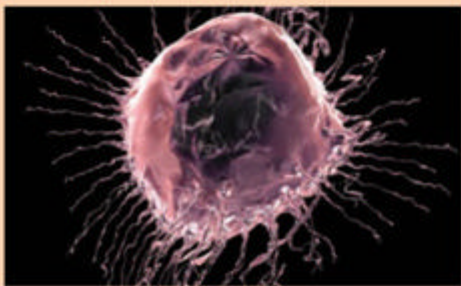
It's a common misconception that we inherit entire features from our parents – eg "You have your father's eyes." Actually inheritance is much more complicated – several genes work together to create traits in physical appearance; even eye colour isn't just down to one gene that codes for 'blue', 'brown' or 'green', etc. The combinations of genes from both of our parents create a mixture of their traits. However, there are some examples of single genes that do dictate an obvious physical characteristic all on their own. These are known as Mendelian traits, after the scientist Gregor Mendel who studied genetic inheritance in peas in the 1800s. One such trait is albinism – the absence of pigment in the skin, hair and eyes due to a defect in the protein that makes melanin.





but are protected from malaria too, allowing them to pass the gene on to their children.

Genetics is a complex and rapidly evolving field and more information about the function of DNA is being discovered all the time. It is now known that environmental influences can alter the way that DNA is packaged in the cell, restricting access to some genes and altering protein expression patterns. Known as epigenetics, these modifications do not actually alter the underlying DNA sequence, but regulate how it is accessed and used by the cell. Epigenetic changes can be passed on from one cell to its offspring, and thus provide an additional mechanism by which genetic information can be modified across generations of humans.

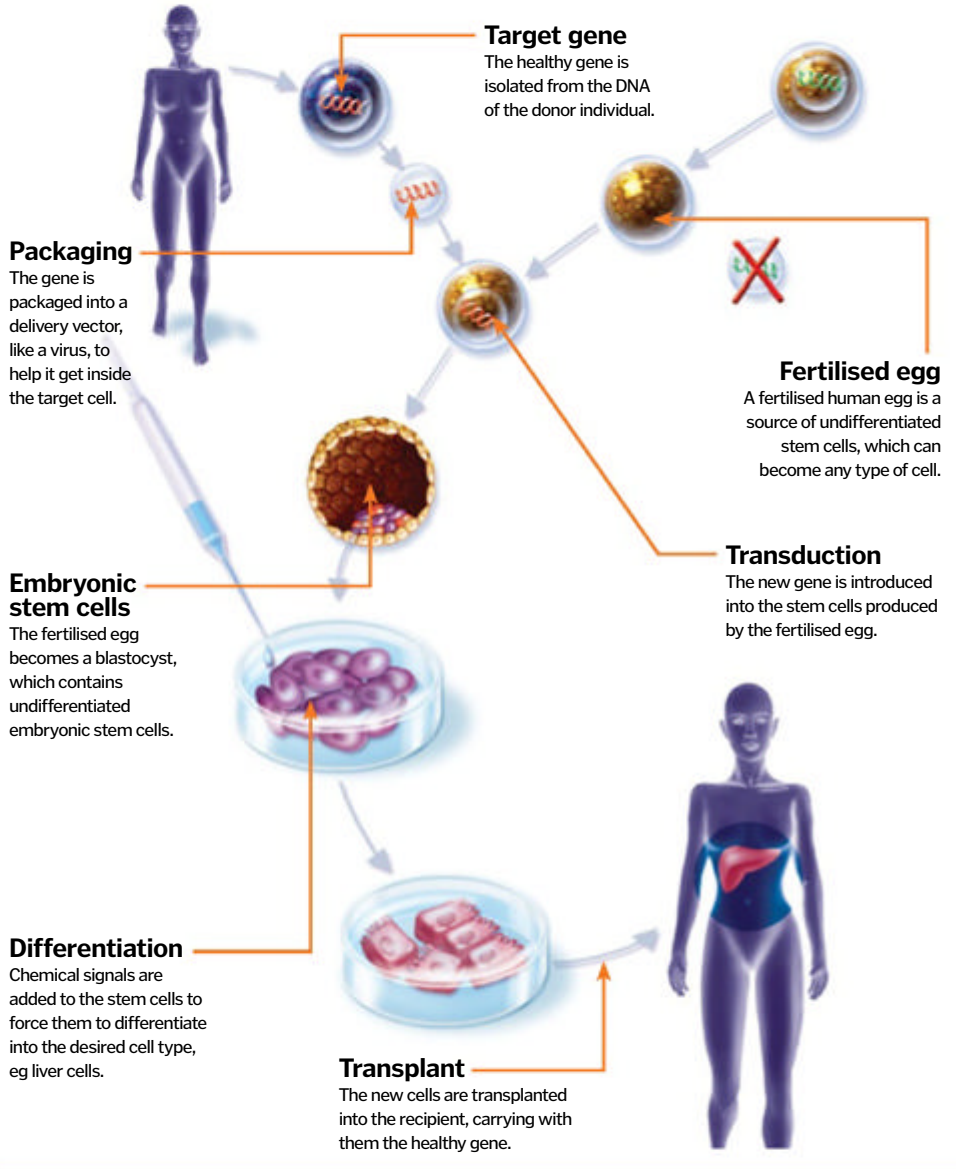


### When our genes go wrong...

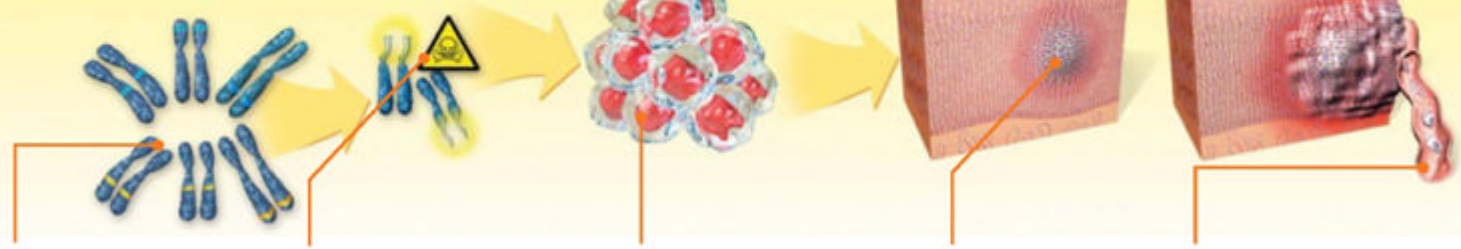
Cancer is not just the result of one or two genetic mutations - in fact, it takes a whole series of mistakes for a tumour to form. Cells contain oncogenes and tumour suppressor genes, whose healthy function is to tell the cell when it should and should not divide. If these become damaged, the cell cannot switch off its cell division programme and it will keep making copies of itself indefinitely. Each time a cell divides there is a risk that it will make a mistake when copying its DNA, and gradually the cell makes more and more errors, accumulating mutations that allow the tumour to progress into malignant cancer.

### Repairing faulty genes

We reveal how donated cells can be used to mend any damaged genes within the human body



### How tumours develop



**Tumour-associated genes**  
Genes normally involved in regulating cell behaviour can go on to cause cancer if they become mutated.

**Mutagens**  
Environmental factors, or mutagens - such as radiation and chemicals - can cause damage to the DNA, leading to mutations in key genes.

**Localised**  
Cancer usually starts with just one or a few mutated cells; these begin to divide uncontrollably in their local area creating a tumour.

**Invasion**  
As the tumour grows in size it starts to invade the surrounding area, taking over neighbouring tissues.

**Metastasis**  
Further mutations allow cells of the tumour to break free and enter the bloodstream. From here they can be distributed throughout the body.

# What happens when we burn ourselves?

Burns range from irritating to life-threatening – learn about the different types now



Most people associate burns with flames, but they have many other causes. A burn is medically defined as 'coagulative destruction' of skin, meaning any energy source can cause one. This energy damages underlying skin proteins and fat cells, causing breaks in the skin.

Burns are generally classified by their depth. First-degree (superficial) burns leave painful,

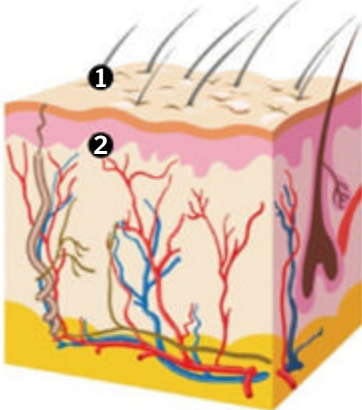
red skin, but without large blisters. Only the epidermis is damaged, so regrowth is fast. Second-degree burns (partial thickness) can be either superficial or deep. The skin usually blisters and can be very painful. The dermis layer is also damaged so regrowth is slow, taking several weeks or even months. In third-degree burns (full thickness) the skin is left white or pale, with no blistering and little to

no sensation. The basal growth layer is destroyed so no new skin can grow.

Even minor burns can cause problems if not treated properly. The first priority is to stop the burning process; cold running water is often the best first treatment. Infection, dehydration and protein loss are all problems that occur next, which our resilient skin can solve itself if the injury isn't too severe.

## How burns are measured

Classified by their depth, each burn case requires unique treatment

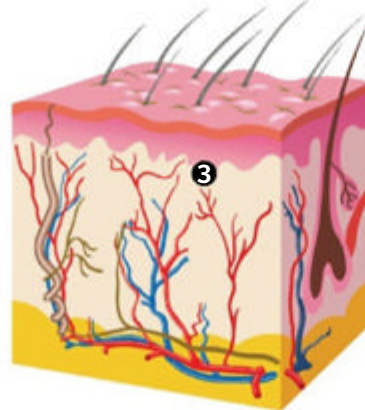


### 1 The skin

Your skin is vital to your wellbeing. It has multiple important functions, including temperature control, sensation and appearance.

### 2 Basal layer

This layer is the key to regeneration, as new skin cells grow from here. If undamaged, regrowth occurs without any need for medical assistance.

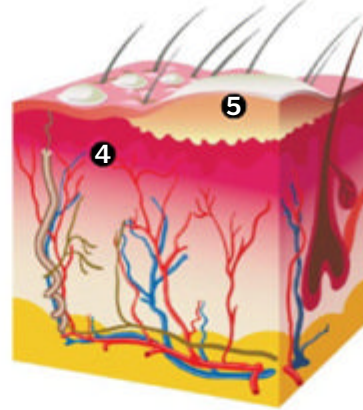


### 3 First-degree burn

Only the uppermost skin layers (known as the epidermis) are affected, but the burn is painful, leaving the area red, raw and tender to the touch.

### 4 Second-degree burn

These partial-thickness burns affect the upper or deep dermal layers, and like first-degree burns hurt a lot because the nerve endings remain active.

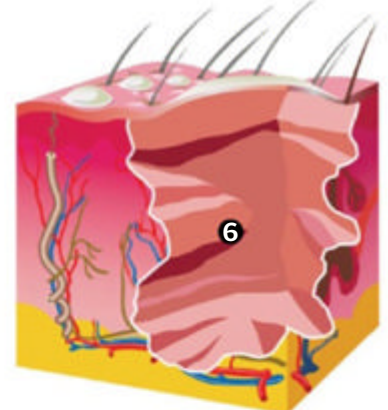


### 5 Blisters

Blisters appear when the epidermis separates from the dermis, and are especially common in first and second-degree burns.

### 6 Third-degree burn

Deep burns destroy the basal layer and nerve endings, so they are painless. Regrowth will not occur alone, so skin grafts are needed.



## Four major causes of burns

### Thermal

Heat can come from a flame or friction (known as dry burns), hot liquids (known as wet burns) or contact with hot surfaces.

### Chemical

Alkalis burn for hours, whereas acids are short-lived. These require no heat to cause a burn, and can take time to develop after skin contact.

### Radiation

Ionising radiation burns can cover the body due to exposure. Sunburn is a common type of radiation burn, caused by exposure to UV in sunlight.

### Electrical

These often cause deep burns that heal slowly. A small skin defect may mask underlying damage, which can extend throughout the body.



© Thinkstock



HOW IT WORKS

# THE BODY AT WORK

## Blood vessels

# Blood vessels

Arteries and veins form the plumbing system of the human body, carrying blood through a complex system of different sized and shaped pipes. We find out how they work...



The network of blood vessels in the human body must cope with different volumes of blood travelling at different pressures. These blood vessels come in a multitude of different sizes and shapes, from the large, elastic aorta down to very tiny, one-cell-thick capillaries.

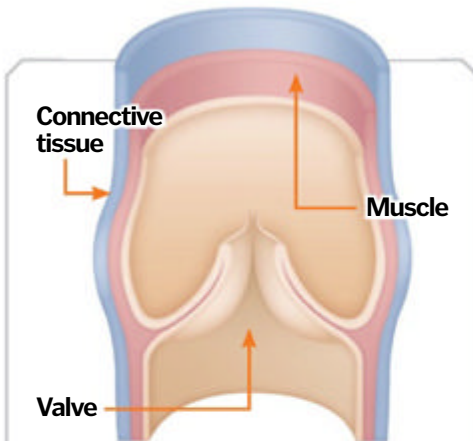
Blood is the ultimate multitasker. It carries oxygen for various tissues to use, nutrients to provide energy, removes waste products and even helps you warm up or cool down. It also carries vital clotting factors which stop us bleeding. Blood comes in just

two varieties; oxygen-rich (oxygenated) blood is what the body uses for energy, and is bright red. After it has been used, this oxygen-depleted (deoxygenated) blood is returned for recycling and is dark red (not blue, as is often thought).

Blood is carried in vessels, of which there are two main different types – arteries and veins. Arteries carry blood away from the heart and deal with high pressures, and so have strong elastic walls. Veins carry blood back towards the heart and deal with lower pressures, so have thinner walls. Tiny capillaries connect arteries and veins together,

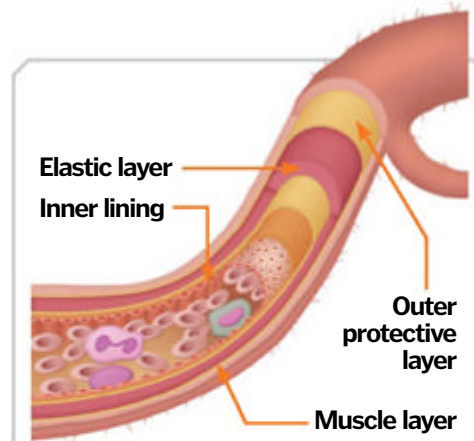
like small back-roads connecting motorways to dual carriageways.

Arteries and veins are constructed differently to cope with the varying pressures, but work in perfect tandem to ensure that the blood reaches its final destination correctly. However, sometimes things go wrong which can lead to certain medical problems: varicose veins from failing valves; deep vein thrombosis from blood clots blocking the deep venous system; heart attacks from blocked arteries; and lastly life-threatening aneurysms from weak artery walls.



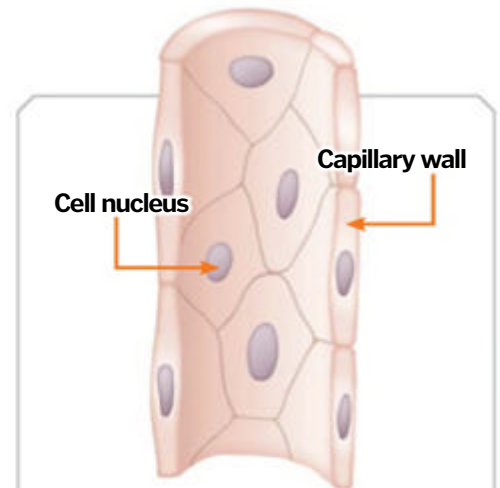
### How do veins work?

Veins carry low pressure blood. They contain numerous one-way valves which stop backwards flow of blood, which can occur when pressure falls in-between heartbeats. Blood flows through these valves towards the heart but cannot pass back through them in the other direction. Valves can fail over time, especially in the legs. This leads to saggy, unsightly veins, known as varicose veins.



### Arteries – under pressure!

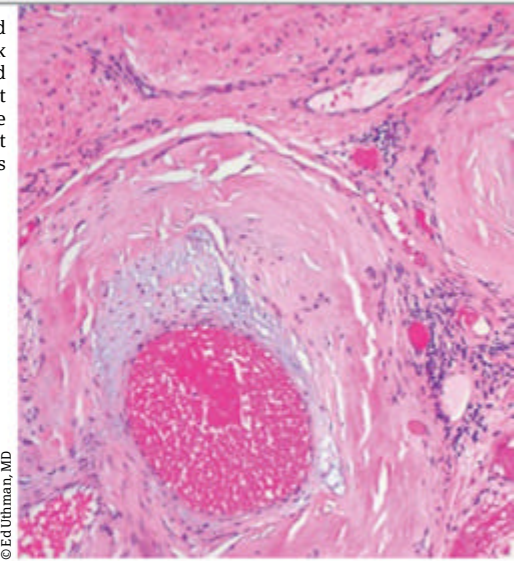
Arteries cope with all of the pressure generated by the heart and deliver oxygen-rich blood to where it needs to be 24 hours a day. The walls of arteries contain elastic muscles, allowing them to stretch and contract to cope with the wide changes in pressure generated from the heart. Since the pressure is high, valves are unnecessary, unlike the low-pressure venous system.



### Connecting it all together

Capillaries are the tiny vessels which connect small arteries and veins together. Their walls are only one cell thick, so this is the perfect place to trade substances with surrounding tissues. Red blood cells within these capillaries trade water, oxygen, carbon dioxide, nutrients, waste and even heat. Because these vessels are only one cell wide, the cells have to line up to pass through.

Most of the amyloid consisted of acellular pink globules that effaced and expanded the node, but this image shows the characteristic involvement of blood vessel walls



© Ed Uelman, MD

**DID YOU KNOW?** Vascular surgeons can bypass blocked arteries using either the patient's own veins or synthetic grafts

# A game of two halves

In human beings, the heart is a double pump, meaning that there are two sides to the circulatory system. The left side of the heart pumps oxygen and nutrient-rich blood to the brain, vital organs and other

body tissues (the systemic circulation). The right side of the heart pumps deoxygenated blood towards the lungs, so it can pick up new oxygen molecules to be used again (the pulmonary circulation).

*"Plasma carries all of the different types of cells"*

## What's in blood?

It's only the iron in red blood cells which make blood red – take these cells away and what you're left with is a watery yellowish solution called plasma. Plasma carries all of the different types of cells and also contains sugars, fats, proteins and salts. The main cell types are red blood cells (formed from iron and haemoglobin, which carries oxygen around the body), white blood cells (which fight infection from bacteria, viruses and fungi) and platelets (tiny cell fragments which stop bleeding by forming clots at the sites of any damage).

## Blood vessels

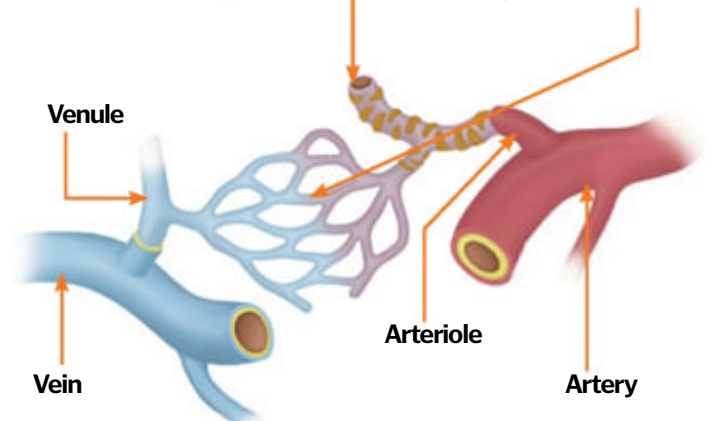
*Different shapes and sizes*

### Capillary sphincter muscles

These tiny muscles can open and close, which can decrease or increase blood flow through a capillary bed. When muscles exercise, these muscles relax and blood flow into the muscle increases.

### Capillary bed

This is the capillary network that connects the two systems. Here, exchange of various substances occurs with surrounding tissues, through the one-cell thick walls.



### Arteries

All arteries carry blood away from the heart. They carry oxygenated blood, except for the pulmonary artery, which carries deoxygenated blood to the lungs.

### Lungs

In the lungs, carbon dioxide is expelled from the body and is swapped for fresh oxygen from the air. This oxygen-rich blood takes on a bright red colour.

### HEAD AND ARMS

**Aorta**  
The aorta is an artery which carries oxygenated blood to the body; it is the largest blood vessel in the body and copes with the highest pressure blood.

### LUNG

### LUNG

### HEART

### Veins

All veins carry blood to the heart. They carry deoxygenated blood, except for the pulmonary vein, which carries oxygenated blood back to the heart.

### The left side

The left side of the heart pumps oxygenated blood for the body to use. It pumps directly into arteries towards the brain and other body tissues.

### LIVER

### KIDNEY

### The right side

The right side of the heart pumps deoxygenated blood to the lungs, where blood exchanges carbon dioxide for fresh oxygen.

### Capillaries

Tiny capillaries connect arteries and veins together. They allow exchange of oxygen, nutrients and waste in the body's organs and tissues.

### TRUNK AND LEGS



HOW IT WORKS

# THE BODY AT WORK

*A look inside your blood*

# How your blood works

The science behind the miraculous fluid that feeds, heals and fights for your life

## White blood cells

White blood cells, or leukocytes, are the immune system's best weapon, searching out and destroying bacteria and producing antibodies against viruses. There are five different types of white blood cells, all with distinct functions.

## Platelet

When activated, these sticky cell fragments are essential to the clotting process. Platelets adhere to a wound opening to stem the flow of blood, then they team with a protein called fibrinogen to weave tiny threads that trap blood cells.

## Red blood cell

Known as erythrocytes, red blood cells are the body's delivery service, shuttling oxygen from the lungs to living cells throughout the body and returning carbon dioxide as waste.

## Blood vessel wall

Arteries and veins are composed of three tissue layers, a combination of elastic tissue, connective tissue and smooth muscle fibres that contract under signals from the sympathetic nervous system.

## Granulocyte

The most numerous type of white blood cell, granulocytes patrol the bloodstream destroying invading bacteria by engulfing and digesting them, often dying in the process.

© DKImages

**1. Discovery of veins and arteries**

In 300 BC, Greek anatomist Herophilus of Chalcidion figured out that arteries and veins not only carry blood, but are distinct pathways.

**2. First blood transfusion**

After a century of animal-human blood transfusions, James Blundell performed the first recorded human-to-human transfusion in 1818.

**3. Discovery of blood types**

In 1901, Austrian physician Karl Landsteiner was the first to identify three basic blood groups, revolutionising the success of blood transfusions.

*"1818 - first human-to-human transfusion"*

**DID YOU KNOW?** If you took all of the blood vessels out of your body and laid them end to end, they would stretch for 160,000km

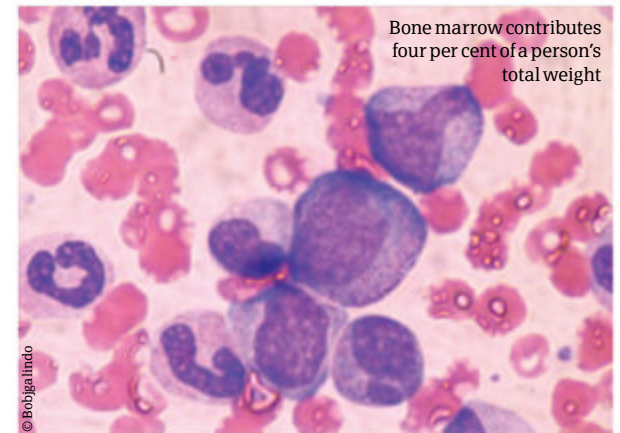
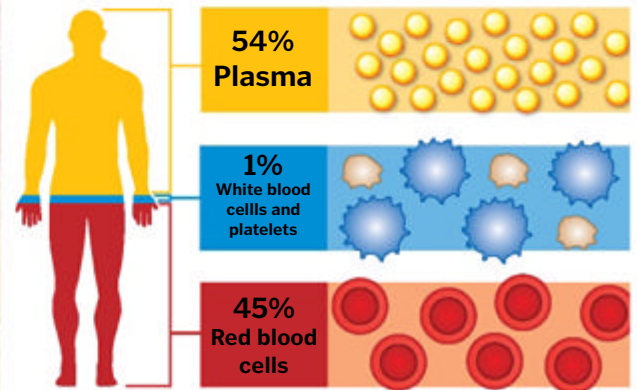
**Monocyte**

The largest type of white blood cell, monocytes are born in bone marrow, then circulate through the blood stream before maturing into macrophages, predatory immune system cells that live in organ tissue and bone.



**Components of blood**

Blood is a mix of solids and liquids, a blend of highly specialised cells and particles suspended in a protein-rich fluid called plasma. Red blood cells dominate the mix, carrying oxygen to living tissue and returning carbon dioxide to the lungs. For every 600 red blood cells, there is a single white blood cell, of which there are five different kinds. Cell fragments called platelets use their irregular surface to cling to vessel walls and initiate the clotting process.



**Plasma**

Composed of 92 per cent water, plasma is the protein-salt solution in which blood cells and particles travel through the bloodstream. Plasma helps regulate mineral exchange and pH, and carries the proteins necessary for clotting.

*"Red blood cells are so numerous because they perform the most essential function of blood"*



Blood is the river of life. It feeds oxygen and essential nutrients to living cells and carries away waste. It transports the foot soldiers of the immune system, white blood cells, which seek out and destroy invading bacteria and parasites. And it speeds platelets to the site of injury or tissue damage, triggering the body's miraculous process of self-repair.

Blood looks like a thick, homogenous fluid, but it's more like a

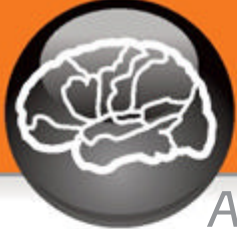
watery current of plasma – a straw-coloured, protein-rich fluid – carrying billions of microscopic solids consisting of red blood cells, white blood cells and cell fragments called platelets. The distribution is far from equal. Over half of blood is plasma, 45 per cent is red blood cells and a tiny fragment, less than one per cent, is composed of white blood cells and platelets.

Red blood cells are so numerous because they perform the most essential function of blood, which is to

deliver oxygen to every cell in the body and carry away carbon dioxide. As an adult, all of your red blood cells are produced in red bone marrow, the spongy tissue in the bulbous ends of long bones and at the centre of flat bones like hips and ribs. In the marrow, red blood cells start out as undifferentiated stem cells called hemocytoblasts. If the body detects a minuscule drop in oxygen carrying capacity, a hormone is released from the kidneys that triggers the stem cells to become red blood cells. Because red

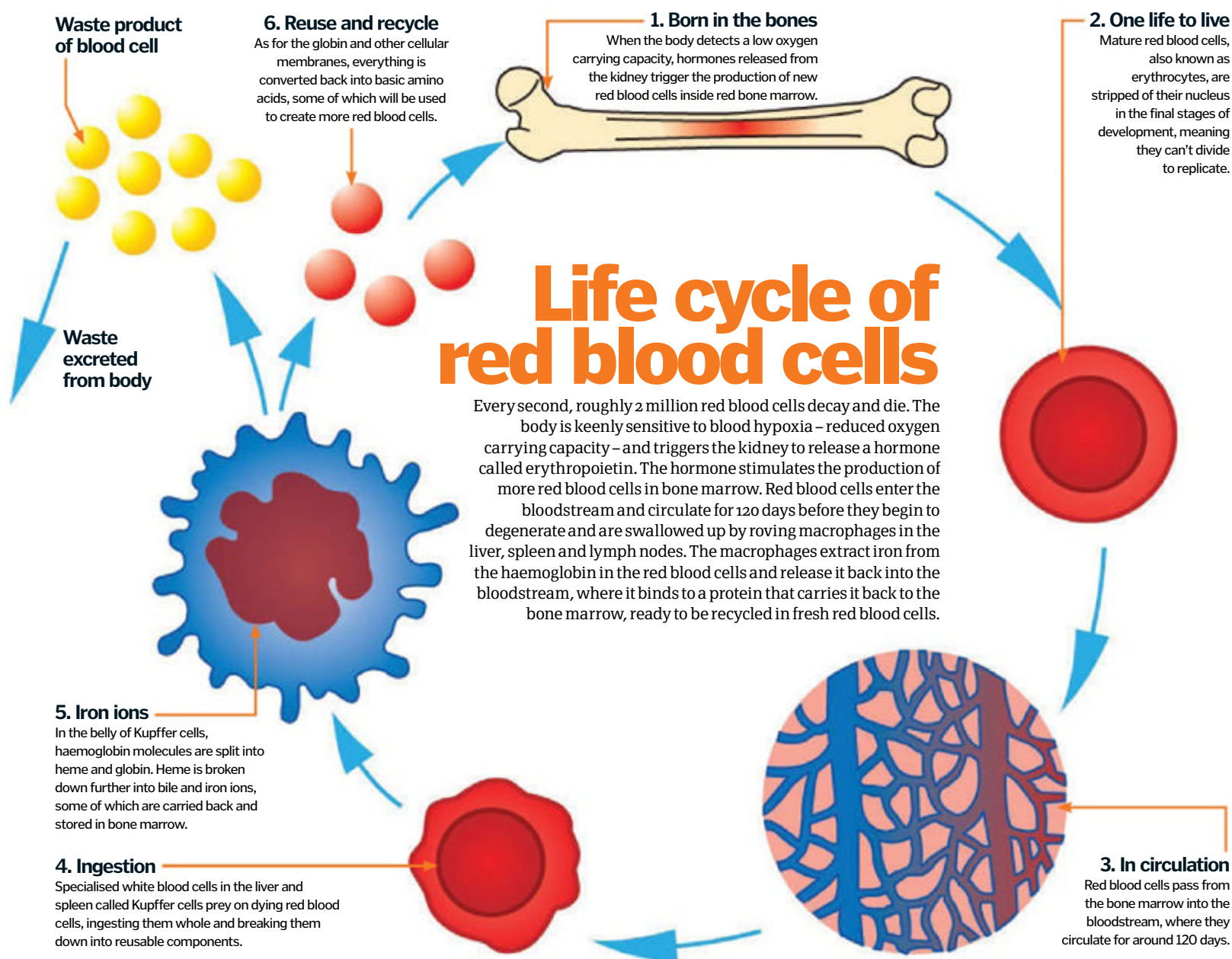
blood cells only live 120 days, the supply must be continuously replenished; roughly 2 million red blood cells are born every second.

A mature red blood cell has no nucleus. The nucleus is spit out during the final stages of the cell's two-day development before taking on the shape of a concave, doughnut-like disc. Like all cells, red blood cells are mostly water, but 97 per cent of their solid matter is haemoglobin, a complex protein that carries four atoms of iron. Those iron atoms have



# THE BODY AT WORK

*A look inside your blood*



## Life cycle of red blood cells

Every second, roughly 2 million red blood cells decay and die. The body is keenly sensitive to blood hypoxia – reduced oxygen carrying capacity – and triggers the kidney to release a hormone called erythropoietin. The hormone stimulates the production of more red blood cells in bone marrow. Red blood cells enter the bloodstream and circulate for 120 days before they begin to degenerate and are swallowed up by roving macrophages in the liver, spleen and lymph nodes. The macrophages extract iron from the haemoglobin in the red blood cells and release it back into the bloodstream, where it binds to a protein that carries it back to the bone marrow, ready to be recycled in fresh red blood cells.

the ability to form loose, reversible bonds with both oxygen and carbon dioxide – think of them as weak magnets – making red blood cells such an effective transport system for respiratory gasses. Haemoglobin, which turns bright red when oxygenated, is what gives blood its characteristic colour.

To provide oxygen to every living cell, red blood cells must be pumped through the body's circulatory system. The right side of the heart pumps CO<sub>2</sub>-heavy blood into the lungs, where it releases its waste gasses and picks up oxygen. The left side of the heart then pumps the freshly oxygenated blood out into the body through a system of arteries and capillaries, some as narrow as a single cell. As the

red blood cells release their oxygen, they pick up carbon dioxide molecules, then course through the veins back toward the heart, where they are pumped back into the lungs to 'exhale' the excess CO<sub>2</sub> and collect some more precious O<sub>2</sub>.

White blood cells are greatly outnumbered by red blood cells, but they are critical to the function of the immune system. Most white blood cells are also produced in red bone marrow, but white blood cells – unlike red blood cells – come in five different varieties, each with its own specialised immune function. The first three varieties, collectively called granulocytes, engulf and digest bacteria and parasites, and play a role in allergic reactions. Lymphocytes,

another type of white blood cell, produce anti-bodies that build up our immunity to repeat intruders. And monocytes, the largest of the white blood cells, enter organ tissue and become macrophages, microbes that ingest bad bacteria and help break down dead red blood cells into reusable parts.

Platelets aren't cells at all, but fragments of much larger stem cells found in bone marrow. In their resting state, they look like smooth oval plates, but when activated to form a clot they take on an irregular form with many protruding arms called pseudopods. This shape helps them stick to blood vessel walls and to each other, forming a physical barrier around wound sites. With the help of

proteins and clotting factors found in plasma, platelets weave a mesh of fibrin that stems blood loss and triggers the formation of new collagen and skin cells.

But even these three functions of blood – oxygen supplier, immune system defender and wound healer – only begin to scratch the surface of the critical role of blood in each and every bodily process. When blood circulates through the small intestine, it absorbs sugars from digested food, which are transported to the liver to be stored as energy. When blood passes through the kidneys, it is scrubbed of excess urea and salts, waste that will leave the body as urine. The proteins transport vitamins, hormones, enzymes, sugar and electrolytes.

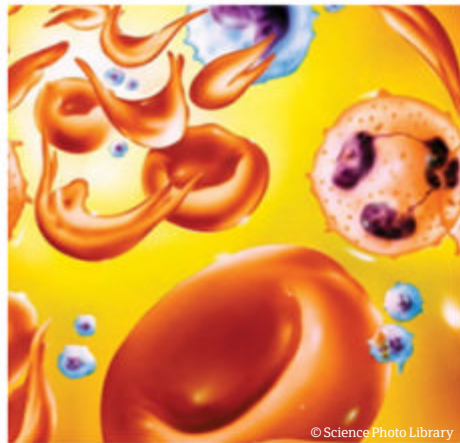
**DID YOU KNOW?** Until the 23rd week of foetal development, red blood cells are produced in the liver, not red bone marrow

### Haemophilia

This rare genetic blood disorder severely inhibits the clotting mechanism of blood, causing excessive bleeding, internal bruising and joint problems. Platelets are essential to the clotting and healing process, producing threads of fibrin with help from proteins in the bloodstream called clotting factors. People who suffer from haemophilia – almost exclusively males – are missing one of those clotting factors, making it difficult to seal off blood vessels after even minor injuries.

### Sickle cell anaemia

Anaemia is the name for any blood disorder that results in a dangerously low red blood cell count. In sickle cell anaemia, which afflicts one out of every 625 children of African descent, red blood cells elongate into a sickle shape after releasing their oxygen. The sickle-shaped cells die prematurely, leading to anaemia, or sometimes lodge in blood vessels, causing terrible pain and even organ damage. Interestingly, people who carry only one gene for sickle cell anaemia are immune to malaria.

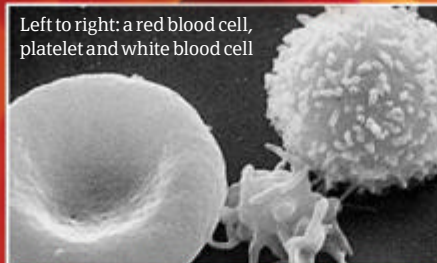


© Science Photo Library

*“Platelets weave a mesh of fibrin that stems blood loss”*

## Blood disorders

Blood is a delicate balancing act, with the body constantly regulating oxygen flow, iron content and clotting ability. Unfortunately, there are several genetic conditions and chronic illnesses that can disturb the balance, sometimes with deadly consequences.



Left to right: a red blood cell, platelet and white blood cell

### Thalassemia

Another rare blood disorder affecting 100,000 newborns worldwide each year, thalassemia inhibits the production of haemoglobin, leading to severe anaemia. People who are born with the most serious form of the disease, also called Cooley's anaemia, suffer from enlarged hearts, livers and spleens, and brittle bones. The most effective treatment is frequent blood transfusions, although a few lucky patients have been cured through bone marrow transplants from perfectly matching donors.

### Hemochromatosis

One of the most common genetic blood disorders, hemochromatosis is the medical term for “iron overload,” in which your body absorbs and stores too much iron from food. Severity varies wildly, and many people experience few symptoms, but others suffer serious liver damage or scarring (cirrhosis), irregular heartbeat, diabetes and even heart failure. Symptoms can be aggravated by taking too much vitamin C.



### Deep vein thrombosis

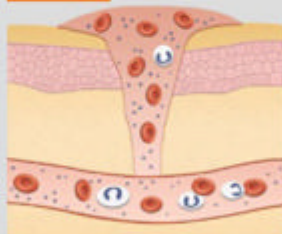
Thrombosis is the medical term for any blood clot that is large enough to block a blood vessel. When a blood clot forms in the large, deep veins of the upper thigh, it's called deep vein thrombosis. If such a clot breaks free, it can circulate through the bloodstream, pass through the heart and become lodged in arteries in the lung, causing a pulmonary embolism. Such a blockage can severely damage portions of the lungs, and multiple embolisms can even be fatal.

## Blood and healing

More than a one-trick pony, your blood is a vital cog in the healing process

Think of blood as the body's emergency response team to an injury. Platelets emit signals that encourage blood vessels to contract, stemming blood loss. The platelets then collect around the wound, reacting with a protein in plasma to form fibrin, a tissue that weaves into a mesh. Blood flow returns and white blood cells begin their hunt for bacteria. Fibroblasts create beds of fresh collagen and capillaries to fuel skin cell growth. The scab begins to contract, pulling the growing skin cells closer together until damaged tissue is replaced.

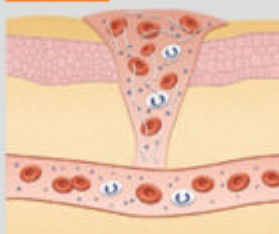
#### STAGE 1



#### INJURY

When the skin surface is cut, torn or scraped deeply enough, blood seeps from broken blood vessels to fill the wound. To stem the flow of bleeding, the blood vessels around the wound constrict.

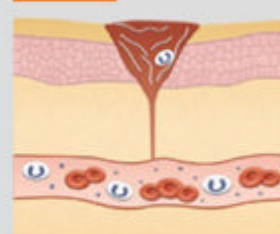
#### STAGE 2



#### HAEMOSTASIS

Activated platelets aggregate around the surface of the wound, stimulating vasoconstriction. Platelets react with a protein in plasma to form fibrin, a web-like mesh of stringy tissue.

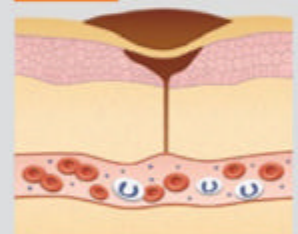
#### STAGE 3



#### INFLAMMATORY STAGE

Once the wound is capped with a drying clot, blood vessels open up again, releasing plasma and white blood cells into the damaged tissue. Macrophages digest harmful bacteria and dead cells.

#### STAGE 4



#### PROLIFERATIVE STAGE

Fibroblasts lay fresh layers of collagen inside the wound and capillaries begin to supply blood for the forming of new skin cells. Fibrin strands and collagen pull the sides of the wound together.



# Hormones

## How the human endocrine system develops and controls the human body



The glands in the endocrine system use chemicals called hormones to communicate with and control the cells and organs in our bodies.

They are ductless glands that secrete different types of hormone directly into the bloodstream and target specific organs.

The target organs contain hormone receptors that respond to the chemical instructions supplied by the hormone. There are 50 different types of hormone in the body and they consist of three basic types: peptides, amines and steroids.

Steroids include the testosterone hormone. This is secreted by the cortex of the adrenal gland, the male and female reproductive organs and by the placenta in pregnant

women. The majority of hormones are peptides that consist of short chains of amino acids. They are secreted by the pituitary and parathyroid glands. Amine hormones are secreted by the thyroid and adrenal medulla and are related to the fight or flight response.

The changes that are caused by the endocrine system act more slowly than the nervous system as they regulate growth, moods, metabolism, reproductive processes and a relatively constant stable internal environment for the body (homeostasis). The pituitary, thyroid and adrenal glands combine to form the major elements of the body's endocrine system along with various other elements such as the male testes, the female ovaries and the pancreas.

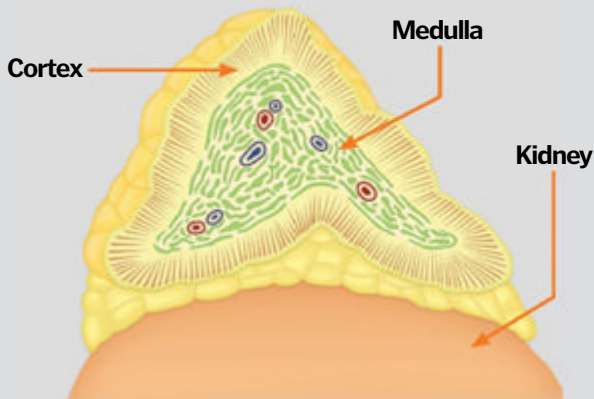
*"Amine hormones are secreted by the thyroid and adrenal medulla"*

## Adrenal gland

We have two adrenal glands that are positioned on top of both kidneys. The triangular-shaped glands each consist of a two-centimetre thick outer cortex that produces steroid hormones, which include testosterone, cortisol and aldosterone.

The ellipsoid shaped, inner part of the gland is known as the medulla, which produces noradrenaline and adrenaline. These hormones increase the heart rate, and the body's levels of oxygen and glucose while reducing non-essential body functions.

The adrenal gland is known as the 'fight or flight' gland as it controls how we respond to stressful situations, and prepares the body for the demands of either fighting or running away as fast as you can. Prolonged stress over-loads this gland and causes illness.



## The endocrine system

### Thymus

Is part of the immune system. It produces thymosins that control the behaviour of white blood T-cells.

### Adrenal glands

Controls the burning of protein and fat, and regulates blood pressure. The medulla secretes adrenaline to stimulate the fight or flight response.

### Male testes

These two glands produce testosterone that is responsible for sperm production, muscle and bone mass and sex drive.

### Hypothalamus

Releases hormones to the pituitary gland to promote its production and secretion of hormones to the rest of the body.

### Pituitary gland

Releases hormones to the male and female reproductive organs and to the adrenal glands. Stimulates growth in childhood and maintains adult bone and muscle mass.

### Pineal gland

Secretes melatonin, which controls sleep patterns and controls the production of hormones related to the reproductive organs.

© DK Images

**DID YOU KNOW?** When you are excited the hypothalamus and pituitary gland release opiate-like endorphins

**Hypothalamus**

**Hypothalamus neurons**

These synthesise and send hormones to the posterior lobe.

**Portal veins**

Hormones from the hypothalamus are carried to the anterior lobe through these veins.

**Anterior lobe**

**Posterior lobe**



# Pituitary gland

The pea-sized pituitary gland is a major endocrine gland that works under the control of the hypothalamus. The two organs inside the brain work in concert and mediate feedback loops in the endocrine system to maintain control and stability within the body.

The pituitary gland features an anterior (front) lobe and a posterior (rear) lobe. The anterior lobe secretes growth hormones that stimulate the development of the muscles and bones; it also stimulates the development of ovarian follicles in the female ovary. In males, it stimulates the

production of sperm cells. The posterior lobe stores vasopressin and oxytocin that is supplied by the hypothalamus. Vasopressin allows the retention of water in the kidneys and suppresses the need to excrete urine. It also raises blood pressure by contracting the blood vessels in the heart and lungs.

Oxytocin influences the dilation of the cervix before giving birth and the contraction of the uterus after birth. The lactation of the mammary glands are stimulated by oxytocin when mothers begin to breastfeed.

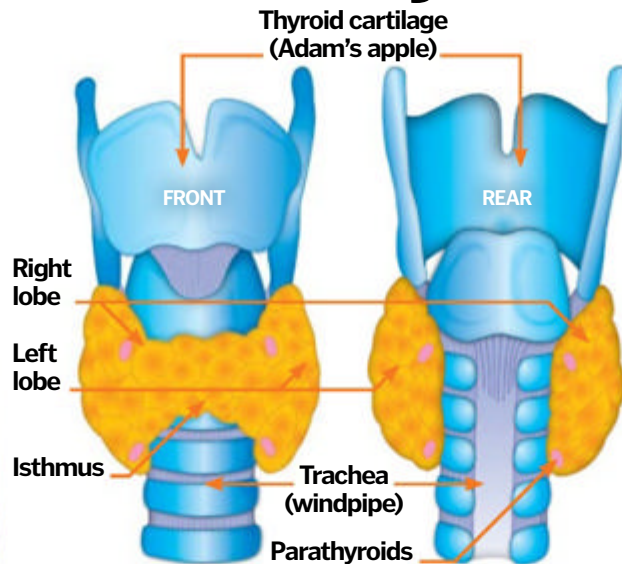
**Parathyroid**

Works in combination with the thyroid to control levels of calcium.

**Thyroid**

Important for maintaining the metabolism of the body. It releases T3 and T4 hormones to control the breakdown of food and store it, or release it as energy.

# Thyroid and parathyroids



The two lobes of the thyroid sit on each side of the windpipe and are linked together by the isthmus that runs in front of the windpipe. It stimulates the amount of body oxygen and energy consumption, thereby keeping the metabolic rate of the body at the current levels to keep you healthy and active.

The hypothalamus and the anterior pituitary gland are in overall control of the thyroid and they respond to changes in the body by either suppressing or increasing thyroid stimulating hormones. Overactive thyroids cause excessive sweating, weight loss and sensitivity to heat, whereas underactive thyroids cause sensitivity to hot and cold, baldness and weight gain. The thyroid can swell during puberty and pregnancy or due to viral infections or lack of iodine in a person's diet.

The four small parathyroids regulate the calcium levels in the body; it releases hormones when calcium levels are low. If the level of calcium is too high the thyroid releases calcitonin to reduce it. Therefore, the thyroid and parathyroids work in tandem.

**Pancreas**

Maintains healthy blood sugar levels in the blood stream.

**Female ovaries**

Are stimulated by hormones from the pituitary gland and control the menstrual cycle.

# Pancreatic cells

The pancreas is positioned in the abdominal cavity above the small intestine. It consists of two types of cell, the exocrine cells that do not secrete their output into the bloodstream but the endocrine cells do.

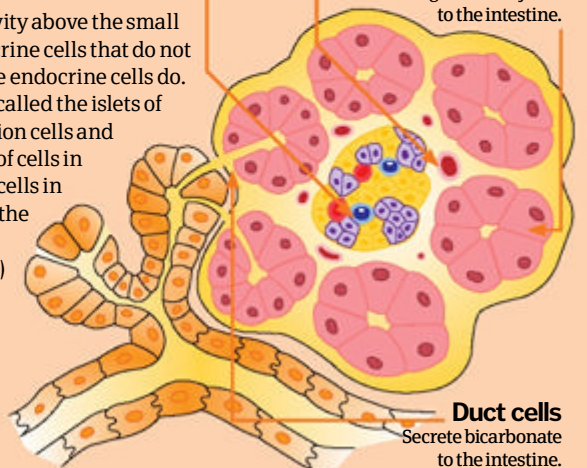
The endocrine cells are contained in clusters called the islets of Langerhans. They number approximately 1 million cells and are only one or two per cent of the total number of cells in the pancreas. There are four types of endocrine cells in the pancreas. The beta cells secrete insulin and the alpha cells secrete glucagon, both of which stimulate the production of blood sugar (glucose) in the body. If the Beta cells die or are destroyed it causes type 1 diabetes, which is fatal unless treated with insulin injections.

The other two cells are the gamma and delta cells. The former reduces appetite and the latter reduces the absorption of food in the intestine.

**Islets of Langerhans**

**Red blood cells**

**Acinar cells**  
These secrete digestive enzymes to the intestine.



**Duct cells**  
Secrete bicarbonate to the intestine.



# How does the body filter waste?

Every day the body produces waste products that enter the bloodstream – but how do we get rid of them?



The human urinary system's primary function is to remove by-products which remain in the blood after the body has metabolised food. The process is made up of several different key features. Generally, this system consists of two kidneys, two ureters, the bladder, two sphincter muscles (one internal, one external) and a urethra and these work alongside the intestines, lungs and skin, all of which excrete waste products from the body.

The abdominal aorta is an important artery to the system as this feeds the renal artery and vein, which supply the kidneys with blood. This blood is filtered by the kidneys to remove waste products, such as urea which is formed through amino acid metabolism. Through communication with other areas of the body, such as the hypothalamus, the kidneys also control

water levels in the body, sodium and potassium levels among other electrolytes, blood pressure, pH of the blood and are also involved in red blood cell production through the creation and release of the hormone erythropoietin. Consequently, they are absolutely crucial to optimum body operation.

After blood has been filtered by the kidneys, the waste products then travel down the ureters to the bladder. The bladder's walls expand out to hold the urine until the body can excrete the waste out through the urethra. The internal and external sphincters then control the release of urine.

Generally, a human will produce approximately 2.5-3 litres of urine a day, although this can vary dramatically dependant on external factors such as water consumption.

## Kidneys

This is where liquids are filtered and nutrients are absorbed before urine exits into the ureters.

## Ureter

These tubes link the kidneys and the bladder.

## Inferior vena cava

This carries deoxygenated blood back from the kidneys to the right atria of the heart.

## Abdominal aorta

This artery supplies blood to the kidneys, via the renal artery and vein. This blood is then cleansed by the kidneys.

## Bladder

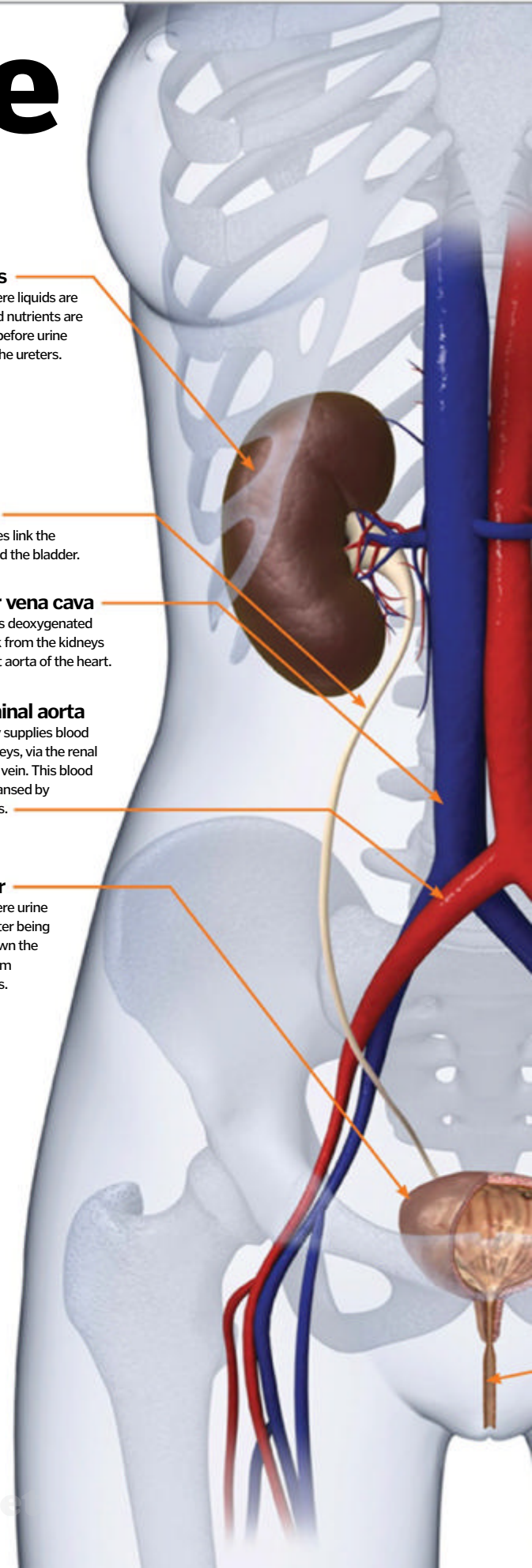
This is where urine gathers after being passed down the ureters from the kidneys.

*"Generally, a human will produce 2.5-3 litres of urine a day"*

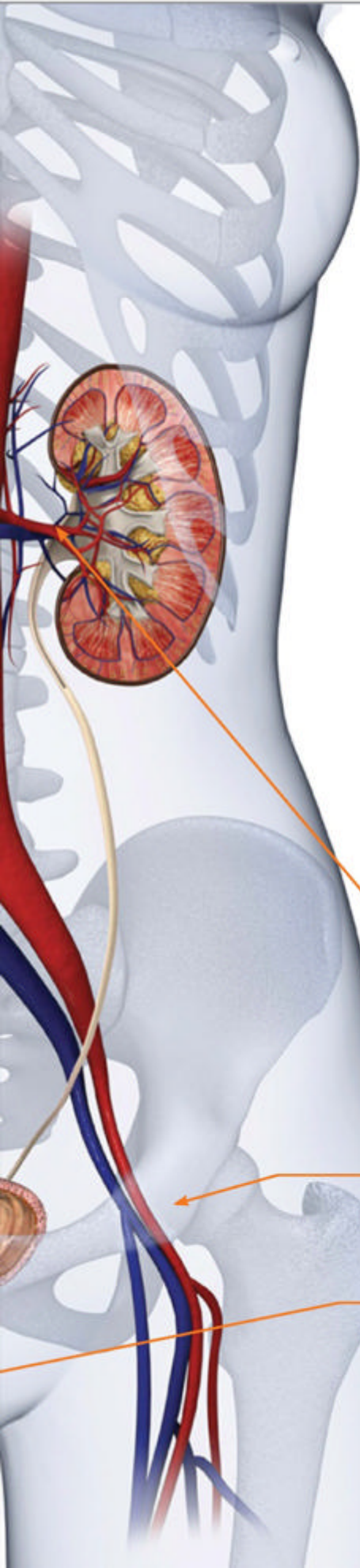
## How do the kidneys work?

The kidneys will have around 150-180 litres of blood to filter per day, but only pass around two litres of waste down the ureters to the bladder for excretion, therefore the kidneys return much of this blood, minus most of the waste products, to the heart for re-oxygenation and recirculation around the body.

The way the kidneys do this is to pass the blood through a small filtering unit called a nephron. Each kidney has around a million of these, which are made up of a number of small blood capillaries and a tube called the renal tubule. The blood capillaries sift the normal cells and proteins from the blood for recirculation and then direct the waste products into the renal tubule. This waste, which will primarily consist of urea, mixes with water and forms urine as it passes through the renal tubule and then into the ureter on its way to the bladder.



**DID YOU KNOW?** On average, you make the same amount of urine in the day as in the night



## Why do we get thirsty?

Maintaining the balance between the minerals and salts in our body and water is very important. When this is out of balance, the body tells us to consume more liquids to redress this imbalance in order for the body to continue operating effectively.

This craving, or thirst, can be caused by too high a concentration of salts in the body, or by the water volume in the body dropping too low for optimal operation. Avoiding dehydration is important as long term dehydration can cause renal failure, among other conditions.

## The human urinary system

### Renal artery and vein

This supplies blood to the kidneys in order for them to operate, and then removes deoxygenated blood after use by the kidneys.

### Pelvis

The bladder sits in the pelvis, and the urethra passes through it for urine to exit the body.

### Urethra

The urethra is the tube that urine travels through to exit the body.

© DK Images

## How do we store waste until we're ready to expel it?

The bladder stores waste products by allowing the urine to enter through the ureter valves, which attach the ureter to the bladder. The walls relax as urine enters and this allows the bladder to stretch. When the bladder becomes full, the nerves in the bladder communicate with the brain and cause the individual to feel the urge to urinate. The internal and external sphincters will then relax, allowing urine to pass down the urethra.

### Bladder fills

#### 1. Ureters

These tubes connect to the kidneys and urine flows down to the bladder through them.

#### 2. Internal urethral sphincter

This remains closed to ensure urine does not escape unexpectedly.

#### 3. External urethral sphincter

This secondary sphincter also remains closed to ensure no urine escapes.

#### 4. Ureter valves

These valves are situated at the end of the ureters and let urine in.

#### 5. Bladder walls (controlled by detrusor muscles)

The detrusor muscles in the wall of the bladder relax to allow expansion of the bladder as necessary.

### Bladder empties

#### 1. Internal urethral sphincter

This relaxes when the body is ready to expel the waste.

#### 2. External urethral sphincter

This also relaxes for the urine to exit the body.

#### 3. Bladder walls (controlled by detrusor muscles)

These muscles contract to force the urine out of the bladder.

#### 4. Urethra

Urine travels down this passageway to exit the body.



# Tracheotomy surgery

Discover the science and tech behind this life-saving procedure



If the upper airway is blocked, by trauma, cancer or inflammation, an alternative route must be found for air to enter the lungs.

Planned tracheotomies are performed under general anaesthesia or sedation. The neck is extended backwards to allow the surgeon to easily identify the structures in the throat and to make an accurate incision (see diagram). First, a vertical cut is made in the skin, below the tracheal cartilage, and the underlying muscle and blood vessels are carefully moved out of the way to expose the trachea.

The trachea is normally held open by C-shaped rings of cartilage, which prevent the airway from collapsing. A hole is made between the third and fourth rings, allowing the surgeon access to the airway without disrupting the cartilage supports. A tracheotomy tube is then inserted into the airway and secured to the neck. If the tracheal opening is going to be a permanent feature rather than temporary then a piece of cartilage may be removed to allow the tube to sit more comfortably.

The vocal cords sit just behind the tracheal cartilage, above the tracheotomy incision site, but in order to talk, air must be able to pass through the vocal cords to make them vibrate. Some tracheotomy tubes contain unidirectional valves, enabling the patient to breathe in through the tube and out through their mouth, which provides good air supply to the lungs, without hampering speech.

If the patient is unable to breathe unaided, a ventilator may be attached to mechanically move air in and out of the lungs.

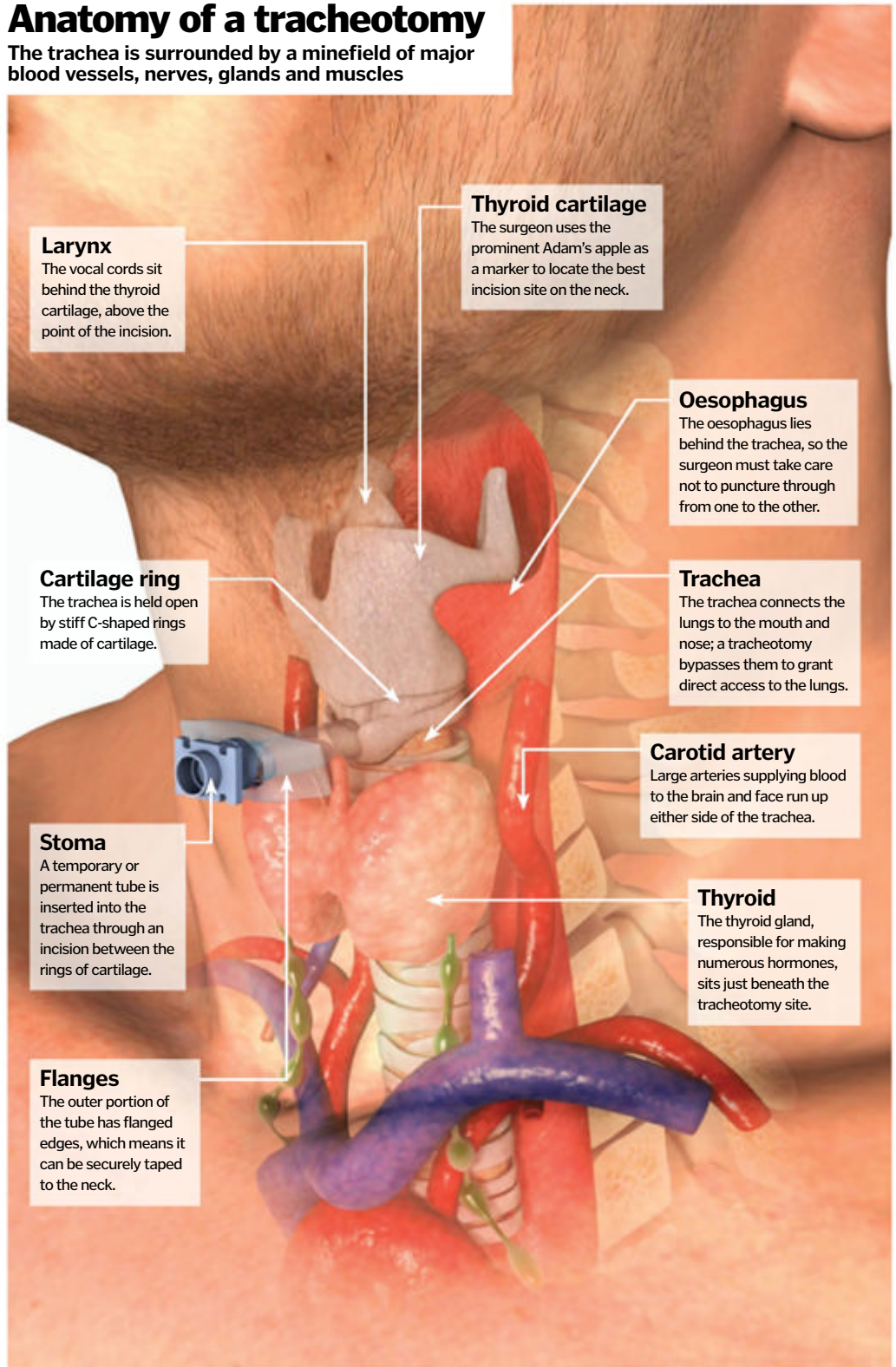
## Have you got a pen?

A tracheotomy is a complex procedure, so in life-threatening, emergency situations a faster procedure - known as a cricothyrotomy (also called cricothyroidotomy) - may be performed. A higher incision is made just below the thyroid cartilage (Adam's apple) and then through the cricothyroid membrane, directly into the trachea.

It is possible to perform this procedure with a sharp instrument and any hollow tube, such as a straw or a ballpoint pen case. However, finding the correct location to make the incision is challenging, and without medical training there is great risk of damaging major blood vessels, the oesophagus or the vocal cords.

## Anatomy of a tracheotomy

The trachea is surrounded by a minefield of major blood vessels, nerves, glands and muscles



### Larynx

The vocal cords sit behind the thyroid cartilage, above the point of the incision.

### Thyroid cartilage

The surgeon uses the prominent Adam's apple as a marker to locate the best incision site on the neck.

### Oesophagus

The oesophagus lies behind the trachea, so the surgeon must take care not to puncture through from one to the other.

### Cartilage ring

The trachea is held open by stiff C-shaped rings made of cartilage.

### Trachea

The trachea connects the lungs to the mouth and nose; a tracheotomy bypasses them to grant direct access to the lungs.

### Carotid artery

Large arteries supplying blood to the brain and face run up either side of the trachea.

### Stoma

A temporary or permanent tube is inserted into the trachea through an incision between the rings of cartilage.

### Thyroid

The thyroid gland, responsible for making numerous hormones, sits just beneath the tracheotomy site.

### Flanges

The outer portion of the tube has flanged edges, which means it can be securely taped to the neck.

## Where did hay fever get its name?

A Hay allergy B Harvesting C Doctor's name



### Answer:

The term hay fever has nothing to do with hay, and everything to do with trees, grasses and ragweed. The name came about because symptoms would strike during hay-harvesting season, when these pollens would be rife.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Allergic diseases, including asthma, are the fifth most common chronic disease in all ages

# When hay fever attacks

## When summer strikes, why do some of us suffer?



We trample on lawns and mow them down, but eventually grass gets revenge. Its pollen causes many of us to suffer from hay fever, and so do trees, weeds and even some fruit.

Despite being smaller than the tip of a pin, pollen is carried by the wind and lodges in the nasal lining tissues and throat, where it can cause an allergic reaction. This is when the body mistakenly thinks it has been invaded by a threat, such as a virus.

To fight back, the body produces a type of antibody known as immunoglobulin E (IgE) in response to the allergen, causing nasal passages to become inflamed, producing more mucus. This is designed to help flush out the allergens but can lead to other symptoms like

headaches from blocked sinuses or coughing caused by mucus dripping down the back of the throat from the nose.

People genetically predisposed to hay fever are called atopics. Hay fever usually develops during childhood or teenage years, but adults can get it too. This is likely to follow repeated contact with a substance that your immune system perceives as a threat. No one knows for sure why hay fever starts affecting someone at the point in time it does.

Hay-fever sufferers are in trouble when the pollen count reaches 50 pollen grains per cubic metre of air. You'll experience it worse in the morning when plants release their pollen. Allergens collect in the air on humid days and during storms, but rain clears the pollen.

## Pollen forecast



### GRASS POLLEN [MAY-JULY]

95 per cent of hay-fever sufferers are allergic to grass pollen. Close windows on dry, windy days.



### TREE POLLEN [MARCH-MAY]

Affects 25 per cent of sufferers and instigators include ash, birch, beech, willow and oak. Cut back branches in the garden to reduce pollen.



### WEED POLLEN [SUMMER - EARLY AUTUMN]

In the USA, ragweed is the biggest culprit. One plant can spew out millions of pollen grains daily.

## Why do we get a runny nose?

An inside look at how pollen can affect us

### The statistics...

#### Allergy in numbers

15%: Of UK population get hay fever

40%: Risk if one parent suffers

80%: Risk if both parents suffer

95%: Of hay-fever sufferers are allergic to grass pollen

1 in 5: Affected by hay fever

21 million: UK adults suffer from one or more type of allergy

### Airborne pollen

Fine dusty pollen is carried by the wind and inhaled through the nasal passage. People with a genetic disposition to hay fever, known as atopics, will have an allergic reaction.

### Antibodies

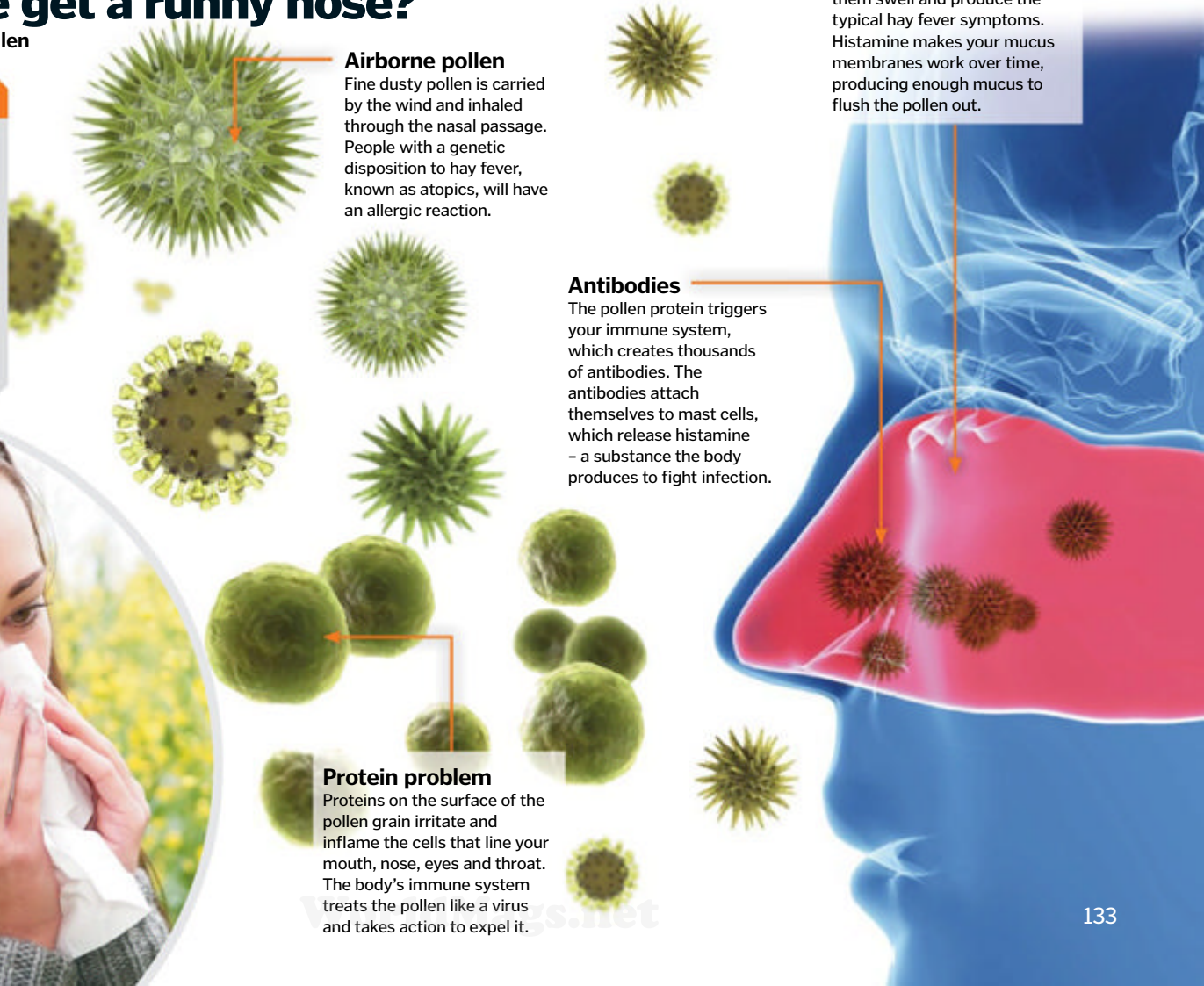
The pollen protein triggers your immune system, which creates thousands of antibodies. The antibodies attach themselves to mast cells, which release histamine - a substance the body produces to fight infection.

### Protein problem

Proteins on the surface of the pollen grain irritate and inflame the cells that line your mouth, nose, eyes and throat. The body's immune system treats the pollen like a virus and takes action to expel it.

### Too much histamine

Histamine irritates the upper respiratory passages, making them swell and produce the typical hay fever symptoms. Histamine makes your mucus membranes work over time, producing enough mucus to flush the pollen out.





Ears feed sounds to the brain but also control balance

About 100 million photoreceptors per eye

9,000 taste buds over the tongue and throat

We can process over 10,000 different smells

Touch is the first sense to develop in the womb

# Exploring the sensory system

The complex senses of the human body and how they interact is vital to the way we live day to day



The sensory system is what enables us to experience the world. It can also warn us of danger, trigger memories and protect us from damaging stimuli, such as hot surfaces. The sensory system is highly developed, with many components detecting both physical and emotional properties of the environment. For example, it can interpret chemical molecules in the air into smells, moving molecules of sound into noises and pressure placed on the skin into touch. Indeed, some of our senses are so finely tuned they allow reactions within milliseconds of detecting a new sensation.

The five classic senses are sight, hearing, smell, taste and touch. We need senses not only to interpret the world around us, but also to function within it. Our senses enable us to modify our movements and thoughts, and sometimes they directly feed signals into muscles. The sensory nervous system that lies behind this is made up of receptors, nerves and dedicated parts of the brain.

There are thousands of different stimuli that can trigger our senses, including light, heat, chemicals in food and pressure. These 'stimulus modalities' are then detected by specialised receptors, which convert them into sensations such as hot and cold, tastes, images and touch. The incredible receptors – like the eyes, ears, nose, tongue and skin – have adapted over time to work seamlessly together and without having to be actively 'switched on'.

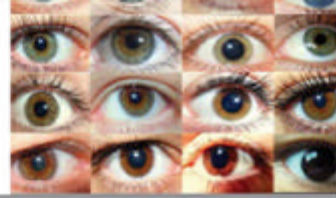
However, sometimes the sensory system can go wrong. There are hundreds of diseases of the senses, which can have both minor effects, or a life-changing impact. For example, a blocked ear can affect your balance, or a cold your ability to smell – but these things don't last for long.

In contrast, say, after a car accident severing the spinal cord, the damage can be permanent. There are some very specific problems that the sensory system can bring as well. After an amputation, the brain can still detect signals from the nerves that used to connect to the lost limb. These sensations

can cause excruciating pain; this particular condition is known as phantom limb syndrome.

However the sensory system is able to adapt to change, with the loss of one often leading to others being heightened. Our senses normally function to gently inhibit each other in order to moderate individual sensations. The loss of sight from blindness is thought to lead to strengthening of signals from the ears, nose and tongue. Having said this, it's certainly not universal among the blind, being more common in people who have been blind since a young age or from birth. Similarly, some people who listen to music like to close their eyes, as they claim the loss of visual input can enhance the audio experience.

Although the human sensory system is well developed, many animals out-perform us. For example, dogs can hear much higher-pitched sounds, while sharks have a far better sense of smell – in fact, they can sniff out a single drop of blood in a million drops of water!

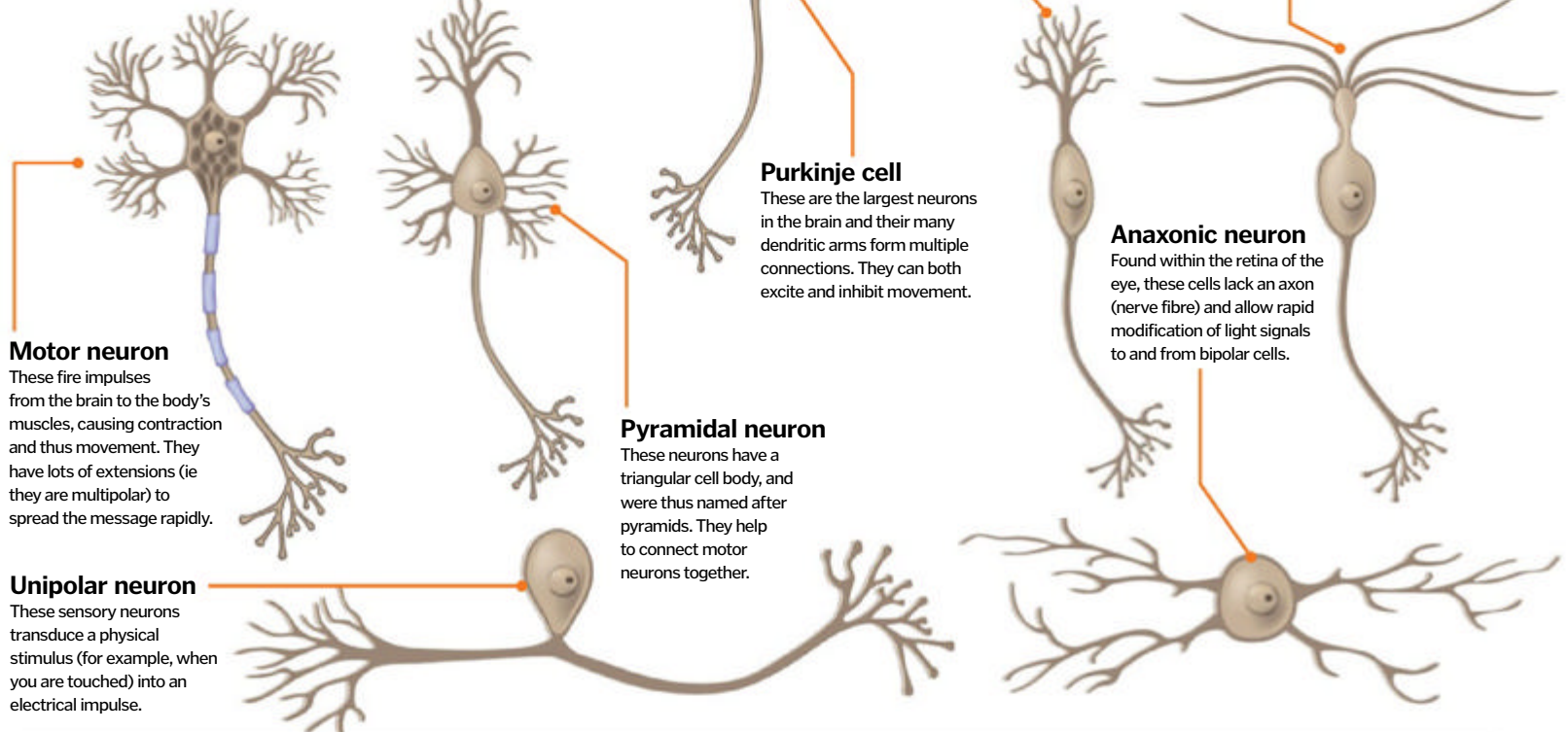


**Answer:** Scallops are an underwater mollusc that amazingly can have as many as 100 eyes! Although they can't create as clear a picture as our eyes, they can detect enough light and movement to warn them of oncoming predators.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Taste and smell are closely linked. To test this, pinch your nose as you eat something and it will taste bland

## Body's messengers

The sensory system is formed from neurons. These are specialised nerve cells which transmit signals from one end to the other – for example, from your skin to your brain. They are excitable, meaning that when stimulated to a certain electrical/chemical threshold they will fire a signal. There are many different types, and they can interconnect to affect each other's signals.



## How do we smell?

Find out how our nose and brain work together to distinguish scents

### Olfactory bulb

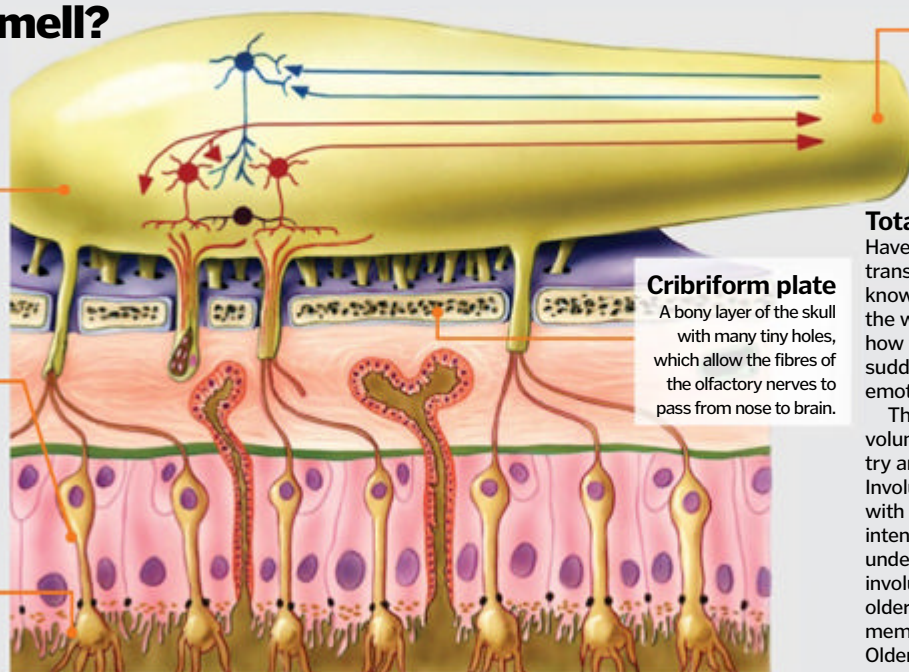
Containing many types of cell, olfactory neurons branch out of here through the cribriform plate below.

### Olfactory neuron

These neurons are highly adapted to detect a wide range of different odours.

### Olfactory epithelium

Lining the nasal cavity, this layer contains the long extensions of the olfactory neurons and is where chemical molecules in air trigger an electric impulse.



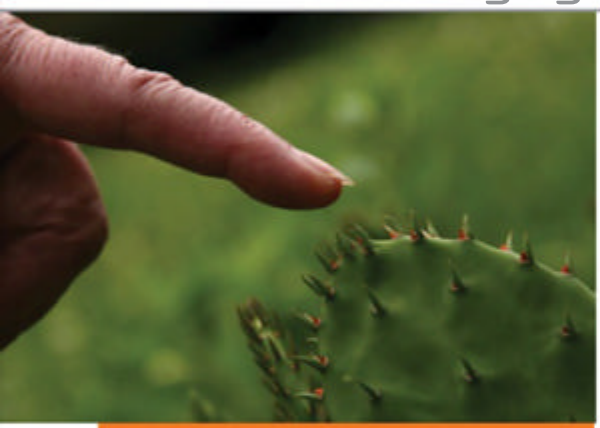
### Olfactory nerve

New signals are rapidly transmitted via the olfactory nerve to the brain, which collates the data with sight and taste.

### Total recall

Have you ever smelled something that transported you back in time? This is known as the Madeleine effect because the writer Marcel Proust once described how the scent of a madeleine cake suddenly evoked strong memories and emotions from his childhood.

The opposite type of recall is voluntary memory, where you actively try and remember a certain event. Involuntary memories are intertwined with emotion and so are often the more intense of the two. Younger children under the age of ten have stronger involuntary memory capabilities than older people, which is why these memories thrust you back to childhood. Older children use voluntary memory more often, eg when revising for exams.



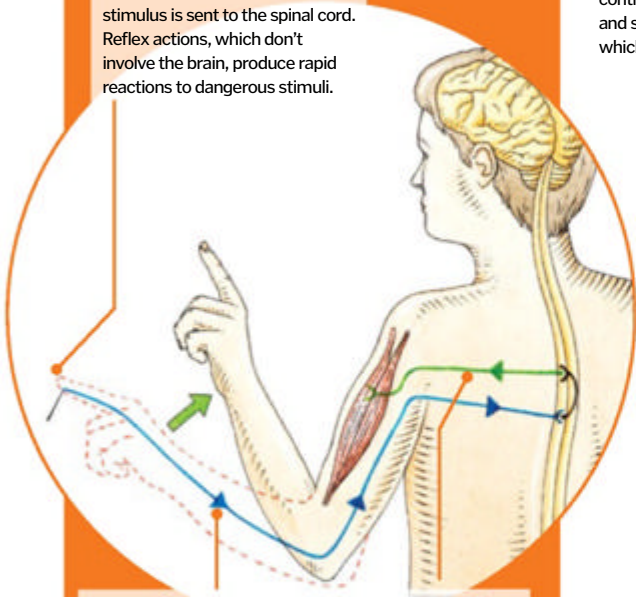
### Understanding lightning reflexes

Have you ever felt something scorching hot or freezing cold, and pulled your hand away without even thinking about it? This reaction is a reflex. Your reflexes are the most vital and fastest of all your senses. They are carried out by the many 'reflex arcs' located throughout the body.

For example, a temperature-detecting nerve in your finger connects to a motor nerve in your spine, which travels straight to your biceps, creating a circular arc of nerves. By only having two nerves in the circuit, the speed of the reflex is as fast as possible. A third nerve transmits the sensation to the brain, so you know what's happened, but this nerve doesn't interfere with the arc; it's for your information only. There are other reflex arcs located within your joints, so that, say, if your knee gives way or you suddenly lose balance, you can compensate quickly.

#### 1. Touch receptor

When a touch receptor is activated, information about the stimulus is sent to the spinal cord. Reflex actions, which don't involve the brain, produce rapid reactions to dangerous stimuli.



#### 2. Signal sent to spine

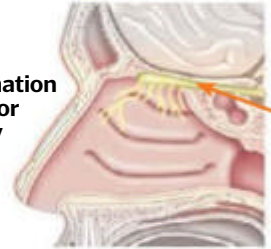
When sensory nerve endings fire, information passes through nerve fibres to the spinal cord.

#### 3. Motor neurons feed back

The signals trigger motor neurons that initiate their own impulses that feed back to the muscle, telling it to move the body part.

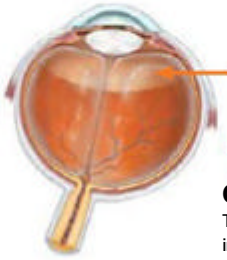
### Key nerves

These transmit vital sensory information to our brain while also sending motor function signals all around the body



#### Olfactory nerve

Starting in the nose, this nerve converts chemical molecules into electrical signals that are interpreted as distinct odours via chemoreceptors.



#### Optic nerve

The optic nerves convert light signals into electrical impulses, which are interpreted in the occipital lobe at the back of the brain. The resulting image is seen upside down and back to front, but the brain reorients the image.



#### Eye movements

The trochlear, abducent and oculomotor nerves control the eye muscles and so the direction in which we look.

#### Trigeminal nerve

This nerve is an example of a mechanoreceptor, as it fires when your face is touched. It is split into three parts, covering the top, middle and bottom thirds of your face.



#### Facial and trigeminal motors

The motor parts of these nerves control the muscles of facial expression (for example, when you smile), and the muscles of the jaw to help you chew.



### A matter of taste

**1** There are about 9,000 taste buds on the tongue and throat. These convert chemicals found in saliva into electrical signals, split into five tastes: sweet, salt, sour, bitter and umami.

### Smell vs sight

**2** Odours offer better memory recall than visual cues, as smell is tied to emotion. Looking at an old photograph can trigger memory, but a smell can evoke how you felt at the time.

### Sensitive skin

**3** Human skin contains over half a million sensory receptors. These are of the highest concentration in the fingertips, the ends of the toes and lips, where they're most needed.

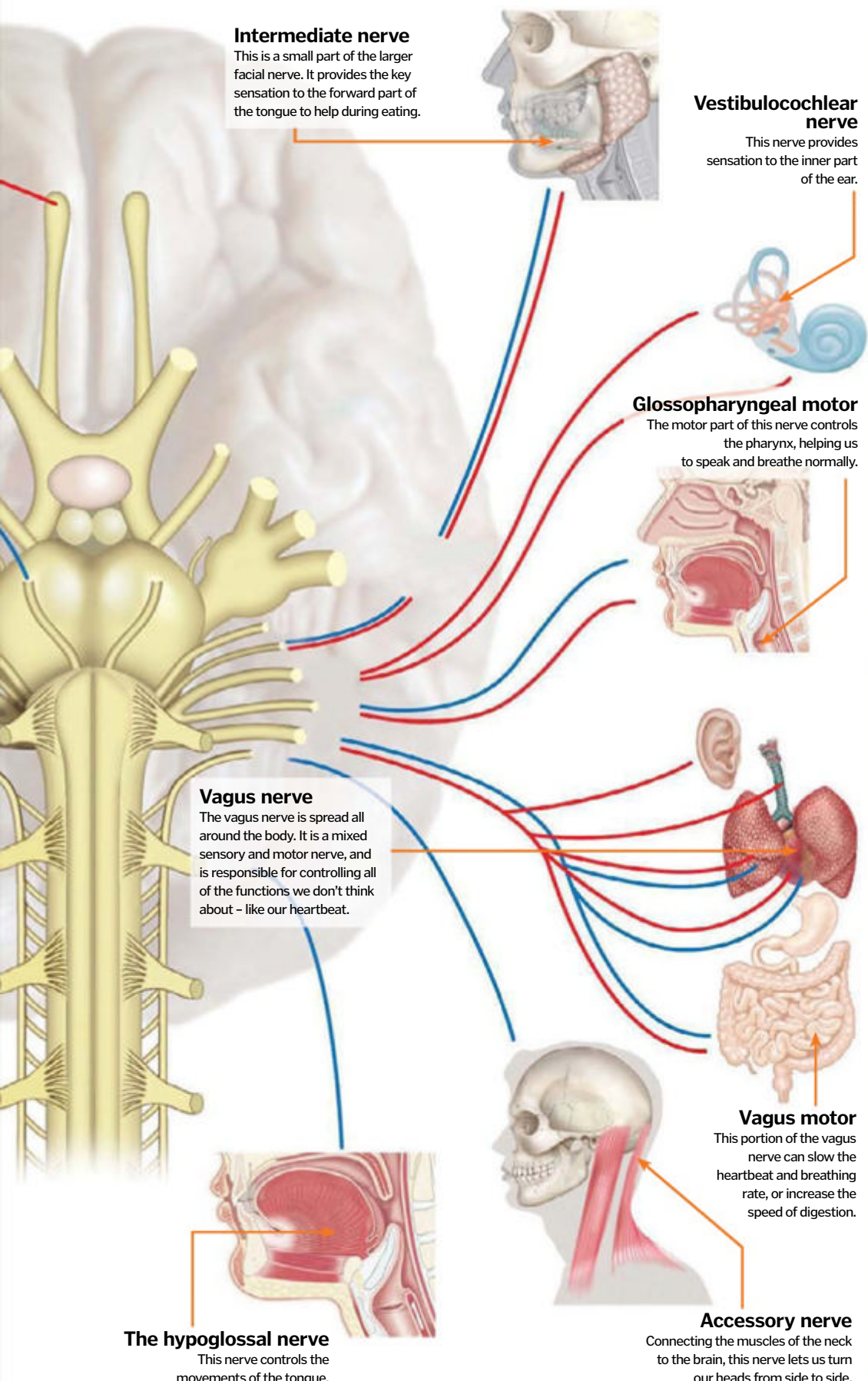
### Upside down

**4** The images formed in the occipital cortex are upside down, before the brain flips them. However babies start by seeing upside down, until the brain learns to adapt.

### Staying steady

**5** Ears do more than detect sound. The fluid and fine hairs in the inner ear maintain balance. If you spin round and stop, this fluid is still moving which is why we get dizzy.

**DID YOU KNOW?** The three smallest bones in the human body – the hammer, anvil and stirrup – are located in the middle ear



**Intermediate nerve**  
This is a small part of the larger facial nerve. It provides the key sensation to the forward part of the tongue to help during eating.

**Vestibulocochlear nerve**  
This nerve provides sensation to the inner part of the ear.

**Glossopharyngeal motor**  
The motor part of this nerve controls the pharynx, helping us to speak and breathe normally.

**Vagus nerve**  
The vagus nerve is spread all around the body. It is a mixed sensory and motor nerve, and is responsible for controlling all of the functions we don't think about – like our heartbeat.

**Vagus motor**  
This portion of the vagus nerve can slow the heartbeat and breathing rate, or increase the speed of digestion.

**Accessory nerve**  
Connecting the muscles of the neck to the brain, this nerve lets us turn our heads from side to side.

**The hypoglossal nerve**  
This nerve controls the movements of the tongue.

## Crossed senses

Synaesthesia is a fascinating, if yet completely understood, condition. In some people, two or more of the five senses become completely linked so when a single sensation is triggered, all the linked sensations are activated too. For example, the letter 'A' might always appear red, or seeing the number '1' might trigger the taste of apples. Sights take on smells, a conversation can take on tastes and music can feel textured.

People with synaesthesia certainly don't consider it to be a disorder or a disease. In fact, many do not think what they sense is unusual, and they couldn't imagine living without it. It often runs in families and may be more common than we think. More information about the condition is available from the UK Synaesthesia Association ([www.uksynaesthesia.com](http://www.uksynaesthesia.com)).

5	5	5	5	5
5	5	5	5	
5	5	5	2	5
5	5	2	5	2
5	5	2	2	2
5	5	5	5	5

Non-synaesthetes struggle to identify a triangle of 2s among a field of number 5s.

5	5	5	5	5
5	5	5	5	5
5	5	5	2	5
5	5	5	2	5
5	5	2	2	2
5	5	5	5	5

But a synaesthete who sees 2s as red and 5s as green can quickly pick out the triangle.

A patient's sense of proprioception is being put to the test here



## Is there really a 'sixth sense'?

Our sense of balance and the position of our bodies in space are sensations we rarely think about and so are sometimes thought of as a 'sixth sense'. There is a whole science behind them though, and they are collectively called proprioception. There are nerves located throughout the musculoskeletal system (for example, within your muscles, tendons, ligaments and joints) whose job it is to send information on balance and posture back to the brain. The brain then interprets this information rapidly and sends instructions back to the muscles to allow for fine adjustments in balance. Since you don't have to think about it and you can't switch it off, you don't know how vital these systems are until they're damaged. Sadly some medical conditions, including strokes, can affect our sense of proprioception, making it difficult to stand, walk, talk and move our limbs.



# Understanding chickenpox

Discover the biology behind the infamous childhood ailment and why it never really goes away...



Chickenpox is a strain of the Varicella zoster virus, which many of us have experienced during our youth. Most prominent in children, the virus is contracted through coughing and sneezing or transferred on shared objects, which makes schools a prime location.

The most famous symptom is the appearance of small itchy red spots, which vary in size from 10-20 millimetres (0.4-0.8 inches) across. The extent can vary but in most cases they cover the

face, arms, legs, stomach and back. These develop into fluid-filled blisters and are often accompanied by a fever. The blisters burst, scab over and fall off within a few days, but new waves of spots can emerge to replace them; it usually takes one to two weeks for the body to regain control. Chickenpox is rarely serious but it is important not to interfere with the scabs as infection can make it more severe.

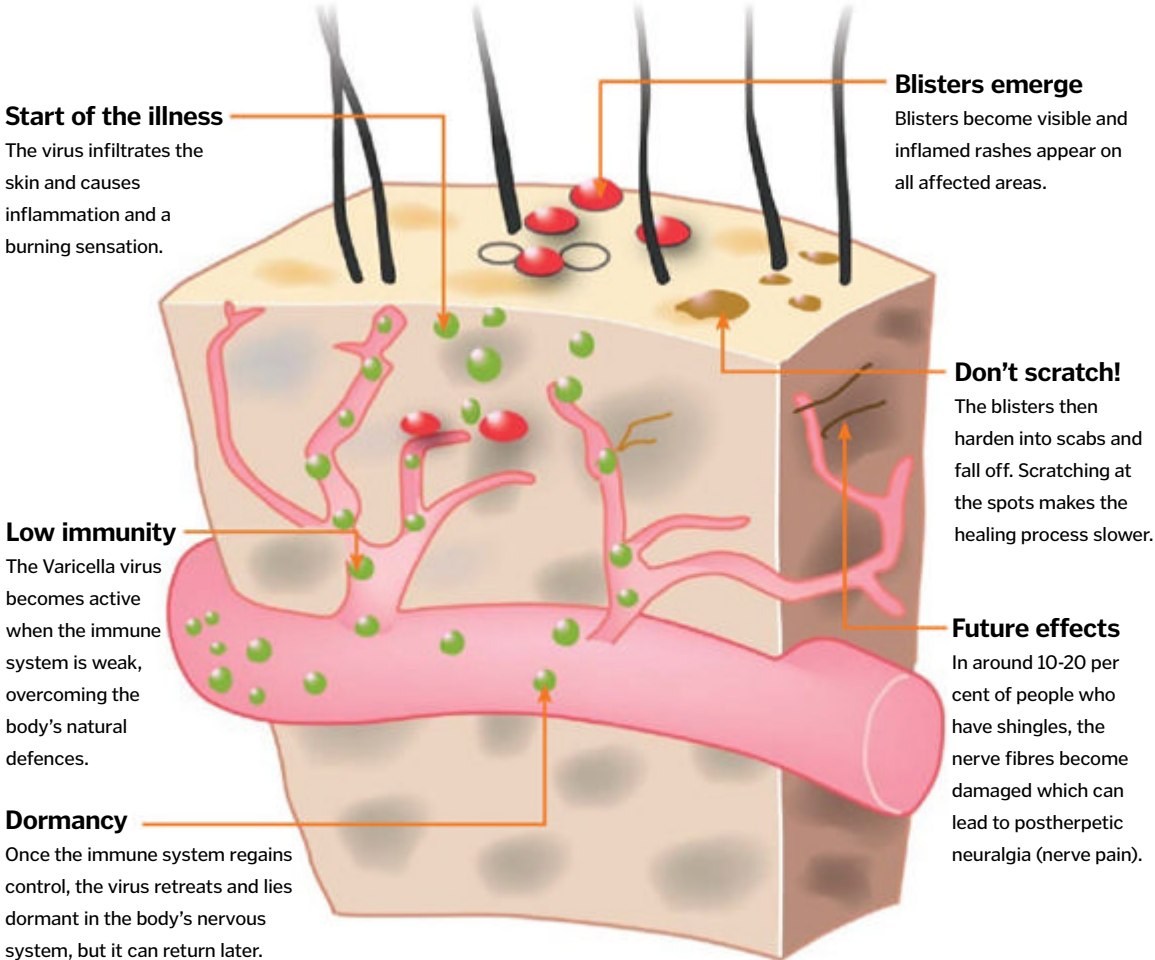
A vaccine is only offered in extreme circumstances when an individual may have a

weak immune system or be particularly vulnerable to the disease.

After the outbreak, chickenpox doesn't disappear entirely. The disease lies in a dormant state within the body as your immune system keeps it under wraps. The infection can break out again later and reappear as shingles. A rash builds up on a certain point of the body and the symptoms return, most commonly in people over 50. On average, three in every 1,000 people contract shingles in the UK each year.

## When chickenpox strikes back...

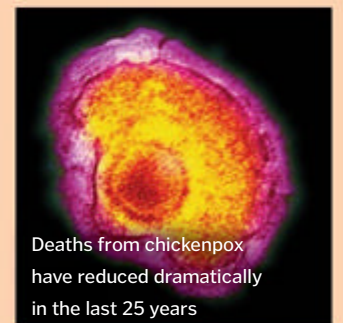
Get under the skin to see how shingles can catch the body unawares



## Grown-up chickenpox

90 per cent of adults are immune if they've had the disease as a child but it still affects adults and teenagers. If you develop chickenpox at a later age, all the symptoms are more severe, with more chronic pain, headaches and sore throats; therefore, there is greater need for treatment, such as pain relief and soothing creams.

The disease tends to affect adults more dramatically as it can now mutate into a variety of other strains, such as shingles or, in extreme cases, lead to encephalitis, postherpetic neuralgia or pneumonia. However, the chances of this happening are only around ten per cent.



Deaths from chickenpox have reduced dramatically in the last 25 years

© Alamy/Thinkstock

**Runny noses**

**1** If you find that your nose runs a lot when you cry, it is because excess tears are running from your eyes, down your tear ducts and into your nose, causing those tearful sniffles.

**Hush, little baby**

**2** Babies typically cry for about one to three hours per day. This can be for a variety of reasons, because they're hungry, thirsty, tired, scared or have just been to the toilet.

**Onion weeping**

**3** Syn-propanethial-S-oxide is created by an enzyme in a cut onion. When it evaporates, this compound irritates our lacrimal glands and tears are triggered in order to dilute it.

**Crocodile tears**

**4** While crocodiles are known for looking teary as they eat food they've just caught, they aren't sad. The tears merely lubricate their eyes when they spend time out of the water.

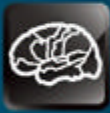
**Darwin's discovery**

**5** There is a condition called the PseudoBulbar Affect (PBA) in which people cry or laugh uncontrollably. First described by Charles Darwin it is often the result of brain injuries.

**DID YOU KNOW?** The average person will produce 140-280g [5-10oz] of basal tears per day to keep the eyes moist

# Why do we cry?

Find out how our tears have been helping to protect us since the dawn of time



Whether it's a sad film, a joyous reunion or simply that you've just banged your knee on a coffee table, everyone has cried at some point in their life. But why have we evolved to do it?

There's a theory that it stems right back as far as our pre-evolved days, where tears streaming down our primitive eyes and blurring our vision was a sign of surrender, proving that we meant our aggressor no harm.

But moving on to the present day, the science shows that there are a number of sound biological reasons for tearing up.

There are reflex tears, the stream caused by getting smoke or sulphenic acid from a chopped onion into your eye. When this happens, sensory nerves in your cornea send a signal to the brain that the eyes need protecting. The brain then releases hormones into the lacrimal glands located behind the eyelid, which produces tears to provide a layer of protection and to water down the irritant.

However, the more common form of crying is the emotional kind. When strong emotions are

brought about – whether through happiness, sadness or pain – the brain's cerebrum is aware that you are undergoing a strong emotional reaction to a stimulus. The endocrine system releases a set of hormones to the lacrimal gland, which secretes liquid onto the eye. Excess water can escape down the nose, via the tear ducts.

Studies of tears have shown there is a biochemical reason for emotional crying. While reflex tears are 98 per cent water, emotional tears contain several chemicals, including adrenocorticotrophic hormones present in times of stress, and leucine-enkephalin – an endorphin that releases pain and improves your mood. Therefore, crying appears to be a way of releasing hormones and toxins that build up during times of intense emotion.



## The lacrimal system

**1 Lacrimal gland**

This gland receives the message from the cerebrum to produce tears.

**2 Cornea**

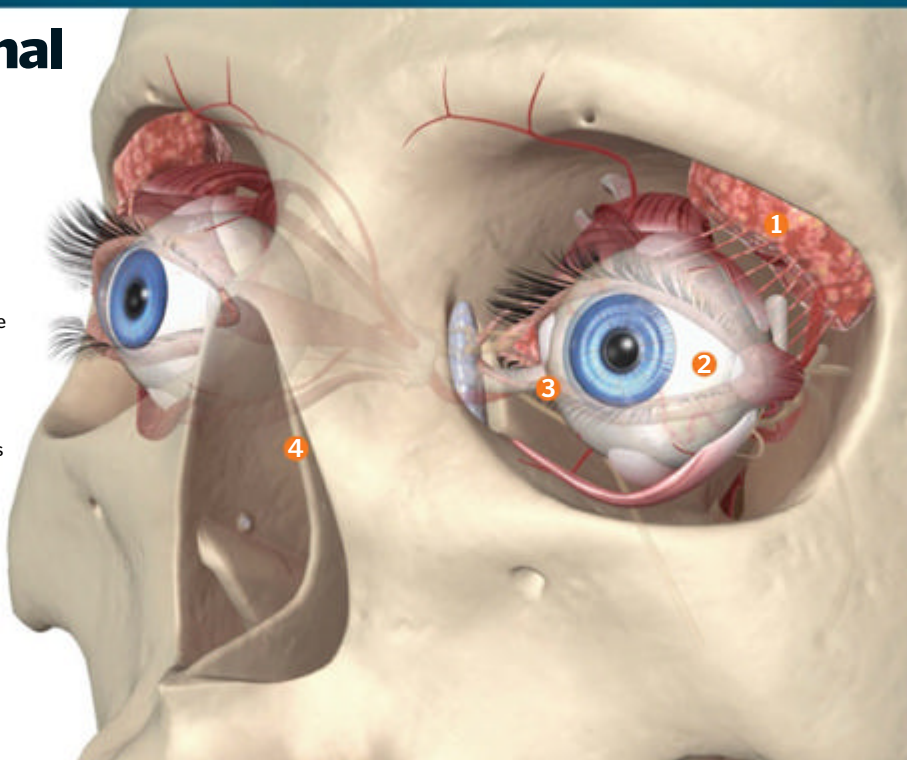
Tears help protect the surface of the eye.

**3 Tear ducts**

This is where the water flows to. If there's too much, it flows down the face.

**4 Runny nose**

Tears that flow through the tear ducts go down a nasal passage, which is what causes a runny nose.



## Battle of the sexes

While there is a stereotype that women are tearier than men, there is some science to explain the reasons behind this. Studies have shown that women cry about four times as often as men and, while there are cultural factors to be taken into consideration, there are biological factors too.

Until their adolescent years, boys and girls cry fairly equally. As testosterone levels rise in boys, they are more likely to get angry than upset. Meanwhile, girls gain increased oestrogen levels, which modifies endorphin production, often leading to more emotional responses to stimuli.

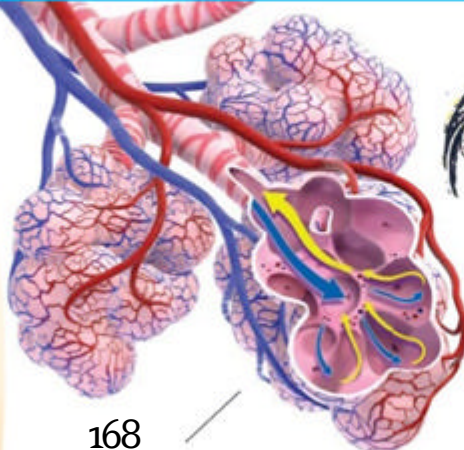
© SPL/Thinkstock



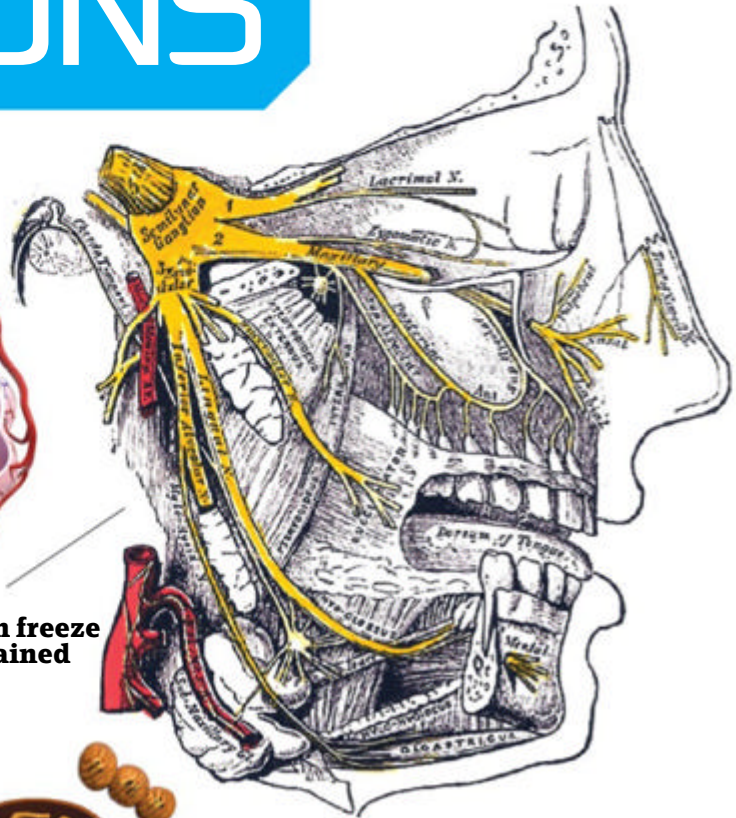
# CURIOUS QUESTIONS



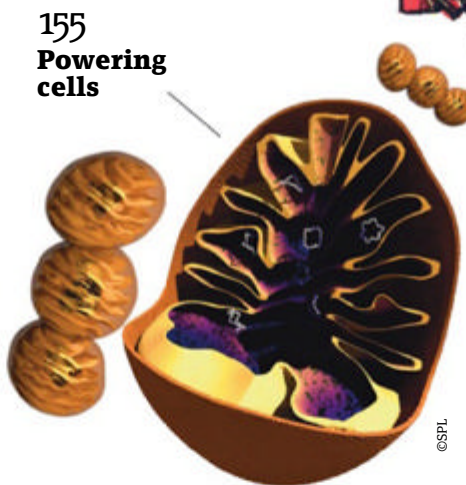
149  
What makes your nose run?



168  
What do alveoli do?

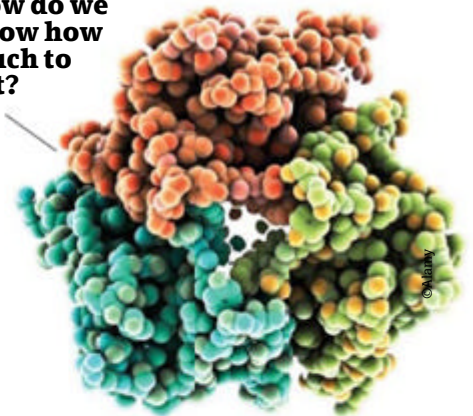


148  
Brain freeze explained



155  
Powering cells

173  
How do we know how much to eat?

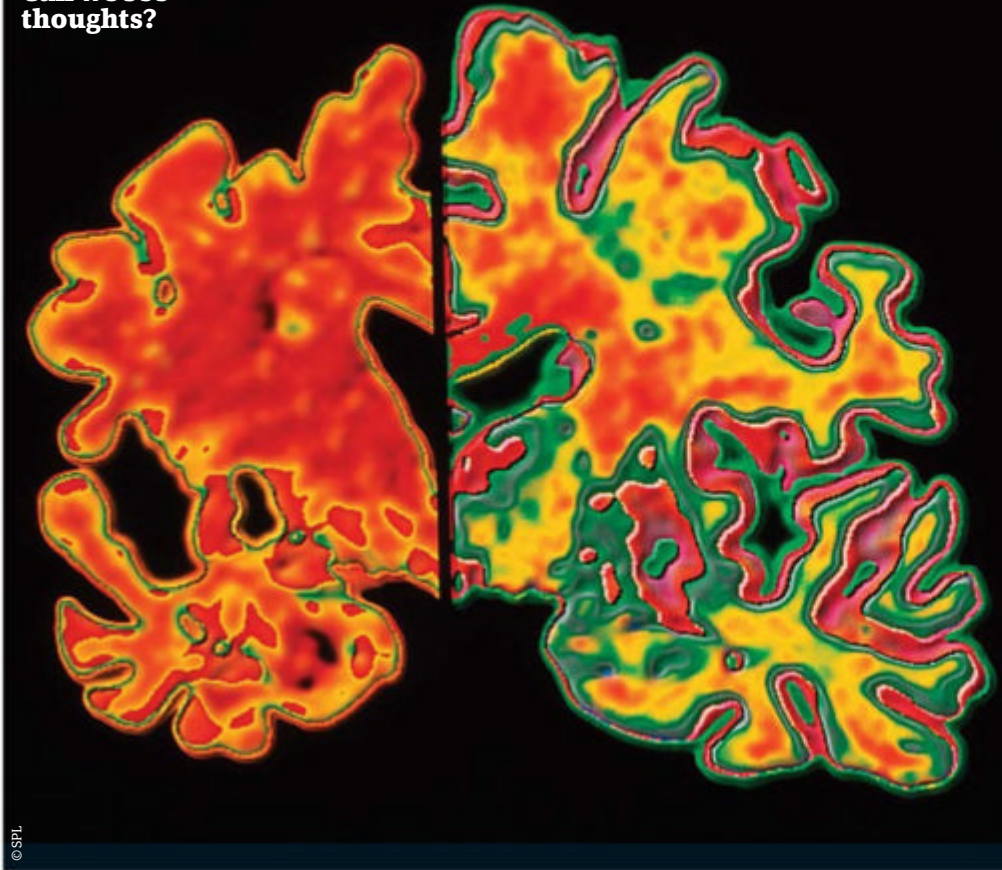


- 142 **Ageing**  
Why do we grow old?
- 146 **Left or right brained?**  
The truth behind thinking
- 148 **Brain freeze**  
Why do we feel this cold pain?
- 149 **Runny nose / Coma**  
What makes your nose run?
- 150 **Ears / Freckles / Sore throat**  
Why do your ears pop?
- 151 **Memory / Toothpaste / Epidurals**  
What is a memory?
- 152 **Blushing / Caffeine / Fainting**  
The telltale signs of blushing

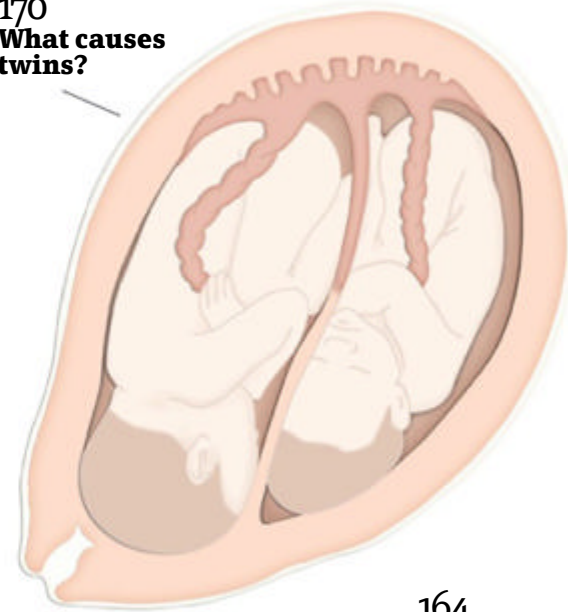
- 153 **Eyebrows / Earwax / Self**  
Do we need eyebrows?
- 154 **72-hour deodorant / Modern fillings**  
How do we combat body odour?
- 155 **What powers your cells?**  
Inside the mitochondria
- 156 **Can we see thoughts?**  
Is this science or a myth?
- 158 **How anaesthesia works**  
The drug that stops pain signals
- 159 **Stomach ulcers / Mouth ulcers**  
How do ulcers form?
- 160 **Hair growth / Blond hair**  
Our hair explained

- 161 **Correcting heart rhythms / Salt / Adam's apple**  
Is salt bad for your heart?
- 162 **Seasickness / Rumbling stomachs**  
Explaining seasickness
- 163 **What are moles?**  
A look a mole formation
- 164 **Brain control / Laughing**  
Do our brains control us?
- 165 **Dandruff / Eye adjustment / Distance the eye can see**  
Revealing how dandruff forms

156  
Can we see thoughts?



170  
What causes twins?



164  
Do our brains control us?



142  
The signs of ageing



166 **Allergies / Eczema**  
Why do some people suffer?

167 **Bruises / Water allergy / Cholesterol**  
How are bruises caused?

168 **How do alveoli help you breathe?**  
Inside your lungs

169 **Migraines / Eye drops**  
Discover how migraines strike

170 **What are twins?**  
What causes twins to be born?

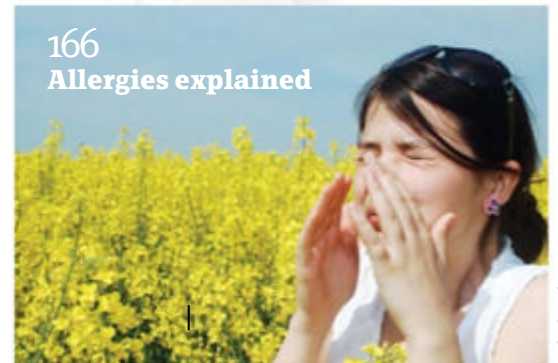
172 **Paper cuts / Pins and needles / Funny bones**  
Why do paper cuts hurt so much?

173 **Aching muscles / Fat hormone**  
What causes muscle ache?

174 **Raw meat / Inoculations / Upper arm and leg**  
Should we eat raw meat?

175 **Feet size / Gout**  
How are feet measured?

166  
Allergies explained





© Science Photo Library

# The ageing process

What happens to the human body as we age?



The whys of ageing, at its most basic level, seem simple: over the course of our lives, our bodies simply wear out. Or that's what we've been led to believe, anyway. Scientists who study gerontology, or the process of ageing, don't yet have a definitive answer as to why we age. There are two schools of thought. The wear-and-tear concept – meaning our cells are used up over time – that many people subscribe to is just one example of an error theory.

Proponents of the error theory believe that random external events cause damage that builds up in our bodies over the course of our lifetime until

our cells can no longer function. Free radicals – unstable oxygen molecules that are a natural by-product of cell function – can build up and bond to other cells. As a result, DNA can be damaged. They may also result in protein cross-linking, or glycosylation, a phenomenon by which protein molecules in our bodies inappropriately bond together. They aren't as elastic and don't move or break down like they're supposed to.

There's some evidence for this theory – wrinkles, for example, are caused by a breakdown of collagen, a type of protein found in the skin. Protein cross-linking may also be responsible for a lot of

infirmities associated with ageing that have to do with stiffening or hardening of tissues, such as atherosclerosis.

Cells can also mutate on a genetic level due to environmental or other factors. Problems with mitochondria, structures that provide energy inside cells, can cause cells to die as well as diseases associated with old age such as Alzheimer's disease.

Another group of theories puts forth the idea that our life spans are predetermined or programmed. One scenario suggests that the biological clock is 'set' by both our neuroendocrine system, which produces hormones, and our immune system. The

### Grey hair

**1** When your hair turns grey has a lot to do with your genetics, but the loss of melanin associated with grey hair is due to older age.

### Wrinkles

**2** The loss of skin elasticity also ages us through the creation of wrinkles, although in some cases it can be prevented or at least slowed down.

### Missing teeth

**3** Enamel on our teeth wears down over time and maintaining dental hygiene becomes more difficult, resulting in tooth loss.

### Loss of eyesight

**4** With ageing can come a number of vision problems that can cause a loss of sight, including cataracts, glaucoma and macular degeneration.

### Loss of hearing

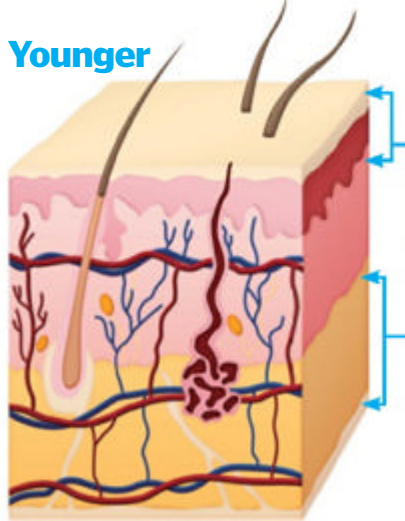
**5** Age-related hearing loss can be caused by everything from environmental factors to a degeneration of the fine hair cells in the cochlea.

**DID YOU KNOW?** The process of ageing by a living system, or organism, is known as organismal senescence

# Ageing skin

What looks like spots and wrinkles is actually a number of changes going on under the skin

## Younger



## Subcutaneous fat layer

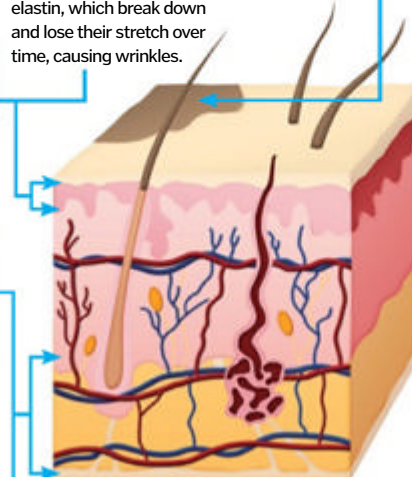
As we age, the fat pads under the skin diminish and cause skin and muscle to sag.

## Epidermis

The skin is kept smooth by the proteins collagen and elastin, which break down and lose their stretch over time, causing wrinkles.

## Age spot

Sun damage, as well as the ageing process in general, can cause clumps of melanin to concentrate into spots.



## Older

hypothalamus in the brain sends messages via hormones to the pituitary gland, which in turn stimulates or restricts hormone secretions by the thyroid, adrenal glands, ovaries and even the testicles.

Over time this complex system does not function as efficiently, leading to everything from problems sleeping to menopause (which is a normal part of ageing for women, but can lead to additional health problems).

Different types of cells in the immune system decline in number as we age and do not function as well. Some scientists point to the fact that the overall risk of contracting cancers goes up as we get older; younger, more efficient immune systems may have been able to fend them off.

Or it could all simply be genetic. That is, our DNA tells our bodies when life is at an end. There does seem to be a genetic component to ageing among most animals – they have predictable life spans. Women also tend to live longer than men. If your parents lived a long time, you are more likely to do so yourself. One group of genes, known as the longevity assurance gene, has been determined to influence life span. If you inherit the 'helpful' version then you are more likely to have a longer life.

Although our genes play a part in our life span, obviously they can be influenced or changed. Otherwise, we'd still be living to the ripe old age of 30

instead of 80 (the average life span in developed countries). Most researchers believe that ageing is a complex process that no single theory can explain – it's a combination of our genes, our biological functions and environmental factors.

We tend to focus more on the visible signs of ageing at first, like wrinkles and grey hairs, and these changes are prime examples of how complicated the process can be. We've already talked a bit about the cause of wrinkles: the connective tissues collagen and elastin, that keep skin looking smooth, both break down over time. Without the firm connections underneath, the skin sags. Many people lose fat deposits in their faces, and the skin's oil production decreases. Many of these things have a genetic component, but outside factors such as exposure to ultraviolet radiation and smoking both cause wrinkles and sags faster. The Sun's rays break down connective tissues, while smoking causes blood vessels to contract.

Grey hair is caused by a loss of melanin, the pigment that is responsible for our hair colour. Only recently have scientists learned that melanin production gets interrupted when hydrogen peroxide levels in the body increase over time. Other proteins found in hair cells that are responsible for regrowth diminish over time too. Unlike with wrinkles, however, there isn't much you can do to avoid going grey other than dye your hair. Genetics do appear to play

# Going grey

Each hair follicle in our heads contains melanin – a pigment that gives our hair its colour. Over time the melanin production decreases and unpigmented hair begins to grow

## Hair bulb

The bulb is at the base of the root. It contains the follicle, which forms a socket for the hair.

## Papilla

This specialised cell is fed by the bloodstream and is responsible for the growth of new hairs, and their number of pigment cells.

## Shaft

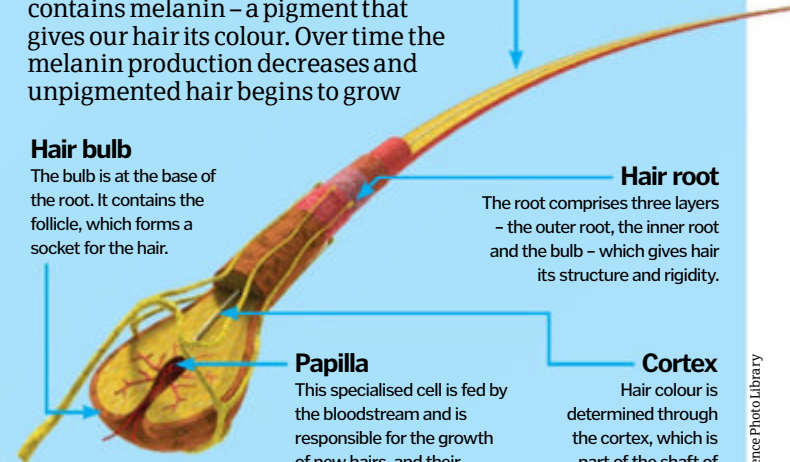
The hair shaft itself is composed of keratin, a fibrous protein.

## Hair root

The root comprises three layers – the outer root, the inner root and the bulb – which gives hair its structure and rigidity.

## Cortex

Hair colour is determined through the cortex, which is part of the shaft of visible hair.



# Signs of ageing

## Hair loss

A full head of hair will thin as the autoimmune system attacks the follicles.

## Wrinkles

These develop as collagen and skin cells begin to deteriorate.

## Skin tone

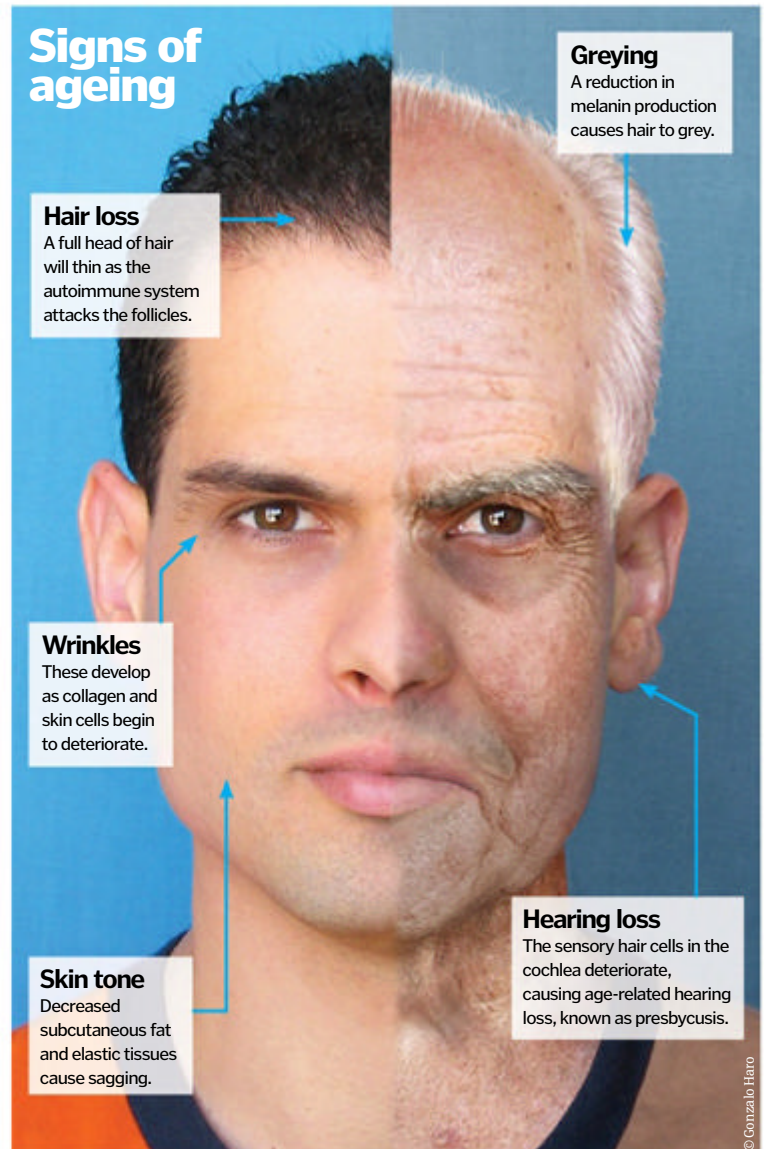
Decreased subcutaneous fat and elastic tissues cause sagging.

## Greying

A reduction in melanin production causes hair to grey.

## Hearing loss

The sensory hair cells in the cochlea deteriorate, causing age-related hearing loss, known as presbycusis.





a part, though. If your parents went grey at a young age, it is likely that you will too.

The internal signs of ageing are more serious, health-wise, than the external ones. When and how they occur are also based on a wide variety of factors. Some gerontologists like to generalise that some parts of the body get harder as we age, while others get softer, but everything is interconnected. As we mentioned before, arteries get harder due to a buildup of plaque. The heart builds up pressure because it has to work more to pump blood through the harder, narrower blood vessels, which results in high blood pressure. Other muscles, like the lungs, get harder due to calcium deposits. These can be caused by hormonal changes or from having serious infections such as tuberculosis.

Meanwhile, hormonal changes cause calcium to leech from the bones, making them soft and brittle and reducing their density. Known as osteoporosis, this loss means that we're at a greater risk of breaking bones. Sarcopenia, or loss of muscle mass, is another 'soft' sign of ageing. Muscles contain special cells called satellites, a form of stem cell. These cells are responsible for muscle growth as well as regeneration when there's some form of damage. These cells gradually become less proficient over time, possibly due to a

corresponding decrease in growth factors (hormones or proteins that stimulate cell growth). Loss of tone in muscles such as the anal sphincter and the bladder can cause one of the most embarrassing signs of ageing for many people: incontinence.

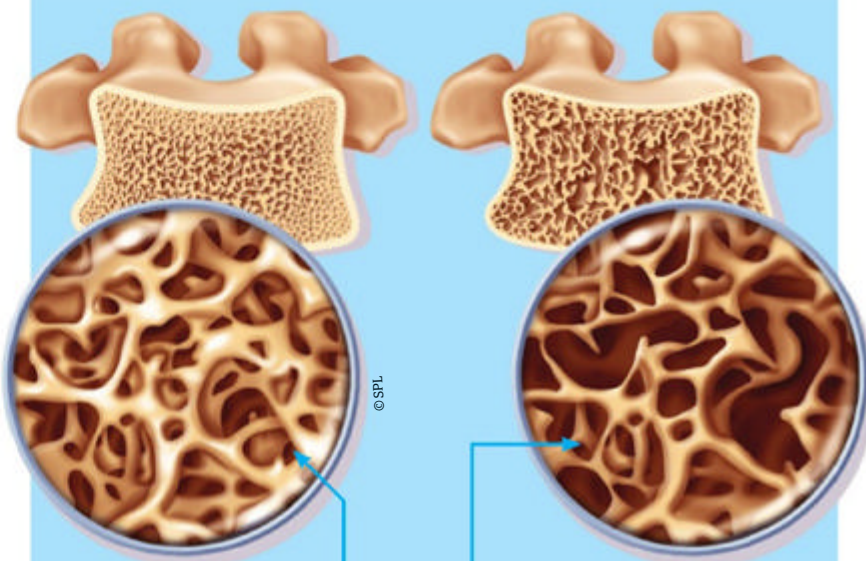
The ageing brain is still very mysterious compared with what we know about the rest of the human body. It was once thought that age-related issues such as memory loss had to do with a decrease in neurons. Now, however, researchers believe that unless you have a specific disease that damages neurons, complex chemical processes are more likely to blame. For example, the brains of people with Alzheimer's disease tend to have deposits of fibrous proteins called amyloids. The exact cause remains unknown, although one current theory is that the amyloids manage to get into the brain because the system that regulates the exchange of blood in the brain, known as the blood-brain barrier, malfunctions.

What is arguably most fascinating about the ageing process is that it's different for everyone and it's unpredictable in so many ways. Thanks to the advances being made in medicine, we're learning more every day about not only what causes the most unpleasant signs of ageing, but also what we can possibly do to counteract them.

## Bone loss

### A condition that affects ageing bones

Osteoporosis is a degenerative bone disease that results in lower bone density, which makes the bones weak and fragile. The risk of falling as well as breaking bones increases as the disease worsens. It is caused by a loss of the minerals that make up bone, such as calcium. There is a genetic factor, and the decrease of sex hormones in both genders increase the likelihood of developing osteoporosis.



#### 1. Healthy bone

Healthy bones contain tight, strong structures and are able to easily bear body weight in most circumstances.

#### 2. Bone with osteoporosis

Bones with osteoporosis have gapped, porous structures. They are fragile and can fracture easily, as well as lead to falls.

## The seven stages of man

What are the principal stages of the visible human ageing process throughout our lives?

#### 1. Infancy

The completely dependent infant experiences rapid physical growth.



#### 2. Childhood

Tissue, muscle and bone then grow gradually until puberty.



#### 3. Puberty

This growth spurt indicates the start of sexual maturity. Girls tend to reach puberty two years earlier than boys.



#### 5. Adulthood

Muscles are developed and strong. Organs are fully functional.



#### 6. Late adulthood

After middle age tissues begin to deteriorate and weaken, while hair loses its pigmentation.



#### 4. Young adulthood

A period of increasing physical maturity and body development.



### 1. Nutritional changes

Antioxidants such as vitamin E and calorie-restrictive diets have both been shown to extend life span, but not without potential health risks.



### 2. Hormone therapy

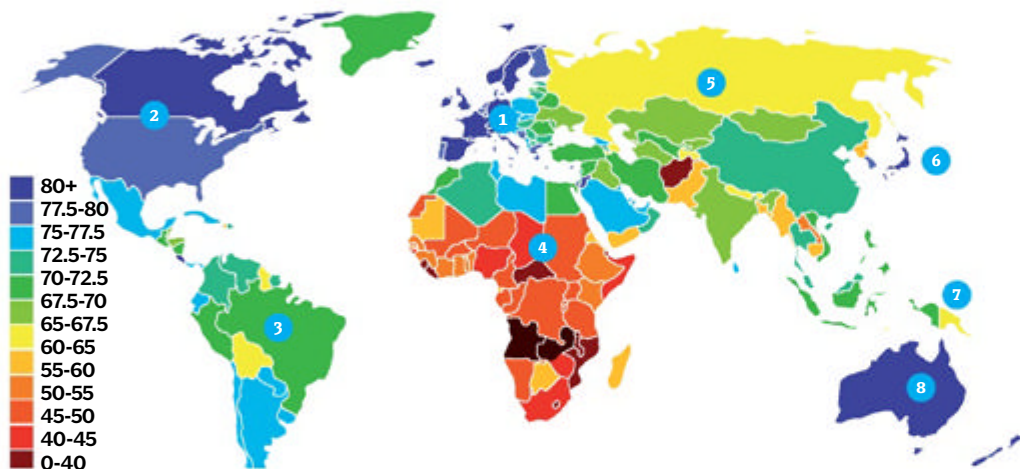
The use of hormones such as human growth hormone to combat signs of ageing, such as decreased muscle mass, is very controversial.



### 3. Plastic surgery

The visible signs of ageing can be combated – temporarily – through surgery and other cosmetic procedures.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Ageing changes can be universal (happen to most people) or probabilistic (only occur in some people)



## Life expectancy around the world

### 1. Europe

Much of Europe enjoys a healthy life expectancy of more than 72 years.

### 2. North America

Canadians have a slightly higher life expectancy than Americans.

### 3. South America

The largest country has one of the lowest life expectancies.

### 4. Africa

Most of Africa, being undeveloped, has much lower life expectancy.

### 5. Asia

Asia has nearly every range of life expectancy within its borders.

### 6. Japan

Japan is the Asian country with the highest average life expectancy on the continent.

### 7. Indonesia

Indonesia is roughly on a par with much of Asia.

### 8. Australia and New Zealand

These industrialised countries have an 80+ life expectancy.

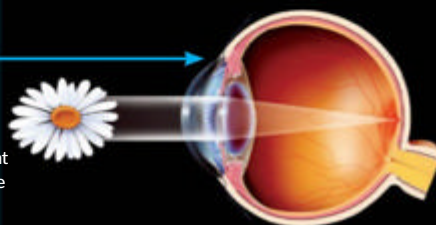
## The senses

All of the senses decline as we age. Hearing declines because the structures in the ear break down over time. Damage to the auditory nerve, which relays the signal to the brain, may also be to blame. Vision also lessens because older eyes are less responsive, sharp or sensitive. The eye muscles can also become less responsive, resulting in a loss of peripheral vision and a narrower depth of field. Taste and smell both decrease with age as well. The 9,000 taste buds with which we are born decrease over the course of our lives. Smell may diminish due to a loss of nerve endings in the nose. Decreased blood flow to the areas of the brain and nervous system that receive touch information may be responsible for a loss of sensations like pain, cold, heat and vibration. The brain itself gets smaller over time and chemical processes (as well as a lack of stimulation) result in age-related complaints such as memory loss.

### Cataracts

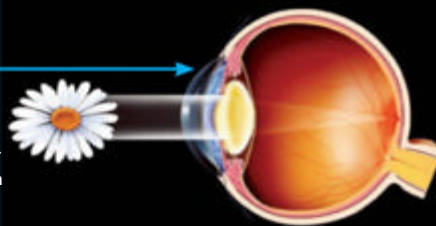
#### 1. Normal lens

In a person with a normal lens, light from an image passes through the lens and is projected onto the tissue at the back of the eye called the retina. The retina changes the image to a nerve signal and transmits it to the brain, where it is processed.



#### 2. Lens with cataract

If protein clumps onto the lens (due to wear and tear or diseases like diabetes), it can create a cloudy area known as a cataract. Light is diffused through the lens to the retina, resulting in a blurry image.



### 7. Old age

A more elderly appearance results from wrinkles, hair loss and decreased muscle tone.



## Slowing down the ageing process

Although ageing itself is inevitable (at least currently), there's a lot that we can do to slow down the ageing process. Visible signs of ageing like wrinkles can be diminished by avoiding Sun exposure and other risk factors like smoking. Internal signs of ageing can all be combated to some extent by lifestyle changes. Weight-bearing exercises such as weight-lifting, for example, have been shown to help maintain bone density and stave off osteoporosis. Aerobic exercise like walking or cycling can prevent weight gain – which leads to numerous diseases and conditions that age us – as well as improve cardiovascular health. Diet also plays a part in ageing – a balanced one can not only reduce the risk of diseases like type two diabetes but also keep our immune systems operating at their peak for longer. Some researchers treat ageing like a disease. To that end, stem-cell treatments and even cryogenics are looked to as a potential cure. But at what cost? Others feel that we weren't meant to live forever and should focus on ways to age comfortably.



There are a number of ways to slow down the ageing process



# Left or right brained?

Actually, you're neither. Discover the truth behind the way we think



It's true that the different sides of the brain perform different tasks, but do these anatomical asymmetries really define our personalities? Some psychologists argue that creative, artistic individuals have a more developed right hemisphere, while analytical, logical people rely more heavily on the left side of the brain, but so far, the evidence for this two-sided split has been lacking.

In a study published in the journal PLOS ONE, a team at the University of Utah attempted to answer the question. They divided the brain up into 7,000 regions and analysed the fMRI scans

of over 1,000 people, in order to determine whether the networks on one side of the brain were stronger than the networks on the other.

Despite the popularity of the left versus right brain myth, the team found no difference in the strength of the networks in each hemisphere, or in the amount we use either side of our brains. Instead, they showed that the brain is more like a network of computers. Local nerves can communicate more efficiently than distant ones, so instead of sending every signal across from one hemisphere of the brain to the other, neurones that need to be in constant communication tend to develop into organised

local hubs, each responsible for a different set of functions.

Hubs with related functions cluster together, preferentially developing on the same side of the brain, and allowing the nerves to communicate rapidly on a local scale. One example is language processing – in most people, the regions of the brain involved in speech, communication and verbal reasoning are all located on the left-hand side.

Some areas of the brain are less symmetrical than others, but both hemispheres are used relatively equally. There is nothing to say you can't be a brilliant scientist and a great artist.

## Examining the human brain

What do the different parts of the brain actually do?

### Broca's area (speech)

Broca's area is responsible for the ability to speak and is almost always found on the left side of the brain.

### Frontal lobe (planning, problem solving)

At the front of each hemisphere is a frontal lobe, the left side is more heavily involved in speech and verbal reasoning, while the right side handles attention.

### Auditory cortex (hearing)

The auditory cortex is responsible for processing information from the ears and can be found on both sides of the brain, in the temporal lobes.

### Temporal lobe (hearing, facial recognition, memory)

The temporal lobes are involved in language processing and visual memory.

### Parietal lobe (pressure, taste)

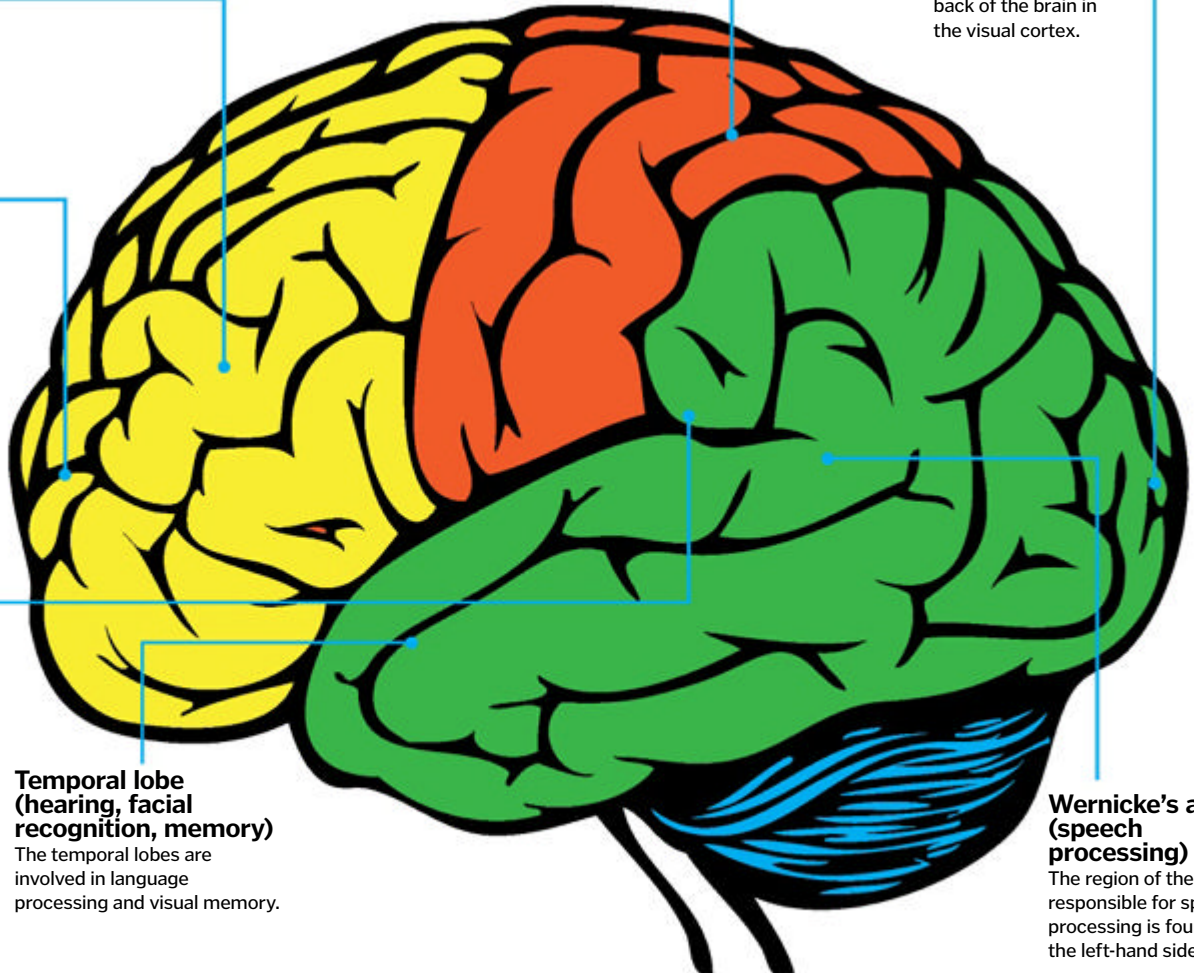
The parietal lobes handle sensory information and are involved in spatial awareness and navigation.

### Occipital lobe (vision)

Incoming information from the eyes is processed at the back of the brain in the visual cortex.

### Wernicke's area (speech processing)

The region of the brain responsible for speech processing is found on the left-hand side.



**DID YOU KNOW?** It is a myth that we only use ten per cent of our brains; even at rest, almost all brain regions are active



It took 82,944 computer processors 40 minutes to simulate just one second of human brain activity, it's that powerful

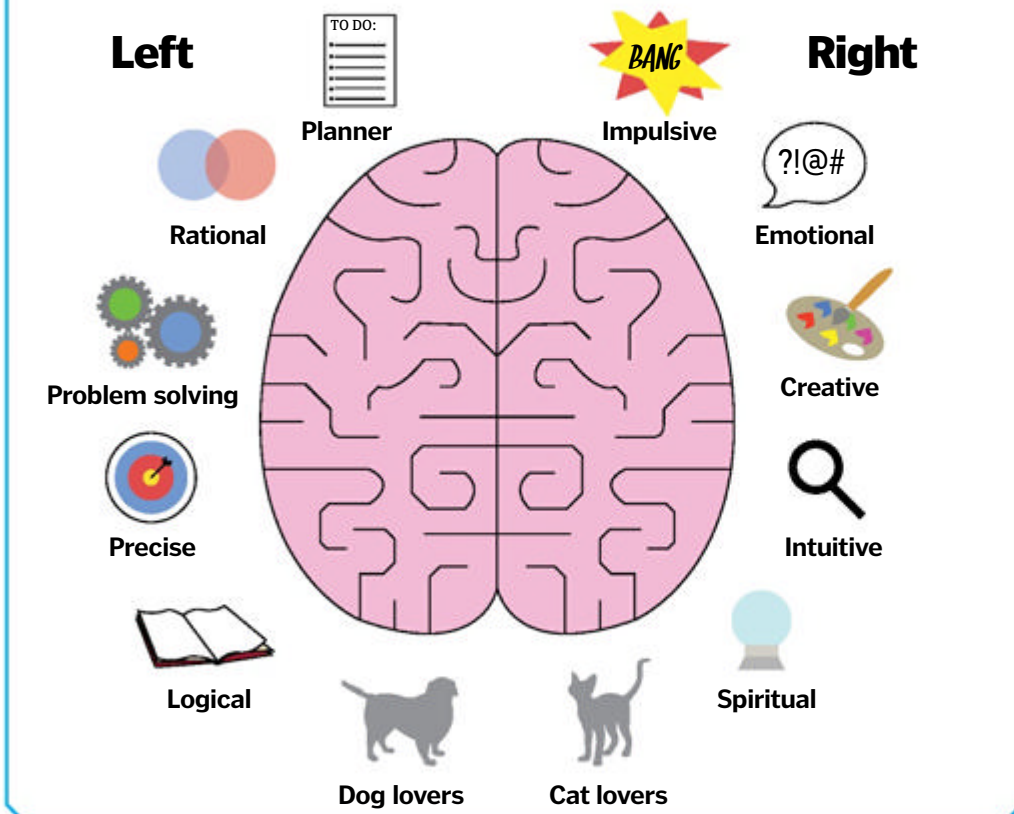


A microscopic image of the brain's extremely complex neural network

## Myth-taken identity

The left vs right brain personality myth is actually based on Nobel Prize-winning science. In the 1940s, a radical treatment for epilepsy was trialed; doctors severed the corpus callosum of a small number of patients, effectively splitting their brains in two. If a patient was shown an object in their right field of view, they had no difficulty naming it, but if they were shown the same object from the

left, they couldn't describe it. Speech and language are processed on the left side of the brain, but the information from the left eye is processed on the right. The patients were unable to say what they saw, but they could draw it. Psychologists wondered whether the differences between the two hemispheres could create two distinctive personality types, left-brained and right-brained.



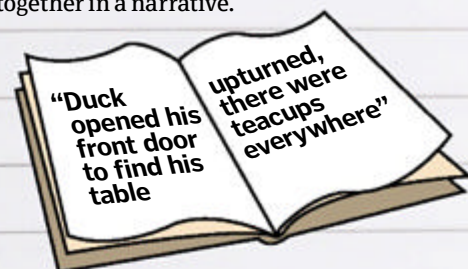
## Give your brain a fun workout

### 1 Boost your memory

Look at this list of items for one minute, then cover the page and see how many you can remember:

Coin	Telephone	Grape
Duck	Potato	Pillowcase
Key	Teacup	Bicycle
Pencil	Match	Table

Difficult? Try again, but this time, make up a story in your head, linking the objects together in a narrative.



...You get the idea. Make it as silly as you like; strange things are much more memorable than the mundane.

### 2 Slow brain ageing

Learning a new language is one of the best ways to keep your brain active. Here are four new ways to say hello:

- Polish: Cześć! (che-sh-ch)
- Russian: Zdravstvuj (zdrah-stvooy)
- Arabic: Marhaba (mar-ha-ba)
- Swahili: Hujambo (hud-yambo)



© Corbis/Thinkstock



HOW IT WORKS

# CURIOUS QUESTIONS

## Brain freeze



# What is 'brain freeze'?

That intense pain you sometimes get when you eat ice cream too fast is technically called sphenopalatine ganglioneuralgia, and it's related to migraine headaches



The pain of a brain freeze, also known as an ice cream headache, comes from your body's natural reaction to cold. When your body senses cold, it wants to conserve heat. One of the steps it takes to accomplish this is constricting the blood vessels near your skin. With less blood flowing near your skin, less heat is carried away from your core, keeping you nice and warm.

The same thing happens when something really cold hits the back of your mouth. The blood vessels in your palate constrict rapidly. When the cold goes away (because you swallowed the ice cream or cold beverage), they rapidly dilate back to their standard, normal state.

This is harmless, but a major facial nerve called the trigeminal lies close to your palate and this nerve interprets the constriction/dilation process as pain. The location of the trigeminal nerve can cause the pain to seem like it's coming from your forehead. Doctors believe this same misinterpretation of blood vessel constriction/dilation is the cause of the intense pain of a migraine headache.

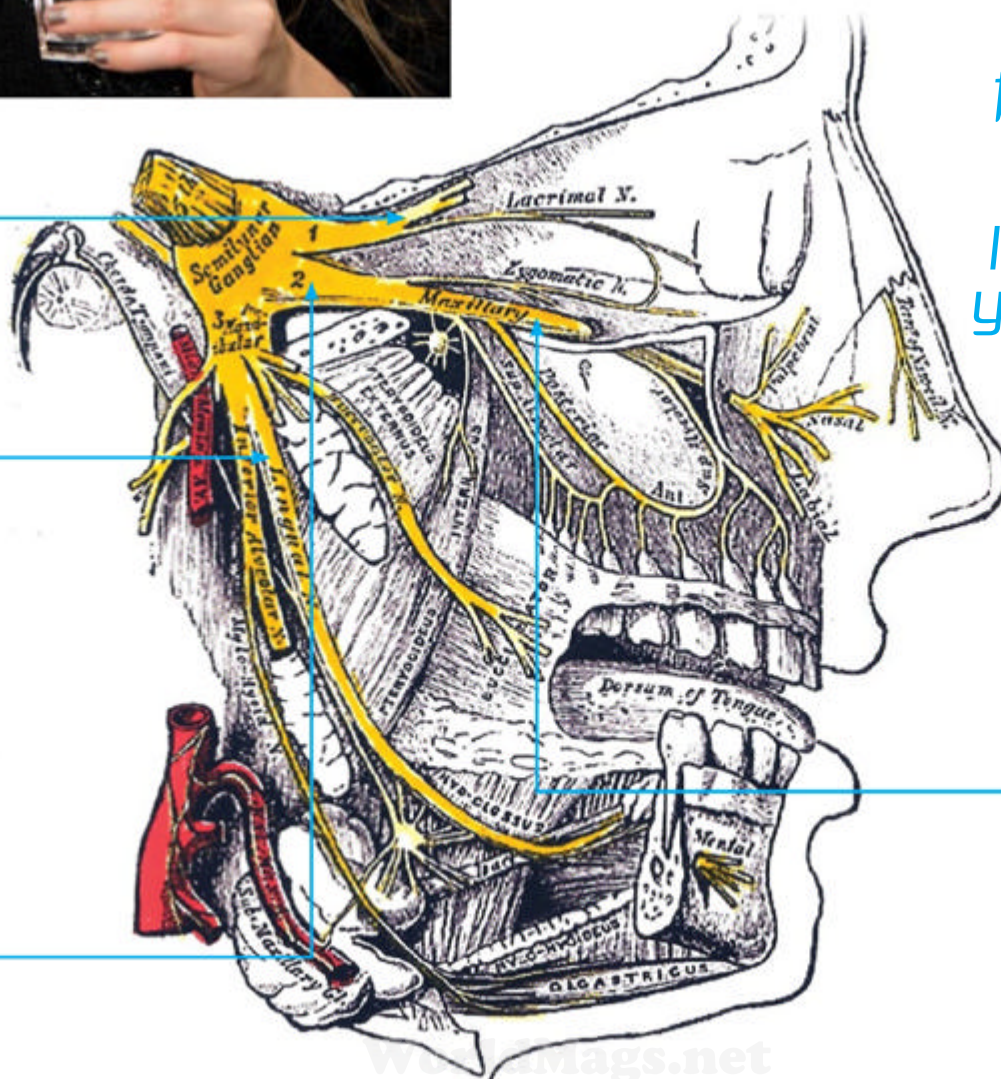
*"A major facial nerve called the trigeminal lies close to your palate"*

The Ophthalmic branch carries sensory messages from the eyeball, tear gland, upper nose, upper eyelid, forehead, and scalp.

The Mandibular branch carries sensory signals from the skin, teeth and gums of the lower jaw, as well as tongue, chin, lower lip and skin of the temporal region.

The trigeminal facial nerve is positioned very close to the palate. This nerve interprets palate blood vessel constriction and dilation as pain.

The Maxillary branch carries sensory messages from the skin, gums and teeth of the upper jaw, cheek, upper lip, lower nose and lower eyelid.



# What makes your nose run?

Discover what is going on inside a blocked nose and why it gets runny when we're ill



It surprises many people but the main culprit responsible for a blocked and runny nose is typically not excess mucus but swelling and inflammation.

If the nose becomes infected, or an allergic reaction is triggered, the immune system produces large quantities of chemical messengers that cause the local blood vessels in the lining of the nose to dilate. This enables more white blood cells to enter the area, helping to combat the infection, but it also causes the blood vessels to become leaky, allowing fluid to build up in the tissues.

Decongestant medicine contains a chemical that's similar to adrenaline, which causes the blood vessels to constrict, stopping them from leaking.



## Connective tissue

Beneath the cells lining the nose is a layer of connective tissue that is rich in blood vessels.

## Cilia

Tiny hair-like structures move mucus towards the back of the throat so that it can be swallowed.

## Mucus

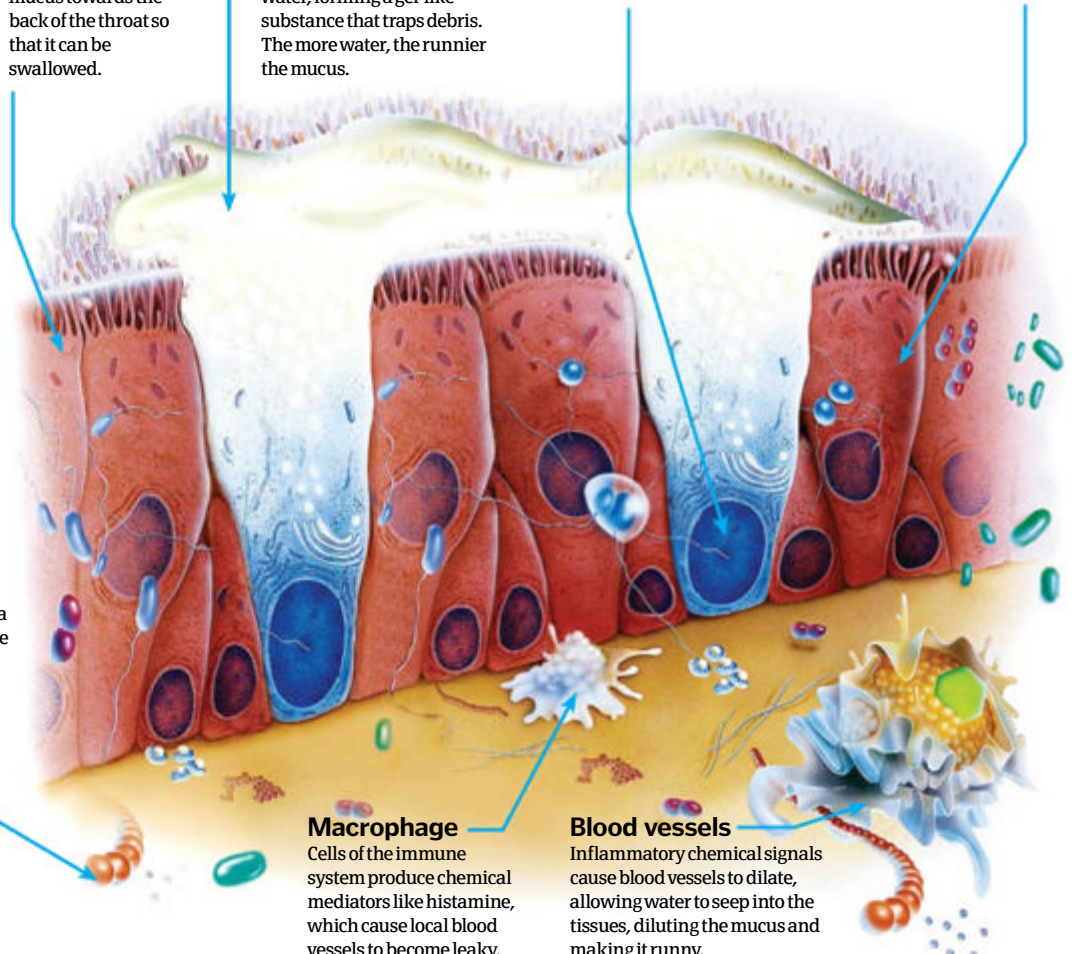
The glycoproteins that make up mucus dissolve in water, forming a gel-like substance that traps debris. The more water, the runnier the mucus.

## Goblet cell

The lining of the nose has many mucus-producing goblet cells.

## Epithelial cells

The nose is lined by epithelial cells, covered in cilia.



## Macrophage

Cells of the immune system produce chemical mediators like histamine, which cause local blood vessels to become leaky.

## Blood vessels

Inflammatory chemical signals cause blood vessels to dilate, allowing water to seep into the tissues, diluting the mucus and making it runny.



## How do we bring a person out of a coma?

When we talk about 'bringing someone out of a coma', we are referencing medically induced comas. A patient with a traumatic brain injury is deliberately put into a deep state of unconsciousness in order to reduce swelling and allow the brain to rest. When the brain is injured, it becomes inflamed. The swelling damages the brain because it is squashed inside the skull.

Doctors induce the coma using a controlled dose of drugs. To bring the person out of the coma, they simply stop the treatment. Bringing the patient out of the coma doesn't wake them immediately. They gradually regain consciousness over days, weeks or longer. Some people make a full recovery, others need rehabilitation or lifetime care and others may remain unaware of their surroundings.



## Why do our ears 'pop' on planes?



The eardrum is a thin membrane that helps to transmit sound. Air pressure is exerted on both sides of the eardrum; with the surrounding atmospheric pressure pushing it inwards while air being delivered via a tube between the back of your nose and the eardrum pushes it outwards. This tube is called the Eustachian tube, when you swallow it opens and a small bubble of air is able to move causing a 'pop'.

Rapid altitude changes in planes make the 'pop' much more noticeable due to bigger differences in pressure. Air pressure decreases as a plane ascends; hence air must exit the Eustachian tubes to equalise these pressures, again causing a 'pop'. Conversely, as a plane descends, the air pressure starts to increase; therefore the Eustachian tubes must open to allow through more air in order to equalise the pressure again, causing another 'pop'.

## What are freckles?



Freckles are clusters of the pigment melanin. It is produced by melanocytes deep in the skin, with greater concentrations giving rise to darker skin tones, and hence, ethnicity. Melanin protects the skin against harmful ultraviolet sunlight, but is also found in other locations around the body. Freckles are mostly genetically inherited, but not always. They become more prominent during sunlight exposure, as the melanocytes are triggered to increase production of melanin, leading to a darker complexion. People with freckles generally have pale skin tones, and if they stay in the Sun for too long they can damage their skin cells, leading to skin cancers like melanoma.



*"Rapid altitude changes make the 'pop' much more noticeable"*

## Why does hot honey and lemon help your throat when it's sore?



Honey and lemon can be drunk warm as a comfort remedy when suffering from a sore throat or cold, and is a popular drink with many who are feeling unwell. The idea is that honey coats the throat and therefore any inflamed areas will be 'protected' by a layer of honey, while at the same time soothing painful

areas. This means it will be less painful when these areas come into contact with other surfaces when you eat or swallow.

Lemon also helps to settle the stomach too, as it contains acid, which can be particularly helpful when experiencing an upset stomach from the effects of a cold or other digestion-related illness.

# How epidurals work

The science behind blocking pain explained



An epidural (meaning 'above the dura') is a form of local anaesthetic used to completely block pain while a patient remains conscious. It involves the careful insertion of a fine needle deep into an area of the spine between two vertebrae of the lower back.

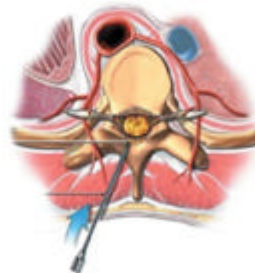
This cavity is called the epidural space. Anaesthetic medication is injected into this cavity to relieve pain or numb an area of the body by reducing sensation and blocking the nerve roots that transmit signals to the brain.

The resulting anaesthetic medication causes a warm feeling and numbness leading to the area being fully anaesthetised after about 20 minutes. Depending on the length of the procedure, a top-up may be required.

This form of pain relief has been used widely for many years, particularly post-surgery and during childbirth.

## 1. Epidural space

The outer part of the spinal canal, this cavity is typically about 7mm (0.8in) wide in adults.

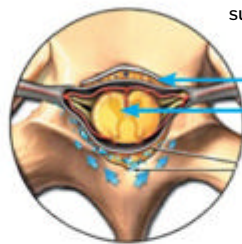


## 2. Epidural needle

After sterilising the area, a needle is inserted into the interspinous ligament until there is no more resistance to the injection of air or saline solution.

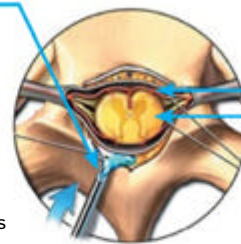
## 3. Anaesthetic

Through a fine catheter in the needle, anaesthetic is carefully introduced to the space surrounding the spinal dura.



## 4. Absorption

Over about 20 minutes the anaesthetic medication is broken down and absorbed into the local fatty tissues.

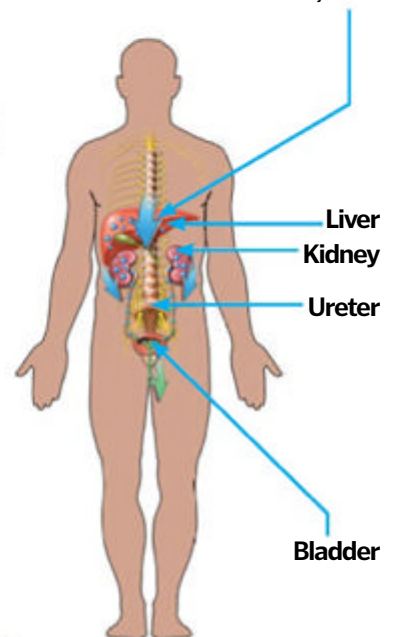


## 5. Radicular arteries

The anterior and posterior radicular arteries run with the ventral and dorsal nerve roots, respectively, which are blocked by the drug.

## 6. Processing

Anaesthetic in the blood is filtered out by the liver and kidneys, then leaves the body in urine. The effects usually wear off a couple of hours after the initial injection.



## What is a memory?



Memory is the brain's ability to recall information from the past and it generally falls into three categories – sensory, short-term and long-term.

Look at this page then close your eyes and try to remember what it looks like. Your ability to recall what this page looks like is an example of your sensory memory. Depending on whether or not this page is important to you will be the determining factor in how likely it is that it will get passed on to your short-term memory.

Can you remember the last thing you did before reading this? That is your short-term memory and is a bit like a temporary storage facility where the less-important stuff can decay, whereas the more important stuff can end up in the long-term memory.

Our senses are constantly being bombarded with information. Electrical and chemical signals travel from our eyes, ears, nose, touch and taste receptors and the brain then makes sense of these signals. When we remember something, our brain refiles the same neural pathways along which the original information travelled. You are almost reliving the experience by remembering it.

## How does toothpaste for sensitive teeth work?



Imagine just one of your teeth. It has two primary sections: the crown located above the gum line and the root below it. The crown comprises the following layers from top to bottom: enamel, dentine and the pulp gum. Nerves branch from the root to the pulp gum. The dentine runs to the root and contains a large number of tubules or microscopic pores, which run from the outside of the tooth right to the nerve in the pulp gum.

People with sensitive teeth experience pain when their teeth are exposed to something hot, cold or when pressure is applied. Their layer of enamel may be

thinner and they may have a receded gum line exposing more dentine. Therefore, the enamel and gums offer less protection and, as such, this is what makes their teeth sensitive.

Sensitive toothpaste works by either numbing tooth sensitivity, or by blocking the tubules in the dentine. Those that numb usually contain potassium nitrate, which calms the nerve of the tooth. The toothpastes that block the tubules in the dentine usually contain a chemical called strontium chloride. Repeated use builds up a strong barrier by plugging the tubules more and more.



**Red glow**

Cheeks turn red while blushing due to blood vessels being near the skin's surface.

**Nervousness**

Being embarrassed releases adrenaline, which stimulates the nervous system.

## Why and how do we blush?



Blushing occurs when an excess of blood flows into the small blood vessels just under the surface of the skin. Facial skin has more capillary loops and vessels, and vessels are nearer the surface so blushing is most visible on the cheeks, but may be seen across the whole face. The small muscles in the vessels are controlled by the nervous system.

Blushing can be affected by factors such as heat, illness, medicines, alcohol, spicy foods, allergic reactions and emotions. If you feel guilty, angry, excited or embarrassed, you will involuntarily release adrenaline, which sends the automatic nervous system into overdrive. Your breathing will increase, heart rate quicken, pupils dilate, blood will be redirected from your digestive system to your muscles, and you blush because your blood vessels dilate to improve oxygen flow around the body; this is all to prepare you for a fight or flight situation. The psychology of blushing remains elusive; some scientists even believe we have evolved to display our emotions, to act as a public apology.

*“Blushing can be affected by heat, illness, medicines and spicy foods”*

## What makes caffeine so addictive?



When we are awake the naturally occurring brain chemical adenosine is drawn to fast moving receptors in the brain. As adenosine attaches to the receptors it slows them down, which causes us to feel sleepy.

The receptor cells confuse caffeine for adenosine cells and as such willingly bond to it. The action doesn't slow down the receptor's movement as adenosine would and as the space is usurped they are unable to sense adenosine so the cells speed up, increasing neuron firing in the brain. The pituitary gland interprets this as a fight or flight scenario so releases hormones to alert the adrenal glands to produce adrenaline. This results in dilated pupils, a racing heart and an increase in blood pressure. The liver also releases sugar into the bloodstream for an instant energy boost.



## What makes us faint?



Fainting, or 'syncope', is a temporary loss of consciousness due to a lack of oxygen to the brain. It is preceded by dizziness, nausea, sweating and blurred vision.

The most common cause is overstimulation of the body's vagus nerve. Possible triggers of this include intense stress and pain, standing up for long periods or exposure to something unpleasant. Severe coughing, exercise and even urinating can sometimes produce a similar response. Overstimulation of the vagus nerve results in dilation of the body's blood vessels and a reduction of the heart rate. These two changes together mean that the body struggles to pump blood up to the brain against gravity. A lack of blood to the brain means there is not enough oxygen for it to function properly and fainting occurs.

**SOME CAFFEINE**



**1. Tea**

In a survey by the Food Standards Agency, the mean amount of caffeine found in tea was 40mg per cup.

**MORE CAFFEINE**



**2. Instant coffee**

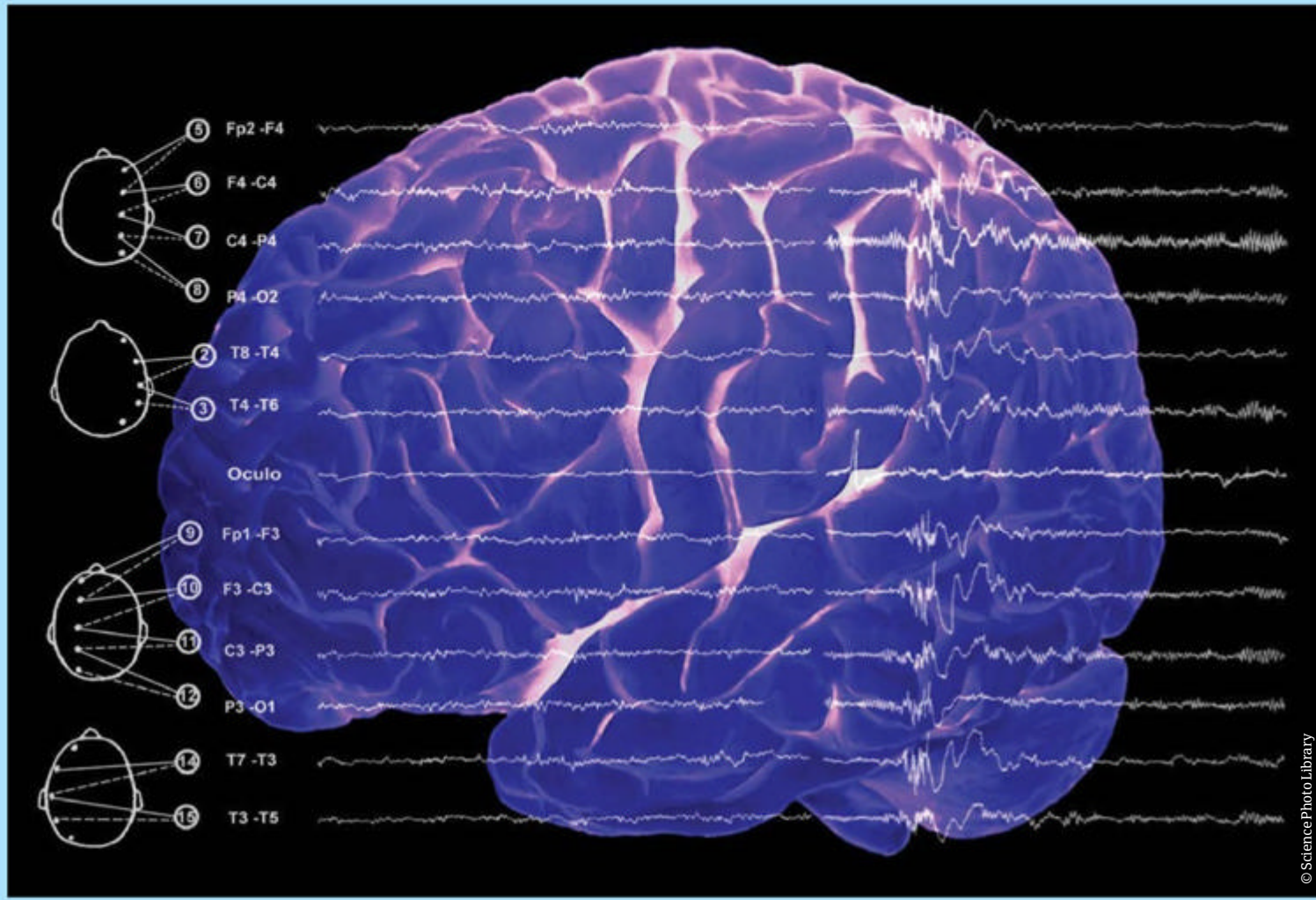
The level of caffeine present in instant coffee was not much more with an average of 54mg of caffeine per regular serving.

**MOST CAFFEINE**




**3. Ground coffee**

Ground coffee, however, contains the most caffeine. The mean level was 105mg, in some cases ranging as high as 254mg per serving.




© Science Photo Library

**What is earwax?**

 Earwax is a substance that can be found in the ear canal of humans and other mammals. Medically it is referred to as cerumen and consists of dead skin, hair and water-soluble secretions from the outer ear canal. It serves several functions – one of which is as an antibacterial, self-cleaning lubricant. Excess cerumen usually finds its way out of the ear canal through the washing of hair and jaw movement. Occasionally it can collect and get compacted which can lead to tinnitus.



**Where is the self in the brain?**

 Until recently, neuroscientists had thought it fanciful to speculate about the physical substrates of such high-level phenomena as consciousness and 'the self', but recent advances in functional neuroimaging are enabling us to make significant in-roads into these questions. Researchers have identified a core brain network, the 'default-mode network', which accounts for much of the brain's metabolism and appears to support a background level of consciousness, of the sort associated with day-dreaming or mind-wandering. Crucially, the default-mode network becomes especially activated during self-judgments, as well as other high-level, species-specific behaviours such as taking another person's point of view, or thinking outside of the moment to contemplate the past or future. The default-mode network decreases in activity and connectivity during states of reduced consciousness such as sleep or anaesthesia, and is known to exist only in a primitive form in infants and lower primates. Using functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI), we recently found that the psychedelic drug, psilocybin, the active component of 'magic mushrooms', also decreases activity and connectivity in the default-mode network – in a manner that correlates with loss of self, or 'ego-disintegration'.

**Why do we have eyebrows?**

Eyebrows are very important for diverting moisture, such as salty sweat, away from our eyes due to their distinctive arch shape. This would obviously be useful for allowing us to see clearly if it was raining or if

we were sweating a lot. It is quite easy to see how this could have had an evolutionary advantage in terms of escaping predators. Sweat also causes irritation in the eyes.



# How 72-hour deodorants work

Discover the chemistry that helps us combat body odour for up to days at a time



Deodorants prevent the odour associated with sweating, either by masking it, or by killing the bacteria responsible. To make the effects last longer, the active ingredients are sometimes encased within microcapsules. As the capsules take up water from sweat they burst, releasing deodorising chemicals. By including capsules of a variety of sizes, each requiring a different amount of water to burst, the duration can be extended.

Most deodorants also contain antiperspirants, which prevent sweating from occurring at all. These are usually aluminium-based compounds. The aluminium is taken up by the cells that line the openings of the ducts that carry sweat to the surface of the skin.

As the aluminium moves into the cells, it takes water with it, causing the cells to swell and closing off the ducts. Depending on the type of aluminium compound used, the effect will last for different lengths of time.



Antiperspirants cause cells to swell and the ducts to close up, preventing sweating altogether

# Modern fillings



Composite resins are replacing traditional metal fillings, but what are they made of?

### Curing

A light is used to trigger a chemical reaction within the resin, causing the material to harden.

### Finishing touches

A piece of carbon paper is used to test whether the bite lines up properly, and the filling is smoothed down accordingly.

### Primer

A priming agent is brushed onto the prepared tooth surface to enable the filling to adhere properly.

### Decay

The decayed portion of the tooth is removed using a high-speed drill; this generates a solid platform for the filling to stick to.

### Layering

The liquid composite resin is applied in layers. After each layer, the composite is cured.

### Composite resin

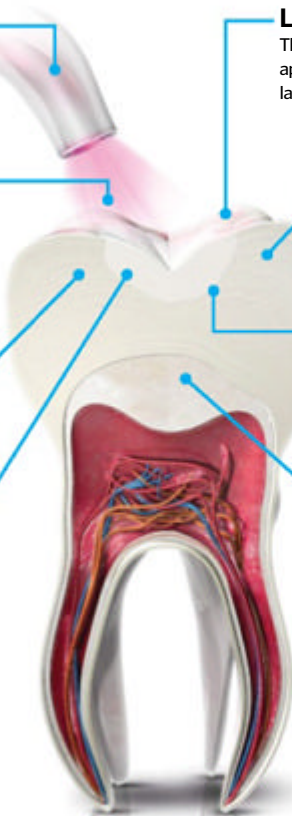
Dental composites are made from a resin matrix containing inorganic materials, like silica, for durability.

### Acid

A controlled amount of acid is applied to the drilled tooth to generate micro-holes for the filling to bind to.

### Base

In deeper fillings, a cement base made from glass ionomer or zinc phosphate is added to insulate the nerve from temperature changes.



## Is metal bad?

Traditional silver-coloured 'amalgam' fillings are made from mixed metals, and are often comprised of around 50 per cent mercury. Historical evidence suggests that this type of filling has been in use since around 650 A.D, and despite the advances in composite materials, the amalgam filling is still in use to this day.

There has been much controversy over the biological safety of amalgam fillings though, and concerns have been raised regarding mercury released into the body, as well as into the environment. However, as it stands, no causal link between health complaints and amalgam fillings has been proven. In fact, they still provide some advantages over composite fillings, and require significantly less repair and replacement.



Amalgam fillings require much less upkeep than their composite counterparts

## Who do you inherit mitochondria from?

**A Father B Mother C Grandparent**



### Answer:

The DNA within mitochondria is only from your mother's egg. The corresponding DNA from your father's sperm is destroyed after fertilisation. This means researchers can track back unchanged maternal inheritance lines many hundreds of years.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Mitochondrial disease occurs when mitochondria malfunction – there is a huge variety of symptoms

# What powers your cells?

Discover how mitochondria produce all the energy your body needs



Mitochondria are known as the batteries of cells because they use food to make energy. Muscle fibres need energy for us to move and brain cells need power to communicate with the rest of the body. They generate energy, called adenosine triphosphate (ATP), by combining oxygen with food molecules like glucose.

However, mitochondria are true biological multi-taskers, as they are also involved with signalling between cells, cell growth and the cell cycle. They perform all of these functions by regulating metabolism - the processes that

maintain life - by controlling Krebs Cycle which is the set of reactions that produce ATP.

Mitochondria are found in nearly every cell in your body. They are found in most eukaryotic cells, which have nucleus and other organelles bound by a cell membrane. This means cells without these features, such as red blood cells, don't contain mitochondria. Their numbers also vary based on the individual cell types, with high-energy cells, like heart cells, containing many thousands. Mitochondria are vital for most life – human beings, animals and plants all have them, although bacteria don't.

They are deeply linked with evolution of all life. It is believed mitochondria formed over a billion years ago from two different cells, where the larger cell enveloped the other. The outer cell became dependent on the inner one for energy, while the inner cell was reliant on the outer one for protection.

This inner cell evolved to become a mitochondrion, and the outer cells evolved to form building blocks for larger cell structures. This process is known as the endosymbiotic theory, which is Ancient Greek for 'living together within.'

## Inside the mitochondria

Take a tour of the cell's energy factory

### ATP synthesis

ATP is the basic energy unit of the cell and is produced by ATP synthase enzymes on the inner membrane at its interaction with the matrix.

### Mitochondrial DNA

Mitochondria have their own DNA and can divide to produce copies.



### Phospholipid bilayer

Every mitochondria has a double-layered surface composed of phosphates and lipids.

### Outer membrane

The outer membrane contains large gateway proteins, which control passage of substances through the cell wall.

### Inner membrane

This layer contains the key proteins that regulate energy production inside the mitochondria, including ATP synthase.

### Inter-membrane space

This contains proteins and ions that control what is able to pass in and out of the organelle via concentration gradients and ion pumps.

### Cristae

The many folds of the inner membrane increase the surface area, allowing greater energy production for high-activity cells.

### Matrix

The mitochondrial matrix contains the enzymes, ribosomes and DNA, which are essential to allowing the complex energy-producing reactions to occur.



Mitochondria produce fuel for everyday activities such as exercise

## How many are in a cell?

The number of mitochondria in a cell depends on how active that particular cell is and how much energy it requires to function. As a general rule, they can either be low energy without a single mitochondrion, or high energy with thousands per cell. Examples of high-energy cells are heart muscles or the busy liver cells, which are active even when you're asleep, and are packed with mitochondria to keep functioning. If you train your muscles at the gym, those cells will develop more mitochondria as an adaptive mechanism to help provide energy.

© SPL



# Is it possible to see our thoughts?

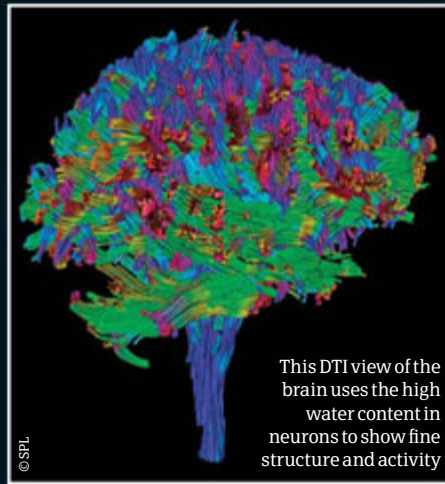
The brain is perhaps the most vital of the body's vital organs, yet in many ways it's also the least understood



At its most simple level, the brain is a series of interconnecting neurons that relay electrical signals between one another.

They are 'all or none' transmitters as, like a computer, they either transmit a signal (like a binary '1') or do not ('0'). Different neurons are receptive to different stimuli, such as light, touch and pain. The complex activity of these neurons is then interpreted by various parts of the brain into useful information. For example, light images from the eye are relayed via the optic nerve to the occipital cortex located in the back of the skull, for interpretation of the scene in front of you.

The generation and interpretation of thoughts is a more complex and less well understood process. In fact, it is a science of its own, where there are many definitions of what a 'thought' is, and of what defines consciousness. In an effort to better define these, doctors, scientists and psychologists have turned to novel imaging techniques to better understand the function of our minds. Research into understanding brain activity and function has led to some of the most advanced imaging techniques available. This has helped to treat conditions such as Alzheimer's dementia, epilepsy and stroke, as well as mental illnesses where there is not necessarily a physical problem within the

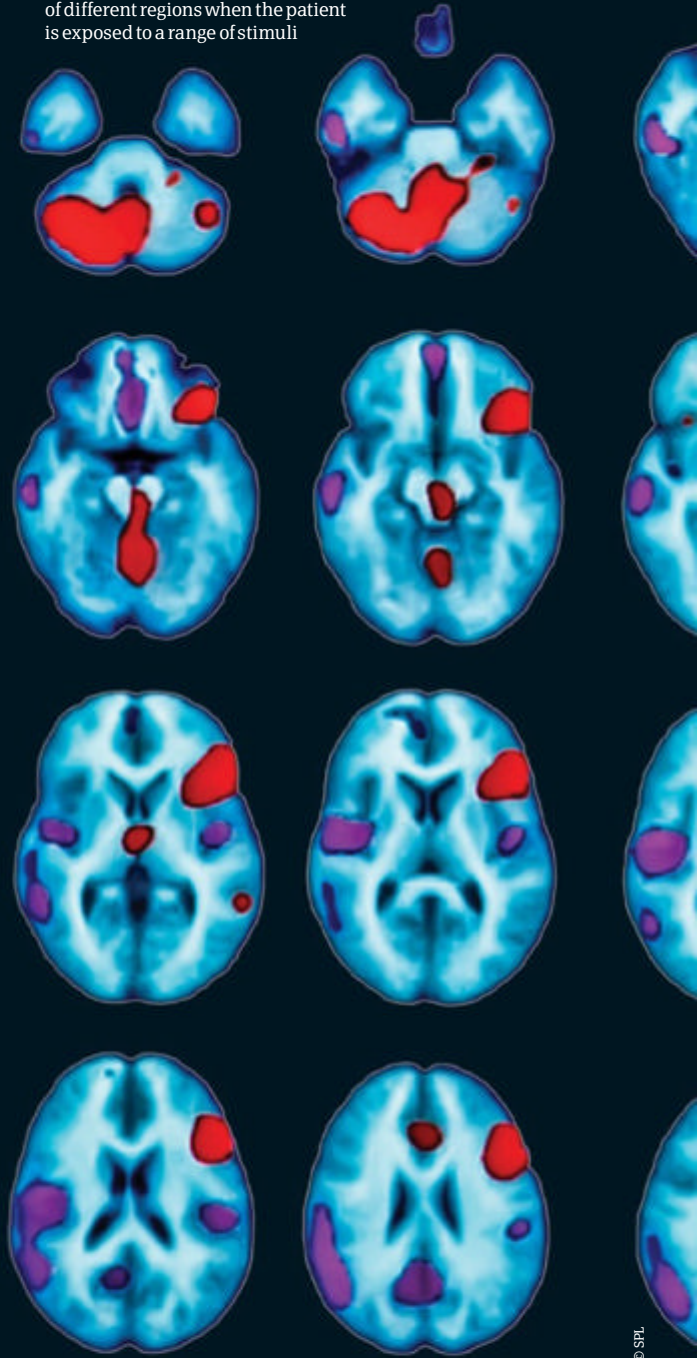


This DTI view of the brain uses the high water content in neurons to show fine structure and activity

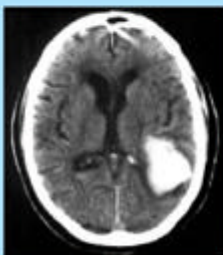
brain. It has also led to benefits for imaging other diseases in other parts of the body, including several forms of cancer.

These advanced imaging techniques include scans to produce images of the anatomical structure of the brain, and interpretation of energy patterns to determine activity or abnormalities. Scientists have started to ascertain which parts of the brain function as we form different thoughts and experience different emotions. This means we are very much on the brink of seeing our own thoughts.

This CT scan of the brain has fused PET images over it, showing activity of different regions when the patient is exposed to a range of stimuli

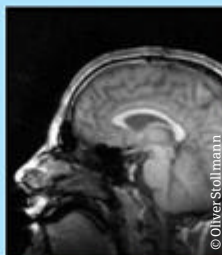


## How can we view the brain?



### Computed tomography (CT)

This combines multiple X-rays to see the bones of the skull and soft tissue of the brain. It's the most common scan used after trauma, to detect injuries to blood vessels and swelling. However, it can only give a snapshot of the structure so can't capture our thoughts.



### Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)

MRI uses strong magnetic fields to align the protons in water molecules in various body parts. When used in the brain, it allows intricate anatomical detail to be visualised. It has formed the basis of novel techniques to visualise thought processes.



### Functional MRI (fMRI)

This form of MRI uses blood-oxygen-level-dependent (BOLD) contrast, followed by a strong magnetic field, to detect tiny changes in oxygen-rich and oxygen-poor blood. By showing pictures to invoke certain emotions, fMRI can reveal which areas are active during particular thoughts.

### 1. HEAD TRAUMA



© Thierry Geoffroy

### CT scan

Fast and easily accessible 24 hours a day, these scans can identify life-threatening bleeding within the skull for neurosurgeons to stop.

### 2. BRAIN TUMOURS

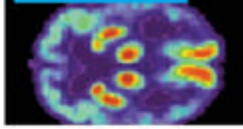


© Marvinton

### 3D MRI

These 3D scans show intricate anatomical details of brain tumours, particularly in relation to the surrounding structures. This enables doctors to determine if they can be safely removed or not.

### 3. ALZHEIMER'S



### PET scan

This functional imaging is allowing researchers to test novel drugs and treatments to prevent progression of this serious brain disorder.

**DID YOU KNOW?** CT scanning of the brain was invented in the early-Seventies

# Picking apart the brain

## The frontal lobes

The frontal lobes of the folded cerebral cortex take care of thought, reasoning, decisions and memories. This area is believed to be largely responsible for our individual personalities.

## The sensory and motor cortexes

The pre- and post-central gyri receive the sensory information from the body and then dispatch orders to the muscles, in the form of signals through motor neurons.

## The occipital cortex

In the posterior fossa of the skull, this cortex receives impulses from the optic nerves to form images. These images are in fact seen upside down, but this area enables them to be interpreted the right way up.

## The brainstem

Formed from the midbrain, pons and medulla oblongata, the brainstem maintains the vital functions without us having to think about them. These include respiration and heart function; any damage to it leads to rapid death.

## The cerebellum

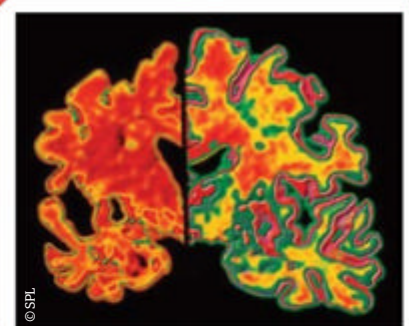
The cerebellum is responsible for fine movements and co-ordination. Without it, we couldn't write, type, play musical instruments or perform any task that requires precise actions.

## The pituitary gland

This tiny gland is responsible for hormone production throughout the body, which can thus indirectly affect our emotions and behaviours.



© Alamy



© SPL

## Imaging Alzheimer's

Alzheimer's disease is a potentially debilitating condition, which can lead to severe dementia. The ability to diagnose it accurately and early on has driven the need for modern imaging techniques. The above image shows a PET scan. The right-hand side of the image (as you look at it) shows a normal brain, with a good volume and activity range. On the left-hand side is a patient affected by Alzheimer's. The brain is shrunken with fewer folds, and a lower range of activity – biologically speaking, there are far fewer neurons firing.

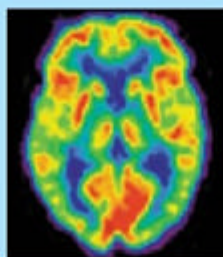
## Diffusion tensor imaging (DTI)

This MRI variant relies on the direction of water diffusion within tissue. When a magnetic gradient is applied, the water aligns and, when the field is removed, the water diffuses according to a tissue's internal structure. This allows a 3D image of activity to be built up.



## Positron emission tomography (PET)

This bleeding-edge technology detects gamma rays emitted from biologically active tissues based on glucose. It can pick up unusual biological activity, such as that from cancer. There have been recent advances to combine PET with CT or MRI to obtain lots of data quickly.





# How anaesthesia works

By interfering with nerve transmission these special drugs stop pain signals from reaching the brain during operations



Anaesthetics are a form of drug widely used to prevent pain associated with surgery. They fall into two main categories: local and general. Local anaesthetics can be either applied directly to the skin or injected. They are used to numb small areas without affecting consciousness, so the patient will remain awake throughout a procedure.

Local anaesthetics provide a short-term blockade of nerve transmission, preventing sensory neurons from sending pain signals to the brain. Information is transmitted along nerves by the movement of sodium ions down a carefully maintained electrochemical gradient. Local anaesthetics cut off sodium channels, preventing the ions from travelling through the membrane and stopping electrical signals travelling along the nerve.

Local anaesthesia isn't specific to pain nerves, so it will also stop information passing from the brain to the muscles, causing temporary paralysis.

General anaesthetics, meanwhile, are inhaled and injected medications that act on the central nervous system (brain and spinal cord) to induce a temporary coma, causing unconsciousness, muscle relaxation, pain relief and amnesia.

It's not known for sure how general anaesthetics 'shut down' the brain, but there are several proposed mechanisms. Many general anaesthetics dissolve in fats and are thought to interfere with the lipid membrane that surrounds nerve cells in the brain. They also disrupt neurotransmitter receptors, altering transmission of the chemical signals that let nerve cells communicate with one another.

## Comfortably numb

If large areas need to be anaesthetised while the patient is still awake, local anaesthetics can be injected around bundles of nerves. By preventing transmission through a section of a large nerve, the signals from all of the smaller nerves that feed into it can't reach the brain. For example, injecting anaesthetic around the maxillary nerve will not only generate numbness in the roof of the mouth and all of the teeth on that side, but will stop nerve transmission from the nose and sinuses too. Local anaesthetics can also be injected into the epidural space in the spinal canal. This prevents nerve transmission through the spinal roots, blocking the transmission of information to the brain. The epidural procedure is often used to mollify pain during childbirth.

## The body under general anaesthetic

What happens to various parts of the body when we're put under?

### Brain activity

Electroencephalograms (EEGs) show that the electrical activity in the brain drops to a state deeper than sleep, mimicking a coma.

### Nil by mouth

General anaesthetics suppress the gag reflex and can cause vomiting, so to prevent choking patients must not eat before an operation.

### Heart rate

The circulatory system is slowed by anaesthetic, so heart rate, blood pressure and blood oxygen are all continuously monitored.

### Pain neurons

Unlike with local anaesthetic, pain neurons still fire under general anaesthesia, but the brain does not process the signals properly.

### Muscle relaxation

A muscle relaxant is often administered with the anaesthetic; this causes paralysis and enables lower doses of anaesthetic to be used.

### Memory

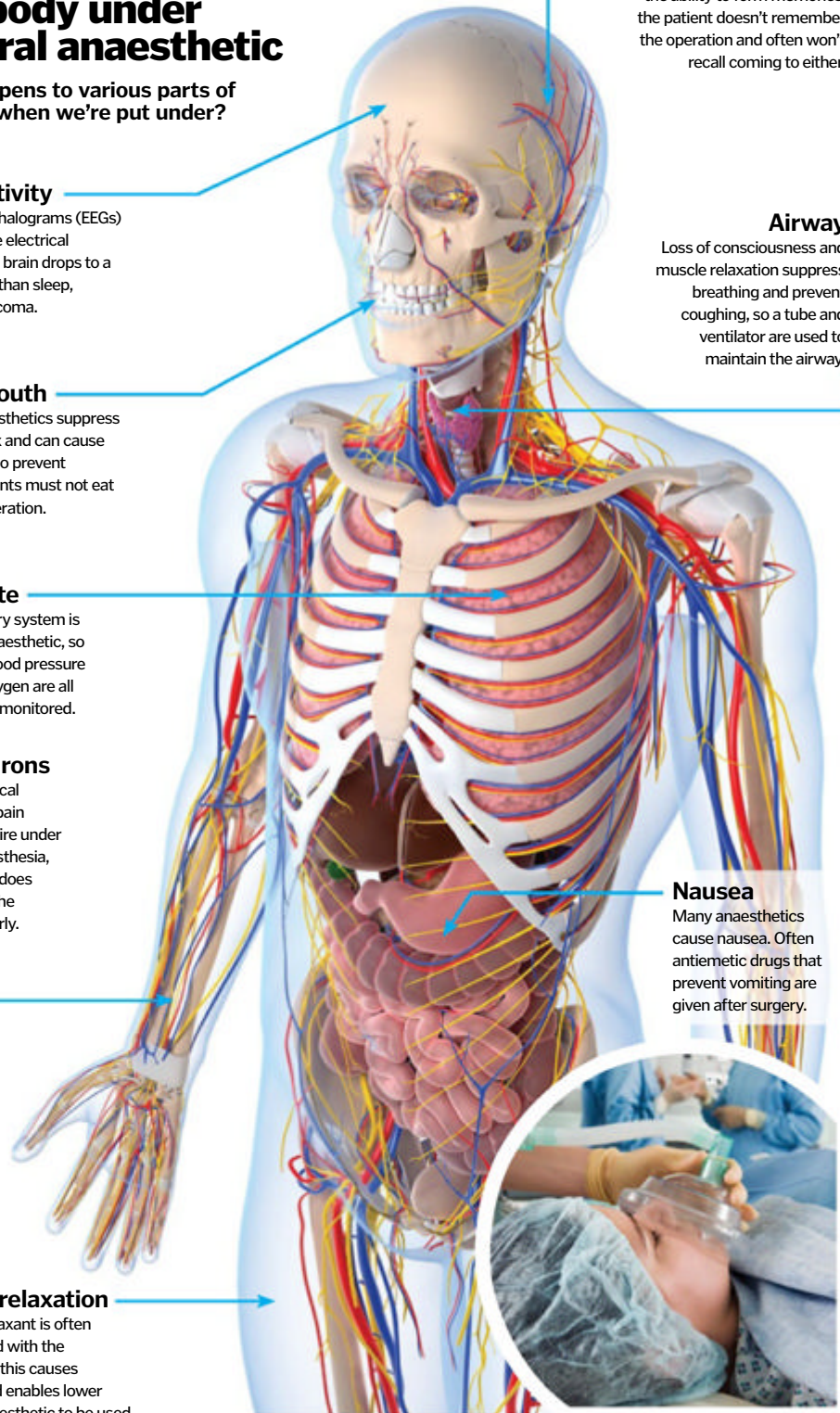
General anaesthetic affects the ability to form memories; the patient doesn't remember the operation and often won't recall coming to either.

### Airway

Loss of consciousness and muscle relaxation suppress breathing and prevent coughing, so a tube and ventilator are used to maintain the airway.

### Nausea

Many anaesthetics cause nausea. Often antiemetic drugs that prevent vomiting are given after surgery.




© Getty

**DID YOU KNOW?** The scientists who revealed bacteria caused gastric ulcers had to drink their own experiment to prove it!

# What causes stomach ulcers?

Originally thought to be the result of stress, we now know that bacteria are the culprits...

 Normally a thick layer of alkaline mucus effectively protects the cells lining the stomach

from the low pH of stomach acid. If this mucus becomes disrupted, however, acid comes into contact with the organ's lining, damaging the cells and resulting in an ulcer.

Around 60 per cent of stomach ulcers are caused by inflammation due to chronic infection by the bacterium *Helicobacter pylori*. Bacterial by-products damage the cells lining the stomach, causing a breakdown of the top layers of tissue.

Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), like ibuprofen and aspirin, also cause stomach ulcers in large doses. They disrupt the enzymes responsible for mucus production, diminishing the protective barrier.

## An ulcer in the making

Once bacteria breach the stomach lining, it can no longer protect itself from its acidic contents...

### Neutralising stomach acid

H pylori break down urea to make ammonia. This is used to produce bicarbonate to neutralise dangerous stomach acid.

### Enzymes

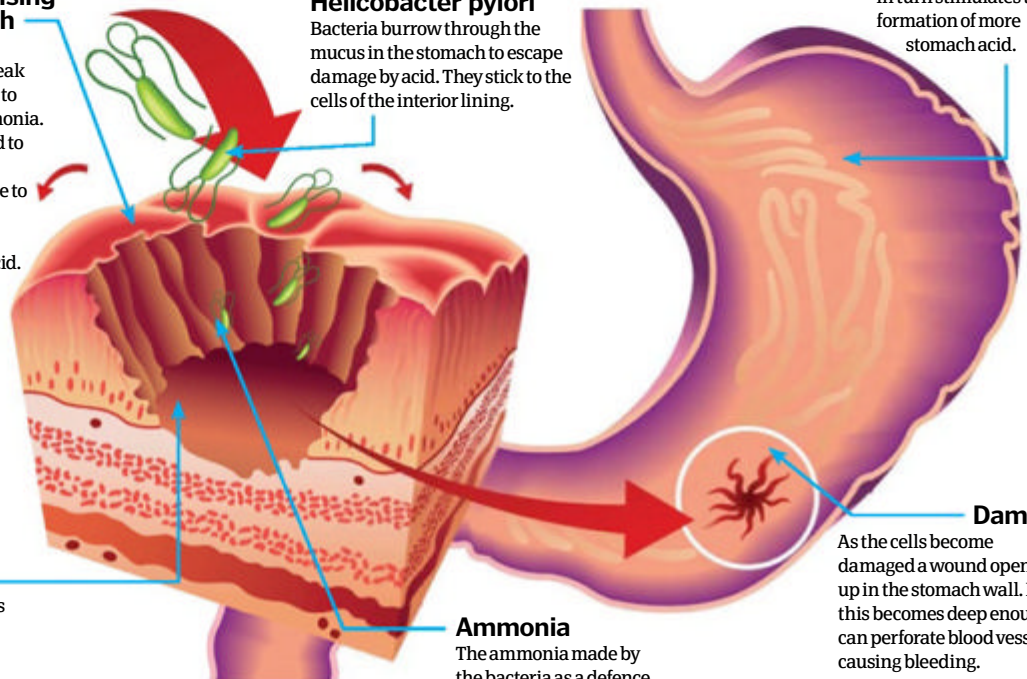
H pylori produce proteases and phospholipases – enzymes that damage the proteins and cell membranes of the stomach cells.

### Helicobacter pylori

Bacteria burrow through the mucus in the stomach to escape damage by acid. They stick to the cells of the interior lining.

### Gastrin

The inflammatory response increases production of the hormone gastrin. This in turn stimulates the formation of more stomach acid.

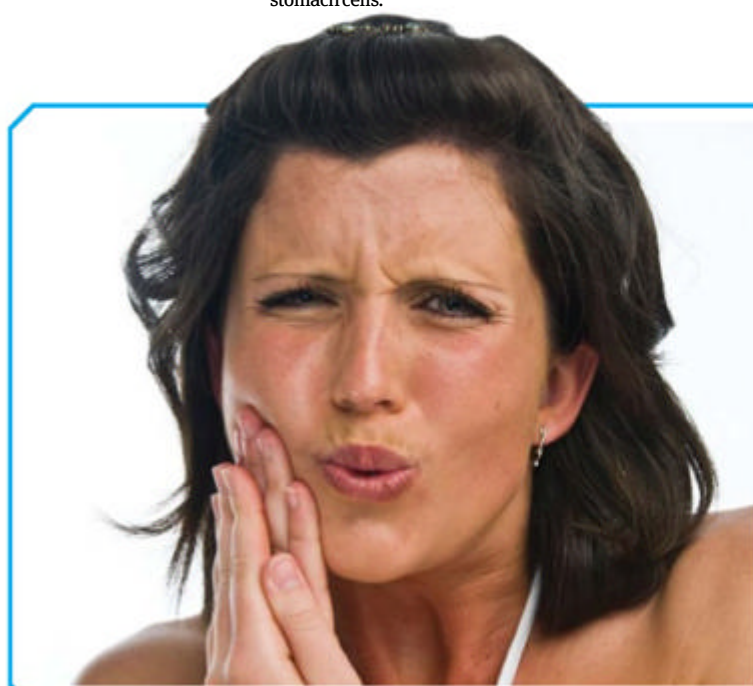


### Damage

As the cells become damaged a wound opens up in the stomach wall. If this becomes deep enough it can perforate blood vessels causing bleeding.

### Ammonia

The ammonia made by the bacteria as a defence against acid damages the cells lining the stomach, causing inflammation.



## Why do we sometimes get mouth ulcers?

Ulcers are small lesions usually triggered by physical damage to the inside of the mouth, for example biting your cheek accidentally, eating sharp food or brushing your teeth. They are very rarely contagious and usually heal within ten days. Recurrent ulcers have a variety of causes, the most common being stress and hormonal changes.

In other cases, recurrent ulcers may be symptomatic of conditions including B12 or iron deficiencies, gastrointestinal diseases or immunosuppressant diseases such as HIV. Ulcers are sometimes triggered by sensitivity to certain foods including strawberries, almonds, tomatoes, cheese, chocolate and coffee.

*“They are rarely contagious and usually heal in ten days”*



HOW IT WORKS

# CURIOUS QUESTIONS

Hair growth / Blond hair



© Thinkstock

## How quickly does human hair grow?



Human hair grows on average 1.25 centimetres (0.5 inches) per month, which is equivalent to about 15 centimetres (six inches) per year. There are several variables that can affect hair's growth rate such as age, health and genetics.

Each hair grows in three stages, the first being the anagen phase where most growth occurs. The longer your hair remains in this stage dictates how long and quickly it develops; this can last between two and eight years and is followed by the catagen (transitional) and telogen (resting) phases. Hair growth rates vary across different areas of the head, with that on the crown growing the fastest.

*"Each hair grows in three stages, the first being the anagen phase where most growth occurs"*

## Why does blond hair look darker when it's wet?



Dry blond hair has a rough, tiled surface – something like fish scales. When light rays hit these scales, they bounce off in all directions. Some of the light reaches your eyes and makes the hair look brighter; it's like shining a torch on the hair.

When you wash your hair, a thin film of water forms around each fibre. Light rays pass into the film of water, bounce around inside, and there's a chance they'll get absorbed by the hair. Since the light gets trapped inside the water, less of it reaches your eyes, so the hair actually appears lot darker.

*"A thin film of water forms around each fibre"*



# Correcting heart rhythms



How can a little electricity be used to fix a heart that's beating off-kilter?

**6. Natural pacemaker**  
The heart has its own internal pacemaker known as the sinoatrial node. Delivering a small electric shock to this resynchronises the organ's natural electrical activity.

**5. Electric shocks**  
Low-energy electric shocks are delivered to the heart through the electrodes.

**2. Conductive gel**  
A saltwater-based gel is used so the current can travel from the electrodes and through the skin.

**1. Paddles**  
Two metallic plates are placed on the patient's chest across the heart.

**7. Cardioversion machine**  
The machine records the electrical activity of the heart and calculates the electric shocks required to restore the organ to its normal rhythm.

**4. Arrhythmia**  
If the heart beats too fast, or at an irregular pace, it becomes unable to effectively pump blood around the body.

**8. Low energy**  
Resetting an abnormal heart beat uses fairly low-energy shocks of just 50-200 joules.

**3. Timing the shock**  
The heart is vulnerable when it is between beats, so to prevent a cardiac arrest, the shock is timed to coincide with the pumping of the ventricles.

**BEFORE CARDIOVERSION**

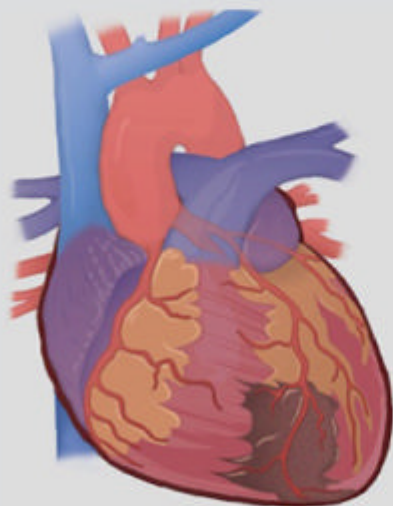
**Atrial fibrillation**

**AFTER CARDIOVERSION**

**Normal ECG**

## Why's salt bad for the heart?

Simply put, too much salt is bad for you as it increases the demand on your heart to pump blood around the body. This is because when you eat salt it causes the body to retain increased quantities of water, which increases your blood pressure, and this places more strain on your heart. As such, most doctors recommend moderating daily salt intake.



## Do women have an Adam's apple?



You may not realise, but actually everyone has an Adam's apple, but men's are usually easier to see in their throat. It's a bump on the neck that moves when you swallow, named after the biblical Adam. Supposedly, it's a chunk of the Garden of Eden's forbidden fruit stuck in his descendants' throats, but it's actually a bump on the thyroid cartilage surrounding the voice box. Thyroid cartilage is shield-shaped and the Adam's apple is the bit at the front.

Why do men's Adam's apples stick out more? This is partly because they have bonier necks, but it is also because their larynxes grow differently from women's during puberty to accommodate their longer, thicker vocal cords, which give them deeper voices.



# What causes a rumbling stomach?

Discover how the small intestine is really to blame...

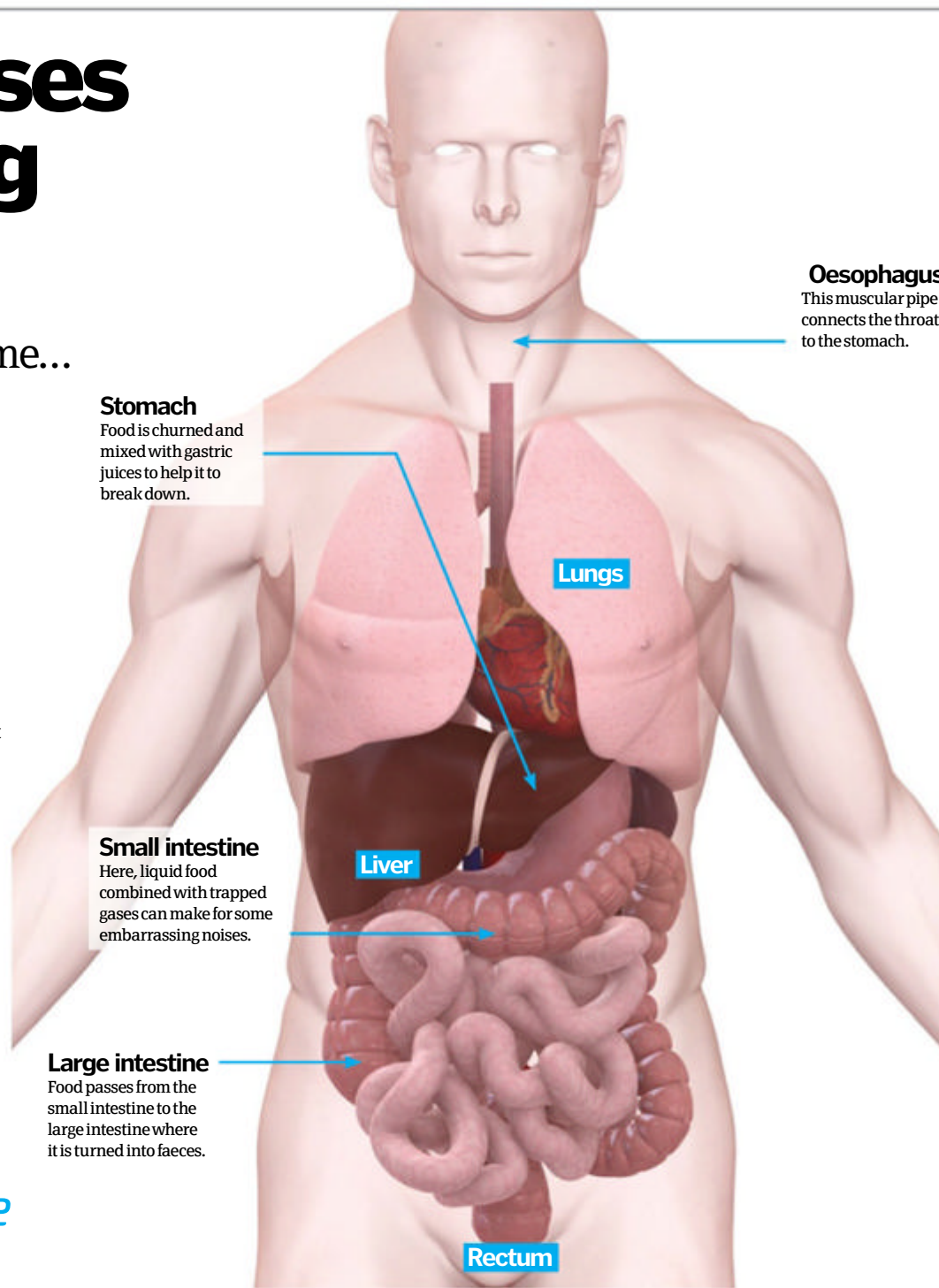


Waves of involuntary muscle contractions called peristalsis churn the food we eat to soften it and transport it through the digestive system. The contractions are caused by strong muscles in the oesophagus wall, which take just ten seconds to push food down to the stomach. Muscles in the stomach churn food and gastric juices to break it down further.

Then, after four hours, the semi-digested liquefied food moves on to the small intestine where yet more powerful muscle contractions force the food down through the intestine's bends and folds. This is where the rumbling occurs. Air from gaseous foods or that swallowed when we eat – often due to talking or inhaling through the nose while chewing food – also ends up in the small intestine, and it's this combination of liquid and gas in a small space that causes the gurgling noise.

Rumbling is louder the less food present in the small intestine, which is partly why people associate rumbling tummies with hunger. The other reason is that although the stomach may be clear, the brain still triggers peristalsis at regular intervals to rid the intestines of any remaining food. This creates a hollow feeling that causes you to feel hungry.

*"Then, after four hours, the semi-digested liquefied food moves to the small intestine"*



### Oesophagus

This muscular pipe connects the throat to the stomach.

### Stomach

Food is churned and mixed with gastric juices to help it to break down.

Lungs

### Small intestine

Here, liquid food combined with trapped gases can make for some embarrassing noises.

Liver

### Large intestine

Food passes from the small intestine to the large intestine where it is turned into faeces.

Rectum

## Are seasickness and altitude sickness the same thing?

No, they're not – altitude sickness is a collection of symptoms brought on when you're suddenly exposed to a high-altitude environment with lower air pressure so less oxygen enters our body. The symptoms can include a headache, fatigue, dizziness and nausea.

Seasickness, on the other hand, is a more general feeling of nausea that's thought to be caused when your brain and senses get 'mixed

signals' about a moving environment – for instance, when your eyes tell you that your immediate surroundings (such as a ship's cabin) are still as a rock, while your sense of balance (and your stomach!) tell you something quite different.

This is the reason why closing your eyes or taking a turn out on deck will often help, as it reconciles the two opposing sensations.



© Thinkstock

# What are moles?

These small skin blemishes are common, but what are they and why must we keep a close eye on them?



A mole on the skin, or a melanocytic naevus, is an abnormal collection of the pigment cells called

melanocytes. Some moles can be present at birth (congenital melanocytic naevi) but most develop spontaneously later in life, usually as a result of exposure to sunlight. Moles are often brown or black (pigmented naevi) and are usually round or oval, but they can be a variety of different shapes and sizes. Growth and change over time is quite normal.

Moles sound pretty unremarkable and are harmless in nature, and yet we must be

vigilant if a new one appears on the skin or if an existing mole begins to change. A malignant melanoma is a rare kind of skin cancer that can occur in melanocytes. Although rare, malignant melanomas cause the majority of the deaths related to skin cancer. If you're particularly moley you're more susceptible to melanoma and should try to avoid too much sunlight.

Moles to watch are dysplastic naevi, which are large, irregularly shaped moles of mixed colouration. They often have paler, jagged edges with darker centres and tend to be accompanied by a lot of other moles on the body.



A malignant melanoma can spell trouble

*"A malignant melanoma is a rare kind of skin cancer that can occur in melanocytes"*

## Melanocyte

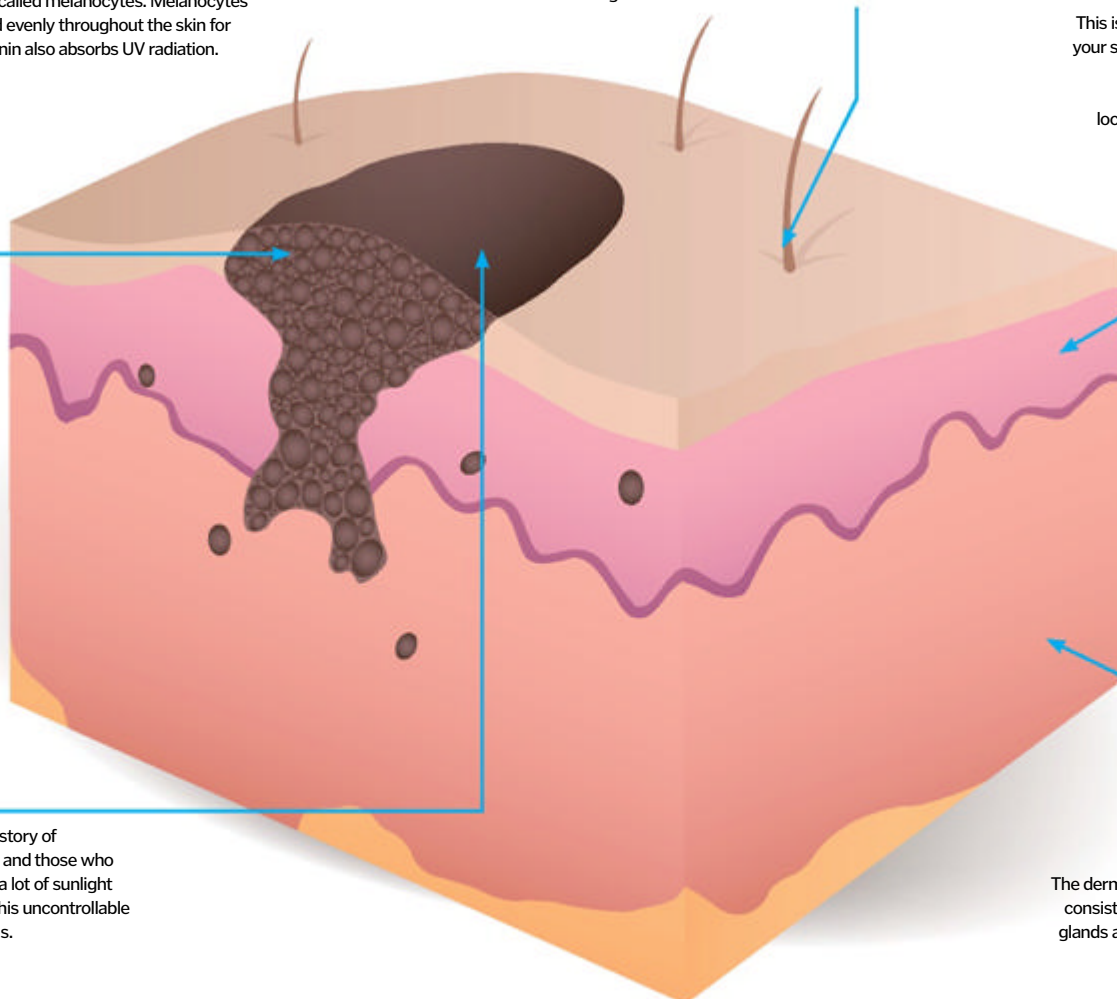
The skin's natural pigment, melanin, is a protein produced in cells called melanocytes. Melanocytes are usually spread evenly throughout the skin for even colour. Melanin also absorbs UV radiation.

## Hairs

Hairs are made from filamentous biomaterial that grows from follicles in the dermis.

## Epidermis

This is the outer layer of your skin and it contains tough, flat cells. Melanocytes are located in the dermis and epidermis.



## Melanoma

People with a family history of malignant melanomas and those who have been exposed to a lot of sunlight are most at risk from this uncontrollable growth of pigment cells.

## Dermis

The dermis is the layer that consists of blood vessels, glands and nerve endings.



# Do we control our brains or do our brains control us?



An experiment at the Max Planck Institute, Berlin, in 2008 showed that when you decide to move your hand, the decision can be seen in your brain, with an MRI scanner, before you are aware you have made a decision. The delay is around six seconds. During that time, your mind is made up but your consciousness doesn't acknowledge the decision until your hand moves. One interpretation of this is that your consciousness – the thing you think of as 'you' – is just a passenger inside a deterministic automaton. Your unconscious brain and your body get on with running your life, and only report back to your conscious mind to preserve a sense of free will. But it's just as valid to say that when you make a decision, there's always background processing going on, which the conscious mind ignores for convenience. In the same way, your eye projects an upside-down image onto your retina, but your unconscious brain turns it the right way around.



Gelotology is the study of laughter and its effects on the human body



## What happens when we laugh?

Which muscles react when we find something funny and why is laughter so hard to fake?



Laughing can sometimes be completely involuntary and involves a complex series of muscles, which is why it's so difficult to fake and also why an active effort is required to suppress laughter in moments of sudden hilarity at inopportune moments.

In the face, the zygomaticus major and minor anchor at the cheekbones and stretch down towards the jaw to

pull the facial expression upward; on top of this, the zygomaticus major also pulls the upper lip upward and outward.

The sound of our laugh is produced by the same mechanisms which are used for coughing and speaking: namely, the lungs and the larynx. When we're breathing normally, air from the lungs passes freely through the completely open vocal cords in the larynx. When they close, air cannot pass, however when they're partially open, they generate some form of sound. Laughter is the result when we exhale while the vocal cords close, with the respiratory muscles periodically activating to produce the characteristic rhythmic sound of laughing.

The risorius muscle is used to smile, but affects a smaller portion of the face and is easier to control than the zygomatic muscles. As a result, the risorius is more often used to feign amusement, hence why fake laughter is easy to detect by other humans.

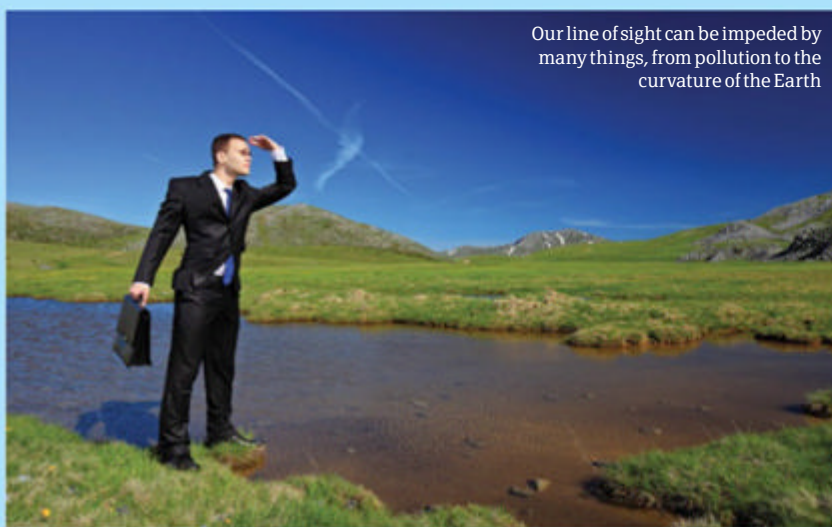


*"Laughter is produced by the same mechanisms used for coughing and speaking"*

## What is the maximum distance the human eye can see?



Dust, water vapour and pollution in the air will rarely let you see more than 20 kilometres, even on a clear day. Often, the curvature of the Earth gets in the way first – eg at sea level, the horizon is only 4.8km away. On the top of Mt Everest, you could theoretically see for 339km, but in practice cloud gets in the way. For a truly unobstructed view, look up. On a clear night, you can see the Andromeda galaxy with the naked eye, which is 2.25 million light years away.

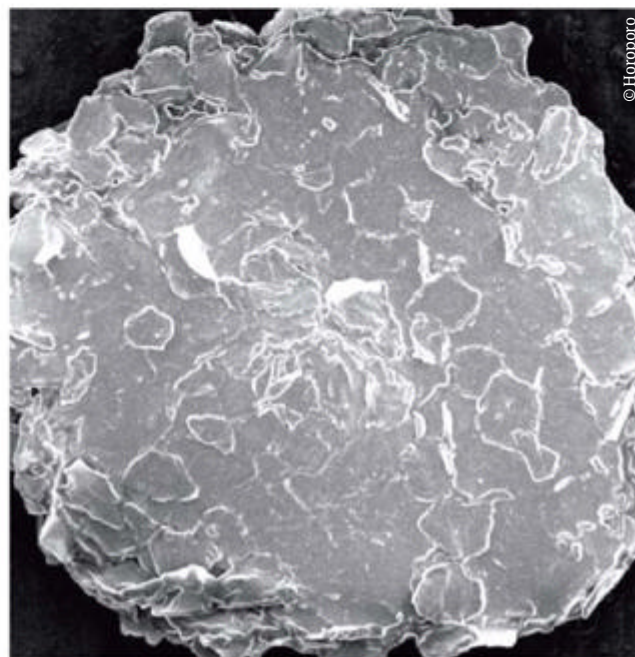


Our line of sight can be impeded by many things, from pollution to the curvature of the Earth

## What is dandruff?



Dandruff is when dead skin cells fall off the scalp. This is normal, as our skin is always being renewed. About half the population of the world suffers from an excessive amount of this shedding, which can be triggered by things like temperature or the increased activity of a microorganism that normally lives in everyone's skin, known as *malassezia globosa*. Dandruff is not contagious and there are many treatments available, the most common is specialised shampoo.



© Heroporo

## Why do eyes take a while to adjust to dark?



At the back of the eye on the retina, there are two types of photoreceptors (cells which detect light). Cones deal with colour and fine detail and act in bright light, while rods deal with vision in low-light situations. In the first few minutes of moving into a dark room, cones are responsible for vision but provide a poor picture. Once the rods become more active, they take over and create a much better picture in poor light. Once you move back into light, the rods are reset and so dark-adaption will take a few moments again. Soldiers are trained to close or cover one eye at night when moving in and out of a bright room, or when using a torch, to protect their night vision. Once back in the dark, they reopen the closed eye with the rods still working and, as a result, maintain good vision. This allows them to keep operating in a potentially hostile environment at peak operational efficiency. Give it a try next time you get up in the middle of the night, it may help you avoid tripping over in the dark.





© Thinkstock

# Why do some people have allergies and some don't?



Allergies can be caused by two things: host and environmental factors. Host is if you inherit an allergy or are likely to get it due to your age, sex or racial group.

Environmental factors can include things such as pollution, epidemic diseases and diet. People who are likely to develop allergies have a condition known as 'atopy'. Atopy is not an illness but an inherited feature, which makes individuals more likely to develop an allergic disorder. Atopy tends to run in families.

The reason why atopic people have a tendency to develop allergic disorders is because they have the ability to produce the allergy antibody called 'Immunoglobulin E' or 'IgE' when they come into contact with a particular substance. However, not everyone who has inherited the tendency to be atopic will develop an allergic disorder.

*"People who are likely to develop allergies have a condition known as 'atopy'"*

## Eczema explained

What causes the skin to react to otherwise harmless material?



Eczema is a broad term for a range of skin conditions, but the most common form is atopic dermatitis. People with

this condition have very reactive skin, which mounts an inflammatory response when in contact with irritants and allergens. Mast cells release histamine, which can lead to itching and scratching, forming sores open to infection.

There is thought to be a genetic element to the disease and a gene involved in retaining water in the skin has been identified as a potential contributor, but there are many factors.

Eczema can be treated with steroids, which suppress immune system activity, dampening the inflammation so skin can heal. In serious cases, immunosuppressant drugs – used to prevent transplant rejection – can actually be used to weaken the immune system so it no longer causes inflammation in the skin.

### Under the skin

What happens inside the body when eczema flares up?

#### Ceramides

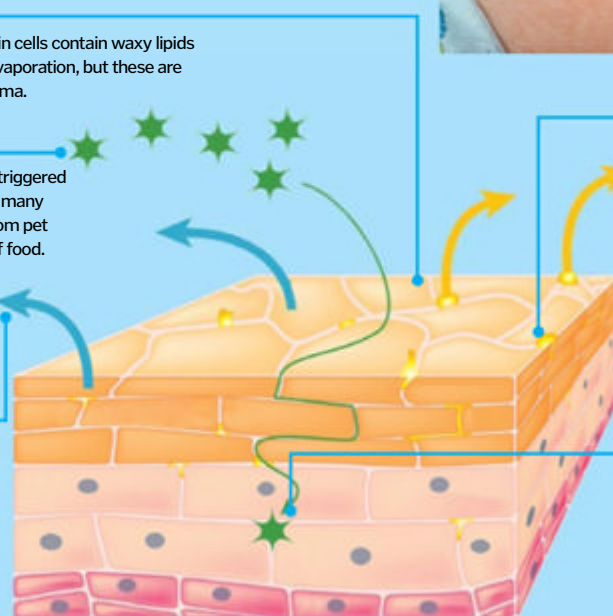
The membranes of skin cells contain waxy lipids to prevent moisture evaporation, but these are often deficient in eczema.

#### Allergen

Eczema is commonly triggered by the same things as many allergies – anything from pet hair to certain types of food.

#### Water loss

The skin is less able to retain water, leading to dryness and irritation.



The histamine increase can cause itching, leading to open sores

#### Allergen entry route

The cells of the skin are normally tightly bound together to prevent contaminants from entering the body, but in eczema there are gaps.

#### Inflammatory response

The immune system produces a response to allergens beneath the skin, leading to redness, itching and also inflammation.

© Alamy / Kadavoor / Thinkstock

## Why do bruises go purple?



Sometimes we trip over or hurt ourselves in other ways. When it happens some of our blood vessels break, blood piles up under our skin and we can see this as a bruise. These nasty things have the familiar 'black and blue' or purple appearance in the beginning but gradually change into different colours.

The purple colour is given by haemoglobin, a protein that carries the oxygen in our red blood cells. Our body reacts to this with some white blood cells called phagocytes 'eating up' the materials in the bruise. As the phagocytes degrade the haemoglobin, they turn it into other molecules. Different molecules show different colours and the bruise will change colour with time to green, yellow and brown. When everything has been cleared up by your immune system the bruise disappears and you're ready to bump into something else.

*"The purple is given by haemoglobin"*

## Is it possible for humans to have an allergy to water?



A rare condition called aquagenic urticaria is often referred to as an allergy to water. The symptoms of aquagenic urticaria are painful but generally not fatal. Contact with water-containing substances can bring out sore hives on the surface of the skin, cause a burning sensation and induce headaches. Because saliva

contains water, the condition hinders intimacy. Death could occur when water is swallowed if the throat swells up, blocking the airway. The root cause is unknown. One hypothesis is that H<sub>2</sub>O generates a toxic compound in the outer layers of the skin, prompting the release of histamines. Reactions can sometimes be controlled with antihistamines.



Aquagenic urticaria mainly occurs in women and can affect parts, or the whole, of the body

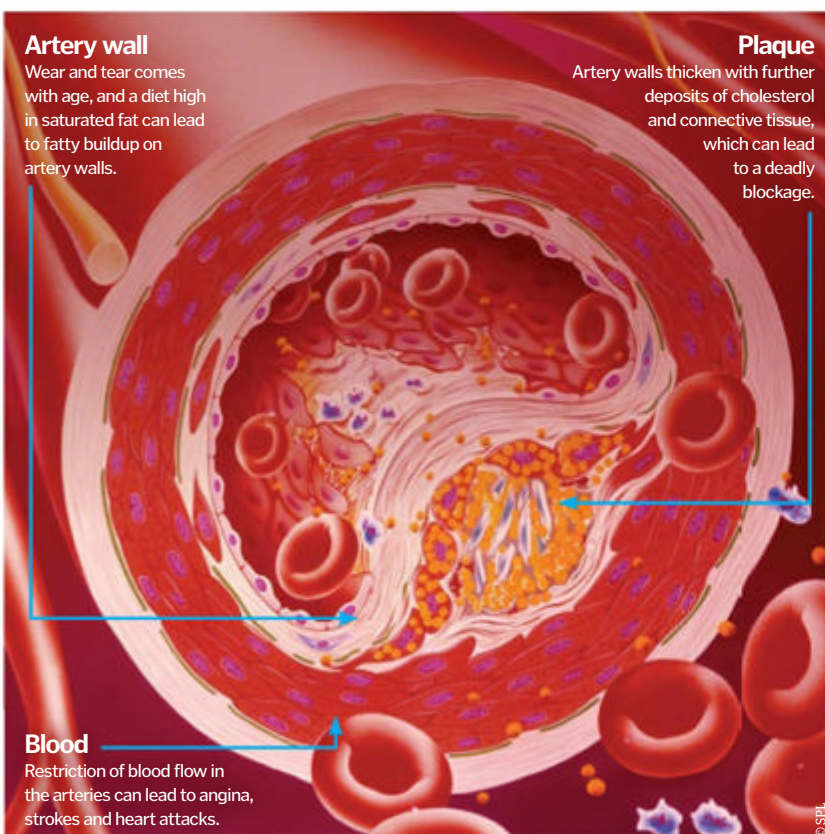
## Is cholesterol bad for you?

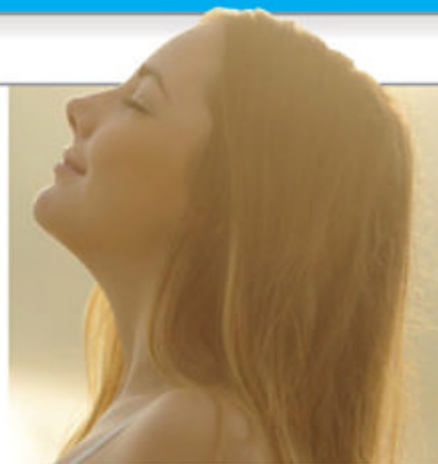
Is this substance as evil as we hear?



Cholesterol is a fatty molecule in the blood and, generally speaking, having too much is bad: it can stick to the walls of your arteries and increase the risk of heart disease. Most foods, with the exception of offal, eggs and shellfish, don't contain any cholesterol, but many contain saturated fats, which are turned into cholesterol by the liver. However, cholesterol itself isn't unhealthy – in fact, you wouldn't be able to live without it. The body uses cholesterol as a kind of padding, coating the outer membranes of all our cells and insulating nerve fibres, helping signals travel properly to and from the brain. It's also a fundamental part of the endocrine system, as all steroid hormones (eg oestrogen) are synthesised from cholesterol. Importantly, a good, balanced diet and regular exercise can keep cholesterol easily within a healthy range for most people.

*"Cholesterol itself isn't unhealthy – in fact, you wouldn't be able to live without it"*





# How do alveoli help you breathe?

## The lungs are filled with tiny balloon-like sacs that keep you alive



Gas exchange occurs in the lungs, where toxic gases (carbon dioxide) are exchanged for fresh air with its unused oxygen content. Of all the processes in the body that keep us functioning and alive, this is the most important. Without it, we would quickly become unconscious through accumulation of carbon dioxide within the bloodstream, which would poison the brain.

The two lungs (left and right) are made up of several lobes, and the fundamental building

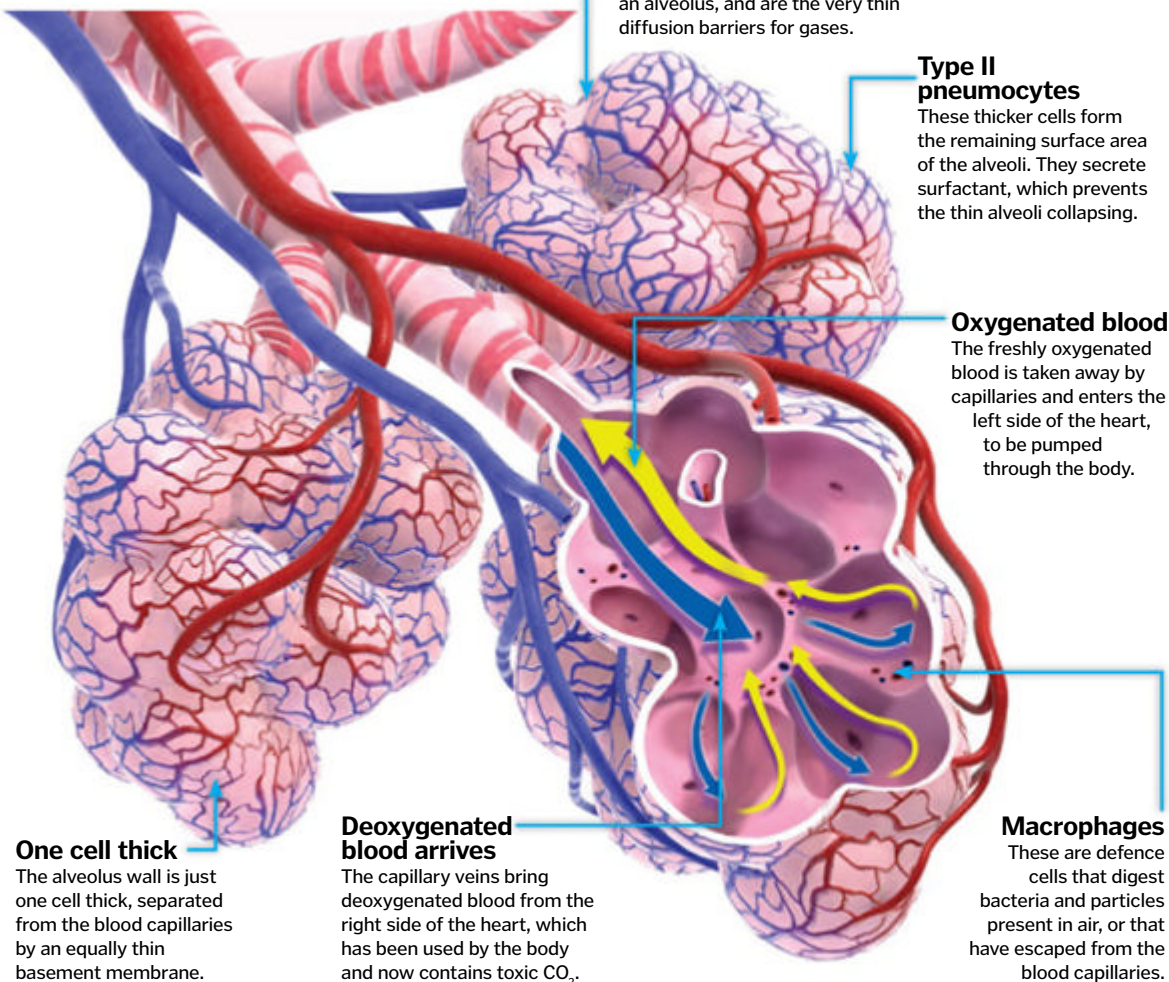
blocks of each are the tiny alveolus. They are the final point of the respiratory tract, as the bronchi break down into smaller and smaller tubes, leading to the alveoli, which are grouped together and look like microscopic bunches of grapes. Around the alveoli is the epithelial layer – which is amazingly only a single cell thick – and this is surrounded by extremely small blood vessels called capillaries. It is here that vital gas exchange takes place between the fresh air in the lungs and the deoxygenated

blood within the capillary venous system on the other side of the epithelial layer.

The alveoli of the lungs have evolved to become specialised structures, maximising their efficiency. Their walls are extremely thin and yet very sturdy. Pulmonary surfactant is a thin liquid layer made from lipids and proteins that coats all the alveoli, reduces their surface tension and prevents them crumpling when we breathe out. Without them, the lungs would collapse.

## Alveoli anatomy

How alveoli enable gas exchange



## Breathe in, breathe out

The alveoli function to allow gas exchange, but since they're so small, they can't move new air inside and out from the body without help. That's what your respiratory muscles and ribs do, hence why your chest moves as you breathe. The diaphragm, which sits below your heart and lungs but above your abdominal organs, is the main muscle of respiration. When it contracts, the normally dome-shaped diaphragm flattens and the space within the chest cavity expands. This reduces the pressure compared to the outside atmosphere, so air rushes in. When the diaphragm relaxes, it returns to its dome shape, the pressure within the chest increases and the old air – now full of expired carbon dioxide – is forced out again. The muscles between the ribs (called intercostal muscles) are used when forceful respiration is required, such as during exercise. Try taking a deep breath and observe how both your chest expands to reduce the pressure!



© DK Images/Thinkstock

**Blue eyes**  
**1** People with blue eyes all share a common ancestor. A genetic mutation about 10,000 years ago gave someone blue eyes, when everyone else's were brown.

**Blinking**  
**2** Your eyes will blink around 15-20 times per minute and it last for around 100 milliseconds. You also blink more when talking than when reading.

**Sight**  
**3** Technically, you see with your brain and not your eyes. Poor vision sometimes stems from problems with the visual cortex of the brain and not the eye itself.

**Tears**  
**4** Tears are not only an emotional response; they also help prevent your eyes from drying up and get rid of any irritating particles that could cause damage.

**Measurements**  
**5** On average, a human eyeball is around 2.5cm (1in) in diameter and weighs as little as 7.5g (0.25oz). A giant squid's eyeball is ten times as big as a human's.

**DID YOU KNOW?** SAD is more common in women and people between the ages of 15 and 55

# How do dilating eye drops work?

Discover how they are used to diagnose and treat eye conditions



Sight is one of our most important senses, so maintaining good eye health is absolutely essential. However, eyesight problems can be difficult to detect or treat on the surface, so specialist eye doctors will often use dilating eye drops in order to get a better look inside the eye at the lens, retina and optic nerve.

The drops contain the active ingredient atropine, which works by temporarily relaxing the muscle that constricts the pupil, enabling it to remain enlarged for a longer period of time so a thorough examination can be performed. Some dilating eye drops also relax the muscle that focuses the lens inside the eye, which allows an eye doctor or optometrist to measure a prescription for young children who can't perform traditional reading tests.

Dilating eye drops are not only used to help perform procedures, they may also be administered after treatment, as they can prevent scar tissue from forming. They are also occasionally prescribed to children with lazy-eye conditions, as they will temporarily blur vision in the strong eye, causing the brain to use and strengthen the weaker eye.



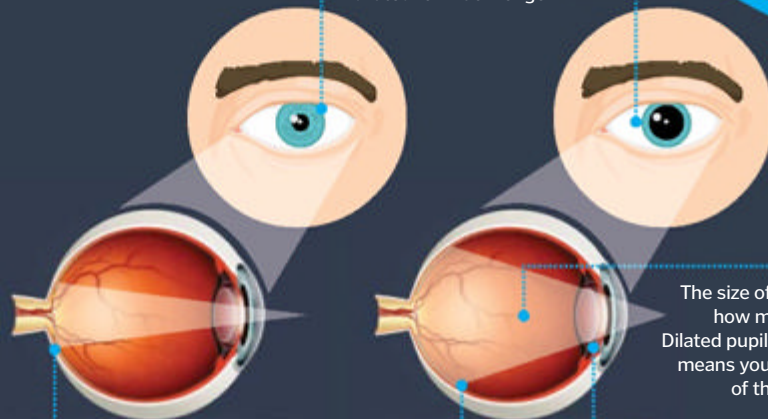
## Before and after

**A better look inside the eye**

**Contracted pupil**  
A contracted pupil will appear much smaller and let less light into the eye, which makes it difficult to see the retina and optic nerve inside.

**Dilated pupil**

Dilating eye drops will temporarily paralyse the muscle that constricts the pupil, which means the pupil will remain dilated for much longer.



Our eyes need good care to stay healthy

**Optic nerve**  
The optic nerve carries electrical impulses from the retina to the brain, which then interprets them as visual images.

**Retina**  
This light-sensitive tissue converts incoming light into electrical impulses. These impulses are then sent to the optic nerve.

**Ray of light**  
The size of the pupil will determine how much light enters the eye. Dilated pupils let in more light, which means you can see a larger portion of the retina and optic nerve.

**The lens**  
It is positioned behind the pupil and helps focus light onto the retina. Some dilating eye drops relax the muscle around it to prevent the lens from focusing.

# Why do we get migraines?

Discover how these mega-headaches strike



Those who suffer from migraines know they are a constant concern as they are liable to strike at any time. Essentially, a migraine is an intense pain at the front or on one side of the head. This usually takes the form of a heavy throbbing sensation and can last as little as an hour or two and up to a few days. Other symptoms of a migraine include increased sensitivity to light, sound and smell, so isolation in a dark and quiet room often brings relief. Nausea and vomiting is

also often reported, with pain sometimes subsiding after the sufferer has been sick.

It is thought that migraines occur when levels of serotonin in the brain drop rapidly. This causes blood vessels in the cortex to narrow, which is caused by the brain spasming. The blood vessels widen again in response, causing the intense headache. Emotional upheaval is often cited as a cause for the drop in serotonin in the brain, as is a diet in which blood-sugar levels rise and fall dramatically.





Monozygotic twins are a rarity

# What are twins?

Twins are becoming more prevalent due to medical developments, but how and why do they occur?



The number of twins, or multiples, being born is actually on the rise due to the increase in use of fertility treatments such as IVF as people wait longer to have children. The number of twins surviving early births is also increasing due to improved medical knowledge.

However, twins are still a relatively rare occurrence making up only around two per cent of the living world's population. Within this, monozygotic twins (from one ovum) make up around eight per cent with dizygotic (from two ovum) seen to be far more common.

While there is no known reason for the occurrence of the split of the ovum that causes monozygotic twins, the chances of having twins is thought to be affected by several different factors. It is believed twins 'run in the family', often seeming to skip generations, while the age, weight, height, race and even diet of the mother are thought to potentially impact the chances of conceiving

dizygotic twins. Also, if the mother is going through fertility treatments, she is much more likely to become pregnant with multiples.

It will become apparent quite early on that a mother is carrying twins as this is often picked up during early ultrasound scans. There can be other indications such as increased weight gain or extreme fatigue. Although twins are often born entirely healthy and go on to develop without problems later in life due to medical advances, twins can be premature and smaller than single births due to space constrictions within the womb during development.

*"It is believed twins 'run in the family', often seeming to skip generations"*

## Strange, but true...

There are many stories of identical twins being separated at birth and then growing up to lead very similar lives. One example described in the 1980 January edition of *Reader's Digest* tells of two twins separated at birth, both named James, who both pursued law-enforcement training and had a talent for carpentry. One named his son James Alan, and the other named his James Allan and both named their dogs Toy. There were also the Mowforth twins, two identical brothers who lived 80 miles apart in the UK, dying of exactly the same symptoms on the same night within hours of each other.

**12 foetus world record**

**1** Although sadly this pregnancy did not reach full term and no babies survived, a woman in Argentina was observed to have 12 foetuses inside her womb from natural conception.

**Nonuplets exist**

**2** A Malaysian mother gave birth to five boys and four girls in March 1999 – none survived over six hours. Another set of nonuplets suffered a similar fate in Sydney in 1971.

**Race affects conception**

**3** With regard to DZ twins, there is seen to be a higher prevalence of these twins in black Africans, and a lower incidence than to be expected in Oriental mothers.

**Most children**

**4** The highest recorded number of children had by one woman is the first wife of Feodor Vassilyev, who lived in the 1700s. She gave birth to an incredible 69 children.

**Quad gestation**

**5** With regard to quadruplets, the average gestation period is just 32 weeks – that's eight weeks shorter than usual, primarily due to the size restriction of the womb.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Female monozygotic twins are more common due to the increased likelihood of male mortality in the womb

# Multiple pregnancies, multiple problems?

There are many difficulties with twin pregnancies – mainly due to the limited size of the mother's womb. Multiple pregnancies rarely reach full term due to these limits, twins averaging at around 37 weeks. Also, because of the lack of space and eggs splitting in the womb, further complications such as conjoined twins can occur. Conjoined twins can be a problem dependant on where

they're joined. If it is by a vital organ or bone structure, one or both may die following birth as they grow – or during an operation to separate them.

It is also suspected that as many as one in eight pregnancies may have started out as a potential multiple birth, but one or more of the foetuses does not progress through development to full term.

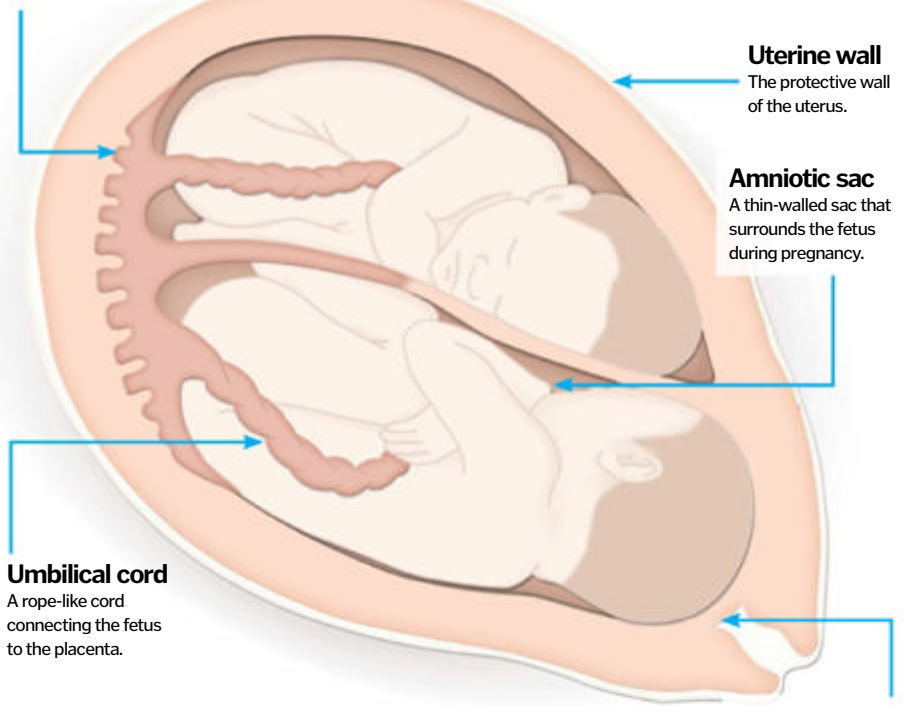
# Formation of identical and fraternal twins

Monozygotic (MZ), or identical, twins are formed by the egg splitting soon after fertilisation, and from those identical split groups of cells, two separate foetuses will start to grow. Monozygotic twins are therefore genetically identical and will be the same sex, except when mutations or very rare syndromes occur during gestation. No reason is known for the occurrence of the split of the ovum, and the father has no influence over whether identical twins are produced.

Dizygotic (DZ) twins, however, are produced when the female's ovaries release two ovum and both are fertilised and implanted in the womb wall. They can be known as fraternal twins as genetically they are likely to only be as similar as siblings. They will also have separate placentas, where MZ twins will share one, as they are entirely separate to each other – they are just sharing the womb during gestation. This kind of twin is far more common.

**Placenta**

Provides a metabolic interchange between the twins and mother.



## Twins inside the womb

**Uterine wall**

The protective wall of the uterus.

**Amniotic sac**

A thin-walled sac that surrounds the fetus during pregnancy.

**Umbilical cord**

A rope-like cord connecting the fetus to the placenta.

**Cervix**

The lower part of the uterus that projects into the vagina.

# Genetically identical, but why do twins differ?

From studying identical, monozygotic twins, we can attempt to decipher the level of impact environment has on an individual and the influence genes have. As the genetics of the individuals would be identical, we can say that differences displayed between two MZ twins are likely to be down to environmental influences.

Some of the most interesting studies look at twins that have been separated at birth, often when individuals have been adopted by

different parents. Often we see a similar IQ and personality displayed, whether or not they grow up together, but even these and other lifestyle choices can vary dependant on environment.

Ultimately, it is hard to draw firm conclusions from twin studies as they will be an unrepresentatively small sample within a much larger population and we often find that both environment and genetics interact to influence an individual's development.

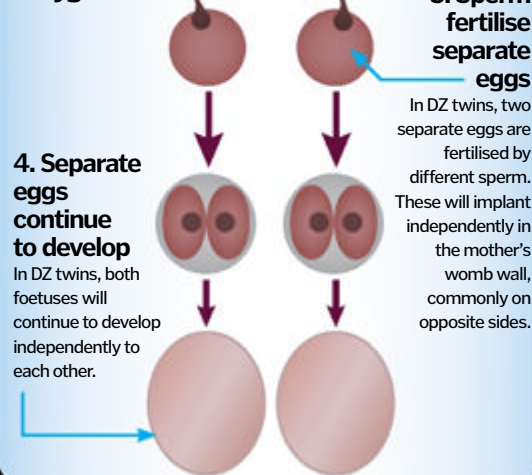
**Monozygotic**



**1. Sperm fertilises egg**  
In MZ twins, only one egg and one sperm are involved.

**2. Fertilised egg splits**  
At some point very early on, the fertilised egg will split and two separate foetuses will start to form. These will be genetically identical.

**Dizygotic**



**3. Sperm fertilise separate eggs**  
In DZ twins, two separate eggs are fertilised by different sperm. These will implant independently in the mother's womb wall, commonly on opposite sides.

**4. Separate eggs continue to develop**  
In DZ twins, both foetuses will continue to develop independently to each other.

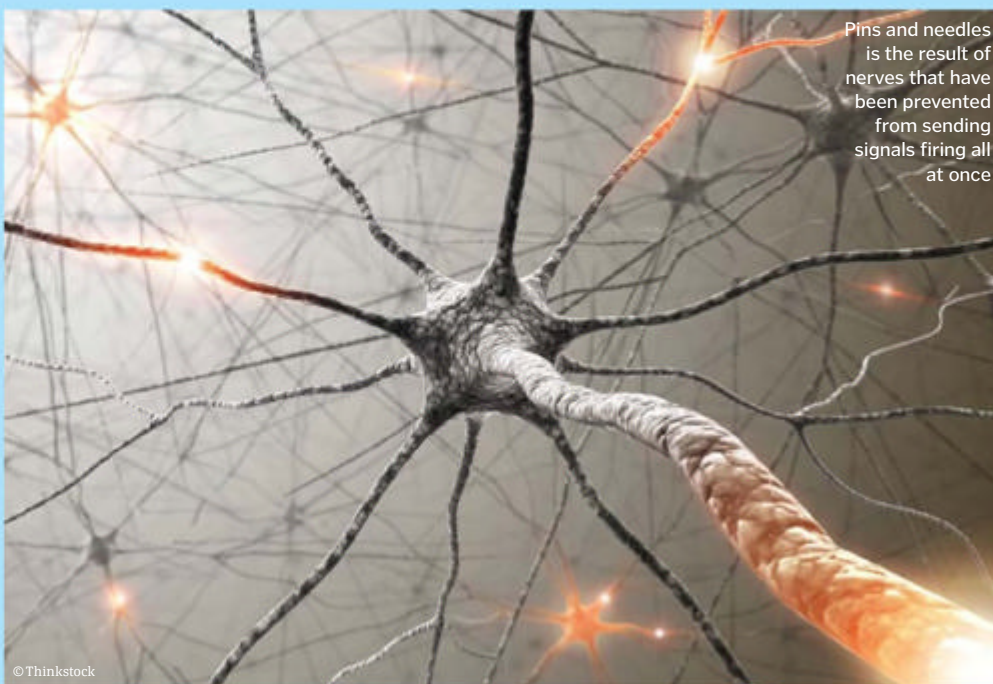


## What is 'pins and needles'?



The numb sensation of your leg 'going to sleep' isn't caused by cutting off the blood circulation. It's the pressure on the nerves that is responsible. This squeezes the insulating sheath around the nerve and 'shorts it out', blocking nerve transmission. When pressure is released, the nerves downstream from the pinch point suddenly all begin firing at once. This jumble of unco-ordinated signals is a mixture of pain and touch, hot and cold all mixed together, which is why it's excruciating.

*"This squeezes the insulating sheath around the nerve and 'shorts it out'"*



Pins and needles is the result of nerves that have been prevented from sending signals firing all at once

© Thinkstock



© Thinkstock

## Why do paper cuts hurt so much?



Paper can cut your skin as it is incredibly thin and, if you were to look at it under a high-powered microscope, it has serrated edges. Critically though, a sheet of loose paper is far too soft and flexible to exert enough pressure to pierce the skin, hence why they are not a more frequent occurrence. However, if the paper is fixed in place – maybe by being sandwiched within a pack of paper – a sheet can become stiff enough to attain skin-cutting pressure. Paper cuts are so painful once inflicted as they stimulate a large number of pain receptors – nociceptors send nerve signals to the spinal cord and brain – in a very small area due to the razor-type incision. Because paper cuts tend not to be deep, bleeding is limited, leaving pain receptors open to the environment.



## Are there other 'funny bones' in the body?



The term 'funny bone' is misleading because it refers to the painful sensation you experience when you trap your ulnar nerve between the skin and the bones of the elbow joint. This happens in the so-called cubital tunnel, which directs the nerve over the elbow but has little padding to protect against external impacts. The ulnar nerve takes its name from the ulna bone, which is one of two bones that runs from the wrist to the elbow; the other is the radial bone, or radius.

No other joint in the human skeleton combines these conditions and duplicates the this erroneously named reaction so we only have one 'funny bone'.

# Why do our muscles ache?

Learn what causes stiffness and pain in our muscles for days after exercise



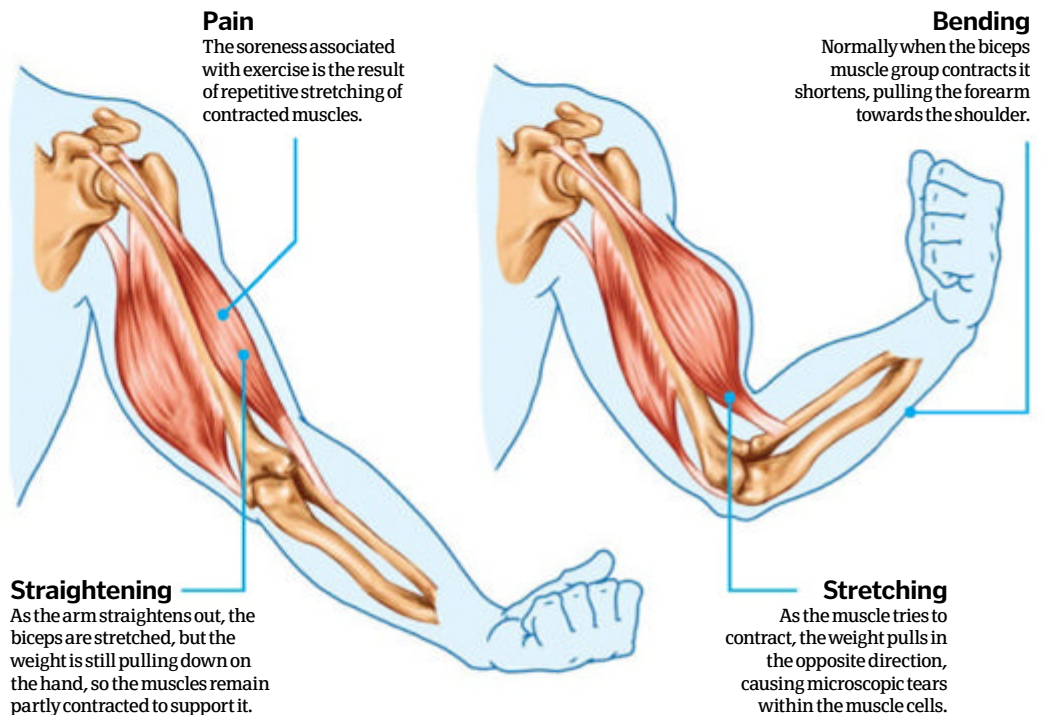
Normally, when our muscles contract they shorten and bulge, much like a bodybuilder's biceps. However, if the muscle happens to be stretched as it contracts it can cause microscopic damage.

The quadriceps muscle group located on the front of the thigh is involved in extending the knee joint, and usually contracts and shortens to straighten the leg. However, when walking down a steep slope, say, the quadriceps contract to support your body weight as you step forward, but as the knee bends, the muscles are pulled in the opposite direction. This tension results in tiny tears in the muscle and this is the reason that downhill running causes so much delayed-onset pain.

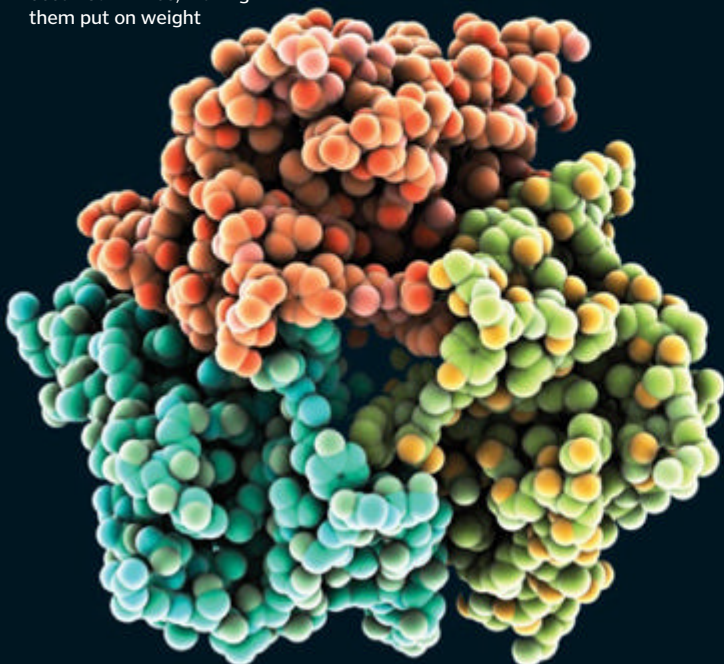
At the microscopic level, a muscle is made up of billions of stacked sarcomeres, containing molecular ratchets that pull against one another to generate mechanical force. If the muscle is taut as it tries to contract, the sarcomeres get pulled out of line, causing microscopic damage. The muscle becomes inflamed and fills with fluid, causing stiffness and activating pain receptors – hence that achy feeling you get after unfamiliar exercise.

## Weightlifting and the body

What happens to your biceps when you pump iron?



The leptin (LEP) gene was originally discovered when a random mutation occurred in mice, making them put on weight



## The fat hormone

Discover how the body manages to keep track of its energy reserves



In order to know how much food to eat, the human body needs a way of assessing how much energy it currently has in storage. Leptin – more commonly known as the 'fat hormone' – essentially acts as our internal fuel gauge. It is made by fat cells and tells the brain how much fat the body contains, and whether the supplies are increasing or being used up.

Food intake is regulated by a small region of the brain called the hypothalamus. When fat stores run low and leptin levels drop, the hypothalamus stimulates appetite in an attempt to increase food intake and regain lost energy. When leptin levels are high, appetite is suppressed, reducing food intake and encouraging the body to burn up fuel.

It was originally thought that leptin could be used as a treatment for obesity. However, although it is an important regulator of food intake, our appetite is affected by many other factors, from how full the stomach is to an individual's emotional state or their food preferences. For this reason, it's possible to override the leptin message and gain weight even when fat stores are sufficient.

© Alamy



## Why do the upper arm and upper leg have only one bone?



The makeup of the human skeleton is a fantastic display of evolution that has left us with the ability to perform incredibly complex tasks without even thinking about them. There are several different types of joint between bones in your body, which reflect their function; some are strong and allow little movement, others are weak but allow free movement. The forearm and lower leg have two bones, which form plane joints at the wrist and ankle. This type of joint allows for a range of fine movements, including gliding and rotation. The hinge joints at your elbows and knees allow for less lateral movement, but they are strong. Shoulders and hips, though, are ball-and-socket joints, which allow for a wide range of motion.

## Why shouldn't we eat raw meat?



Meat can harbour many different bacteria, viruses and even parasites. Cooking meat properly destroys them, making meat much safer for consumption. Bacteria and viruses can make you ill, while parasites can grow inside your gut and even migrate to your brain. Food poisoning is a very serious business and by not cooking meat thoroughly, you are greatly increasing your chances of getting something nasty. People quite often eat raw meat such as steak tartare, but it requires extra care in the preparation. Besides safety, cooking meat also makes it taste better. By cooking meat and other foods, humans can get much more energy than from chewing raw food alone.



## How do inoculations work?



The terms 'inoculation' and 'vaccination' are used interchangeably. They involve introducing a foreign substance (antigens) into the body, causing antibody production. These can either be dead, made less harmful, or just contain certain bits that cause disease.

White blood cells called B lymphocytes recognise these antigens, and produce antibodies to neutralise them. After the initial encounter, a group of B lymphocytes are made called 'memory cells', which produce antibodies faster if exposed to the same antigen again.

*"They involve introducing antigens into the body"*





© Thinkstock

## Why do we develop gout?



Excessive levels of uric acid in the blood cause gout. We produce uric acid as a waste product from digesting protein. Uric acid is removed by the kidneys and excreted as a dilute solution. If kidney function is impaired, the concentration rises to the point where it precipitates as monosodium urate crystals.

These normally form in the joints of your toes, because your feet are cooler and cold temperatures reduce the solubility of uric acid. Gout is partly genetic, but exacerbated by excessive drinking – particularly beer – and not enough exercise, so there are things that can be done to help avoid suffering.

*“Your feet are cooler and cold temperatures reduce the solubility of uric acid”*

## Why aren't feet measured in centimetres or inches?



Feet, like any other part of our body, are measured in centimetres. If you're asking about why shoe sizes are weird numbers, then there's an interesting story to this.

The standard way to do shoe sizes is to take three times the foot size in inches, and then take away 25 (or 12 for kids' sizes). The reason for this complicated system is because shoes used to be measured not in inches or centimetres, but in an Old English unit called the 'barleycorn', which amounts to one-third of an inch.

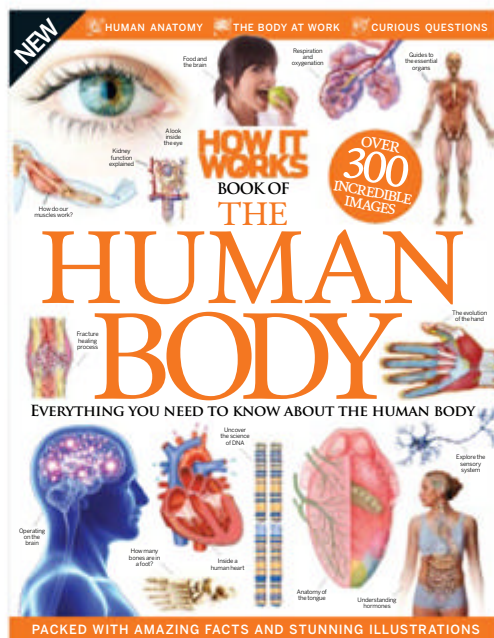
*“Shoes used to be measured in an Old English unit called the 'barleycorn'”*



© Thinkstock

Special  
trial offer

Enjoyed  
this book?



Exclusive offer for new



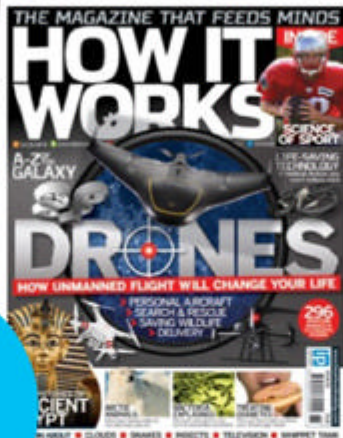
Try  
3 issues  
for just  
£5\*

\* This offer entitles new UK Direct Debit subscribers to receive their first 3 issues for £5. After these issues, subscribers will then pay £17.95 every 6 issues. Subscribers can cancel this subscription at any time. New subscriptions will start from the next available issue. Offer code 'ZGGZIN' must be quoted to receive this special subscriptions price. Direct Debit guarantee available on request.

\*\* This is a US subscription offer. The USA issue rate is based on an annual subscription price of £50 for 13 issues, which is equivalent to \$78 at the time of writing compared with the newsstand price of \$9.50 for 13 issues being \$123.50. Your subscription will start from the next available issue.



About  
the  
mag



## The magazine that feeds minds

### Full-colour illustrations

Jam-packed with amazing visuals to really get you excited about science and technology

### Expert writers

We commission a pool of highly intelligent and talented experts to write every article

### Join the community

Link up with other readers with a passion for knowledge at [www.howitworksdaily.com](http://www.howitworksdaily.com)

# subscribers to...

# HOW IT WORKS

SCIENCE ENVIRONMENT TECHNOLOGY TRANSPORT HISTORY SPACE

Try 3 issues for **£5 in the UK\***  
or just **\$6.00 per issue in the USA\*\***  
(saving 37% off the newsstand price)

For amazing offers please visit  
[www.imaginesubs.co.uk/hiw](http://www.imaginesubs.co.uk/hiw)

Quote code ZGGZIN

Or telephone UK 0844 815 5944 overseas +44 (0)1795 418 680

WorldMags.net

# Everything you need to know



# HOW IT WORKS

**BUY YOUR COPY TODAY**

Print edition available at [www.imagineshop.co.uk](http://www.imagineshop.co.uk)  
Digital edition available at [www.greatdigitalmags.com](http://www.greatdigitalmags.com)

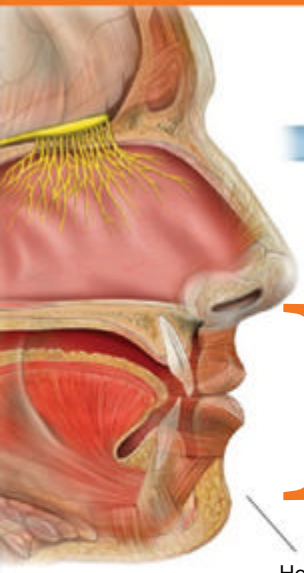
Available on the following platforms



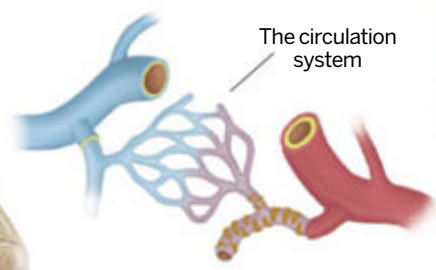
World [facebook.com/ImagineBookazines](http://www.facebook.com/ImagineBookazines)

[twitter.com/Books\\_Imagine](https://twitter.com/Books_Imagine)



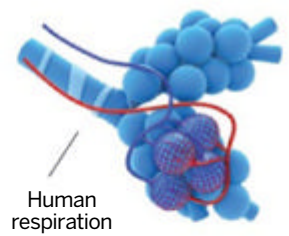


How do we smell?

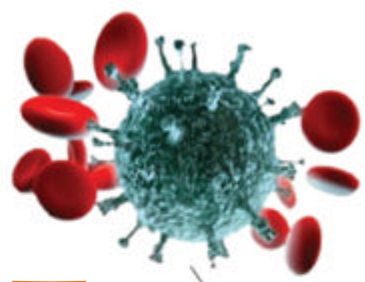


The circulation system

# HOW IT WORKS BOOK OF THE



Human respiration



How do we combat viruses?

# HUMAN BODY

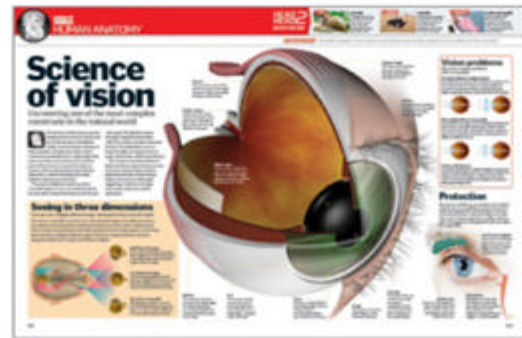
170+ PAGES OF FACTS AND TRIVIA INSIDE



The development of an embryo

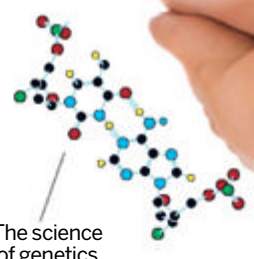


The science behind a sprained ankle

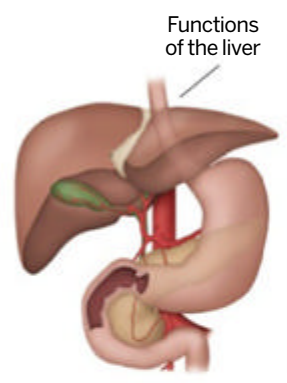


## Human anatomy

Discover how our hearts beat, our brains think and our ears hear and everything in between



The science of genetics



Functions of the liver



## The body at work

Find out how our bodies work, from genetics and the immune system to respiration and white blood cells

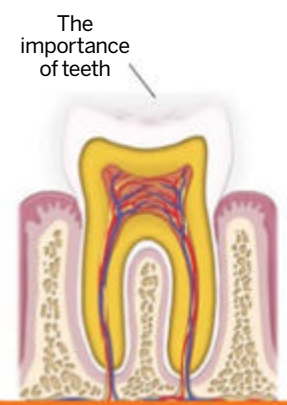


## Curious questions

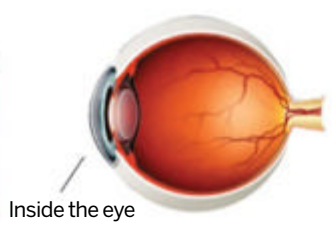
Uncover amazing facts that explain some of life's biggest questions, such as what powers cells and how anaesthesia works



The structure of the skeleton



The importance of teeth



Inside the eye



Understand our sense of taste

